NTT DoCoMo

Manual for

FOMA® N901iC '05.1

FeliCa



i-mode®

Contents/Safety Precautions

Getting started

Making/Receiving phone calls

Making/Receiving video-phone calls

Using the phonebook

Tone/Display/Lighting settings

Security settings

Camera

i-mode

mail

i-αpplis

i-motion

FeliCa

Displaying, editing and organizing files

Other useful functions

Network services

Data communication

Entering text

Appendix

Index/Quick manual

DoCoMo
W-CDMA System

- Thank you for choosing the FOMA N901iC.
- Please read this Manual carefully before and during use for effective and correct operation of the FOMA N901iC.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- FOMA terminals operate using radio waves, so phone calls cannot be made in locations where radio waves cannot be received. You cannot use the FOMA terminal in tunnels, underground areas, inside buildings, and outdoor locations where reception is poor, or out of the service areas. You may also experience difficulties making phone calls from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. When reception is good (i.e. the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, be mindful of not disturbing the people around you.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always the risk of your calls being intercepted by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention for all calls. In this way, even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where signal reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what was actually said.
- It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo shall not be held liable for any loss stored data.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the results of using SSL. Neither NTT DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as to security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain any damage or loss due to the use of SSL, under no circumstances shall either NTT DoCoMo or the certifier be held responsible for any such damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using the Manual (This Document)

Looking up items from the Table of Contents

Firstly, look in the contents page (P. 2). There are tips for such things as operating the phone. You can look up the page with the information you want to know.

Looking up items from the Index

If you know the key word for the item you are looking for, you find the page you are looking for quickly through the index (P. 582).

Looking up items by categories

If you search by category, you can search in the "Chapter Guide" (in the front cover of the manual). The chapter page (the first page of each chapter), describes a detailed contents page to look up functions.

Looking up items from the Features

If you know the function or the name of FOMA menu item, you can also fined what you are looking for on the Menu Function List (P. 552).

Using the Quick Manual

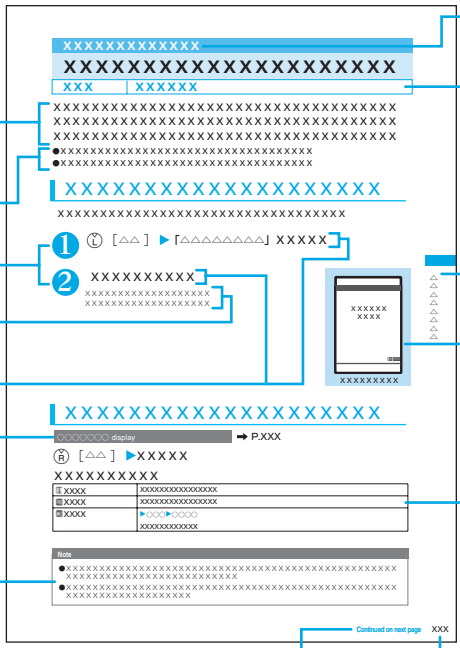
There is a Quick Manual at the rear of this manual that describes the basic functions and display of the FOMA. You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.

- In this Manual for FOMA N901iC, the FOMA N901iC is referred to as the FOMA Terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use the miniSD memory card. To use these functions, you need a miniSD memory card. See "About miniSD memory cards" → P. 396
- Reproduction of any part of this manual without authorized consent is prohibited.
- Parts of this manual may change without prior notification.

How to Use This Manual

About the symbols (Quick Manual →P. 588)

This manual uses the symbols shown in the sample page below.



About the display indications

- In this manual, in order to make the screens on the page easy to read, “Stand-by display” has been set “OFF”. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the settings at the time of purchase. Therefore, depending on settings that were changed after the time of purchase, the displayed contents of the FOMA terminal may be different from those of this manual.
- The screens shown in this manual are screen images and may differ from the actual screens.

The Quick Manual provides brief descriptions of the basic operations and displays.

Contents

How to Use This Manual 1

Contents 2

Features of the FOMA N901iC 4

Mastering the FOMA N901iC ! 6

Safety Precautions 8

Handling and Care 18

Intellectual Property Right 20

Main Equipment and Optional Equipment 22

Getting Started 23
- Component names and functions
- How to view the display
- Selecting the Menu • Attaching/Removing the battery pack • Charging the FOMA terminal • Turning the FOMA terminal on/off • Setting the date and time • Notifying the other party of your phone number

Making/Receiving Phone Calls 47
- Making/Receiving phone calls
- Redial • Received calls
- Earpiece volume • Answer hold
- Pause dialing • WORLD CALL
- Hands-free operation
- Driving mode • Recording messages

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls 75
- Making/Receiving a video-phone call
- Using “Chara-den” • Remote observation

Using the Phonebook 91
- Add to phonebook • Group setting
- Search phonebook
- Copying a phonebook • Utilities

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings 113
- Select ring tone • Vibrator • Keypad sound
- Charge sound • Mail/Msg. ring time
- Manner mode • Display settings
- Display light settings • Menu display
- Neuropointer • Illumination/Illumination in talk • Desktop icon

Security Settings 141
- Security code used on the FOMA terminal
- Set PIN • All lock • Remote all lock
- Keypad dial lock • Secret mode • PIM lock
- Mail security settings • Restrictions
- Reject unknown

Camera 159
- Photo mode • Continuous shooting
- Shooting framed images • Movie mode
- Bar code reader • Access reader

i-mode 195
- What is i-mode? • i-mode menu
- Viewing a site • My Menu
- i-mode password • Connect to internet
- Bookmark • Phone to/Mail to/Web to function • Message service

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Mail 237
• What is i-mode mail? • Compose message/Send • Deco-mail • Receive option
• Check new message • i-motion mail
• Chat mail • SMS

i-αpplis 315
• What is an i-αppli? • Downloading i-αpplis
• i-αppli stand-by display
• Upgrading i-αpplis

i-motion 333
• What is an i-motion?
• Downloading i-motion

FeliCa 339
• What is FeliCa?
• Launching FeliCa i-αpplis

Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files 343
• My picture • Playing movie/i-motions
• Edit image • Edit movie
• Shot with Chara-den • Melody player
• miniSD memory card
• Infrared communication function

Other Useful Functions 427
• Multi access • Alarm mode settings
• Alarm clock • Schedule • ToDo
• Own number • Calculator • Text memo
• Reset settings • Initialize

Network Services 465
• Voice mail service • Call waiting service
• Call forwarding service • Nuisance call barring service • Caller ID request service
• Dual network service

Data Communication 481
• About data communication
• Setting the PC
• About the FOMA PC setting software
• Executing communication/Disconnect
• Setting up dial-up network

Entering Text 525
• Switching the text entry method
• Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic/numeric • Copying and pasting text • Entering kuten • Entering text in 2-touch input • Entering text in T9 input
• User dictionary • Download dictionary
• Common phrase

Appendix 551
• Menu function list
• Symbols and special characters list
• Pictographs symbols list
• Smiley face symbols list
• Kuten code list
• Options and Accessories
• Troubleshooting • Error message
• Software update • Scan function

Index/Quick Manual 581
• Index
• Quick manual

Features of the FOMA N901iC

FOMA (Freedom of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that you can use to send e-mail as well as using the i-mode terminal display to look at the i-mode menu site (program) and i-mode compatible homepage.

P.195

3D × 3D

The improvement of the 3D graphics and 3D sound gives you the feeling of actually being there with games such as the car racing game.

P.116

i-mode FeliCa

By downloading i-mode FeliCa compatible i-αppli, you can change the internal IC card with money from sites and you can check the account balance and usage history. It makes your FOMA terminal a convenient tool for everyday life.

P.339

Video-phone

You can talk on the video-phone to the other party with video-phone-capable terminals face to face. During the hands-free mode, you can hear the other party's voice from the speaker. By operating Chara-den instead of displaying your own image, you can enjoy making Chara-den do various actions during a call.
It supports the remote monitor with the camera function to check the behavior of your pet in your home from outside, or observe the local conditions such as factory or operation status from a remote location. Your FOMA terminal can work as a terminal for both sending and receiving remote monitor data.

P.75

Camera

You can take pictures (still images), continuous multiple pictures and movies using the two cameras, Front camera and Rear camera. The Rear camera has a Super CCD honeycomb of 2 million recordable pixels (1 million valid pixels) and is capable of taking a large picture of 1616 × 1212 dots.
It also loads the "Chance capture" function, which records movies retroactively from the point you end shooting, and the "Picture voice" function, which adds voice to pictures (still images) taken. Movies shot with these functions are saved in the Movie player as movies and can be sent with i-mode mail.

P.159

Security Settings

You can use the FOMA terminal's many security settings to keep your personal information private through the use of security codes and passwords, and use the Lock/Security function to lock the FOMA terminal's functions from a remote location to prevent unauthorized use of your phone if it is lost or stolen.

P.141

Multi-access
By Multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call and packet transmission at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service or exchange mails during a call.
P.428

Deco-mail (Decoration mail)
You can change the color of the character of the body and compose and send mail decorated with subtitle flashing, etc. (Deco-mail). You can also receive Deco-mail to enjoy expressive mail. The FOMA terminal even comes with templates (forms for Deco-mail) that make it even easier to compose and send Deco-mail. You can either use the pre-installed templates, or download additional templates from i-mode sites or Internet websites.
P.254

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.
P.413

Bar code reader
You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function or use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.
P.184

Chara-den
When you make a video-phone call, you can display a pre-installed character or downloaded character instead of yourself. You can add expressions and actions to the character by using the dial keys.
P.83

i-αppli, i-αppli DX
Your enjoyment of i-αppli will increase as you can specify i-αppli as the stand-by screen, receive information in real time, and access data in the FOMA terminal.
P.315

i-mode mail
You can call up the mail menu by just pressing Ⓨ while the standby display is displayed. You can save up to 1,000 received messages and 400 sent messages on your FOMA terminal.
P.237

i-motion
You can download images and music from sites and the internet. Saved i-motions can be "Chaku-motions" specified as ring tone or the incoming image.
P.333

i-motion mail
You can send movies recorded with the built-in camera and i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages as an i-mode mail attachment.
P.262

Rich network services

Dual network service (paid service)
● A separate subscription is required.
P.474

Call Waiting (paid service)
● A separate subscription is required.
P.469

Voice mail service (paid service)
● A separate subscription is required.
P.467

Call forwarding service
● A separate subscription is required.
P.470

Short message service (SMS)
● No subscription is required.
P.308

Mastering the FOMA N901iC !

Visual communication with the FOMA N901iC

Expressive communication with a video-phone call stamp.

“Decoration Video-Phone Calls”

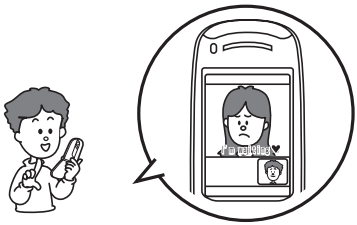
●**A stamp that expresses emotions, you can synchronize it to your facial movements during a video-phone call.**
→P.86



Communicate while looking at the other party’s expressions.

“Petit message”

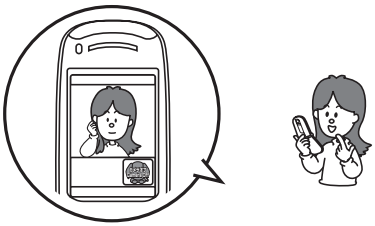
●**You can input text and send it to the other party during a video-phone call.**
→P.87



Check your face before answering a video-phone call.

“Visual check”

●**Even if you receive a sudden video-phone call, you can check your image before answering the call.**
→P.85

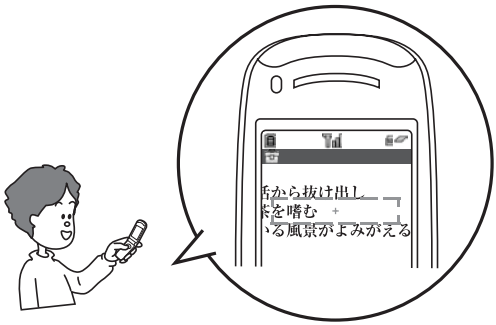


Numbers, English and Japanese compatibility makes it even handier.

“Access reader”

●Communication between functions has improved and become even handier.
→P.188

You can scan business cards and record them into the phonebook, and scan words you don’t understand and search for them in the dictionary.

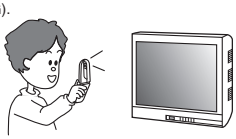


You can use your FOMA terminal as a TV, VCR, and DVD player remote control.

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G Guide Program Table Remote Control)

●Infrared remote control function. →P.418

You can use the FOMA terminal infrared function so as to use the FOMA as a TV, VCR, or DVD player remote control. It also supports the Electronic Program Guide (EPG).





You can search for program information by genre or key word.

The screen is an image. The actual screen differs. A TV guide based on the area where you live is displayed.

Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read these “Safety Precautions” carefully prior to use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.

■ These safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injury and damage to property.

■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

⚠ DANGER	⚠ WARNING	⚠ CAUTION
This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use.	This symbol indicates that serious bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.
 No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water, and not to get it wet.
 Do	Indicates a compulsory action for the described direction.
 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord should be unplugged from the power outlet.

■ “Safety Precautions” are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack and Adapter (including a Charger) (Common) 9
2. Handling the FOMA Terminal 10
3. Handling the Battery Pack 12
4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger) 14
5. Handling the FOMA Card 16
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

⚠DANGER

Do

Use only the battery packs and adapters (including a Charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the FOMA terminal.
The use of devices other than those specified by DoCoMo may result in the battery pack and other parts leaking, overheating, exploding or catching fire.

Battery Pack N08　Desktop Holder N06　FOMA AC Adapter 01　FOMA DC Adapter 01
Data Communications Adapter N01 FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo service counter.

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or suffer damage to internal circuitry.

Don't

Do not drop, throw or subject the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters to strong force or impacts.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other electronic components may also be damaged or catch fire.

Do

Be sure to turn off the mobile phone before entering a place where flammable gas could generate such as gas station. Also, do not charge the phone. Gas could ignite.
Turn off the mobile phone when using Osaifu-Keitai in a certain area including the gas station. (If setting the IC card lock, unlock it before turning the power off.)

⚠CAUTION

Do

If the FOMA terminal is used by children, the children's parent or guardian should teach them how to use the FOMA terminal and make sure that they always use the FOMA terminal correctly, as instructed.
Improper usage could result in bodily injury.

Don't

Do not keep the FOMA terminal in locations that are very humid or dusty or subject to high temperatures.
Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause it to malfunction.

Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal may become deformed or malfunction.
Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a sloping or unstable surface.
The FOMA terminal may fall and cause an injury or be damaged.

Do

Keep the FOMA terminal out of the reach of young children.
A small child may swallow one of the components or suffer other bodily injury.

⚠WARNING



Never use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.
Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe location before using the mobile phone or use Driving mode. Following revisions to the Road Traffic Law, as of November 1 2004, the use of a mobile phone while driving is a punishable offence.
Also, if using the FOMA terminal while walking, take great care to be aware of your surroundings and of the condition of the footpath.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal.
Doing so may cause a fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. Before turning the FOMA terminal off, ensure that the Auto power ON function, if available, is set to "OFF".
Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facility regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, prohibited acts, such as using the phone in an aircraft, may be punishable by law.



If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls.
Your heart may be adversely affected.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
The FOMA terminal may overheat, catch fire or cause a malfunction.



Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another person's eyes when using infrared communication.
Doing so may cause eye injury. Also, do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.



Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic equipment or devices that use weak electronic signals.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

※Take particular care with the following devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.
If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.



If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.
The FOMA terminal is a folding mobile phone and uses magnets to detect that it is closed. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.



Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance with it when you talk in the hands-free mode with the speaker.
It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.



Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.
This will interfere with safe driving and may cause an accident.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

⚠CAUTION



In some types of vehicle, use of the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.
Do not use the FOMA if the terminal might impair safe driving.



Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.
The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



Keep the FOMA terminal dry.
Exposing the FOMA terminal to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, malfunction, electric shock or injury. Be careful where and how you use the FOMA terminal.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.
Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or fault.



Take care when loading or removing the miniSD memory card.
Injury to hands or fingers may occur.



Do not pour liquid like water or insert a metal piece or any inflammable pieces into the FOMA card insertion slot of the FOMA terminal.
Such actions may cause fire, electric shock or fault.



Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards and other magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.
The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.
There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering an electric shock.



If in the event that the display or camera lens breaks, be careful of the broken glass.
The surface of the display and camera lens are covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching a broken display or camera lens may result in injury.



Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time.
The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or failure.



Do not switch the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to your eyes. Take care also not to bring the light close to your eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.
This could cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect your eyes. Accidents such as injury may also happen due to sudden movement from an unexpected occurrence.



Do not use the light for other use than shooting with the built-in cameras.
The light will be off after approximately 30 seconds of no operation. Using it for purposes outside of shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) will cause the light run out suddenly which may lead to an accident.



Use of the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and seek medical treatment.
Metal is used in the following locations.
※Location used: Material
Part of front case (display area)
: Magnesium alloy MD1D(JIS) or equivalent

<Common to all colors>
Multi-function keys, Function key 1 & 2 and Neuropointer
<Powder snow, bitter chocolate, spike blue>
Around the external camera lens
: Chrome-plated, undercoat; Nickel-plated and copper-plated

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.**

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER



Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.
Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the battery pack and do not solder it directly to the FOMA terminal.
Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Keep the battery pack dry.
Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the battery pack.

⚠WARNING

Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.
Overcharging may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Don't

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation, during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it again.
Continued use of a faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire.
The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

Don't

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.
Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

4. Handling the Adapters (including a Charger)

⚠DANGER



Only use the power supply cord bundled with the FOMA terminal or a power cord specified by the DoCoMo Group as the power cord for the FOMA Overseas Multi-format AC Adapter 01.
The use of other power cords could cause the battery to leak fluid, overheat, explode or emit sparks or otherwise cause faults or damage to the FOMA terminal, battery pack and/or other equipment.

⚠WARNING



Always use the specified power supply and voltage.
Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Also, when using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use.
FOMA AC adapter 01:
100V AC (Plug it to 100V AC power outlet for home use in Japan only.)
DC adapter: 12V DC and 24V DC (specific to vehicle with negative ground.)



The DC adapter is only for use in vehicles with a negative ground. Never use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.
Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



Keep the adapters and the charger dry.
Exposing the adapters and the charger to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Be careful where and how you use the adapters and the charger.



If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.
The use of incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.
Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the adapters or charger.
Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Never use a damaged adapter's or charger's power cord or DC power cord.
Doing so may cause an electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.



Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket in a vehicle. Take care also not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, bodily injury, or equipment malfunction.



Never use the AC adapter or the desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.
Doing so may result in an electric shock.



Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.
Dust may cause a fire.

⚠WARNING



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.
When using power sockets with plug retainer mechanisms, observe the instructions provided for the power sockets. Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.
Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

⚠CAUTION



Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the AC or DC power cord for the adapter or charger.
Doing so may cause an electric shock or fire.



Do not charge the wet battery pack.
The battery pack may overheat, explode or catch fire.



Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull on the cord itself.
Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

5. Handling the FOMA Card

⚠WARNING



Do not place the FOMA card in cooking appliances such as a microwave oven, or high pressure vessel is such as a pressure cooker.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.

⚠CAUTION



Be careful when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).
Your hands or fingers may be injured.



Use the FOMA card with equipment specified by DoCoMo.
If you use a FOMA card with another equipment other than specified, it may lead to the loss of data or equipment malfunction. For specified combinations of a FOMA card and equipment, contact a nearby DoCoMo service counter.



Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.



Do not use or leave the FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fireplace or heating appliance.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



Do not incinerate or heat the FOMA card.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in melting, overheating, emission of smoke, loss of data or malfunction.



Do not tamper or short-circuit the IC part carelessly.
Failure to observe this precaution may result in loss of data or malfunction.



Do not drop the FOMA card or apply a shock on it.
Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do not bend the FOMA card or apply weight on it.
Doing so may cause malfunction.



Keep the FOMA card dry.
Exposing the FOMA card to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.



Do not scratch the IC part.
Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do not keep the FOMA card in a dusty place.
Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do not keep the FOMA card in locations subject to direct sunlight, high humidity, or high temperatures.
Doing so may cause malfunction.



Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children.
A small child may swallow the FOMA card or suffer bodily injury.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ **The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.**

⚠ WARNING



If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at a distance of at least 22 cm.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If your FOMA terminal has the Auto power ON function, disable this function before turning your FOMA terminal off.



Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) that are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Signals emitted by the FOMA terminal could affect the operation of electrical or electronic medical equipment.

General Notes

Do not expose to water.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. Note that if the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that the LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging performance, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud.

Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. Such actions may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by your warranty.

Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal at temperatures between 5˚C and 35˚C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such items before using the FOMA terminal.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored in your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA terminal.

Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Do not close the FOMA terminal while its strap is caught between the folding parts.

- Doing so may damage the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

Always fit the earphone/microphone socket cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failure to fit these covers could result in problems caused by dust or water getting into the FOMA terminal.

The Battery Pack

Battery packs have a limited service life.

- If a battery pack does not work despite fully charging, it has reached the period of replacing the battery pack. Replace it with a new battery pack that has the same specifications.

Charge the battery pack in a location within the correct temperature range (5˚C to 35˚C).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 396

Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

The available operating time of the battery pack differs depending on the conditions in which you are using it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not dispose of used battery packs in the ordinary garbage.

・Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs, and return them to a DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

Do not charge the battery pack in the following situations:

・Where the ambient temperature is lower than 5˚C or higher than 35˚C.
・In very humid or dusty locations or in locations exposed to strong vibrations.
・Close to appliances such as ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios.

During charging, the adapter (including the charger) may become warm. This is normal, so let the charging continue.

Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.

・Doing so may drain the car battery.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet's user manual.

Handling the FOMA Card

When removing the IC part, never apply unnecessary force.

When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.

During use, the FOMA card may become warm. This is normal, so you can continue using it.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC card reader or writer. It is the user's responsibility.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data (names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, etc.) stored on your FOMA card.

・Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored in your FOMA card.

To preserve the environment take used FOMA cards to a DoCoMo service counter.

Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or switch the FOMA terminal off during miniSD memory card operation.

・Doing so may result in loss of data or FOMA terminal malfunction.

Handling the Camera

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright folder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law. Note that shooting or recording plays, live performances, and exhibitions may be prohibited even if for personal use. Also be aware that taking someone's picture with the FOMA without his or her permission, or displaying someone's picture taken with the FOMA on the internet without his her permission is breach of portrait copyright.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "XWave", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi access", "i-motion", "mopera", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-anime", "i-αppli search", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short mail", "Dual network", "FirstPass", "M-stage V-LIVE", "Security Scan" and "FOMA", "i-mode" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- miniSD™ is the trademark of SD Association.
- FeliCa is the developed technology by Sony Co., Ltd. FeliCa is a registered trademarks of Sony Co., Ltd.
- is a trademark of the FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- LC Font, LC FONT® and the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications.
- T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- The Dialog Clarity technology and WOW technology are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- Catch Phone (Call waiting service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR Code is the registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- "Edy" is the brand name of the pre-paid electronic money service offered by Bit Wallet, Inc.
- "Handset 3D", "Game 3D" and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic Ltd. of the U.K.
- Face stamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine.
- Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- NetFront and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS Corporation in Japan and other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS Corporation in Japan and other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- © 2004 DEVILROBOTS
- "G Guide Mobile", "G-Guide Mobile" and G guide mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan, and G Guide, G-Guide, G guide logo and the G-code are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- Adobe and Reader are trademarks and registered trademarks of Adobe System Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- "Super CCD Honeycomb" is a registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- The other company name and brand name which are indicated in this manual are the trademark or registered trademark of each company.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Others

- Macromedia® Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc. is used in this product. Copyright© 1995-2004 Macromedia, All right reserved.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and the following purpose below are admitted in individual and the nonprofit purpose.
  - The animation (following and MPEG-4 Video) based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual is recorded.
  - Individual and when MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in nonprofit activity is reproduced.
  - When MPEG-4 Video offered by the donor who received the license from MPEG-LA is reproduced.
    When you use it for the use of others, such as a promotion, an object for in the company, and the profit purpose, please ask the U.S. corporations MPEG LA and LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
  5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
  5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
  5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- NetFront v3.0 for FOMA as an Internet function is used in this product. NetFront v3.0 is the product of incorporated company ACCESS.
- IrFront® is used in this product as an OBEX function and an infrared communication function. IrFront® is the product of incorporated company ACCESS.
- The module which Independent JPEG Group developed is contained in a part of software of this product.
- Licensed software based on the GNU General Public License, GNN Lesser General Public License, and other licenses is included with this product. For details of the applicable software, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL等について” (About GPL and LGPL, etc.) folder on the bundled CD-ROM.
- This product has been subjected to antibacterial treatment.
  The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and the quality control and information management for this product follow the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).
  Treated areas: Mobile phone body (excludes the display, keys/buttons and terminals)

Designation of Windows

- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- In this manual, Windows® 98 and Windows® 98 SE are designated as Windows 98.
- In this manual, Windows® 2000 Professional is designated as Windows 2000.
- In this manual, Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition are designated as Windows XP.

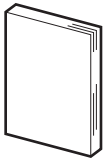
Main Equipment and Optional Equipment

Main Equipment

FOMA N901iC
(including warranty card, Back Cover N05)



Manual for FOMA N901iC
(this manual)



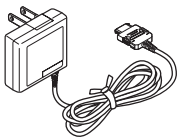
※ The Quick Manual starts on →P. 588

CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC

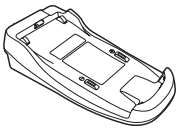


Optional Equipment

FOMA AC Adapter 01
(including warranty card and manual)



Desktop Holder N06
(including manual)



Battery Pack N08
(including manual)



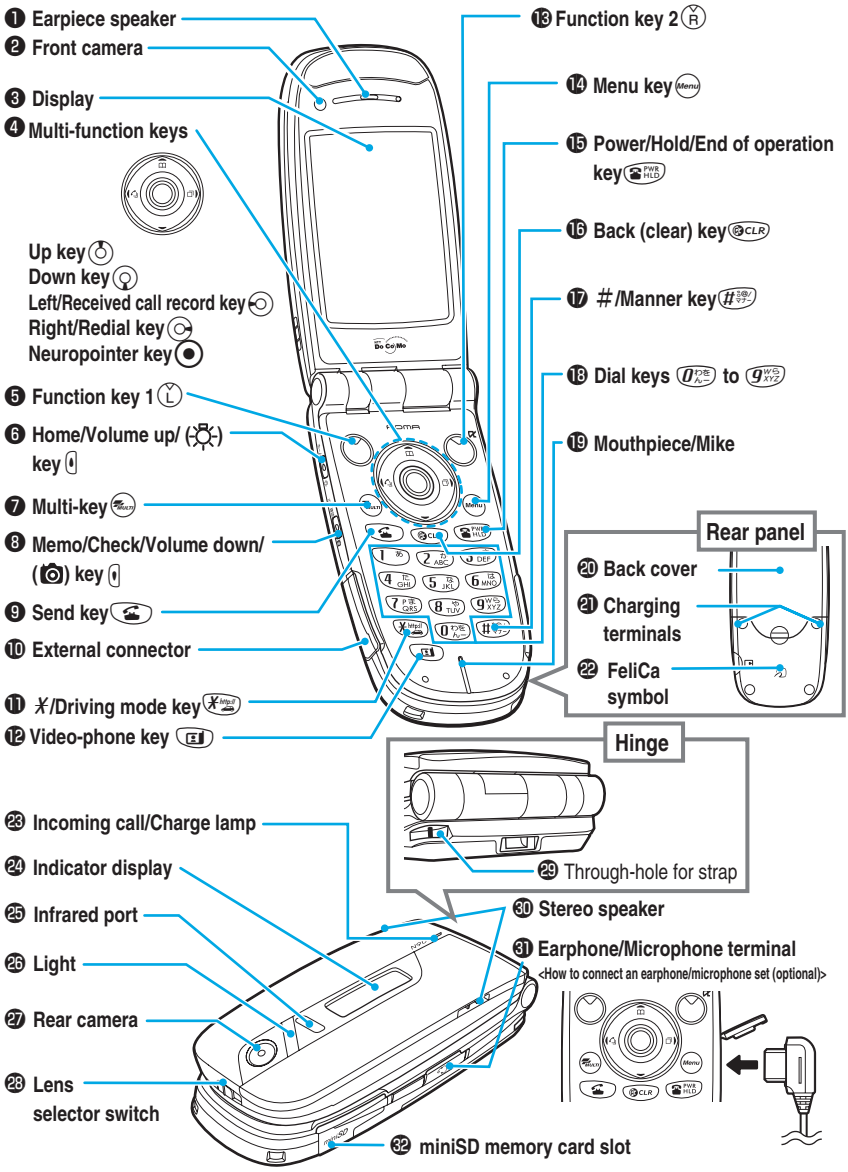
See “Options and Accessories” →P. 561

Getting Started

Component Names and Functions 24
How to View the Display 27
How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display) 30
Selecting the Menu 32
Setting the FOMA Card 35
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack 38
Charging the FOMA Terminal 40
Checking the Battery Level 42
Changing to English Display <Select language> 43
Turning the FOMA On/Off 43
Setting the Default <Initial setting> 44
Setting the Date and Time <Set time> 44
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number <Caller ID notification> 45
Checking Your Own Phone Number <Own number> 46

Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.



※ : The FOMA N901iC terminal has a built-in antenna.

Size (mm)※1	Width 48 × Height 102 × Depth 26
Mass (g) ※2	Approx. 119g

※1 : Height and depth are for the FOMA when folded.
※2 : When the battery pack is attached.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 396

■ Functions

❶ Earpiece speaker
- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

❷ Front camera
- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send your video to the other party during a video-phone call.

❸ Display

❹ Multi-function keys

Up key
- Moves the cursor or highlighted display upward (towards the reversed direction). Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Scrolls up the display.
- Displays the phonebook menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key
- Moves the cursor or highlighted display downward.
- Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the "Search phonebook" menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana, number.

Left/Received call record key
- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
- Displays the received call record. →P. 62

Right/Redial key
- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- Displays the redial record. →P. 50

Neuropointer key
- How to use the Neuropointer. →P. 26

❺ Function key 1
- Executes an operation displayed on the Soft key placed on the bottom left side of the display. →P. 26

❻ Home/Volume up/( ) key
- Connects to the set site easily. →P. 225
- Lights the display light for the indicator display when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
- Increases the earpiece volume during a call. →P. 65
- Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. →P. 526
- Turns the light on when using a camera.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.

❼ Multi-key
- Display the task menu. →P. 431

❽ Memo/Check/Volume down/( ) key
- Sets the "Manner mode" during an incoming call and activates the "Record message". →P. 71
- Plays recorded messages. →P. 72
- Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded. →P. 69
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a call. →P. 65
- Takes pictures (still images) with the FOMA terminal folded. →P. 170
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.

and are both referred to as side keys in this manual.

❾ Send key
- Makes a voice call. →P. 48
- Answers a voice call. →P. 60
- Answers a video-phone call with the alternate image. →P. 81
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. →P. 536

❿ External connector
- Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal.

⓫ ✱/Driving mode key
- Enters "✱", "http://" or other character strings. →P. 528
- Enters the pause (p). →P. 53

⓬ Video-phone key
- Makes a video-phone call. →P. 77
- Answers a video-phone call. →P. 81
- Switches the alternate image/camera view while making a video-phone call. →P. 82

⓭ Function key 2
- Executes an operation displayed on the Soft key placed on the bottom right side of the display. →P. 26

⓮ Menu key
- Display the main menu. →P. 32

⓯ Power/Hold/End of operation key
- Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. →P. 43
- Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. →P. 44
- Ends a call. →P. 48
- Puts an incoming call on hold. →P. 66

⓰ Back (clear) key
- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. →P. 50
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. →P. 50

⓱ #/Manner key
- Enters "#" or other symbols. →P. 528
- Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". →P. 71

⓲ Dial key to
- Enters phone numbers. →P. 48
- Enters characters and numbers. →P. 530

⓳ Mouthpiece/Mike
- Convey your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Used as the microphone when the camera is used in the Movie mode and "Picture voice".

⓴ Back cover

㉑ Charging terminals

㉒ FeliCa symbol
- The IC card is built-in. Pass the symbol over a reader/writer (external device) to use the IC card function. The IC card cannot be removed.

㉓ Incoming call/Charge lamp
- This flashes when a voice or video-phone call comes in or when mail or Message Request/Free is received.
  The light turns red during charging.

㉔ Indicator display
- Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations.

㉕ Infrared port
- Window used for sending and receiving infrared rays. →P. 413

㉖ Light
- Can be used to provide light when taking pictures.

㉗ Rear camera
- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a video-phone call.

㉘ Lens selector switch
- Switches the lens on the Rear camera to (macro lens) to read data through the access reader or bar code reader. →P. 161

㉙ Through-hole for strap

㉚ Stereo speaker
- Sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the hands-free mode are emitted from here.

㉛ Earphone/Microphone terminal
- When a flat-type earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is plugged in, hands-free operation is available. You can use a conventional earphone/microphone with switch by using the earphone jack conversion adapter.

㉜ miniSD memory card slot
- Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. →P. 396

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

The functions that are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See Page	Key	Function	See Page
⟲	Received address list display	P. 292	✱	Side keys setting (while the main menu is displayed)	P. 150
⟳	Sent address list display	P. 292		Driving mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed)	P. 67
5	Display light on/off	P. 128	◉	Earpiece volume adjustment (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P. 65
0	Enter "+" (stand-by screen, the phone numbers entering screen)	P. 56	[Memo/ Check]	Voice memo recording (during a call)	P. 449
#	Manner mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P. 119	Ⓛ	Check new message (while the standby screen is displayed)	P. 229, 269
⏻	Task switch (during Multi-tasking)	P. 431	Ⓡ	i-αppli software list display (while the standby screen is displayed)	P. 320
Menu	Standby screen (during Multi-tasking)	P. 431	●	Change to the main display (during video-phone calls)	P. 80

How to use the software keys

During standby or operation, guidance related to operation or settings displayed at the bottom of the display are referred to as software keys. To use the software keys, press the corresponding function keys.

■ **To run the software key ❶**

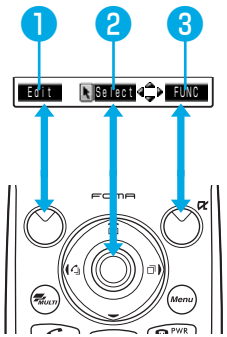
Press Ⓛ to run the software key displayed in ❶.
❶ includes (Mode), (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), ( ), etc.

■ **To run the software key ❷**

Press ● to run the software key displayed in ❷.
❷ includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ **To run the software key ❸**

Press Ⓡ to run the software key displayed in ❸.
❸ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press Ⓡ while (FUNC) is displayed to display the function menu. → P. 35



How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the screen, slide the Neuropointer to display the pointer ( ). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer enables to quickly select an icon or item. When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

1 Slide ● to display , and then move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range.

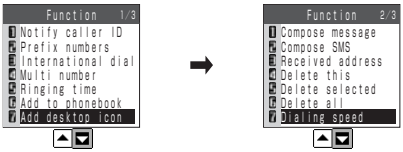
The pointer changes to .

■ **When the pointer is moved to the top**

The pointer changes to .

2 **Press ●.**

The “Next page of the function menu” appears.



■ **When displaying the previous page of function menu**

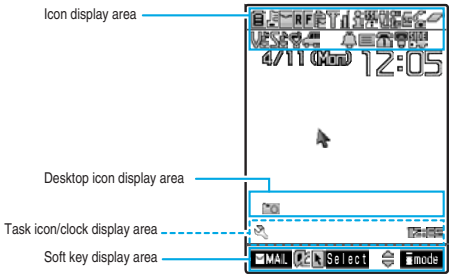
Slide ● to leftward and change ▲▼ to ◀▶ and then press ●.

How to View the Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) displayed on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar etc. can be set to a display. →P. 124

■ **Display**



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level →P. 42	R (White)	You have unread Message Request. →P. 227
	Displayed while All lock is activated →P. 145	R (Red)	Message Request is full. →P. 227
	Displayed in Secret mode or Secret only mode →P. 147	F (White)	You have unread Message Free. →P. 227
	Displayed while PIM lock is activated →P. 149	F (Red)	Message Free is full. →P. 227
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated →P. 150	(White)	You have mail at the i-mode Center. →P. 268
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time →P. 147, 150	(Red)	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 269
	Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock are set at the same time →P. 149, 150		Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. →P. 268
(White)	You have unread mail. →P. 266	(White)	You have a Message Request at the i-mode Center. →P. 229
(Red)	Inbox is full. →P. 266	(Red)	Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 229
	SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 314	(White)	You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. →P. 229
(White)	You have unread mail/ SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 314	(Red)	Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 229
(Red)	Inbox is full/SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 267, 314	F (White)	You have unread Message Free. →P. 227

Continued on next page

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
F (Red)	Message Free is full. →P. 227		Appears when a miniSD memory card is loaded. →P. 396
	Radio reception level →P. 43		Appears when the wrong type of miniSD memory card is loaded. →P. 396
	Displayed when the FOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach →P. 43		Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. →P. 407
self	Displayed in Self mode →P. 156		Displays the status of a voice call →P. 48
	i-mode is activated. →P. 202		64K data communication is in progress →P. 494
	i-mode communication is in progress. →P. 202		Displays the dialing speed of a video-phone call →P. 77
	Packet communication is in progress. →P. 494		Displayed while multiple functions are activated →P. 431
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) →P. 494		Displayed while a single function is activated →P. 431
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) →P. 494		Display when Vibrator is set →P. 117
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) →P. 494		Displayed when Ring volume is set to Silent →P. 65 Displayed when the mail/msg. ring time is set to OFF →P. 119
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) →P. 494		Displayed in Manner mode →P. 119
SSL	Displaying pages compatible with SSL. →P. 206		Displayed when Remote monitor is set →P. 88
	Connected to the USB cable, in transmission mode →P. 483		Displayed in Driving mode →P. 67
	Connected to the USB cable, in miniSD mode →P. 407		Displayed when Alarm is set →P. 433
	Connected to a hands-free compatible device →P. 59		Displayed when Record message is set →P. 70
	Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in transmission mode →P. 59		Displays the number of voice mail messages →P. 468
	Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in miniSD mode →P. 59		
	Ir exchange is in progress. →P. 413		Displayed when Display light is set to "OFF" →P. 128
	Appears when you are using Ir remote control function. →P. 418	SIDE	Displayed when Side keys guard is set to "ON" →P. 150

Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
	Pasted desktop icons →P. 136

Task icon/clock display area

Icon	Description
	Task icon →P. 139
Clock display	Displaying the date and time →P. 44

Soft key display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
MAIL	Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1 (L) →P. 26		Displayed when each key of the Multi-function keys is available
	Displayed when the Neuropointer is available →P. 26	i-mode	Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2 (R) →P. 26

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
Select	Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key ● →P. 26		

Display area

Icon	Description
	Pointer (Blue) →P. 133
	Pointer (White) →P. 133
	Scrolls a page by pointer →P. 26

■ Indicator display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level →P. 42		You have mail at the i-mode Center. →P. 268
	All lock →P. 145		Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 269
	Secret mode, Secret only mode →P. 147		Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". →P. 268
	PIM lock →P. 149		You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. →P. 229
	Keypad dial lock →P. 150		Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 229
	The Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time →P. 147, 150		You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. →P. 229
	The Keypad dial lock and the PIM lock are set at the same time →P. 149		Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. →P. 229
	You have unread mail. →P. 266		Radio reception level →P. 43
	Inbox is full. →P. 266		Displayed when the FOMA is either out of service area or when the radio waves are out of reach →P. 43
	SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 314	self	Displayed in Self mode →P. 156
	You have unread mail. /SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 314		
	Inbox is full. /SMS space in FOMA card is full. →P. 266, 314		

Continued on next page

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	i-mode is in action. →P. 202		Connected to the USB cable, in transmission mode →P. 483
	i-mode communication is in progress. →P. 202		Connected to the USB cable, in miniSD mode →P. 407
	Packet communication is in progress. →P. 494		Connected to a hands-free compatible device →P. 59
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) →P. 494		Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in transmission mode →P. 59
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) →P. 494		Connected to a hands-free compatible device, in miniSD mode →P. 59
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) →P. 494		Ir exchange is in progress. →P. 413
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) →P. 494		Appears when you are using Ir remote control function. →P. 418
	Displaying pages compatible with SSL. →P. 206		During a voice call →P. 48
SIDE	Displayed when the Side keys guard is set to "ON" →P. 150		64K data communication is in progress. →P. 494
	Appears when a miniSD memory card is loaded. →P. 396	64 32	Display the dialing speed of a video-phone call →P. 77
	Appears when a wrong miniSD memory card is loaded. →P. 396		Setting Manner mode →P. 119
	Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. →P. 407		

Note

- The display for this FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up depending on its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press (Menu) (3 def) (6 mno) to check the name of the icon displayed on the screen.

How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

The indicator display notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

About the display

Clock display

Displays the clock during standby. You can select from the following four types of display or "OFF (not displayed)":



Digital



Analog 1



Analog 2



Analog 3

During an incoming call display

Displays the phone number of an incoming call. When the caller's phone number is stored in your phonebook, information such as the caller's name appears. If no phone number is displayed, the reason for no number appears.



When the caller sends the caller ID



When the caller's name is stored in your phonebook



When the other party has not provided a phone number.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

During a call display

Displays the type of call during a call. Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



During a voice call



During a video-phone call



During remote monitor

During an outgoing call display

Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



Alarm notification

For alarm notification of “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”, an alarm notification animation corresponding to the function appears.



“Alarm clock”



“Schedule”/“ToDo”

Receiving a new mail

When “Mail” is set to “ON”, after “Received message” is displayed, the sent date, sender and title are displayed.



During packet/64K data communication

Displays the type of communication during packet/64K data communication.





Camera start up display





Using the FOMA terminal data exchange (infrared or OBEX) display





Checking the caller or sender

If you press (Home), you can check up to three missed calls or new mails.

- When you display the “Missed calls” record or delete the “Missed call” desktop icon, the missed call display in the indicator display disappears.
- When using the tool group function (P. 431), you cannot check missed calls with the indicator display.

Missed call display



The other party’s number is displayed.

After checking all items, the clock display reappears.

Continued on next page

■ **New mail display**



Note

- Press (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In power save mode, the indicator display is blank. Press (Home) to display the indicator display again.

Selecting the Menu

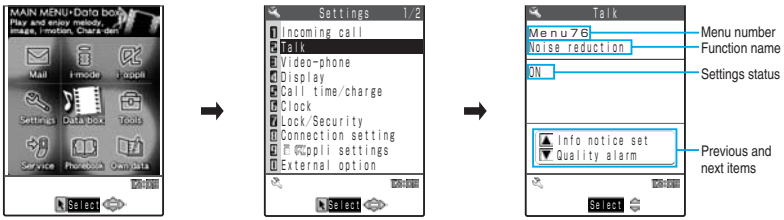
You can display the screen to set or check each function from the main menu or the original menu.

- When you run, set or check the FOMA terminal's functions by pressing (menu), you can either select a function from the main menu or access the function by pressing its menu numbers (P. 552) The explanations in this User Manual use the menu number method.
- To cancel the menu operation, press (PWR HUSH). The setting operation is canceled and the standby display or the previous screen reappears. Depending on the menu, a message asking whether to void the setting being made or not may appear. In that case, press (CLR) to clear the message.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Sets flashing color of "Illumination in talk">

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Use ⊕ to select Settings and then press ●.



■ **To scroll items continuously**

Press and hold down ⊕.

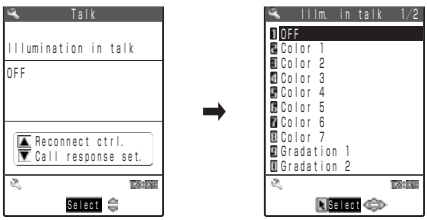
■ **To use the Neuropointer key**

See "Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer" →P. 26

■ **If you do not press any keys for more than 15 seconds while the main menu is displayed**

The main menu completes and returns to the previous screen.

2 Select "Illumination in talk", and then press ●.



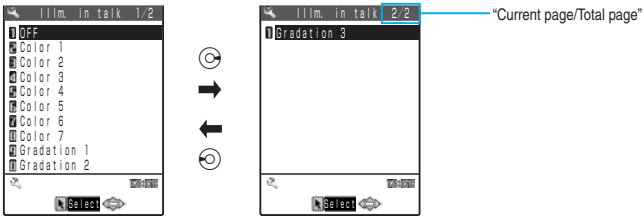
Note

● You can set to not display the guidance of the main menu in "Menu display set". →P. 130

● When items appear in multiple pages

1 Press ◉ to select the item you want to set.

To scroll the display by page, press ◉ (or [Home]) for the previous page, press ◉ (or [Memo/Check]) for the next page.



2 Press ●.

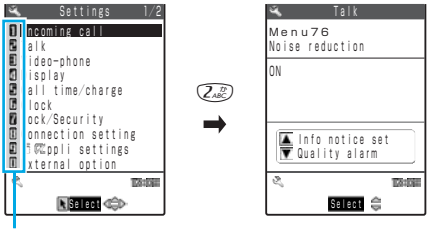
The selected item is set.

3 After operation, press PWR HLD.

The menu operation completes and the standby display reappears. However, it is except when the multi task is being used.

● Using the dial key to select items

1 Press 0わ〜ん to 9wxyz to select items.



The number corresponding to the dial key

● Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Press ◉ to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF"), and then press ●.



The selected item is set.

Continued on next page

Entering a security code

Depending upon the function, before the details screen is displayed, a security code screen may be displayed. To display the details screen for that function, enter a security code. →P. 142

1 Enter a 4 to 8 digit security code, and press ●.



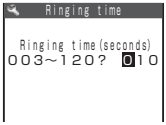
The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as "_". The details screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

Entering numbers

1 Enter numbers by pressing 0わを〜 to 9WXYZ, and then press ●.



The entered numbers are set.
It may be automatically set if you enter numbers for specified digits.
In this case, you do not need to press ●.

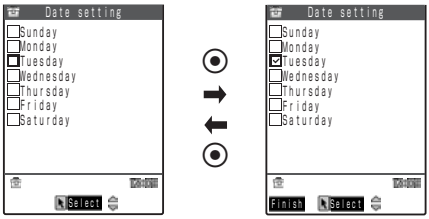
■ To enter a 1-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen

Press 0わを〜 twice and then enter the number.
For a 2-digit number, press 0わを〜 once.

Marking a checkbox

1 Press ◎ to select checkbox (☐) to mark and press ●.

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This is the status of a selected checkbox.
Press ● to toggle ☐ and ☑.
When "Finish" appears as a soft key, pressing L (Finish) selects the item selected. When " FUNC " appears as a soft key, pressing R (FUNC) allows you to use "Select all" or "Release all".



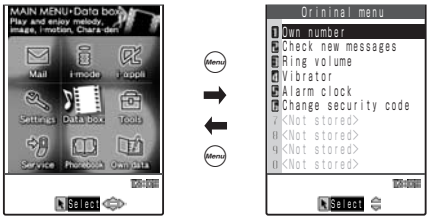
Selecting the function from your original menu

You can easily call up the functions by using the "Original menu".

- The contents of original menu is changed with "Original menu". See "Store original menu entry" →P. 132
- The original menu is displayed in "List".

1 Select Menu ▶ Menu.

Pressing Menu switches between the main menu and the original menu.

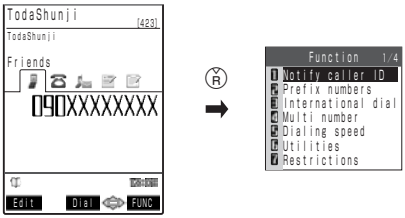


Note

- When you return to the standby display from the original menu, or when you return to the standby display from the original menu after calling up a function from the original menu and performing operations, press (Menu) to display the original menu.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether you store functions to the original menu or not appears.

Function menu

When operating a function that can store, edit or delete, "FUNC" appears as a soft key. Press (R) (FUNC) to display the function menu. Press (Up) to highlight the item which you desire from the function menu, and then press (●) to select the item.



- When an item appears in multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu. Press (Up) while the top item of the function menu is selected to display the previous page. Press (Down) while the bottom item is selected to display the next page.
  To scroll the display by page, press (Left) (or [Home]) for the previous page, press (Right) (or [Memo/Check]) for the next page.
- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation.
- You may not be able to select some functions due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable functions are grayed out.

Setting the FOMA Card

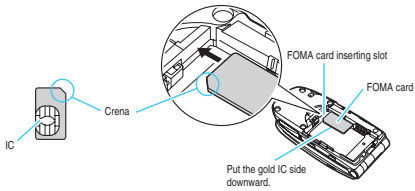
The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.

Inserting/Removing the FOMA card

Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, first turn the power off and remove the battery pack.

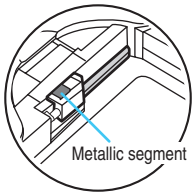
Inserting

1 **Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown the illustration.**



2 **Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed.**

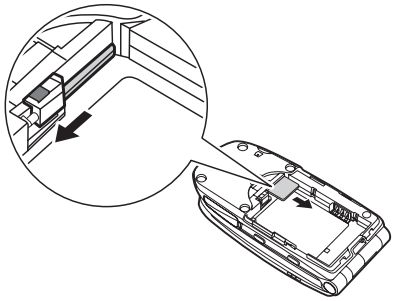
Check that the metallic segment on the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown in the illustration.



When property installed

Removing

1 **Slide the lock holding the FOMA card.**



2 **The FOMA card is ejected a little. Carefully pull it out straight.**

Note

- Note that using excessive force to load the FOMA (UIM) card could damage the card.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA (UIM) card after removing it from the FOMA terminal.

PIN codes for the FOMA card

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card.
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.
PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit PIN code to be entered when user authentication is required for online services such as accessing a site or the Internet.

- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is “0000”.
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. →P. 143
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card, use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

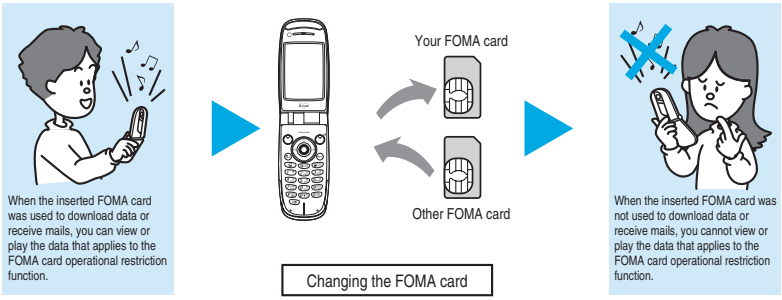
* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

FOMA Card Operational Restriction Function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from sites or Web pages or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible when the FOMA card used for downloading such data or file is inserted.

If you replace the FOMA card with another one, the "  " mark is attached with data and files with this function set.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - i-αppli, melody, image, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary downloaded from sites or Web pages
  - i-motion downloaded from sites or Web pages
  - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary
  - File (melody/image) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
  - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
  - Message Request/Free with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
  - Images inserted into the message of Deco-mail.
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card is inserted.
- Data received via the Infrared communication function, data transmission (OBEX) function or a miniSD memory card and the operation above, does not work and pictures (still images)/continuous multiple pictures/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by this function.



Changing the FOMA card

Note

- If the FOMA (UIM) card operation restriction functions are set and you insert someone else's FOMA (UIM) card, you will not be able to use settings such as "Display setting" or "Select ring tone" with data or files for which the restriction functions were set.
- When data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", if you remove your FOMA card or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings.
- Pre-installed i-αppli can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If you set FOMA (UIM) card operation restriction functions, you cannot select items such as highlighted text in an i-mode mail detail display and use it to launch an i-αppli.

FOMA Card Functional Differences

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card. Please note that there are the following functional differences from when you use different FOMA cards on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card's phonebook	20 digits	26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Not available	Available
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service Dial	Not available	Available

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas countries with the same mobile phone number as you use in Japan by replacing "FOMA card (green)" with an overseas mobile phone (GSM) card for the service. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. You need to apply to use WORLD WING. Please consult the back cover of this manual for more details regarding applying.

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

● Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before replacing the battery pack.

Installing the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover.

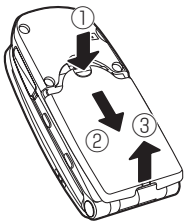
Press in the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② as you lift the back cover in direction ③.

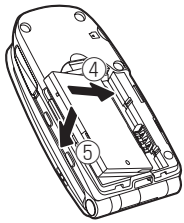
2 Attach the battery pack.

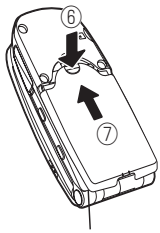
With the battery warnings on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ④. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA touch, and then press the battery down in direction ⑤.

3 Re-attach the back cover.

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA. Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑥ and slide the back cover in direction ⑦. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.







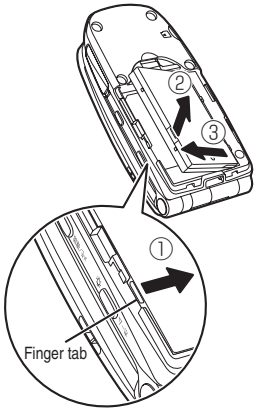
Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (body) is securely locked.

Removing the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover.

2 Remove the battery pack.

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ② and pull the battery out in direction ③.



Note

- Note that using excessive force to load the battery pack could damage the charging terminals in the FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- For details, refer to the Battery Pack N08 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N08 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.

Li-ion

To protect the environment, bring used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, or the recycle shop, etc.

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the “Display light” for “Charging” is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal switched on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

Continued on next page

Battery usage time

(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Video-phone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-αppli and i-αppli standby display will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still, while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of “stationary”, “moving”, and “out of service area” within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or the light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

Note

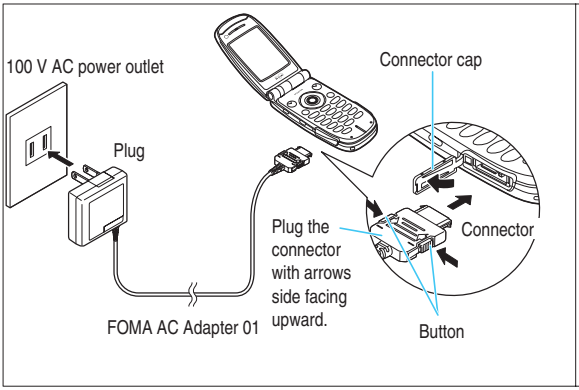
- If the battery pack is out of charge or you have removed the battery pack, you may be unable to save images or movies.

Charging the FOMA Terminal

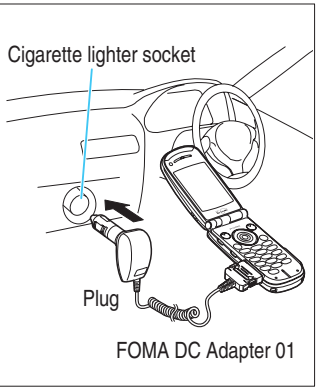
- You can charge the FOMA terminal with the optional AC adapter, DC adapter, or desktop holder.

Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

AC adapter



DC adapter



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.

2 Plug the AC/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal’s external connector.

3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet or DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car.

Charging starts.

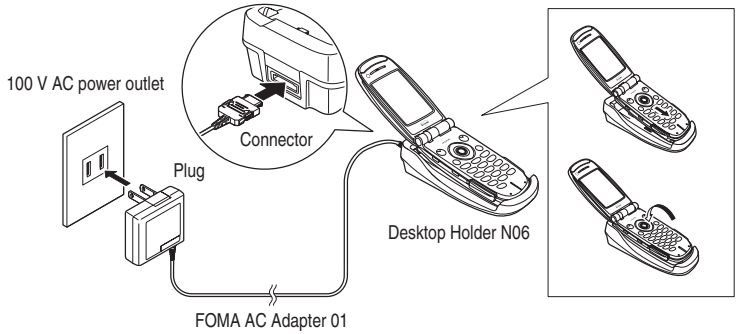
* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 **When charging is completed, remove the AC/DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button. Then unplug the AC adapter from the outlet or DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car.**

5 **Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal.**

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



1 **Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above.**

2 **Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet.**

3 **Place the FOMA terminal firmly in the desktop holder as shown above.**
Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 **After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal and lift it up in the direction of the arrow from the holder.**



Continued on next page

Note

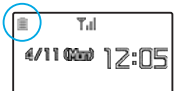
- Set the FOMA terminal firmly in its desktop holder. Also, take care not to trap the strap.
- The charge lamp lights red and " " flashes during charging. The charge lamp turns off and " " lights when charging ends.
- Turning the FOMA terminal on allows you to receive calls even while the battery pack is charging. (This will increase the charging time.)
- If you turn the FOMA terminal on, the FOMA terminal sounds the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends.
- The AC adapter is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charging lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has started.
- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

You can check the remaining battery level display. The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed.



(white): Full charge
(white): Low charge
(red): Almost empty

Checking the battery level with sound animation

The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1 **Press** Menu 7 PQRS 1 あ.

The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level graphics disappears in about three seconds.

"3 short beeps" : Full charge
"2 short beeps" : Low charge
"1 short beep" : Almost empty

Note

- The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or in the Manner mode.

When the battery runs out



The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any key other than (Home) or (Memo/Check).

Note

- If the battery runs out during a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and short tones "pip-pip-pip" sounds. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.
- During setting to "Manner mode", when manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "OFF" for "LVA tone" in "Original", no low-voltage alarm sounds.

<Select language>

Changing to English Display

Default settings	Japanese

Use this procedure to switch between English and Japanese as the language used for the functions shown in the display and indicator display.

● The “Light & Shade” theme is compatible with the “Select language” setting. →P. 131

1 Press Menu 1 5 ▶ 1 “Japanese”.

■ To change from English to Japanese display

Press 1 “Japanese”.



Japanese display

■ To change from Japanese to English display

Press 2 “英語”.



English display

Note

● When “English” is selected as the “Select language” setting, “ON” or “OFF” is still shown as the second-level option in “Display” in the “Clock display” setting. Similarly, “ON” or “OFF” is still shown as the second-level option in “Info notice setting”.

Turning the FOMA On/Off

● When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery. Make sure that you use the specified AC adapter or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

● Date and time are not correct when you purchase the FOMA terminal. Set them in “Set time”. →P. 44

Turning the FOMA on

1 Hold down PWR HLD for 1 second or more.

The Stand-by display or Initial Settings display appears. If you have just loaded the battery pack and you turn the FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the “Wait a minute” message may be displayed for a short time.

■ When “ ” appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as “ ” appears. The reception level for the FOMA terminal is as follows:

(High-intensity) (Low-intensity)

■ When the PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”

The Enter PIN1 code screen is displayed. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the standby display. →P. 143

■ If the Initial Settings display appears

Specify the initial settings. →P. 44



Stand-by display

Turning the FOMA off

1 Hold down PWR HLD for 2 seconds or more.

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

Note

- Signal strength is not stable in calls made while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that is displayed when using the FOMA terminal.
- After turning the FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Initial setting>

Setting the Default

Turn the FOMA on and you can set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Keypad sound” and “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) as initial value.

- After you set a function, that function’s setting screen is no longer displayed.
- After you set all functions, the initial setting screen is no longer displayed. The “Initial settings display” also does not appear if you run “Reset” when the Initial settings display is not shown.

1 Initial setting screen appears and select “YES” and press ●.



Initial setting screen

2 Set time.

For information on setting time → P. 44

3 Change security code.

The default setting is “0000”.
See “Change Your Security Code” → P. 142

4 Set the keypad sound.

For information on keypad sound → P. 118

5 Set speed of the neuropointer.

Only the basic settings for the neuropointer settings can be set.
For information on Neuropointer → P. 133

Note

- You cannot specify the initial settings while All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- If specification of the initial settings is interrupted because you receive a call or press the PWR HLD or CLR key, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also specify separate settings for individual functions.

<Set time>

Setting the Date and Time

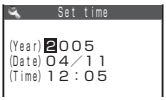
No date or time is set by default. After setting the date and time in “Set time”, the date and time you set appears on displays such as the standby display and indicator display. In addition, you can use various functions such as the schedule.

- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 in January 1, 2004 and 23:59 in December 31, 2037.The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 in December 31, 2037.
- If you set the clock time, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as “Alarm clock” and “Schedule”.
- To set the clock time, start step 2 of “Setting the Default” → P. 44

<Example: Setting April 11, 2005, 12:05>

1 **Press Menu 3 DEF 1 あ.**

2 **Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format) and press ●.**



Press ◆ to move the highlighted display, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.
Press 2 ABC, 0 わ, 0 わ, 5 JKL, 0 わ, 4 GHI, 1 あ, 1 あ, 1 あ, 2 ABC, 0 わ, 5 JKL.

Note

- If you enter the date and time outside the scope of this FOMA terminal, the date and time are not set. Enter the correct date and time again.
- You can set the date and time during a call.
- If you do not set the date and time, you cannot use functions such as the SSL communication (authentication) function, the i-αppli automatic run function and i-αppli DX, and you cannot acquire i-motion with restricted and time-limited play.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a built-in backup battery. The date and time you set are retained by the built-in backup battery, so the settings are not lost when you replace the battery pack. However, the date and time may not be held if the battery pack is removed for two weeks or more. In this case, charge the FOMA terminal, then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Caller ID notification>

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

Default setting: OFF	Subscription: Unnecessary	Monthly charge: Free

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the Caller ID notification service when the "  " icon is displayed.
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set "Notify caller ID" to "ON" and place the call again.

1 **Press Menu 1 あ 7 PQRS ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 Caller ID notification	▶ Choose from the following options: For information on your Network security code →P. 142	
	1 ON	▶ Enter the Network security code and then press ●.
	2 OFF	▶ Enter the Network security code and then press ●.
2 Status request	▶ Check the notify caller ID setting and the press ●.	

Note

- You can also set the notify caller ID to ON or OFF when you dial a phone number or display it from the "phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls". →P. 49

<Own number>

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card.

1 Press Menu 0わを.



Note

- Your data (name, home phone number, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. →P. 447
- When your data is stored, press ○ to check the stored data.
- An i-mode mail address can be checked by selecting "i-Menu" and then press ● ▶ Selecting "Options" and then press ● ▶ Selecting "Mail Settings" and then press ● ▶ Selecting "Confirm Mail Address" and then press ●.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Making Phone Calls

Making a Call 48
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number <Redial/Dialed calls> 50
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls 53
Sending Push Signals Quickly <Pause dial> 53
Setting Prefix Numbers <Prefix setting> 54
Making International Calls <WORLD CALL> 55
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls <Sub-address> 58
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection <Reconnect control> 58
Blocking Out Ambient Noise <Noise reduction> 59
Making Hands-free Calls in the Car <In-car Hands-free> 59

Receiving Phone Calls

Receiving a Call 60
Using the Keypad to Receive a Call <Answer setting> 61
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded <Fold setting> 61
Using the Received Calls <Received calls> 62
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume <Volume> 65
Adjusting the Ring Volume <Ring volume> 65

Settings For When You Cannot Take Calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately <Answer hold> 66
Setting the Hold Tone <Call response setting> 67
Blocking Calls When You Are Driving <Driving mode> 67
Checking Missed Calls <Info notice setting> 69
Having the Caller Leave a Message <Record message> 70
Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call <Quick message> 71
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos 72

Making a Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a voice call.

- You cannot make calls to phones that cannot be directly dialed from outside the area, such as internal phones in a building.

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code.

The "Phone number input display" appears.
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code – Local code – Phone number

■ To call a mobile phone

090-xxxx-xxxx
or
080-xxxx-xxxx

■ To call a PHS phone

070-xxxx-xxxx



Phone number input display

2 Press ☎ or ●.

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.
The ☎ icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.
The "In-call display" appears.

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press PWR HLD, wait a while and then try again.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press PWR HLD, wait a while and then try again.



In-call display

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the caller ID request service switched to "Activate". Make the call again with caller ID notification enabled.

3 To end the call, press PWR HLD.

Note

- You can make calls while the FOMA terminal is in i-mode or you are sending or receiving mail.
- You cannot make a voice call during 64K data communication or during a video-phone call.
- If you viewed a display other than the in-call display during a call, press CLR to return to the in-call display.
- While dialing or during a call, you can switch to hands-free mode by pressing ﾒ (ON). In hands-free mode, the other party's voice comes through the phone's speakers. Bear in mind that the other party's voice may be heard by others during a hands-free call. Take care to move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode. To cancel hands-free mode, press ﾒ (Off).
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). →P. 252
- You can also make a call by reversing steps 1 and 2. In this case, if you make a mistake when entering the phone number, press PWR HLD to erase and re-enter the number.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make calls while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing".
- If the name or phone number of the called party is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the name of the called party and the icon selected when the called party's name or phone number while you are dialing the call. However, if you also stored a still image in the phonebook entry, the image is not displayed.
- For entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or while PIM lock was activated, the phone number is displayed without the name.

Using the function menu in the phone number input display

In the phone number input display... ➡ P. 48

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Phone number input display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID	▶ Choose from the following options: Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers	▶ Select the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" →P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When a country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●. This operation is steps for when "+" prefix is added (when Country code is added). ■ When no country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Select a Country code and then press ● ▶ Press ●. This operation is for when no "+" prefix is added (when Country code is not added). If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" →P. 477	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93	
6 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	
7 Dialing speed	▶ Choose the following options: Set the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets to use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets to use 32K video-phone call.

Phone number input display function menu 2/2

1 Select image	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the image when you make a video call.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the Original/Chara-den setting.

Using the function menu in the in-call display

In the in-call display... ➡ P. 48

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Function menu in the in-call display

In-call display function menu

1 Speed photo mail	See "Sending an image you shot during a call <Speed photo mail>" →P. 252
2 Disp photo mail	Displays received speed photo mail.
3 Check new message	Checks for new i-mode messages. →P. 229, 269

When you make a mistake dialing a number

■ To insert a number

Press ◎ and move the cursor to the number to the right of the position where you want to insert the number. Then enter the number.

■ To delete a number

Press ◎ and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press CLR.
Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the right of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ To correct all the numbers

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down CLR for 1 second or longer.

Putting the current call on hold <Holding>

Use the procedure below to put the current call on hold.

1 Press CLR during the call.



The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call

Press PWR HLD.

■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

2 Press CLR, ☎ or ● to resume the call.

Note

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use "Call response setting" to select the tone used for held calls.
- Provided "End the call" is not selected in "Fold setting", folding the FOMA terminal will also put a call on hold.
- If a setting other than "OFF" is selected for "Illumination in talk", the light also flashes for held or muted calls during a call.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Using the Redial and Dialed calls

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls and video-phone calls. The Dialed calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice call or video-phone call entries and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication entries.
- Calls to the same phone number in the same phonebook entry are stored in the redial record as a single entry under the most recent call.
- When the number of redial record entries exceeds 30, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry. When the dialed calls record is full, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- You cannot view the "redial/dialed calls" record during a video-phone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- When you make a call by retrieving a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, the call is not stored in the redial/dialed calls record.

1 Press ○.

The “Redial display (list)” appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

In the stand-by display, press (Menu) and then select Call data. Then press ○ ▶ Press (J DEF) “Dialed calls”.
The “Dialed calls (List) display” appears.



Example: Redial display (list)

2 Select the Redial or Dialed calls record entry you want to check. And then press ○.

The “Redial display (details)” or “Dialed calls display (details)” appears.
In the top right corner of the display, the “Current/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check earlier or later redial/dialed call record entries

Press (Up) to move to the previous (more recent) number or (Down) to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Example: Redial display (details)

3 Press (Talk) or ○.

■ To make a video-phone call

Press (i).

4 To end the call, press (PWR HLD).

Note

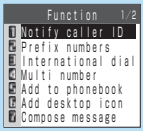
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the entries in the Redial or Dialed calls records. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective Redial or Dialed calls records or set “Redial/Dialed calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) to the most recent Redial record by pressing (Talk) (or (i)) and then (Down) in the stand-by display.
- Records of outgoing 64K data communications are only stored when the FOMA USB cable (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.
- While “PIM lock” is set, only phone numbers are stored when you call someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- Phone numbers you have called before are also stored in “Dialed calls”. Even when the call is to the same number, the information for the call is stored as a separate entry in “Dialed calls”.
- Setting “PIM lock”, “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” erases all the entries stored up to that point in Redial or Dialed calls record. However, calls made subsequently are stored in “Dialed calls”.

Using the function menu in the Redial/Dialed calls display

- The function menus displayed in the Redial display and Dialed calls display are the same whether the List display or Detail display is shown.

In the redial/dialed calls display... ➡ P. 51

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Function menu in the Redial/Dialed calls display

Continued on next page

Redial/Dialed calls display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID*	▶Choose from the following options: Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers*	▶Select the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" →P. 54	
3 International dial	■When a country code is used ▶Press ● ▶Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is attached (Country code is attached). ■When no country code is used ▶Press ● ▶Select country code and press ● ▶Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is not attached (Country code is not attached). If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number*	See "Multi number" →P. 477	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Phonebook Entries, From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other records" →P. 96	
6 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136	
7 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	

Redial/Dialed calls display function menu 2/2

1 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" →P. 308	
2 Sent address	Displays the sent address list.	
3 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete selected	▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶Press ｸﾘｱ (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and then press ●.	
5 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. All the redial and dialed call entries are deleted. For information on security code →P. 142	
6 Dialing speed*	▶Choose the following options: Set the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets when you use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets when you use 32K video-phone call.
7 Select image*	▶Choose the following options: Set the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the Original/Chara-den setting.

*: Functions that can only be used in the detail display.

Note

● "Delete all" deletes all the entries in redial and dialed calls records. Note that using "Delete this" or "Delete these" with Redial record entries does not delete the calls from the Dialed calls record. To delete entries in the Dialed calls record, use the Function menu in the Dialed calls display.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

PHONE	Indicates a voice call.	INTL PHONE	Indicates an international video-phone call.
INTL PHONE	Indicates an international call.	PACKET	Indicates a packet communications call.
PHONE	Indicates a video-phone call.	64k	Indicates a 64K data communications call.

Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) for display on the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or video-phone call. Note that your caller ID is important information and care should be taken when providing it to others.

Function	Description	Ref. page
Caller ID notification	Specifies whether other parties are notified of your caller ID whenever you make a call.	P. 45
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P. 53
Notify caller ID	Uses function menu to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P. 49

Adding the "186"/"184" prefix to the other party's phone number

To provide your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

■ To provide your phone number

Voice calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 📞
Video-phone calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 📹

■ To withhold your phone number

Voice calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 📞
Video-phone calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 📹

Note

- The same effect can be achieved by dialing the "✱31#" prefix instead of "186" and the "#31#" prefix instead of "184".
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" or "✱31#" prefix.
- If you make a call using the "186" or "184" prefix, the prefix is included in the number recorded in the Redial and Dialed calls records.

<Pause dial>

Sending Push Signals Quickly

By sending push signals from your FOMA terminal, you can send messages to QUICKCAST*, use services such as ticket ordering and send bank balance requests.

*As of January 2001, the DoCoMo "Pocket Bell" pager service has been renamed as "QUICKCAST".

Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store dialing data that you want to send as push data beforehand as a pause dial record entry. Inserting a pause (p) allows you to send dial data with a pause.

- You can only store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and ✱ symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI.**

The "Pause dial display" appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

The stored dialing data appears.

2 **Press ▼ (Edit) ▶ Enter the dialing data and press ●.**

Press 0 - 9 WXYZ, # and ✱ to enter the dialing data.

■ To enter a pause (p)

Hold down ✱ for 1 second or longer.



Pause dial display

Using the Pause dial display function menu

In the pause dial display... ➡ P. 53

1 (右) **(FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Pause dial display function menu

1 **Edit**	▶ **Edit the dialing data and press ●.**
2 **Send pause dial**	▶ **Enter the destination phone number and press ● ▶ Press ●.** Each time you press ●, the dialing data up to the pause (p) is sent.
3 **Delete**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**

Using pause dial to send dialing data

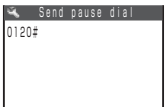
1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 4 GHI.**

2 **Press ● ▶ Dial the destination phone number.**

■ **To enter a phone number from the phonebook or Redial record**

Dial part of the phone number and press ↕ to search for the number.
Press ↕ to choose the search method from the Search phonebook display before searching for the phone number.
Press ↩ to search in the Received calls record or ↻ to search in the Redial record.

3 **Press ☎ or ●.**



The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.

4 **Press ☎ or ● to send the dialing data.**

Each time you press ☎ or ●, the dialing data up to the first pause (p) is sent. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call display reappears.

■ **To send all the dialing data at once**

Hold down ↻ for 1 second or longer ▶ Press 2 ABC "Send at one time".
It may not be possible to batch send to some recipients.

Note

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- To send dialing data to the other party during a call, switch to the pause dial display during the call and press ●.
- You cannot send push signals in a video-phone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Use the procedure below to preset specific, frequently used numbers for future use. You can then use the preset numbers as phone number prefixes when you make calls using "Dial input", "Redial", the "Phonebook" or the "Received calls" and "Dialed calls" records. It is also useful for setting numbers such as "Caller ID notification".

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset numbers can include numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, ✱ and + symbols.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊕ ▶ Press 1 あ "Other settings" ▶ Select "Prefix setting" and then press ●.

The "Prefix setting display" appears.



Prefix setting display

2 Select "<Not recorded>" and press 左 (Edit).

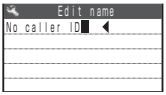
■ **To change the details of a previously stored prefix**

Select the prefix name to be changed and press 左 (Edit).

■ **To check the details of an already recorded prefix**

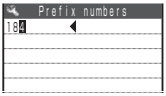
Press the number of the prefix name to be checked.

3 Enter the name under which you want to store the number and press ●.



The name can consist of 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.
For information on entering text →P. 526

4 Enter the number (prefix) and press ●.



The number can consist of up to 10 digits.

Using the function menu in the Prefix numbers display

In the prefix setting display... ➡ P. 55

1 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Prefix numbers display function menu

1 Edit	Edits the prefix number. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Application: Unnecessary	Monthly fee: Free

WORLD CALL is an international telephone service that can be used from DoCoMo mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to WORLD CALL when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

- WORLD CALL can be used to call around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included on the bill for your monthly FOMA call charges.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "My Line" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. Consequently, with the introduction of the "My Line" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phones has changed. Note that the previous dialing procedure (the procedure described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

International video-phone calls can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals*1 by pressing [dtl] to make the call after using the dialing procedure below.*2

*1 : As at December 2004, such calls can be made to Hutchison 3GUK in England, Hutchison 3GHK in Hong Kong and Sing Tel in Singapore. Refer to the DoCoMo website for additional information.

*2 : Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the image of the other party shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international video-phone call or the connection may fail. Refer to the DoCoMo website for additional information.

When using international phone services other than DoCoMo, contact the international phone service provider directly for information.

Using dial key to make international calls

1 Dial the number in the following order: 009130-010-(country code)-(area code)-(the other party's phone number).

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing. However, note that calls to ordinary phones in Italy require the initial zero.

2 Press [call].

3 To end the call, press [PWR HLD].

Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+" prefix, you can make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- At the time of purchase, "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting" (P. 56) is set to "Auto", so that the FOMA terminal automatically dials the international access code.

1 From the stand-by display, dial + (hold down [0わを ん] for 1 second or longer) - (country code) - (area code) - (phone number).

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing. However, note that calls to ordinary phones in Italy require the initial zero.

2 Press [call] or [●] ▶ Press [1 あ] "Dial".

The FOMA terminal makes the international call.

■ **To call by not using "+"**

Select [2 ABC] "Original phone No.".

■ **To cancel the call**

Select [3 DEF] "Cancel".

Making it easier to dial overseas calls <Int'l dial setting>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto Country Code setting: "日本" (country code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: "WORLD CALL" (009130010)

You can change the settings used for dialing overseas calls and store new country codes. The table below lists the available options.

Setting	Explanation
Auto assist setting	When you make an overseas call from Japan, this function automatically replaces the "+" you entered with the preset international access code.
Country Code setting	Stores the country name and country code used when you make international calls.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores the international access name and international access code used when you make international calls.

Auto assist settings

Use the procedure below to set the Auto assist function for "+" when you make overseas calls.

1 **Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1あ "Other settings" ▶ Select "Int'l dial setting" and press ●.**

2 **Press 1あ "Auto assist setting" ▶ Press 1あ "Auto".**

■ **To disable Auto assist**
Press 2ABC "OFF".

3 **Select the country name and press ●.**

Note

● If you enter "81" (the country code for Japan) after "+" or an emergency number (110, 119 or 118), the international access code is not added.

Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes

1 **Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1あ "Other settings" ▶ Select "Int'l dial setting" and press ●.**

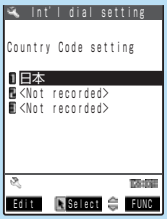
2 **Press 3DEF "Country Code setting".**
The "Country Code setting display" appears.

3 **Select <Not recorded> and press ◇左 (Edit).**

■ **To change the details of a previously stored setting**
Choose the stored setting and press ◇左 (Edit).

4 **Enter the country name and press ●.**
For information on entering text →P. 526

5 **Enter the country code and press ●.**
See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Country code setting display

Using the function menu in the Country Code setting display

In the country code setting display... ➡ P. 57

1 **◇右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Continued on next page

Country code setting display function menu

1 Edit	Edits the setting. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

- You cannot delete numbers set using "Auto assist setting".

Changing the stored international access code

You can only store 1 international access code.

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press ◎ ▶Press 1 あ "Other settings" ▶Select "Int'l dial setting" and press ●.

2 Press 2 ABC か "IDD Prefix setting".
The stored IDD Prefix name and IDD Prefix code appear.

3 Press 左 (Edit) ▶Enter an IDD Prefix name and press ●.
For information on entering text →P. 526

4 Enter the IDD Prefix Code and press ●.

<Sub-address>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting	ON

This function enables you to set "✱" as a marker in a phone number so that the numbers that follow "✱" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in "M-stage V-LIVE".

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press ◎ ▶Press 1 あ "Other settings" ▶Select "Sub-address" and press ● ▶Select 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC か "OFF".

Note

- In the following situations, "✱" does not function as a sub-address marker, but is recognized as an ordinary phone number that includes the "✱" character.
  - Where the "✱" is at the beginning of a phone number.
  - Where "✱" immediately follows "186", "184", "✱31#" or "#31#" at the beginning of a phone number.
  - Where "✱" immediately follows a number entered using "Prefix".

<Reconnect control>

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting	No tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call or video-phone call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. You can use this procedure to set the type of alarm sounded by the FOMA terminal when a call is reconnecting using this function.

● The time within which reconnection is possible varies depending on your usage and the signal quality. In general, calls can be reconnected within roughly 10 seconds.
● If the signal quality deteriorates very suddenly, the call may end without an alarm being sounded.

1 Press Menu 7 QRS 7 QRS ▶ Select 1 あ "No tone", 2 ABC "High tone" or 3 DEF "Low tone".

Note

● Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
● The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction>

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting	ON

The noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice or video-phone call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 Press Menu 7 QRS 6 MNO ▶ Select 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC "OFF".

<In-car Hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in the Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a device that support hands-free operation (such as a car navigation system), you can make and receive voice and video-phone call through the hands-free device.
For information on how to use the hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device.
This function is an optional function that will be available once devices that support hands-free operation are released. As at December 2004, no such devices have been released.

● To operate from a hands-free device, sets "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". →P. 407
● The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.
● If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone will still sound through the hands-free device for incoming mail or voice and video-phone calls even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
● When the FOMA terminal is set in Driving mode, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the "Driving mode" settings.
● When the FOMA terminal is set to record caller messages, operation for incoming calls and mail is as specified in the "Record Message" settings.
● If you make a video-phone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial function, the dialing speed is determined by the hands-free device. If no dialing speed is set, "64K" is used.
● If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in "Fold setting". If the FOMA terminal is set up so that sound is emitted from the hands-free device, "Fold setting" is ignored and folding the FOMA terminal makes no difference to the call status.

Receiving a Call

1 When a call comes in, press (call) or (●) to answer the call.

When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal rings, the call alert indicator flashes and the "Ringing display" appears.
Unless "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to alert you to the call.



Ringing display

■ To switch to hands-free operation

Press (左) (Hands-free) during the call.

2 To end the call, press (PWR HLD).

● Using the hands-free operation

In a hands-free call, it is recommended that you use a FOMA terminal in about 30cm distance. If you separates more than or approaches too much less tan about 30cm distance, a voice may be hard to catch by the other party, or is distorted.

Using the function menu in the ringing display

In the ringing display... ➡ P. 60

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Ringing display function menu

1 **Call rejection**	Deliberately cuts off the call.
2 **Call forwarding**	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is ON or OFF. See "Call Forwarding Service (free)" →P. 470
3 **Voice mail**	Connects the caller to the voice mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice mail" setting is ON or OFF. See "Voice Mail Service (Paid)" →P. 467

Note

- Besides (call) and (●), you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer a call by pressing any of the (0) - (9), (*), (C), (↕), (左) or (i) (Home) (Any key answer). However, pressing (i) (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold. You can also set up the FOMA terminal so that pressing a key only stops the ring tone (Quick silent).
- Pressing (#) or (i) (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is ringing switches to Manner mode and also switches the FOMA terminal to "Record message." so that the caller can record a message.
- When you receive a call with a caller ID from someone who is listed in your phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the corresponding phonebook entry, the image is also displayed. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are withheld and only the phone number is displayed. If the caller does not provide a caller ID, that is displayed as the reason (caller ID withheld).
- Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the "Received calls" record. If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed. If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed.
- If you subscribe to the "Call waiting", set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and then activate call waiting, you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") if someone else calls when you are already on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
  - You can put your current call on hold and answer the new call.
  - If you have subscribed to the "Voice mail" service, you can forward the new call to the voice mail service center.
  - If you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the designated call forwarding number.

  See P. 469 for details.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the call alert indicator does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- You can reject calls from numbers that are not stored in your phonebook. →P. 156
- If you receive a call from a number that is not stored in your phonebook, you can specify the period of time from receiving a call and the ring tone beginning. →P. 155

Note

- You cannot receive calls from a number that is specified to "Call rejection". Furthermore, you cannot receive calls from numbers that have not been specified to "Call acceptation". → P. 152
- If the caller's phone number is not provided, the reason for the non-notification is displayed. → P. 154

<Answer setting>

Using the Keypad to Receive a Call

Default setting	Any key answer

You can use this setting to allow you to quickly turn off the ring tone and answer the phone when you receive a call. This can be very useful when you receive a call in a situation where the ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 8 TUV ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Any key answer**	When you receive a voice call, as well as ☎ or ●, you can answer the call immediately by pressing any of the 0 - 9 keys or *, #, C, ↕, (When the (Change) is not displayed), ▮ (Home). Note that this does not apply for video-phone calls. Pressing ▮ [Home] while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold.
2 **Quick silent**	When you receive a voice or video-phone call, opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any of the 0 - 9 keys, *, C, ↕, (When the (Change) is not displayed), ↕ or ▮ (Home) stops the ring tone and vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. For a voice call, you can answer the call by pressing ☎ or ●. For a video-phone call, press 📷 to answer using the camera image or press ☎ or ● to answer using the alternate image.
3 **OFF**	When you receive a voice call, you can only answer the call by pressing ☎ or ●. For video-phone calls, you can only answer by pressing 📷, ☎, or ●. (Pressing ☎ or ● answers the call using the alternate image.)

Note

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, the "Any key answer" function is used in "Manner mode".
- Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is selected, holding down 5 JKL for 1 second or longer switches the backlight on and off rather than invoking the "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" operation.
- When an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you can accept calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- If "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", "Any key answer" and "Quick silent" do not function when you press ▮ (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded.

<Fold setting>

Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

Default setting	End the call

Use this procedure to specify how the FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or video-phone call.

1 Press Menu 1 8 TUV ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **No tone**	Mutes the sound for voice calls. For video-phone calls, the sound is muted and the alternate image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is used. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status it was in before it was folded.	
2 **Tone on**	Puts the current call on hold. For voice calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" while the FOMA terminal is folded. You can also select whether the hold tone is played through the speaker of your own FOMA terminal. For video-phone calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" and sees the hold image. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status it was in before it was folded. However, if you folded the FOMA terminal when the current call was on hold, re-opening the FOMA terminal resumes the call when it is a voice call. If the held call is a video-phone call, it remains on hold. → P. 66 ▶ **Choose from the following options:**	
	1 **Speaker ON**	The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.
	2 **Speaker OFF**	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
3 **End the call**	Ends the call. Folding the FOMA terminal has the same effect as pressing ☎.	

Continued on next page

Note

- If an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status. However, during a video-phone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the alternate image.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if "Call waiting" is switched on.
- Even when "End the call" is selected, folding the FOMA terminal does not terminate a tools group function or i-mode group function during multi-access.
- If you select "End the call" and then fold the FOMA terminal to end a voice call, the i-mode display reappears.

<Received calls>

Using the Received Calls

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the received calls record.

- The received calls record stores a total of 60 calls, comprising up to 30 voice call or video-phone calls and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication calls.
- When the received calls record is full, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- The received calls record cannot be displayed during a video-phone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".

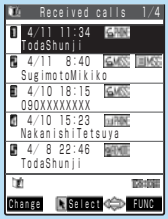
1 Press Menu 2 ABC 4 GHI ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **All calls**	Displays all the call record entries.
2 **Missed calls**	Displays only the record entries for missed calls.

No. unchecked: Displays the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the list of received calls.

The "Received calls display (list)" appears.



Example: Received calls display (list)

3 Select the received call entry you want to check and press ●.

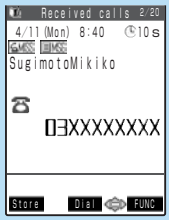
The "Received calls display (detail)" appears.
In the top right corner of the display, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check earlier or later received call entries

Press ○ to move to the previous (more recent) number or ○ to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Example: Received calls display (details)

4 Press ☎ or ●.

■ To make a video-phone call

Press ▣.

5 To end the call, press PWR HLD.

Note

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the Sent/Received calls record. To prevent others from seeing information such as the phone numbers you have sent/received calls from, delete the Sent/Received calls record entries or set "Received calls" of "Record display set" to "OFF".
- If you set a call that didn't ring long enough not to be recorded in the call history in "Ringing time", a call that is shorter than the time you set in "Set mute seconds" is not recorded in the call history. →P. 155
- You can also retrieve the received calls record by pressing ↩ in the stand-by display.
- You can make a voice call (or video-phone call) to the most recent phone number in the Received calls record by pressing ☎ (or 📹) and then ↩ in the stand-by display.
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you receive a call from someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- Setting "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" erases all the entries stored up to that point in the received calls record. However, calls received subsequently are stored as received call record entries.
- If you receive calls from someone other than the specified phonebook entries when "Restrict dialing" is set, only the phone numbers are stored for those calls.
- If the caller is using "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" number may be displayed.

■ Icons used in the received and missed call records

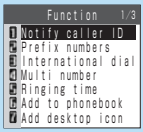
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Indicates a received voice call/ a missed voice call/ a missed voice call for which the details could not be confirmed.	PACKET / MISS / MISS	Indicates data received via packet communication/ notification of data received via packet communication/notification of data for which the details could not be confirmed received via packet communication.
INT'L PHONE / INT'L MISS / INT'L MISS	Indicates a received international call/ a missed international call/a missed international call for which the details could not be confirmed.	64k / MISS / MISS	Indicates data received via 64K data communication/ notification of data received via 64K data communication/notification of data for which the details could not be confirmed received via 64K data communication.
📹 PHONE / 📹 MISS / 📹 MISS	Indicates a received video-phone call/ a missed video-phone call/a missed video-phone call for which the details could not be confirmed.	REMOTE	Indicates a received remote observation call.
INT'L 📹 PHONE / INT'L 📹 MISS / INT'L 📹 MISS	Indicates a received international video-phone call/ a missed international video-phone call/a missed international video-phone call for which the details could not be confirmed.	MSG	Indicates a voice call in which the caller left a message.

Using the function menu in the received calls display

- The function menu displayed in the Received Calls display is the same whether the List display or Detail display is shown.

In the received calls display... ➡ P. 62

1 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Function menu in the received calls display

Received calls display function menu 1/3

1 Notify caller ID*	▶ Choose from the following options: Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.

Continued on next page

2 Prefix numbers*	▶Choose the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" →P. 54
3 International dial	■When a country code is used ▶Press ● ▶Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is attached (Country code is attached). ■When no country code is used ▶Press ● ▶Select country code and press ● ▶Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is not attached (Country code is not attached). If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.
4 Multi number*	See "Multi number" →P. 477
5 Ringing time	Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times.
6 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" →P. 96
7 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Received calls display function menu 2/3

1 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	
2 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" →P. 308	
3 Received address	Displays the received address list.	
4 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
5 Delete selected	▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press ☆ (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and then press ●.	
6 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142	
7 Dialing speed*	▶Choose the following options: Set the dialing speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets when you use "64K" video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets when you use "32K" video-phone call.

Received calls display function menu 3/3

1 Select image*	▶Choose the following options: Set the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets Self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the Original/Chara-den setting.

*: Functions that can only be used in the Detail display.

Note

● Data from packet communications and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting	Level 4

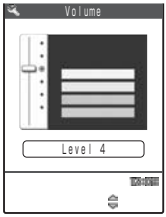
Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to a setting between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

- If you adjust the volume during a call or while the FOMA terminal is in stand-by mode, the adjusted setting is retained after you complete the adjustment.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call.

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call, press (Home) or (Memo/Check) ▶ Press (Home) or (Memo/Check).



You can adjust the volume in the same way by holding down or for 1 second or longer. During a video-phone call, adjust the volume by pressing (Home) or (Memo/Check).
If you do not press any FOMA terminal keys for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment display is shown, adjustment ends and the stand-by display reappears.

Note

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume during a video-phone call and in hands-free mode.
- Adjust the volume by pressing or during a call. You cannot continuously adjust the earpiece volume during a video-phone call by holding down (Home) or (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in stand-by mode

1 In stand-by mode, press or for 1 second or longer ▶ Press or .

You can adjust the volume continuously by holding down or for 1 second or longer.
If you do not press any FOMA terminal keys for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment display is shown, adjustment ends and the stand-by display reappears.

<Ring volume>

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting	Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones the FOMA terminal uses when you receive a voice call, video-phone call, mail, Message Request or Message Free. There are six volume settings for each type of call. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

- You cannot adjust the volume while the FOMA terminal is ringing.
- The ring volume setting specified for “Phone” in this function is also applied to the “Melody”, the “Select ring tone” setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “ToDo” events and the playback volume for downloaded melodies.
- The volume is retained after setting with this function.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 0 わ〜 ▶ Choose from the following options:

Continued on next page

1 Phone	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
2 Video-phone	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for video-phone calls.
3 Mail	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mail and SMS.
4 Chat mail	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mail.
5 Message Request	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Request.
6 Message Free	▶Press ◉ or ◉. Adjusts the ring tone volume for Message Free.

■ To set step tones (gradually louder ring tones)

In the Level 6 setting, press ◉.

When you receive a call with step tones set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at level 1 and increasing to level 6.

■ To set a silent ring tone

In the Level 1 setting, press ◉.

When a silent ring tone is set, the FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.

An icon appears in the stand-by display to confirm that a "Silent" ring tone is set.

: Displayed when "Silent" is set for "Phone" and/or "Video-phone" calls.

: Displayed when "Silent" is set for more than one of "Mail", "Chat mail", "Message Request" or "Message Free".

: Displayed when "Silent" is set for "" and "".

Note

- If you have set an i-motion that includes sound as the ring tone or receive display, the i-motion sound is played at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is selected.
- When "Phone" is set to "Step" or "Silent", melodies in "Melody" or downloaded from a site are played at the "Level 2" volume.

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When the FOMA terminal rings and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the unanswered call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

- Call charges apply to the caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.

1 Press PWR HLD when the FOMA terminal rings.



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the caller on hold.

The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while the call is held in "Call response setting".

■ To hang up while a call is on hold

Press PWR HLD.

■ If the caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.

2 When you are ready to take the call, press ☎ or ●.

If "Any key answer" is selected in "Answer setting", you can answer the call by pressing any of the 0 - 9 keys or ☐, ✱, #, CLR, ◆, ▽, ▽, ▯ (Home) or ▯ (Memo/Change).

For information on video-phone calls →P. 82

Note

- If "Phone" or "Video-phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you apply answer hold. However, the beeps do sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- If you are contracted to receive "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service", selecting "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" from the function menu when you receive a call either forwards the call to the voice mail service or forwarding number.
- If you close the FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the FOMA terminal displays the held call in the indicator display while the call is on answer hold.

<Call response setting>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

When you put a voice or video-phone call on answer hold or put a call that is already in progress on hold, use this procedure to set the message heard by the other party.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 2 ABC "Talk" ▶ Select "Call response setting" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 On hold tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the Guidance when putting a call on hold.	
	1 Tone 1	The following message is played: "I can't come to the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	2 Tone 2	The following message is played: "I can't come to the phone just now. Please call again later."
	3 Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones". →P. 450
	4 Voice announce 2*	
2 Holding tone	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the hold tone in talk.	
	1 Melody	"Fur Elise" is played.
	2 Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones". →P. 450
	3 Voice announce 2*	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message is recorded.

Note

- You can check the selected message by pressing ☆ (Play) in the message selection display.

<Driving mode>

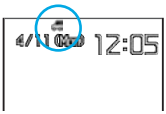
Blocking Calls When You Are Driving

Driving mode (the in-car messaging function) is an automatic answering service specifically provided to ensure safe driving. When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode, it sends a message to callers saying that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving, and then ends the call.

- Driving mode can only be set or cancelled from the stand-by display. It can also be set or cancelled when the icon is displayed.
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

Continued on next page

1 In the stand-by display, hold down for 1 second or longer.



A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been set and appears on the stand-by display.

■ To cancel Driving mode

When the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, hold down for 1 second or longer. A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been cancelled and disappears from the stand-by display.

Note

- If "Record message" is set to "ON", Driving mode takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode", Driving mode takes priority and "Manner mode" is disabled.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the FOMA terminal cancels Driving mode.
- The following tones do not sound in Driving mode:
  - Ring tone for voice or video-phone calls
  - Ring tone for Message Request/Free
  - Alarm clock tone
  - ToDo alarm tone
  - Charging confirmation tone
  - Ring tone for mail
  - Notification tone for chat-mail
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - i-αppli software ring tone
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

● Handling of received calls in Driving mode

In Driving mode, your FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice call or video-phone call. Calls are logged in the "Received calls" record or "Missed calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby display.

There is also no ring tone when you receive mail or 64K data communication. A caller making a voice call hears a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. A caller making a video-phone call sees a message on his or her display saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. However, if the FOMA terminal is switched off or is shown on the display, the caller is not notified that you are driving and hears or sees the message used when is displayed.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Driving mode are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode while network services are activated, voice calls and video-phone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a video-phone call is received
Voice mail	The caller hears a message saying that you are driving and is asked to leave a message.*1	Voice mail cannot be used for video-phone calls. The caller sees a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.
Call forwarding	The caller hears a message saying that you are driving and the call is then forwarded.*2	Call forwarding can be used for video-phone calls. Call forwarding takes priority and the received video-phone call is immediately forwarded to the designated number.*3
Nuisance call barring	· Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call has been rejected and the call then ends. · Callers from other numbers hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Nuisance call barring service can be used for video-phone calls. · When the call is from a barred number, the Nuisance call barring service takes priority and plays a message saying that the call has been rejected before ending the call. · Callers from other numbers see a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.
Caller ID request	· Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends. · Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Caller ID request service can also be used for video-phone calls. · If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the FOMA terminal ends the call without sending a message to the caller asking him or her to provide a caller ID. · If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller sees a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for voice mail is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.
*2 : If the ring time for call forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.
*3 : Forwarded video-phone calls are only connected if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone.

<Info notice setting>

Checking Missed Calls

When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can use this function to have the FOMA terminal use tones, vibration or the call alert indicator to notify you when you have any missed calls or new mail.

- This function alerts you using a "YES" indication when the "Missed call", "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon is displayed.
- You cannot use this function to check for missed calls or new mail in the following situations:
  - · When All lock is set.
  - · When PIM lock is set.
  - · When Side keys guard is set to "ON".
  - · When the Info notice setting is set to "OFF".

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

Default setting	ON

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 5 JKL ▶ Select 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC か "OFF".

Checking for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail

This function allows you to check for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail by pressing (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail		When you have no missed calls, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Call alert indicator color	Sound and vibration	Call alert indicator color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and 1-second vibration.	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail" in the "Illumination" settings. When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail, the indicator flashes for 1 second in the respective color*.	"Bibibip" tone and 0.2-second vibration.	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in "color 12".

*: If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in the "Illumination" settings, the call alert indicator flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mail and "Color 3" for new chat mail.

Note

- The volume for "ON" is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, "Level 2" is used as the voice volume. If "Silent" is set, the FOMA terminal makes no sound.
- If "OFF" is selected as the "Phone" setting in "Vibrator", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- In Manner mode, the FOMA terminal emits no tones and notifies you using vibration. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you are using an "Original" manner mode and the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- You cannot use this function to check new mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- You cannot use this function to check missed calls while the FOMA terminal is open. Pressing (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is open switches to "Play/Erase msg.".

<Record message>

Having the Caller Leave a Message

Default setting	Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or video-phone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

● You can record up to 5 messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.

Setting Record message

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 5 JKL ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 ON	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the desired type of answer message.	
	1 Japanese1	Plays the following Japanese message: “ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーッという発信音の後に 20 秒以内でお名前とご用件をお話しください。なお、テレビ電話の場合でも音声メッセージのみのお預かりとなります。” (“I cannot answer the phone at the moment. Please leave your name and a short message after the beep. If this is a video-phone call, please leave a voice message.”)
	2 Japanese2	Plays the following Japanese message: “せっかく電話をもらったけど、いま出られません。ピーッという発信音の後にメッセージを入れてね。テレビ電話のときも声しか入らないの。ごめんね。” (“Sorry, but I can’t take your call just now. Please leave a message after the beep. If it’s a video call, just leave a voice message, OK? Thanks.”)
	3 English	Plays the following English message: “I can’t take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by video-phone, you can leave a voice message.”
	4 Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. See “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” ➞P. 450
	5 Voice announce 2*	
2 OFF	Cancels the “Record message” setting.	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ringing time.

Entering a 3-digit number automatically sets the record message and the icon appear on the stand-by display.

■ To set the displayed time as shown

Press ● without entering a number.

Note

- ● You can check the selected answer message by pressing 左 (Play) in the answer message selection display.
- ● You cannot set the same ringing time for recorded messages and “Remote observation” or “Automatic answer”.
- ● To give priority to the “Record message” function when “Voice mail” and “Call forwarding” are set at the same time, set a shorter ringing time than the time set for Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- ● The Record message function is disabled when the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode.
- ● If the ringing start time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the ringing time set for the Record Message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record Message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record Message is longer than the ringing start time.
- ● You can use “Utilities” to set an answer message for each phone number and group “Utilities” to set an answer message for each group. ➞P. 107

When you receive a call with “Record message” set to “ON”

Once the set time has elapsed, the Record message function starts up and plays the preset answer message to the caller. For a video-phone call, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is played. The “Recording” image is then sent and recording begins.



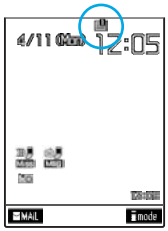
When message recording begins, the “Recording” display appears. The caller’s voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
Regardless of the duration of the recording, the recordings is counted in terms of the number of recordings when recording begins.

■ To answer a voice call

Press or .

■ To answer a video-phone call

To answer using the camera image, press . To answer using the alternate image, press or .



For a voice call

When recording ends, the original display reappears and the “Missed call” icon or “Record message” desktop icon appears in the stand-by display.
You can check the contents by selecting the one of the desktop icons. →P. 138 Selecting desktop icons →P. 137
When 1 message is recorded, changes to . It changes to when 2 messages are recorded, to when 3 messages are recorded, and so on.

Note

- Because the FOMA terminal does not receive calls while is displayed, you cannot use the Record message function to record messages.
- Voice only messages can also be recorded for video-phone calls.
- When PIM lock is set, this function is set to “OFF” and the desktop icon is not displayed.
- Once you have recorded 5 voice call messages or video-phone messages, the FOMA terminal cannot record a message for the next caller and does not play the answer message.
- Even when “Record message” is not set to “ON”, you can record messages from callers by setting an “Original” manner mode in which “Record message” is set to ON. However, if there are already 5 voice or video-phone call messages recorded, incoming calls are handled as specified in the Manner mode settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode, you cannot hear the caller’s voice during the recording.
- If “Voice mail” is set, once 5 voice or video-phone call messages have been recorded on the FOMA terminal, you can have additional messages recorded by the Voice Mail Service Center.
- You cannot receive another call while a message is being recorded. The other caller hears the busy tone.

■ Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Having Callers Leave a Message During Another Call

Even when the “Record message” function is not set to “ON”, this function allows you to begin message recording during a call simply by pressing one key.

1 During a call, press or (Memo/Check).

The Record message function starts up and the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode at the same time.

Continued on next page

Note

- This function records a message each time you receive a call. When recording is completed, the quick message is canceled. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON". To have the FOMA terminal automatically record messages, use the "Record message" setting.
- The Record message function starts up even when Manner mode operation is set to use an "Original" manner mode and "Record message" is set to "OFF" in that mode.
- If there are already 5 recorded voice or video-phone call messages, "Record message" does not start up and the FOMA terminal operates in accordance with the settings for the Manner mode set in "Manner mode set".
- The FOMA terminal remains in Manner mode when the call ends. To cancel Manner mode, hold down # for 1 second or longer.
- When "PIM lock" is set, the FOMA terminal does not record messages when set to Manner mode.

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

Use this function to play back and erase voice calls and messages recorded using "Record message" and "Voice memo".

Playback

The "PHONE" is displayed for the recorded messages from voice phone calls and the "PHONE" is displayed for the recorded messages from video-phone calls.
A star "★" is displayed beside recorded items.

- When a recorded message is from a caller who provided a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed during playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name is also displayed.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Play/Erase msg."

The "Play/Erase msg. display" appears.



Play/Erase msg. display

2 Press the number for the item to be played.

The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the message ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

Press ↕ (Memo/Check).
Each time you press ↕ [Memo/Check], the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To interrupt playback

Press ● or CLR.

■ To call the phone number displayed during playback

Press ☎.

■ To make a video-phone call to the phone number displayed during playback

Press ☎.

■ To erase the message during playback

Press 左 (Erase) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

- You can also play back messages by pressing ↕ in the stand-by display.

Using the function menu in the Play/Erase msg. display

In the play/erase msg. display... ➡ P. 72

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Play/Erase msg. display function menu

1 **Play**	Plays the message. See "Playback". →P. 72
2 **Delete this**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
3 **Delete rec. msg.**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Erases all the recorded messages.
4 **Delete all**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

What is the Video-phone? 76
Making a Video-phone Call 77
Receiving a Video-phone Call 81
Using “Chara-den” 83
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party 84
Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls 86
Remote Observation 88

What is the Video-phone?

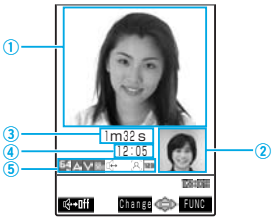
- The video-phone function can be used between any two phones that support DoCoMo video-phoning, even different types of phone.
- DoCoMo video-phoning conforms to the 3G-324M[*1] standard set down in the international 3GPP[*2] standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a video-phone terminal that uses a different system from DoCoMo video-phones.

[*1] : 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile video-phones.

[*2] : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- Video-phone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
  - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64k bps (kilobits per second)
  - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32k bps (kilobits per second)

Viewing the video-phone display



①Main display. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
②Sub-display. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
③Shows the call duration.
④Shows the current time.
⑤Shows the video-phone function settings.

- : 64K video-phone call in progress
- : 32K video-phone call in progress
- : Sending/Receiving voice
- : Voice transmission error
- : Sending/Receiving video
- : Video transmission error
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending alternate image selected in "Select image"
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Hands-free ON
- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode*

*: See →P. 80 for information on DTMF.

- : Key operation/Full action mode
- : Key operation/Partial action mode
- : Sending Chara-den
- : The state where the motion of a face can be followed
- : The state where the motion of your face cannot be followed
- : Visual check in progress

Key	Video-phone call operation
●	Changing between front and rear cameras
● (1 second or longer)	Switch main display.
⊙ ([Home]), ⊙ ([Memo/Check])	Adjusting the volume
⊙	Adjusting the zoom ratio
⊙左	Changing to and from hands-free
⊙右	Display the function menu
CLR	On hold

Making a Video-phone Call

● Video-phone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international telephone service. →P. 55

1 Dial the phone number starting with the other party's area code.

The "Video-phone number input display" appears.
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code – Local code – Phone number

■ To call a mobile phone

090-xxxx-xxxx
or
080-xxxx-xxxx

■ To call a PHS phone

070-xxxx-xxxx



Video-phone number input display

2 Press ▶ When the video-phone connection is established, press (左) (ON) to switch to hands-free mode.

The "Video-phone in-call display" appears.
Because the other party's voice can be heard by people around you in hands-free mode, you should move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode.
See "Using the hands-free operation" →P. 60



The charge of digital communications starts from this screen.



Video-phone in-call display

■ To send video from the rear camera

Press ●.
Each time you press ●, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ To put the current video-phone call on hold

Press CLR.
The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her video-phone display. To release a held video-phone call, press (answers the held video-phone call using the camera image) or CLR, (answers the held video-phone call using the alternate image).

■ If you use an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ If the video-phone call was not connected →P. 80

3 To end the call, press PWR HLD.

Continued on next page

Note

- The icon flashes while you are dialing a video-phone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If the call is connected at the "32K" dialing speed, flashes.
- During a hands-free call, is displayed and the other party's voice is played through the FOMA terminal speaker. Pressing (左) ( ) again switches hands-free mode off and changes to .
- Always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear during a hands-free call. Holding the FOMA terminal close to your ear could adversely affect your hearing or damage your ear.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make video-phone calls while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing".
- If the FOMA terminal receives and forwards a video-phone call, a message appears notifying you that the call is being forwarded while call forwarding is in progress.

Using the function menu in the video-phone number input display

In the video-phone number input display... ➡ P. 77

1 (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Video-phone number input display function menu 1/2

1 Notify caller ID	▶ Choose from the following options: Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	1 OFF	Withholds your caller ID.
	2 ON	Provides your caller ID.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels the caller ID notification setting.
2 Prefix numbers	▶ Choose the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" →P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When a country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is attached (Country code is attached). ■ When no country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Select country code and press ● ▶ Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is not attached (Country code is not attached). If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" →P. 477	
5 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93	
6 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	
7 Dialing speed	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of "64K" bps.
	2 32K	Sets this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of "32K" bps.

Video-phone number input display function menu 2/2

1 Select image	▶ Choose the following options: Set the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets self-portrait.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the Original/Chara-den setting.

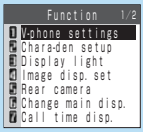
Note

- The Dialing speed setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls records. Also, if you make a voice call after specifying a Dialing speed setting, the setting is ignored.

Using the function menu in the video-phone in-call display

In the video-phone in-call display... ➡ P. 77

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Function menu in the video-phone in-call display

Video-phone in-call display function menu 1/2

1 V-phone settings	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the screen for video-phone call. This setting is only retained during the call.		
	1 Image quality	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during the call.	
		1 Normal (default setting)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
		2 Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
		3 Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
	2 Brightness	▶ Press (上) to adjust the brightness and then press ●. Five brightness levels (–2 to ± 0 to +2) are available.	
	3 White balance	▶ Choose from the following options: These options set the image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. →P. 179	
		1 Auto (default setting)	Selects this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		2 Fine	Selects this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		3 Cloudy	Selects this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		4 Light bulb	Selects this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.
		5 Fluorescent light	Selects this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.
	4 Color mode set	▶ Choose from the following options: These options set the image effects. This setting is only retained during the call.	
		1 Normal (default setting)	Sets the normal image.
		2 Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		3 Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	5 Photo mode	▶ Choose from the following options: These options set modes suited to the scene being shot. This option cannot be set for the front camera. This setting is only retained during the call.	
		1 Portrait (default setting)	The best mode for photographing people.
		2 Scenery	The best mode for photographing landscapes and scenery.
		3 Close-up	The best mode for changing to the macro lens and taking close-up shots.
2 Chara-den setup	See "Setting "Chara-den"" → P. 80 This option cannot be set for the camera images.		

Continued on next page

3 Display light	▶Choose from the following options: Set lighting of display backlight.	
	1 All time ON (default setting)	Turns the display backlight on.
	2 15 seconds ON	Turns the display backlight on for 15 seconds only.
4 Disp. screen size	▶Choose from the following options: Set the screen size.	
	1 Actual size	Displays the image at actual size.
	2 Fit in display (default setting)	Resizes the image to fit the display size.
5 Rear camera*1	Switches between the front and rear cameras. This setting is only retained during the call.	
6 Change main disp.	Changes the main display. Each time the display changes in the following sequence. "Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main display" → "Displays the image from your own camera on your main display" → "Displays only the image from the other party's camera" → "Displays only the image from your own camera".	
7 Call time disp. (default setting: 1 ON)	▶Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".	

*1 : If you have selected the Rear camera, "5 Front camera" is displayed.

Video-phone in-call display function menu 2/2

1 Send DTMF tone*2	Sets/Cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, video-phone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.
2 Own number	Displays your phone number during video-phone calls.
3 Petit message	See "Sending messages during video-phone calls <Petit message>" →P. 87
4 Decoration	See "Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in video-phone calls <Decoration>" →P. 86
5 Off decoration	Erases the currently display message or stamp.
6 Visual check*3	See "Checking your appearance before making a video-phone call <Visual check>" →P. 85

*2 : If you have selected the Send DTMF tone, "1 Cancel DTMF tone" is displayed.
*3 : If you have selected the Visual check, "6 Visual check off" is displayed.

Setting "Chara-den"

In the video-phone in-call display function menu... ➡ P. 79

1 Press 2 "Chara-den setup" ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Switch Chara-den	▶Select a character and press ●. Selects the character to be displayed.
2 Action list	▶Check the actions and keys. Uses this option to check the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing #.
3 Change action	Selects an action mode.
4 Switch image	Displays your own custom image on the other party's display. →P. 84

When a video-phone call fails

If a video-phone call fails, a message appears giving the reason for the connection failure. However, in some circumstances, the explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the called party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

- If a message is displayed informing you that you cannot connect when you are making a video-phone call, set "Caller ID notification" to "ON" and dial the number again.

Display	Reason
Check the number and retry	You dialed the number incorrectly.
Busy	The called party is on another call or using i-mode or packet communication.
Out of service area or power off	The called party is out of signal range or his/her phone is turned off.
Driving mode	The called party's phone is in Driving mode.
Select on for Call ID Notification	Displayed when you connected without disclosing your caller ID (when dialing into V-LIVE or Visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.
Connection failed	Set Notify caller ID to "ON" and then try again. · This message may also be displayed in other situations.

Note

- If you make a video-phone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If you make a video-phone call to a phone that does not support video-phone calls, or if the called party's phone supports video-phone calls but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support video-phone calls and "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the video-phone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial the wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN video-phone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as at December 2004). Note that call charge may apply in some cases.
- The "32K" dialing speed allows you to use video-phones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a video-phone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32K bps. However, note that "32K" video-phone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" video-phone calls.
- If an attempted "64K" video-phone call fails to connect when "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", it automatically switches to the "32K" dialing speed. If the video-phone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode. The table below shows how "Voice call auto switch" and automatic connection speed switching operate when a video-phone call fails to connect.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Voice call auto switch" set to ON	The dialing speed automatically changes to "32K". If the video-phone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice-call mode.
"Voice call auto switch" set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the video-phone call still fails to connect, the video-phone call ends.	Ends the video-phone call.

- Once a video-phone is successfully connected, it is not re-dialed as a voice call.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a video-phone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the video-phone is completed.
- You cannot receive SMS during a video-phone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" battery low alarm appears on the display during a video-phone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. Even if you start charging the battery before the call is terminated, the "Camera Off" message remains on the display.
- Digital call charges still apply when the alternate image is displayed during a video-phone call.

Receiving a Video-phone Call

Use this procedure to accept an incoming video-phone call. If you cannot answer a video-phone call immediately, you can still receive the call without showing the caller the image from your camera by displaying a substitute image (alternate image).

1 When you receive a video-phone call, press [TV] to answer the call.

■ To answer using the alternate image

Press [Talk] or [●].

The alternate image appears on the caller's display.

After sending the alternate image, you can still change to the camera image by pressing [TV].

■ When using an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

Press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch.



Video-phone call reception display

Continued on next page

You can also answer using the alternate image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers the call using the alternate image once the specified ringing time has elapsed.

■ **To switch between the camera image and alternate image**

Press (i).

The same procedure can also be used when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the FOMA terminal.

■ **To put a video-phone call on answer hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing**

Press PWR HLD.

The "On hold" image and message appear on the caller's video-phone display. To answer the held call using the camera image, press (i). To answer using the alternate image, press ☎ or ●.

2 Once the video-phone call is connected, press 左 (Off) to switch to hands-free mode.

Because the other party's voice can be heard by people around you in hands-free mode, you should move to a location where your call will not disturb other people before switching to hands-free mode. "Using the hands-free operation" →P. 60

■ **To send video from the rear camera**

Press ●.

Each time you press ●, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To put the current video-phone call on hold**

Press CLR.

The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her video-phone display. To release a held video-phone call, press (i) (answers the held video-phone call using the camera image) or CLR, ☎ (answers the held video-phone call using the alternate image).

■ **To use an earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice in the earphone.

3 To end the call, press PWR HLD.

Using the function menu in the video-phone call reception display

In the video-phone call reception display... ➡ P. 81

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Video-phone call reception display function menu 1/2

1 **Call rejection**	Deliberately ends the call.
2 **Call forwarding**	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" setting is "Activate/Inactivate". See "Call Forwarding Service (Free)" →P. 470

Note

- During a hands-free call, is displayed and the other party's voice is played through the FOMA terminal speaker. Pressing 左 (Off) again switches hands-free mode off and changes to .
- Always keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear during a hands-free call. Holding the FOMA terminal close to your ear could adversely affect your hearing or damage your ear.
- Digital call charges still apply to the caller when the alternate image is displayed during a video-phone call.
- Even if "Voice mail" is set to "Activate", incoming video-phone calls are not connected to the Voice mail service and remain active.
- If "Call forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received video-phone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P. 76) video-phone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- If you receive a video-phone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance call barring service, the call is ended without a call rejected message being sent to the caller.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or Message Request/Free during a video-phone call. Mail and messages received during a video-phone call are held at the i-mode center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" after you finish the video-phone call.

Note

- You can still receive SMS during a video-phone call.
- If the “Recharge battery” low-voltage alarm appears on the display during a video-phone call, the other party sees the “Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. Even if you start charging the battery before the call is terminated, the “Camera Off” message remains on the display.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to “Driving mode”, it does not ring and the call alert indicator does not flash. Received calls are logged in the Received calls records as missed calls.
- Depending on the settings used by the caller, you may receive an substitute image instead of video images.

Using “Chara-den”

This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a video-phone call.
With “Chara-den”, you can make your cartoon character move in response to sound, move its hands and feet or change its facial expression by pressing keys.

- To use “Chara-den”, you must first select the following functions. You can also use “Chara-den” by specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or in the Utilities.
  - Set “Substitute image” to “Chara-den”. → P. 85
  - Set “Camera image sending” to “OFF”. → P. 84
- To switch from the camera image to Chara-den, press [i].

<Example: When you receive a video-phone call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook>

1 When you receive a video-phone call, press [☎] to accept the call.

2 Control your character by pressing the dial keys.

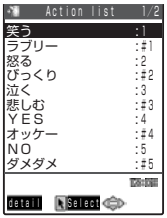


Chara-den

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ To change the action mode

You can switch between “Whole” and “Parts” in the function menu. → P. 80
“Full action” mode gives you full control over the character’s movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Control the character by pressing the [1] to [9] or [#] [1] to [#] [9] keys.
“Partial action” mode gives you partial control over the character’s movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Control the character by pressing the [1] [1] to [9] [9] keys.



■ To check an action

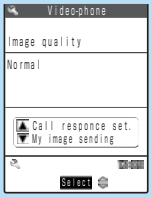
Press [*] to view the list of actions.
You can also press [○] to select an action and then perform that action.

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 **Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 3 DEF “Video-phone”.**

The “Video-phone settings display” appears.

2 **Choose from the following options:**



Video-phone settings display

Video-phone settings display menu

Image quality	▶ **Choose from the following options:** These options set the image quality for video-phone calls.	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	2 **Prefer quality**	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	3 **Prefer motion**	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Camera image sending	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the image sent to the other party in a video-phone call.	
	1 **ON** (default setting)	Sends the camera image.
	2 **OFF**	Sends the alternate image.
Select image	See “Setting the image sent in video-phone calls”. →P. 84	
Voice call auto switch	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the operation performed when a video-phone call fails to connect.	
	1 **ON**	If a video-phone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice-phone call.
	2 **OFF** (default setting)	A message is displayed stating that you couldn’t connect to a video-phone call, and the display returns to the Standby display.
Remote observation	See “Remote Observation”. →P. 88	
Disp. setting V-phone	See “Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls”. →P. 86	

Note

<Image quality>
- This can also be set from the function menu during a video-phone call. However, when the video-phone call ends, the settings revert to the values set using this function.
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a video-phone call, the image may become grainy or patchy.

<Camera image sending>
- Regardless of the settings in this function, you can switch between the camera image and alternate image during a video-phone call.
- You can change the alternate image sent in “Select image”.

<Voice call auto switch>
- When a video-phone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the final dialing is logged as a single entry in the “Dialed calls” record.
- Once a video-phone is successfully connected, it is not redialed as a voice call.
- Even if Voice call auto switch is set to “ON”, it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as the other party being out of signal range or on another call.

● Setting the image sent in video-phone calls

Default settings	**On hold, Holding: Pre-installed, Substitutive image: Chara-den, Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed**

Use the procedure below to select the image sent in place of the camera image.
- The images that can be set using this function are the JPEG images listed below in VGA size (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high), it is reduced to Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high).
- The setting in this function is retained when video-phoning ends.

In the video-phone settings display... ➡ P. 84

1 Select “Select image” and press ● ▶ Choose the following options:

1 On hold	Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.
2 Holding	Sets the image sent for a call on hold.
3 Substitutive image	Sets the image sent as the alternate image.
4 Record message	Sets the image sent during message recording.
5 Preparing	Sets the image sent during the preparations for message recording.
6 Voice memo	Sets the image sent during preparations for a voice memo.

2 Select the image to be sent.

1 Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
2 Original	Sends an image and a message. ■ To change the setting ▶ Press (FUNC) ▶ (Change setting) ▶ Select an image.
3 Chara-den	Only displayed when you are setting “Substitutive image”. Sends the “Chara-den” character selected in the “Substitutive image”. See “Using the function menu in the Chara-den List display”. →P. 386 For the order of precedence for Chara-den →P. 94 ■ To change the setting ▶ Press (FUNC) ▶ (Change setting) ▶ Select a Chara-den character.

■ Messages that can be sent

The messages sent are as follows:

When a call is on answer hold: “On hold”
When a call is on hold: “Holding”
When the substitutive image is sent: “Camera Off”
During Record message recording: “Recording Voice only”
During Record message preparation: “Preparing”
During voice memo recording: “Recording Voice only”

Note

- To check an image, select the item you want to check and press (Play).
- Changing the setting from “Original” to “Pre-installed” or “Chara-den” does not delete the stored image.
- The still image set in substitutive image, Holding or Voice memo is displayed both on your own FOMA terminal and the other party’s phone. However, the On hold tone, the answer message for Record message is only sent to the other party.
- You cannot delete the “Original” still image, To change the image, use “Set as display” to store a new image in place of the old image. Even if you delete the original image used as the source for the pasted image, the image is still displayed on (sent to) the other party’s phone.
- You can send a pre-installed substitutive image when PIM lock is set.
- When the “Chara-den” character set as the substitutive image is deleted and the “Chara-den” substitutive image cannot be displayed, the pre-installed “Dimo” is sent. If you delete the pre-installed “Dimo”, the pre-installed substitutive still image is sent.

Checking your appearance before making a video-phone call <Visual check>

In the video-phone in-call display function menu... ➡ P. 79

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 6 “Visual check”.

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

“ ” is displayed during a visual check.

An alternative image is sent to the other party.

Continued on next page

2 **Press [i].**

Visual check ends. A screen returns to the state before a visual check. You can also select "Visual check off" from a function menu to end the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a video-phone call, you can enlarge the image of yourself that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending the image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 4× (in 16 steps). The image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2× (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a video-phone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When video-phoning ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge the image when you are sending an alternate image.
- You cannot enlarge the other party's image.

1 **Press [○] to zoom in or out during a video-phone call.**



Setting the Image Displayed During Video-phone Calls

Setting the image in the main display and the image size <Disp. setting V-phone>

Default settings	Main display: Other image; Display screen size: Main display size

In the video-phone settings display... ➡ P. 84

1 **Select "Disp. setting V-phone" ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 Main display	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the main image for video-phone calls.	
	1 Other image	Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main display.
	2 Camera image	Displays the image from your own camera on your main display.
	3 Only other image	Displays only the image from the other party's camera on your display.
	4 Only camera image	Displays only the image from your own camera on your display.
2 Display screen size	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the screen size for video-phone call.	
	1 Main display size	Resizes the image to match the display screen size.
	2 Real size	Displays the image at its actual size.

Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in video-phone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the video-phone call display (Image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with pre-installed stamps that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the "みんなNらんど" i-mode site. For information on "みんなNらんど" →P. 204

In the video-phone in-call display function menu... ➡ P. 79

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 4 ㄱ GHI “Decoration” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Frame/stamp	▶ Choose from the following options: These options paste fixed (static) decorations into the video-phone display.	
	1 Frame	▶ Choose a frame and press ●. Places a frame around the video-phone display.
	2 Stamp	▶ Choose a stamp and press ● ▶ Decide a position and press ●. Places a stamp in the video-phone display.
2 Facestamp	▶ Choose a stamp and press ●. Places a stamp that follows facial movements in the video-phone display. If a stamp can follows facial movements, displays “”. If not, displays “”.	

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Using the function menu in the video-phone in-call display”
In the video-phone in-call display function menu 2/2, “5 (Off decoration)”. →P. 80

Note

- You can check the selected frame or stamp by pressing ㄲ (Play) in the frame or stamp selection display.
- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text stamps pasted in the image appear reversed and cannot be read correctly.

Sending messages during video-phone calls <Petit message>

In the video-phone in-call display function menu... ➡ P. 79

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 3 ㅁ DEF “Petit message” ▶ Edit the message and then press ●.

The message is displayed. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.
The message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.
For information on entering text →P. 526

■ To cancel message input

Erase the entire message and press CLR.

■ To erase the message manually

Hold down CLR for 1 second or more.
You can also erase the message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

Note

- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text appears reversed and cannot be read correctly.

Remote Observation

Default settings	Other ID: Not recorded; Ringing time: 5 sec.; Set: OFF

Remote observation is only possible between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone function. This FOMA terminal can be used as either the dialing or receiving phone for remote observation.

- Remote observation can only be carried out when phone number of the observing (receiving) phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote observations and “Remote observation” is set to “ON”.

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and the delay until remote observation begins (Ringing time) on the phone performing the remote observation (receiving phone).

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.
- Remote observation cannot be performed when the receiving FOMA terminal is in “Manner mode” or “Driving mode”.

In the video-phone settings display... ➡ P. 84

1 Select “Remote observation” and press ● ▶Enter the security code and press ● ▶Press 1あ “Other ID”.

The “Other ID display” appears.
For information on security code →P. 142



Other ID display

2 Select the <Not recorded> option and press ●.

■ **To change a previously recorded ID**
Select the ID to be changed and press ●.

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone and press ● ▶Press C.

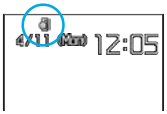
Return to the Remote observation display.

4 Press 2ABC “Ringing time” ▶Enter the ringing time (003-120 seconds).

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

■ **To set the displayed time as shown**
Press ● without entering a time.

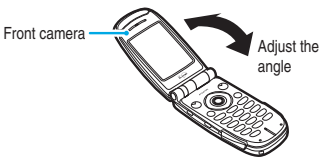
5 Press 3DEF “Set” ▶1あ “ON”.



■ **To turn remote observation off**
Press 2ABC “OFF”.

6 Position the FOMA terminal.

In remote observation, the image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.
Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the observation position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.
If the FOMA terminal is left folded, remote observation is disabled and incoming signals are rejected.



Note

- When you set Remote observation, appears on the stand-by display.
- The ringing time set for Remote observation cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time set for Call forwarding on the receiver is shorter than the ringing time set for remote observation, Call forwarding takes priority. To give priority to remote observation, set a shorter ringing time than the Call forwarding setting.
- To use Remote observation with Call Forwarding, store the sender's phone number as the other ID and set a 3G-324M-compatible video-phone as the forwarding number.

Using the function menu in the other ID display

In the other ID display ➡ P. 88

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: These options set the number of other party.	
	1 Phonebook	Stores a number stored in the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 Dialed calls	Stores a number stored in the Dialed calls. See "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number". →P. 50
	3 Received calls	Stores a number stored in the Received calls. See "Using the Received Calls". →P. 62
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
3 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The setting is turned "OFF" if all other IDs are deleted.	

Note

- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only call the phone numbers specified in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" and "Received calls" in "Record display set", you cannot access the "Received calls" or "Dialed calls" records.

Performing remote observation

- To perform remote observation, you should always make a video-phone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When a FOMA terminal is used to receive the remote observation, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a video-phone call to the receiving phone.



Receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote observation begins.
Video images and sound from the receiving phone are played through the dialing phone. If you press (左) (ON) to switch to hands-free mode, sound from the receiving phone is played through the speaker. By using an earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone without switching to hands-free mode.

■ To answer a video-phone call on the receiving phone without triggering remote observation

Answer before the ringing time has elapsed, pressing to answer with the camera image or to answer with the alternate image.

Continued on next page

Note

- Calls from the phone number stored in the Remote observation settings cannot be received when "All lock" is set.
- If caller ID notification is not provided, the call is received as a normal video-phone call and not as remote observation.
- If a phone number other than the "Other ID" number is set in "Call acceptation" on the receiving phone, or if "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number, the incoming call is rejected and remote observation cannot be performed.
- Remote observation cannot be performed if any the following functions is set at the same time:
  • Driving mode • Manner mode • Call rejection/acceptation • Reject unknown
- If Remote observation and Record message are set at the same time, Remote observation takes priority even when the ringing time set for Record message is shorter than the ringing time set for Remote observation.
- If an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- Received sound is specifically for Remote observation and cannot be modified.
- Received sound is played at the volume set in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the Remote observation volume is set to "Level 2".
- When remote observation is being received, the flashing color is set to "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is "Standard", regardless of the "Illumination" settings.
- Answer hold cannot be used while remote observation is being received. Press PWR HLD to the call.
- If remote observation is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a video-phone call received from the phone number stored as the "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a Remote observation call. If Remote observation was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed call record for video-phone in the Received calls record.
- Neither the dialing phone nor the receiving phone can receive voice calls or video-phone calls during Remote observation. Voice calls or video-phone calls received during Remote observation are stored in the Received calls record and the missed call desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- For voice phone calls during remote observation, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in "Fold setting". However, when an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Fold setting" specification is ignored and the FOMA terminal sends your alternate image to the other party when it is folded.
- You cannot switch cameras during remote observation.
- You cannot receive DTMF (push) signals during remote observation.

Ending remote observation

1 Press PWR HLD.

The call duration is displayed and Remote observation ends.
You can also end Remote observation by pressing PWR HLD on the receiving phone.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones. Improper use of the FOMA terminal in ways that constitute a serious public nuisance may be punishable under laws or ordinances intended to prevent such behavior (privacy protection laws, etc.).

Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal 92
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook <Add to phonebook> 93
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook <Add to UIM Phonebook> 95
Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records..... 96
Renaming Groups <Group setting> 97
Making a Call From the Phonebook <Search phonebook> 98
Editing the Phonebook <Edit Phonebook> 102
Deleting a Phonebook Entry <Delete data> 103
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM <UIM operation> 103
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status 106
Setting Up Phonebook Utilities <Utilities/Group utilities> 107
Using Dialing Shortcuts <Two-touch dialing> 110
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites <Automatic display> 110

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

Differences between the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook

Data Stored

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
No. of entries*1	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*2	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage*3	The phonebook will hold up to 700 phone numbers with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry.	Only one number can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons (, , etc.) for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The " " icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 700 e-mail addresses with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons (, , etc.) for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The " " icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one "Chara-den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total for the whole phonebook of 100 of each.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include the contact's name, reading one postal code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1 : Depending on the amount of data stored in each entry, the number of entries that can actually be stored may be less.

*2 : You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). It is often useful to select your preferred group names beforehand. →P. 97

*3 : Stored phone numbers can include the numbers 0 to 9, the hash symbol (#), asterisks (*) and pauses (p). To use a sub-address (P. 58), insert an asterisk.

Features of the FOMA terminal phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) allows you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. →P. 110
- You can use the "Utilities" functions to specify the settings used for dialing and receiving calls by group or by phone number or e-mail address. →P. 107
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. →P. 152
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. →P. 147
- You can set a "Secret code". →P. 102

Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the UIM card, you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the UIM card. This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminals in different locations.

Displaying names

Voice and video-phone calls



When you receive a call with caller ID notification from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's name and phone number.



If there is a still image or movie stored in the phonebook entry and "Display phonebook image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image or movie. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the registered image, it may take time for the image to be displayed. The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

i-mode mail and SMS

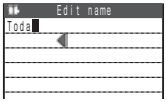
When you receive i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or you receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the sender's name in the Inbox list display and details display. When you send i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is also shown in the Outbox list display and details display.
The person's name also appears in the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the "Name" field. The entry will not be stored in the phonebook unless a name is entered.

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 あ "Add to phonebook" ▶ Press 1 あ "Phone" ▶ Enter the name and press ●.



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
Names consisting of up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be stored.
For information on entering text →P. 526

2 Check the reading and then press ●.

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be used.
"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" use the reading stored here.

Continued on next page

3 Set the respective parameters and then press (左) "Finish".

Group	▶**Select a group and press ●.** Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	▶**Enter the phone number and press ●** ▶**Select an icon and press ●.** Enters the phone number and select the icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. Once you have stored the first phone number, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	▶**Enter the e-mail address and press ●** ▶**Select an icon and press ●.** Enters the e-mail address and select an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit display. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
Address	▶**Enter the postal code and press ●** ▶**Enter the street address and press ●.** Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
Birthday	▶**Enter the birthday and press ●.** Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	▶**Enter a memo and press ●.** Enters a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
Set image	▶**Choose from the following options:** Select the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact.
	1 **Select image** — Selects a still image.
	2 **Release this** — Deletes a still image.
Chara-den	▶**Choose from the following options:** Select the "Chara-den" character displayed when you receive a call from the contact. The character is displayed when making and receiving a video-phone call.
	1 **Select Chara-den** — Selects a "Chara-den" character.
	2 **Release this** — Deletes a "Chara-den" character.
Memory No.	▶**Enter a memory number and press ●.** Memory numbers are automatically assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired.

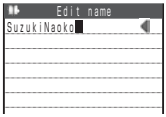
Note

- If you enter the "ワ゛" character (full-pitch, half-height) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "ヷ" (full-pitch, full-height). Symbols and pictographs are not represented in the reading.
- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly when operations such as memory transfer are used.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
  E.g. docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
- If you store an image or "Chara-den" character in a phonebook entry and then modify or delete the original image or "Chara-den" character, the image or "Chara-den" character is the phonebook entry is also modified or deleted.
- To have a stored image or "Chara-den" character displayed when you receive a call, set "Display phonebook image" to "ON".
- If you receive a call from a number that has an image stored in the phonebook, and the image is larger than the image display area of "Calling" in "Display setting" (P. 122) set in "Calling" under "Display setting", the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. If it is smaller than the image display area, it is centered on the screen.
- The priority order for "Chara-den" settings is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  ① Select image in the video-phone setting →P. 78
  ② Chara-den set in the phonebook utilities →P. 108
  ③ Chara-den set in the group utilities →P. 109
  ④ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
  ⑤ Substitutive image of the select image →P. 85

<Add to UIM Phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1あ “Add to phonebook” ▶ Press 2ABC “UIM” ▶ Enter the name and press ●.



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
Names consisting of up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be stored.
For information on entering text →P. 526

2 Check the reading and then press ●.

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using full-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
Up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be used.
“Reading search” in “Search phonebook” use the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters and then press 左 “Finish”.

GR Group	▶ Select a group and press ●. Selects a group number between “00” and “10”. If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	▶ Enter the phone number and press ●. Enters the phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue UIM card or up to 26 digits long on a green UIM card. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	▶ Enter the e-mail address and press ●. Enters the e-mail address. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

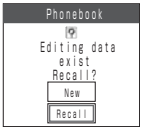
Note

- If you enter the “ﾜ” character (full-pitch, half-height) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (full-pitch, full-height). However, you can also enter the “ﾜ” character (full-pitch, half-height) using reading input. Symbols are not represented in the reading.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the “@” symbol.
  E.g. docomo.taro. △△ @docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact’s e-mail address is in the “[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp” format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing was interrupted

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1あ “Add to phonebook” ▶ Select 1あ “Phone” or 2ABC “UIM”.

2 Select “Recall” and press ●.



If a battery low alarm sounded during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using Multi tasking, editing of the interrupted phonebook entry can be restarted.
When you are re-editing an entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

■ To store a new entry

Select “New” and press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

- When data being edited is stored temporarily, only the most recent entry is stored.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the phonebook entry being edited and answer the call. In the case of a voice call, you can return to phonebook edit display by pressing (Mail) to display the task menu and then selecting the item that was being edited. In both voice calls and video-phone calls, the original editing display reappears when the call ends.

Important

- The first time you use the FOMA terminal after purchasing it, or if the battery pack is flat or has been removed from the FOMA terminal for around 1 month or longer, the FOMA terminal's internal backup battery needs to be charged. Load the battery pack into the FOMA terminal and charge it. This also charges the internal backup battery.
- You should back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software and a FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the phonebook data onto your PC.
- Even if you remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal, the information stored in the phonebook will be retained for roughly 1 month. After that time, however, the information may be lost. Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal.
- The data for each phonebook entry that can be copied onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility consists of the "First phone number", the "Kana/kanji name", the "Group settings", the "First e-mail address", the "Bookmarks" and the "Secret settings". Depending on the specifications of the new model, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal.

  Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.

  Users should back up phonebook data onto a PC using the Data Link Software.

Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Access reader" and "Sites" records. You can also add phonebook entries after dialing a phone number.

- To add information to an existing phonebook entry, first search the phonebook and retrieve the entry before storing the new information.

<Example: Adding information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal phonebook>

In the received calls display function menu... ➡ P. 63

1 Press 6 "Add to phonebook" ▶ Press 1 "Phone".

■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

Press 2 "UIM".

2 Press 2 "Add" ▶ Locate the phonebook entry to which the information is to be added.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

■ To store a new phonebook entry

Press 1 "New".

■ To add information to the UIM

Press 1 "New" or 2 "Overwrite".

3 Display the phonebook detail display and press ●.

The "Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing display" appears.

For information on editing the phonebook →P. 102

4 After completing the changes, press 左 (Finish).

■ If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data

Select "YES" and press ●.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Note

- The "Notify caller ID" setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses to which replies cannot be sent cannot be added to the phonebook.
- Text that exceeds the limit on the number of characters that can be added to the phonebook is deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.
- It is sometimes possible to add data to the phonebook using highlighted information other than the phone number or e-mail address.
- Some sites cannot be added to the phonebook.

<Group setting>

Renaming Groups

Default setting	FOMA terminal (phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Arts", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.
The table below shows the groups that you can rename and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (phone)	Groups 01-19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch
UIM	Groups 01-10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch

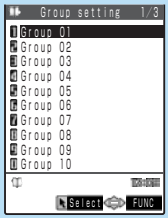
- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

1 Press Menu 2 ABC 6 MNO.

The "Group settings display" appears.

2 Select a group and press ● ▶ Enter the new group name and press ●.

The icon appears next to UIM groups.
If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.
For information on entering text →P. 526

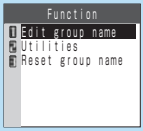


Group settings display

Using the function menu in the group settings display

In the group settings display... ➡ P. 97

1 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Group settings display function menu display

Group settings display function menu

1 **Edit group name**	Edits the group name. See "Entering text"→P. 526
2 **Utilities**	See "Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook" →P. 108
3 **Reset group name**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

Note

- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Utilities" settings specified for that group.
- When the group names are unchanged or have been deleted (reset), "Group 01" to "Group 19" is displayed for the FOMA terminal (phone) phonebook while "Group 01" to "Group 10" is displayed for the UIM phonebook.

Making a Call From the Phonebook

You can make a call by searching for a phonebook entry using any of 7 search criteria reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or "column" in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)).

● Phonebook entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Viewing the search results

Except for memory number searches, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored.

The 50 tones used in Japanese phonetics (entries starting with a space followed by a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)

↓

Alphabetic letters (A, a, B, b ... Z, z)

↓

Numbers (0 to 9)

↓

Symbols

↓

Entries with no reading

1 Press ○ ▶ Select the search method.



■ To display your preferred search method first

Select the search method that you want to have displayed first and then press (左) (Prefer).

A star "★" appears next to the preferred search method.

The next time you search the phonebook, pressing ○ in the stand-by display will display the search method selection display with your preferred method shown first.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

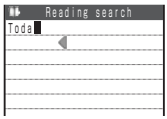
Press ○ ▶ 2 ABC "Search phonebook" ▶ Select the search method with the star "★" and then press (左) (OFF).

2 Search the phonebook.

When the search ends, The "Phonebook list display" that meets the searching conditions appears. "▦" is displayed for the FOMA card phonebook entries on the search result list screen. If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.



Phonebook list display

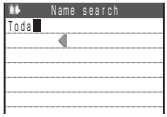


■ Reading search

Enter some of the reading and then press ○ or ○.

Enter the reading starting with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.

For information on entering text →P. 526



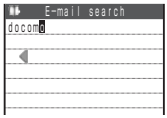
Name search

Enter part of the person's name and then press ⊙ or ⊙.
Start with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.



Phone No. search

Enter part of the person's phone number and then press ⊙ or ⊙.
You can search by entering either the first digits in the phone number or any part of the number.



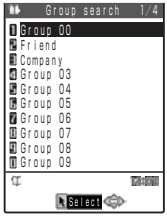
E-mail search

Enter part of the person's e-mail address and then press ⊙ or ⊙.



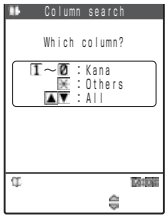
Memory No. search

Enter the 3-digit memory number.
You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.



Group search

Select the desired group and press ●.
Note that the UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (phone) phonebook.



Column search in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)

Press the key for the "column" you want to search.
1: Displays only entries that begin with "a" column reading.
2: Displays only entries that begin with "ka" column reading.
3: Displays only entries that begin with "sa" column reading.
4: Displays only entries that begin with "ta" column reading.
5: Displays only entries that begin with "na" column reading.
6: Displays only entries that begin with "ha" column reading.
7: Displays only entries that begin with "ma" column reading.
8: Displays only entries that begin with "ya" column reading.
9: Displays only entries that begin with "ra" column reading.
0: Displays only entries that begin with "wa", "wo" or "n" column reading.
✕: Displays other entries.

Listing all the entries stored in the phonebook

Press ⊙ or ⊙ without entering any search criteria.
Note that you cannot list all the phonebook entries when "Group search" is selected as the search method.

Making a call from the list display

Select the phonebook entry you want to call and press ☎ or ⊡.
Press ☎ to make a voice call and ⊡ to make a video-phone call. If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

Continued on next page

3 Select the desired phonebook entry and press ●.

The "Phonebook entry detail display" appears.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored for the same entry

Use ⊙ to display a different phone number.

■ To make a call from the phonebook entry detail display

Display the phone number you want to call and press 📞 or 📹. Press 📞 to make a voice call and 📹 to make a video-phone call.



Phonebook entry detail display

Note

- If you have not set a preferred phonebook search method, pressing ⊙ displays the phonebook search display with the last selected search method highlighted.

Using the function menu in the phonebook list display

In the phonebook list display... ➡ P. 98

1 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Phonebook list display function menu

1 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Sort the phonebook list display.	
	1 -reading order (default setting)	Sorts the entries by reading.
	2 Name order	Sorts the entries by name.
	3 Memory No. order	Sorts the entries by memory number.
	4 Descending*	Selects the sorting sequence.
2 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Exports one phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.	
3 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Send all Ir data	See Step 3 of "Sending all data entries" ➞ P. 417	
5 Delete data	▶ Choose from the following options: Delete phonebook entries.	
	1 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	2 Delete these	▶ Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
	3 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code ➞ P. 142

*: If you have selected the Descending, "4 Ascending" is displayed. The default setting is "Ascending".

Note

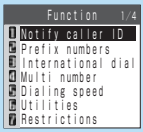
- Deleting all the phonebook entries also deletes the UIM phonebook entries.
- You cannot delete phonebook data while "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. ➞ P. 396

Using the function menu in the phonebook detail display

In the phonebook entry detail display... ➡ P. 100

1 (右) **(FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**



Phonebook detail display function menu

Phonebook detail display function menu 1/4

1 Notify caller ID	▶ Choose from the following options: Select whether to provide your phone number to the other party.	
	1 Don't notify	Does not provide your phone number.
	2 Notify caller	Provides your phone number.
	3 Cancel prefix	Cancels your Notify caller ID setting.
2 Prefix numbers	▶ Select the prefix name to be added. See "Setting Prefix Numbers" →P. 54	
3 International dial	■ When a country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is attached (Country code is attached). ■ When no country code is used ▶ Press ● ▶ Select country code and press ● ▶ Press ●. This procedures are for when "+" is not attached (Country code is not attached). If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.	
4 Multi number	See "Multi number" →P. 477	
5 Dialing speed	▶ Choose the following options: Set the connection speed used for video-phone calls.	
	1 64K	Sets when you use 64K video-phone call.
	2 32K	Sets when you use 32K video-phone call.
6 Utilities	See "Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses" →P. 107	
7 Restrictions	See "Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers" →P. 152	

Phonebook detail display function menu 2/4

1 Edit data	See "Editing the Phonebook" →P. 102
2 Delete data	See "Deleting a Phonebook Entry" →P. 103
3 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
4 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
5 Compose SMS	See "Composing and Sending SMS" →P. 308
6 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
7 Send all Ir data	See Step 3 of "Sending all data entries" →P. 415

Phonebook detail display function menu 3/4

1 Automatic disp.	See "Specifying the automatically displayed phone number" →P. 111
2 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Exports a phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.
3 Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into input and other displays. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544

Continued on next page

4 Copy phone number*1	Copies phone numbers stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other displays. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544	
5 Secret code	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Choose from the following: See "Setting your secret code" →P. 102 For information on security code →P. 142	
	1 Set code	▶Enter your 4-digit secret code, select "YES" and press ●.
	2 Check code	Confirms the set secret code.
	3 Release code	Cancels the set secret code.
6 Release secret	See "Changing secret data back to normal data" →P. 149	
7 Copy to UIM*2	See "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM". →P. 103	

*1 : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, "4 Copy mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, "4 Copy address" is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, "4 Copy birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, "4 Copy memorandums" is displayed.

*2 : If you have selected the FOMA card phonebook, "7 Copy from UIM" is displayed.

Phonebook detail display function menu 4/4

1 Select image	▶Choose the following options: Set the image used for video-phone calls.	
	1 Me	Sets yourself.
	2 Chara-den	Sets Chara-den.
	3 Release	Cancels the Original/Chara-den setting.

Setting your secret code

To send i-mode mail to someone who has a stored secret code, you must add his or her secret code to the e-mail address. Setting a secret code for an e-mail address automatically adds that secret code when you send e-mail to that address.

- For i-mode mail sent to an i-mode phone that uses just the phone number as its e-mail address, you can also set a secret code for the phone number.
- You can only add a secret code when the destination e-mail address is in the "phone number" or "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format. You cannot add secret codes to e-mail address with other formats.
- You cannot set secret codes for the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set "0000" as a secret code.
- If you send mail to an address other than a DoCoMo address, you may not be able to receive an error message if the address is not correct.

See "5 Secret code" in the phonebook detail display function menu 3/4 table in "Using the function menu in the phonebook detail display". ➡P. 102

<Edit Phonebook>

Editing the Phonebook

Use the procedure below to edit phonebook entries.
You can also store an edited phonebook entry as a new entry.

In the phonebook entry detail display... ➡P. 100

1 Press (左) (Edit) and edit the respective items.

Edit the required items using the procedure used in "Add to phonebook".
For information on adding information to the phonebook →P. 93

■ To store a new memory number

Select No. and enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored.
The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

2 After completing the editing, press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

■ **UIM**

After pressing (左) (Finish), select "Overwrite/Add" and press ●.
Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.
Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

Note

- You cannot edit the phonebook while "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

Use this procedure to delete information in the phonebook. You can select and delete a phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or "Chara-den" character.

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 2 ABC "Delete data" ▶ Choose from the following functions:

1 **Erase phone number***	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
2 **This phonebook**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**

*: Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, "1 Erase mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, "1 Erase address" is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, "1 Erase birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, "1 Erase memorandums" is displayed.
- If you have selected an image, "1 Delete image" is displayed.
- If you have selected a Chara-den, "1 Delete chara-den" is displayed.

Note

- You cannot delete phonebook data while "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can delete phonebook data in the phonebook list display.
- If you delete the first phone number when multiple phone numbers are stored, the next phone number appears.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM

You can use this procedure to transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (phone) and the UIM. You can also delete SMS data and phonebook entries stored on the FOMA terminal or UIM card.

- You cannot receive voice calls or video-phone calls, or send and receive mail while copying or deleting data.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
  See P. 92 for information on the items and the number of stored entries that can be copied.

Copying data between the FOMA terminal and UIM

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between your FOMA terminal and the UIM.

- Copying data does not delete or modify the original source data on the FOMA terminal or UIM.
- You cannot use this function unless your FOMA terminal is fitted with a FOMA (UIM) card.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 2 ABC "UIM operation" ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.

Continued on next page

Once you enter your security code, "" is displayed and you can no longer receive communication such as incoming calls. If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the FOMA card (UIM) operation procedure ends.
For information on security code →P. 142

2 Press 1あ "Copy" ▶ Select 1あ "Phone → UIM" or 2かABC "UIM → Phone".

3 Select the item to be copied ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook list display. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98	
2 SMS	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the SMS data.	
	1 Inbox	Shows the Inbox list display.
	2 Outbox	Shows the Outbox list display.

4 Use ○ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

The "FOMA card operation display" appears.



FOMA card operation (copy) display E.g. Phonebook

Note

- You cannot copy data to the UIM when there is a fault with the UIM card.
- If there is data that cannot be copied or the number of digits in the phone number is not compatible with the UIM, a message appears asking whether to copy the data.
- You cannot copy data if the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination has been reached.
- If the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination is reached during copying, a message appears notifying you that the memory used for data storage is full. Delete some unwanted entries from the stored (saved) data and then copy the uncopied data again.
- When phonebook entries are copied from the FOMA terminal (phone) to the UIM, names up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters long and readings up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters long are copied. Longer names or readings are truncated.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal and UIM is different, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored on the FOMA terminal cannot be copied to the UIM.
- Because the types of characters that can be used on the FOMA terminal and UIM are different, some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- If you copy a FOMA terminal phonebook entry to the UIM phonebook, any pictographs are converted to spaces.
- You can also copy individual phonebook entries by displaying the phonebook detail display and selecting "Copy to UIM" (or "Copy from UIM" when using the UIM) from the function menu.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (phone) and the UIM, the phonebook group settings are retained. If the same group names are not set on the FOMA terminal (phone) and the UIM, the entries are stored in group 00.
- You cannot copy just the SMS report. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent messages SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS by box or by folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to the UIM. If you copy protected SMS to the UIM, the protection is removed from the messages on the UIM. "Replied to" or "Transferred" icons are also changed to "Read".
- If you copied SMS in added folders, i-αppli mail folders, the "Chat" folder or the "Trash box" folder from the FOMA terminal (phone) to the UIM, those messages can be viewed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- Entries copied from the UIM to the FOMA terminal (phone) are copied to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

Using the function menu in the FOMA card operation (copy) display

In the FOMA card operation (copy) display... ➡ P. 104

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

FOMA card operation (copy) display function menu

1 Start copy	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Select this	Selects the data.
3 Select all	Selects all the data.
4 Release this	Deselects the selected data.
5 Release all	Deselects all the data.
6 Detail	Displays the data details.

Deleting phonebook or SMS data

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ (2 ABC) "UIM operation" ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

2 Press (2 ABC) "Delete" ▶ Select (1 あ) "Phone" or (2 ABC) "UIM".

3 Select the data to be deleted ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook list display. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98	
2 SMS	▶ Choose from the following options: Selects the SMS data.	
	1 Inbox	Shows the Inbox list display.
	2 Outbox	Shows the Outbox list display.

4 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

The "FOMA card operation (delete) display" appears.



FOMA card operation (delete) display E.g. Phonebook

Using the function menu in the UIM operation (delete) display

In the FOMA card operation (delete) display... ➡ P. 105

1 (右) **(FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

UIM operation (delete) display function menu

1 **Start deletion**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
2 **Select this**	Selects the data.
3 **Select all**	Selects all the data.
4 **Release this**	Deselects the selected data.
5 **Release all**	Deselects all the data.
6 **Detail**	Displays the data details.

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

This procedure enables you to check the number of entries stored in the phonebook and the number of entries that can still be added to the phonebook.

1 **Press (Menu) (2 ABC) (2 ABC).**

Phone (the phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal)

Phonebook: Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)

Secret: Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in Secret or Secret only mode.

Image: Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)

Chara-den: Shows the number of "Chara-den" characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored characters/100 (storage limit)

Rest  Shows the number phone numbers that can still be added.

 Shows the number e-mail addresses that can still be added.

UIM (the phonebook stored on the UIM card)

Phonebook: Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (Storage limit)

Setting Up Phonebook Utilities

Default setting	All OFF

The utilities allow you to specify settings such as which answer message is used by the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group or for each phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook.

Purpose			Function	Ref. page
Receiving	To identify calls from specific callers using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones*1	Ring tone	P. 114
		Identify using vibration	Vibrator	P. 117
		Identify using call alert indicator color*1	Illumination	P. 134
		Identify using image or movie	Image	P. 122
	To change the answer message used when Record message starts up based on who is calling*2		Answer message	P. 70
	To identify mail from specific senders using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones	Mail ring tone	P. 114
		Identify using vibration	Mail vibrator	P. 117
		Identify using call alert indicator color	Mail illumination	P. 134
Sending	To set the connection speed used for video-phone calls based on who you are calling		Dialing speed	P. 78
Receiving /Sending	To set the "Chara-den" character used for video-phone calls based on who the other party is		Chara-den	P. 80

*1 : Identification is also possible for received 64K data communication.
*2 : "Record Message" must be set to "ON" beforehand.

- These settings cannot be used for phonebook or groups stored on the UIM.
- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- The "Utilities" functions will only work if the caller provides a caller ID (phone number). You should always use the "Caller ID request" service. → P. 473

Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses

The same method is used to set up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses regardless of whether calls and mail are being sent or received. When you receive a voice call, video-phone call or SMS from the specified phone number, or when you receive i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address, the selected utility notifies you of the received call or mail.

- The FOMA terminal uses the "Mail ring tone" or "Illumination" set for a phone number when you receive an SMS or when the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp".

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

1 Press 6MNO "Utilities".

The "Phonebook utilities setting display" appears.
A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

Select the function indicated by the star (★) and press ●.
The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.



Phonebook utilities setting display

2 Choose from the following functions.

1 **Ring tone**	See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" →P. 114
2 **Vibrator**	See "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" →P. 117
3 **Illumination**	See "Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" →P. 134

Continued on next page

4 **Image**	See “Changing the Display” →P. 122	
5 **Answer message**	See “Having the Caller Leave a Message” →P. 70	
6 **Mail ring tone**	See “Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” →P. 114	
7 **Mail vibrator**	See “Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” →P. 117	
8 **Mail illumination**	See “Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls” →P. 134	
9 **Dialing speed**	▶**Choose from the following options:**	
	1 **64K**	Set this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of 64K bps.
	2 **32K**	Set this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of 32K bps.
0 **Chara-den setting**	See “Setting “Chara-den”” →P. 80	

■ **When you set a utility...**

An icon appears in the phonebook detail display indicating the utility that has been set.

: Indicates that “Ring tone” is set.
: Indicates that “Vibrator” is set.
: Indicates that “Illumination” is set.
: Indicates that “Image” is set.
: Indicates that “Answer message” is set.
: Indicates that “Mail ring tone” is set.
: Indicates that “Mail vibrator” is set.
: Indicates that “Mail illumination” is set.
64k : Indicates that “Dialing speed” is set to “64K”.
32k : Indicates that “Dialing speed” is set to “32K”.
: Indicates that “Chara-den setting” is set.

Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook

In the group settings display function menu... ➡ P. 97

1 Press 2 ABC “Utilities”.

The “Group utilities setting display” appears.
A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

■ **To deselect a selected function**

Select the function indicated by the star (★) and press ●.
The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.



Group utilities setting display

2 Choose from the following functions.

1 **Ring tone**	See “Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” →P. 114
2 **Vibrator**	See “Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” →P. 117
3 **Illumination**	See “Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls” →P. 134
4 **Image**	See “Changing the Display” →P. 122
5 **Answer message**	See “Having the Caller Leave a Message” →P. 70
6 **Mail ring tone**	See “Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” →P. 114
7 **Mail vibrator**	See “Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” →P. 117
8 **Mail illumination**	See “Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls” →P. 134

9 Dialing speed	▶Choose from the following options:	
	1 64K	Set this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of 64K bps.
	2 32K	Set this option to make video-phone calls at a dialing speed of 32K bps.
0 Chara-den setting	See "Setting "Chara-den"" →P. 80	

Note

- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode (secret data) and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and entries stored as ordinary data. However, group utility settings are disabled for mail or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Utilities settings duplicate the settings specified for other functions, and mail and Message Request/Free with differing respective settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Illumination for phonebook utilities ② Illumination for group utilities
  ③ Illumination →P. 134
- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities ② Ring tone for group utilities
  ③ Ring tone for select ring tone (Video-phone) →P. 114 ④ Ring tone for call setting w/o ID →P. 154
  ⑤ Ring tone for select ring tone (except for Video-phone) →P. 114
  The phonebook or group utilities' priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  ① i-motion ring tone ② i-motion image
  ③ i-motion ring tone (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice), melody
- Priority is assigned as follows for image display when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Phonebook utilities image ② Group utilities image
  ③ Add to phonebook image →P. 92 ④ i-motion for select ring tone →P. 114
  ⑤ Display setting →P. 122
  The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  ① i-motion ring tone ② i-motion for the image, image
- Priority is assigned as follows when dialing speed settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Dialing speed →P. 78
  ② Phonebook utilities' dialing speed
  ③ Group utilities' dialing speed
- When multiple e-mails or Message Request/Free are received simultaneously

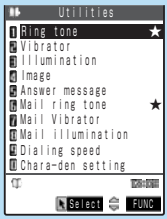
	Ring tone/Illumination operation
Multiple emails received	Operates as specified in the settings for the last e-mail received. When the received mail includes Chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for Chat mail.
Message Request and Message Free received simultaneously	Operates as specified in the settings for Message Request.
Mail and Message Request or Message Free received simultaneously	Operates as specified in the settings for the last e-mail received. When the received mail includes Chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for Chat mail.

Checking the Utilities settings

You can use the procedure below to check the settings for each of the phonebook and group functions specified in "Utilities".

1 **Press** Menu 6 MNO 2 ABC.

The "Phonebook utilities display" appears.
A star (★) is used to indicate items for which the functions are set.



Phonebook utilities display

Using the function menu in the Phonebook utilities display

Select a function or setting marked with a star (★).

In the utilities display... ➡ P. 109

Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Phonebook utilities display function menu

1 Check settings	▶ Select a function or setting marked with a star (★) and press ●* ▶ Check the phonebook entry or group to which the setting applies.
2 Release	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Cancels all the selected function settings.

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers 000 to 009 to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys 0わを to 9WXYZ and then pressing 📞 or ● (📹 to make a video-phone call).

1 Press 0わを to 9WXYZ ▶ Press 📞 or ●.

■ To make a video-phone call

Press 📹.

Note

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- If a phonebook entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", two-touch dialing can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings, two-touch dialing cannot be used. In this situation, you must either cancel Restrict dialing restrictions or nominate the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 in the Restrict dialing settings.
- Two-touch dialing cannot be used from the UIM phonebook since it does not use memory numbers.

<Automatic display>

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting	OFF

This function allows you to set up your FOMA terminal so that when you fold the FOMA terminal with the stand-by display on the screen and then open it again, it automatically displays a preset phone number. You can then make a voice or video-phone call to that number simply by pressing 📞 or 📹.

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number.
- You cannot set automatic display for the UIM.
- You cannot set automatic display for a phone number stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- The phonebook set in the automatic display function does not appear if you fold and then reopen the FOMA terminal while using another function or entering text, or while the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 Press Menu 4GHI 7PQRS ▶ Press 1あ "ON" or 2ABCか "OFF".

Specifying the automatically displayed phone number

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 “Automatic disp”.

A star (★) appears next to “Automatic disp”.

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

Repeat step 1.

The setting is cancelled and the star (★) disappears.

Note

- Press ●, 2 or CLR while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the stand-by display. Press 7 to display the Mail menu or 8 to display the i-mode menu.
- The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
  - When PIM lock is set
  - When All lock is set
  - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode
  - When Restrict dialing is set for other phonebook entries but not for the entry for which automatic display is set

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

Tone Settings

Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone <Select ring tone>..... 114
What is 3D Sound?..... 116
Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies <Sound effect>..... 116
Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls <Vibrator> 117
Setting the Keypad Tone <Keypad sound>..... 118
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging <Charge sound>.... 118
Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out <Quality alarm>..... 118
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail <Mail/Msg. ring time>..... 119
Switching the Ring Tone to Earphone-only <Earphone>..... 119
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone <Manner mode>..... 119
Modifying Manner Mode <Manner mode set>..... 120

Display/ Lighting Settings

Changing the Display <Display setting>..... 122
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls <Disp. phonebook image>..... 126
Setting the Indicator Display Mode..... 126
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting <Display light>..... 128
Changing the Display Color <Display design> 129
Changing the Menu Display 130
Setting the Neuropointer <Neuropointer> 133
Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls <Illumination> 134
Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert Indicator <Illumination in talk>.... 135
Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls <Call time display> .. 135
Changing the Font <Font>..... 135
Setting the Clock Display <Clock display> 136
Using Desktop Icons <Desktop icon>..... 136
Selecting the Icons in the Stand-by Display <Select icons setting> 139

<Select ring tone>

Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone

Default settings	Phone: Ring tone 1 Video-phone: Ring tone 1 Mail: Ring tone 2 Chat mail: Ring tone 2 Message Request: Ring tone 3 Message Free: Ring tone 3

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different ring tones for voice calls, video-phone calls, e-mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free. You can also set specific ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups. →P. 107

- You can set i-motion animations downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites as ring tones.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- An image only i-motion cannot be specified as the ring tone.
- Depending on the i-motion, there may be items that cannot be specified.
- For information on guide to melody list →P. 392

1 Press (Menu) (1あ) (3さ DEF) ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Phone	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication.
	2 Select calling disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication.
2 Video-phone	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.
	2 Select calling disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming video-phone calls.
3 Mail	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication.
	2 Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming mail.
4 Chat mail	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming chat mail.
	2 Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming chat mail.
5 Message Request	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Request.
	2 Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming Message Request.
6 Message Free	▶ Choose from the following options: You can set the ring tone and receiving display. See "Changing the Display" →P. 122	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Free.
	2 Select receiving disp.	Sets the display shown for incoming Message Free.

2 Select a category and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Melody**	Chooses a previously stored ring tone or melody from the "Pre-installed" folder or a melody that was downloaded from an i-mode or Internet site and stored in the "Inbox" or in a folder you have created.
2 **i-motion**	Selects an i-motion that was downloaded to the FOMA terminal or a movie (i-motion) that was shot using the FOMA terminal camera and then stored in the "Inbox", "Camera" or "Pre-installed" folder or in a folder you have created. When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound for the selected i-motion (Chaku-motion).
3 **Voice announce**	Chooses the "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recording made using Voice Announce as the ring tone. The FOMA terminal plays the recording when you receive a call or message.
4 **Random melody**	Select a folder containing saved melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies saved in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
5 **OFF**	The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

3 Select a melody and press ●.

When you highlight a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody. Press ☎, 1, #, ◁, ▷, ▭ or 0 to stop the melody.

Once you have set the ring tone, set the receiving display if required. If you selected an i-motion as the ring tone, the selection procedure ends here.

■ To check the setting

Press ◁ (Play).

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display	3D sound compatible
Ring tone 1-3	—
Melody 1	○
Melody 2	○
Melody 3	○
Melody 4	—
Melody 5	○
Melody 6	○
Melody 7	○
Melody 8	○
Melody 9	○
Melody 10	○
Alarm 1	—
Alarm 2	○
Alarm 3	—
Alarm 4	—
Alarm 5	—
Alarm 6	—
Alarm 7	○
Alarm 8	○

Recording patent No.: T-04A0078 JASRAC

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

"3D Sound Cruise" is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "i-motion".

Continued on next page

Note

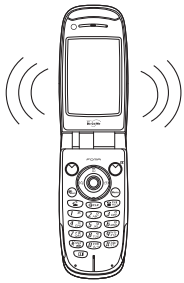
- The volume at which the melody is played back during ring tone selection is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume". If "Silent" is set, the melody is not played back.
- Where the downloading of a melody, its use as an e-mail attachment or its transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited, the portion of the melody that can be played back may also be prescribed. When a melody of this sort is set as a ring tone, only the prescribed portion is played.
- If you "Set as ring tone" in "Melody", this setting is also set to the same ring tone. →P. 393
- If you "Set as ring tone" in "i-motion", this setting is also set to the same ring tone. →P. 372
- Depending on the combination of receiving display, ring tone and precedence setting, either the receiving display or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- You can use "Call setting w/o ID" to set a ring tone for voice calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID. The ring tone used for video-phone calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID is determined by the "Video-phone" setting in this function.
- Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities →P. 107
  ② Ring tone for group utilities →P. 107
  ③ Ring tone for select ring tone (video-phone) →P. 114
  ④ Ring tone for call setting w/o ID →P. 154
  ⑤ Ring tone for select ring tone (except for video-phone) →P. 114
  The phonebook utilities or group utilities' priority order is as follows (① has the highest precedence):
  ① i-motion ring tone
  ② i-motion image
  ③ i-motion ring tone (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice)
- If an i-motion (video only) is set in the receiving display, 3D sound is set to OFF for the melody set as the ring tone.
- If you have activated "Call Waiting" when an i-motion is set as the ring tone, the ring tone used when you finish the current voice call is "Ring tone 1" and not the i-motion.

What is 3D Sound?

The 3D sound function is a function that uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce a 3 dimensional and resonating sound. The 3D surround sound function allows you to enjoy i-αppli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sound.

How to Listen to 3D Sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, holding the FOMA terminal approximately 20 to 30 cm in distance away from you and facing you will produce the best results. If the FOMA terminal is facing to the right or left, or you are too close to it, you will not be able to produce the best results.
- Note that if you listen off-center or if you are too close or too far away from the FOMA, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set "Surround", "3DSound" and "SRS_WOW" (P. 117) all to "OFF".



<Sound effect>

Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default settings	Set surround: OFF; Set 3D sound: ON; SRS_WOW setting: OFF

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when the FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for incoming calls, sound effects and i-motion sound.

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 4 GHI ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Surround	▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of the 2 speakers.

2 3Dsound	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. You can play sound in 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.
3 SRS_WOW	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. See “Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound” →P. 117

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion that uses sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and through headphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo playback sound played through headphones is enhanced by effects that give a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- Icons in the Movie List display show which i-motions use sound effects. →P. 346
- See “Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies”. →P. 116

<Vibrator>

Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls

Default settings	All OFF

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, video-phone call, e-mail, Chat-mail or Message Request/Free.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 4 GHI ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.
2 Video-phone	Sets vibration for video-phone calls.
3 Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mail and SMS.
4 Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mail.
5 Message Request	Sets vibration for Message Request.
6 Message Free	Sets vibration for Message Free.

2 Select the vibration pattern.

1 Pattern 1	Vibrates in pattern 1.
2 Pattern 2	Vibrates in pattern 2.
3 Pattern 3	Vibrates in pattern 3.
4 Melody linkage	The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is set for the melody, or if an i-motion is set as the ring tone, pattern 2 is used.
5 OFF	The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern.
An icon in the stand-by display shows the current vibrator setting.

: Shows that the vibrator is set for either voice calls or video-phone calls.

: Shows that the vibrator is set for one or more of mail, chat mail, and Message Request/Free. The “Mail/Msg. ring time” settings must all be “ON”.

: Shows that the vibrator is set for both and .

Continued on next page

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is set to vibrate, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- When "Ring volume" is not set to "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of received calls. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibrator vibrates at a set strength regardless of the ring volume setting.
- The vibrator should be set to "OFF" during charging.
- If the vibrator setting is duplicated in the "Utilities" function for the phonebook or "Utilities" function for the group, the priority is as follows (where ① has the highest precedence):
  ① The vibrator setting phonebook utilities ② The vibrator setting specified in group utilities ③ The vibrator setting

<Keypad sound>

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default settings	ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
  - Warning tones
  - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
  - Battery low warning tone
  - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad sound is the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not talking on the phone.
- The confirmation sound is not limited to this function and sounds in the following operations:
  - When (Memo/Check) is pressed while the FOMA terminal is closed.
  - When a shot is taken with a camera.
  - Start/Finish of memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver.).
  - Start/Finish of voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver.).
- When setting the keypad tone from the initial settings (P. 44), you do not need to press Menu 3 0 in step (1).

1 Press Menu 3 0 ▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default settings	ON

This function allows you to set the FOMA terminal so that it emits a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone sounds in the following situations regardless of the setting specified in this function:
  - When a display other than the stand-by display
  - When a call is being received
  - When the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode
  - During recording of a stand-by voice memo
  - During data communication
  - When a call is being sent
  - During a talk
  - When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode
  - During recording of a voice announce
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊖ ▶ Press 1 "Other settings" ▶ Select "Charge sound" and press ● ▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

<Quality alarm>

Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default settings	High tone

The FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or video-phone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 Press Menu 7 5 ▶ Select 1 "No tone", 2 "High tone" or 3 "Low tone".

<Mail/Msg. ring time>

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail

Default settings	5 seconds

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive mail, chat mail or a Message Request/Free, and if so, the duration of the ring tone.

1 Press Menu 6 8 ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Mail	Sets the ring duration for i-mode mail and SMS.
2 Chat mail	Sets the ring duration for chat mail.
3 Message Request	Sets the ring duration for Message Request.
4 Message Free	Sets the ring duration for Message Free.

2 Select whether the ring tone will sound.

1 ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) The FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, just press ●.
2 OFF	The FOMA terminal does not ring.

Note

- When "OFF" is selected in "Mail", "Chat mail", "Msg. Request" or "Msg. Free", the or icon appears in the stand-by display.

<Earphone>

Switching the Ring Tone to Earphone-only

Default settings	Earphone + Speaker

Use this procedure when you are using an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to set the FOMA terminal so that the ring tone does not sound through the speaker.

1 Press Menu 5 1 ▶ Select 1 "Earphone + Speaker" or 2 "Earphone".

Note

- When "Earphone" is set in this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker if no earphone/microphone is connected.
- Even when only "Earphone" is set, the ring tone sounds when a call arrives and after roughly 20 seconds the ring tone is played through both the earphone and the speaker. However, when the ring tone sounds for procedures other than an alarm notification or incoming voice or video-phone call, the ring tone is not played through the speaker after 20 seconds and is only played through the earphone.
- Do not wrap the cord for the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) around the FOMA terminal. Note also that leaving the cord for the earphone/microphone with switch (optional) near the FOMA terminal during a call may cause interference (noise).

<Manner mode>

Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, this function allows you to stop the FOMA terminal playing ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker with a single touch.

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the following tones are replaced by vibrations:
  - Ring tones*1

Continued on next page

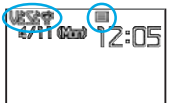
・Alarm clock, schedule and ToDo alarm tones*2
・Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded

*1: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.

*2: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Phone” in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.

● In “Manner mode set”, you can choose “Manner mode”, “Super silent” or “Original” as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set. →P. 120

1 Hold down (#) for 1 second or longer while the stand-by display is shown or during a call.



The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and appears on the display.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is now set.

As well as , the information specified in “Manner mode set” is displayed when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.

, , : Indicate that the FOMA terminal will warn you using “Vibrator”.

, , : Indicate that “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”.

- : Indicate that “Record msg.” is set to record caller messages. Indicates the number of recorded messages.

■ To cancel Manner mode

When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, hold down (#) for 1 second or longer while the stand-by display is shown or during a call. Manner mode is cancelled and disappears from the display.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is no longer set.

Note

● When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal still plays the shutter sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.

● If you try to play a melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. If you play a melody or recorded voice, it is played at the volume set in “Phone” in the “Ring volume” setting. If the ring volume is set to “Silent” or “Step”, it is played at the “Level 2” volume.

<Manner mode set>

Modifying Manner Mode

Default settings	Manner mode

This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

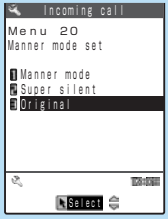
● At the time of purchase, the “Original” manner mode is set up as follows:

・Record message: OFF
・Mail vol.: Silent
・Keypad sound: OFF
・Vibrator: ON
・Alarm vol.: Silent
・Mic sensitive.: Up
・Phone vol.: Silent
・VM tone: ON
・LVA tone: OFF

1 **Press** (Menu) (2 ABC) (0 わを ん～).

The “Manner mode settings display” appears.

2 **Choose from the following options.**



Manner mode settings display

1 **Manner mode**	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through the earphone (the confirmation tones sounded when (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) are not muted.
2 **Super silent**	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earphone and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
3 **Original**	This option allows you to tailor the Manner mode settings to your own preferences. You can specify in advance what volume is set for alarm clock alarm tones and how the FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set.

Original manner

In the manner mode settings display... ➡ P. 121

1 **Press** (3 DEF さ) **“Original” ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 **Record msg.**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“ON” or** (2 ABC カ) **“OFF”.** Specifies the Record Msg. setting. See “Having the Caller Leave a Message” →P. 70
2 **Vibrator**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“ON” or** (2 ABC カ) **“OFF”.** Sets the vibrator. See “Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” →P. 117
3 **Phone vol.**	▶ **Press** ↕ **to adjust the volume and then press** ●. Sets the ring tone volume for voice and video-phone calls. See “Adjusting the Ring Volume” →P. 65
4 **Mail vol.**	▶ **Press** ↕ **to adjust the volume and then press** ●. Sets the ring tone volume for mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free. See “Adjusting the Ring Volume” →P. 65
5 **Alarm vol.**	▶ **Press** ↕ **to adjust the volume and then press** ●. Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. See “Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock” →P. 435
6 **VM tone**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“ON” or** (2 ABC カ) **“OFF”.** Sets confirmation tones such as “Record Msg.” and “Voice memo”.
7 **Keypad sound**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“ON” or** (2 ABC カ) **“OFF”.** Sets the keypad tone. See “Setting the Keypad Tone” →P. 118
8 **Mic sensitiv.**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“Normal” or** (2 ABC カ) **“Up”.** Sets the microphone sensitivity during calls.
9 **LVA tone**	▶ **Select** (1 あ) **“ON” or** (2 ABC カ) **“OFF”.** Sets the battery low alarm. See “When the battery runs out” →P. 42

2 **After completing the settings, press** (左) **(Finish).**

■ When you set Manner mode

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (shows the Original manner mode settings)
Record Msg. activation	OFF		“Record msg.” setting.
Vibrator	ON		“Vibrator” setting.
Ring volume for voice and video-phone calls	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting.

Continued on next page

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (shows the Original manner mode settings)
Ring volume for mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free	Silent		"Mail vol." setting.
Alarm clock alarm volume	Silent		"Alarm vol." setting.
Schedule/ToDo alarm volume	Silent		"Phone vol." setting.
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" setting.
Keypad tones	OFF		"Keypad sound" setting.
Microphone sensitivity during calls*	Up		"Mic sensitiv." setting.
In-call busy hold tone	OFF		"Phone vol." setting. Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at level 1 for settings other than "Silent".
In-call reply hold tone	OFF		"Phone vol." setting. Sounds at level 2 when "Step" is set.
Battery low alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" setting. Even when set to "ON", the battery low alarm sounds at level 1 if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" in this function.
Missed call/New mail confirmation tone when the FOMA terminal is folded	OFF		"Phone vol." setting. Sounds at a set volume when "Step" is set.
Reading out received mail	"Phone vol." setting. Mail is read out at the "Level 1" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.		

*: If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of the voice heard by the other party is increased when you speak quietly during the call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

Note

- The ringing time used for recorded messages is the time set in "Record message" (P. 70). However, if "OFF" is set in "Record message", a ringing time of 8 seconds is used here.
- If the FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls and alarms when Manner mode is set, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>

Changing the Display

Default settings	Stand-by display: Shade In The Room Wake-up display: Welcome Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP dialing: Standard VP calling: Standard Mail send/receive: Standard Check new message: Standard

Use this procedure to display your favorite images, such as photographed or downloaded images, on the FOMA terminal display.

- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- A sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice) cannot be specified as the receive display.
- Depending on the i-motion, there may be items that cannot be specified.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 6 MNO.

The “Display setting display” appears.
If an option other than i-motion is set in the calling display, set the ring tone as required.

2 Choose from the following Options:



Display setting display

1 Stand-by display	See “Changing the stand-by display image” →P. 124		
2 Wake-up display	1 OFF	No images are displayed.	
	2 Message	▶Enter a message and press ●. The message can contain up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters.	
	3 My picture	▶Choose from the following options: Select an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
		2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
		3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
		4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
3 Dialing	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image displayed when you make a voice call. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.	
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.	
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.	
4 Calling	▶Choose from the following options: Allow you to set the ring tones and display for received calls.		
	1 Select ring tone	See “Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” →P. 114	
	2 Select calling disp.	See “Set a calling display or mail receiving display” →P. 124	
5 VP Dialing	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display shown when you make video-phone calls. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.	
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.	
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.	
6 VP Calling	▶Choose from the following options: Allow you to set the ring tones and calling display for received video-phone calls.		
	1 Select ring tone	See “Changing the FOMA Terminal’s Ring Tone” →P. 114	
	2 Select calling disp.	See “Set a calling display or mail receiving display” →P. 124	
7 Mail sending	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image displayed when you send i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.	
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.	
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.	

Continued on next page

8 Mail receiving	▶Choose from the following options: Allow you to set the ring tones and calling display.	
	1 Select ring tone	Sets the ring tone used when you receive i-mode mail, SMS or Message Request/Free. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" →P. 114
	2 Select calling disp.	See "Set a calling display or mail receiving display" →P. 124
9 Check new message	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image displayed when you send a message checking for new messages. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.

Set a calling display or mail receiving display

<Example: Set a calling display for the calling>

In the display setting display... ➡ P. 123

1 Press 4 GHI "Calling" ▶Press 2 ABC "Select calling disp." ▶Choose the following options:

1 My picture	▶Choose from the following options: Select an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.
2 i-motion*	▶Choose from the following options: Select an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. You may not be able to set some i-motions.	
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Sets one of the pre-installed i-motions.

*: "i-motion" is not displayed in the mail receiving display.

To check the settings

Press ◉左 (Play).

Note

- Priority is assigned as follows for image display when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Phonebook utilities image →P. 107 ② Group utilities image →P. 107
  ③ Add to phonebook image →P. 92 ④ i-motion for select ring tone →P. 114
  ⑤ Display setting →P. 122
- The phonebook utilities or group utilities' priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  ① i-motion ring tone ② i-motion image or still image • movie
- Priority is assigned as follows when display settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Auto display ② i-αppli standby ③ Display settings
- Flash images can be set in the "Calling display" or "Receiving display", but the ring tone used is the tone set in "Select ring tone", which is played repeatedly until you answer the call.

Changing the stand-by display image

- "Calendar" can only be selected if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- The 10 pre-installed images are shown below.


Welcome


Hit Chart



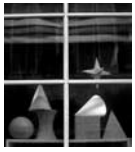
Quiet Life


Make A Trick


Supreme


Wish


Shade In The Room


Window Display


Siki-kai


Miyabi

In the display setting display... ➡ P. 123

1 Press 1 “Stand-by display” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 OFF	No images are displayed.		
2 Calendar	▶ Choose from the following options: Select a calendar.		
	1 Background	▶ Choose from the following options: You can use this option to select and set the background image for the calendar. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.
		2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.
		3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	2 No background	Displays the calendar only.	
3 My picture	▶ Choose from the following options: Select an image. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.	
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.	
	3 Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	4 Original animation	Sets one of the original animations.	
4 i-motion	▶ Choose from the following options: Select an i-motion. If you have created image folders, they are displayed after the “Pre-installed” option. You may not be able to set some i-motions.		
	1 Inbox	Sets one of the images downloaded from i-mode and Internet web sites.	
	2 Camera	Sets an image shot using the camera.	
	3 Pre-installed	Sets one of the pre-installed i-motions.	
5 i-αppli display	Sets the i-αppli stand-by display. When the i-αppli stand-by display is set, a star (★) is displayed. See “Setting the i-αppli Stand-by Display”. →P. 329		

■ When you set the calendar in the stand-by display

A calendar appears in the stand-by display. You can quickly and easily refer to previous calendar dates and activate the schedule.

■ To check the adjacent months on the calendar

Press ● in the stand-by display or slide your finger over ● so that the pointer moves over the calendar so that the calendar month can be selected. Then press ● again or select the calendar month with the pointer and press ◁ to display the previous month or ▷ to display the next month.

Continued on next page

If there are any desktop icons added to the desktop, pressing ● selects the desktop icon or calendar month selected previously. If a desktop icon was selected, select the calendar and then press ● again or select the calendar with the pointer and press ○ to display the previous month or ○ to display the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

With the calendar selected, press ● to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

Note

- If there is a movie or i-motion set in the stand-by display, the movie or i-motion is played when you open the FOMA terminal. Press ○, ○, CLR, ○, ○, ○, ○ or ● to stop playback. When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, only the image is played (no sound).
- If "Automatic display" is set, the "Automatic display" setting has precedence and no image is displayed when you open the FOMA terminal.
- If "i-αppli display" has been used to set the i-αppli stand-by display, the "i-αppli display" setting has priority.
- The melody set to the Flash image of the stand-by display is not played.

<Disp. phonebook image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default settings	ON

Use this procedure to specify whether an image is displayed when you receive a voice or video-phone call from a phone number that is stored in the phonebook and a still image is also stored in that phonebook entry.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 1あ "Incoming call" ▶ Select "Disp. PH-book image" and press ● ▶ Press 1あ "ON" or 2ABC "OFF".

Note

- Priority is assigned as follows for image display when call mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  - ① Phonebook utilities image →P. 107
  - ② Group utilities image →P. 107
  - ③ Add to phonebook image →P. 92
  - ④ i-motion for select ring tone →P. 114
  - ⑤ Display setting →P. 122
- The phonebook utilities or group utilities' priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
  - ① i-motion ring tone
  - ② i-motion image or still image • movie
- The incoming display or ring tone may operate with the default setting depending upon a combination or priority of the incoming display and ring tone.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data are not displayed.

Setting the Indicator Display Mode

Default settings	Setting: Display information Contrast: Level 5 Clock type: Digital Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF)

Use this procedure to set the type of clock or message displayed in the indicator display and adjust the LCD contrast.

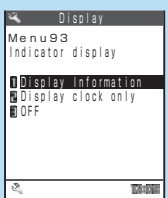
The default settings for "Display clock only" are as follows:

• Contrast: Level 5 • Clock type: Digital

1 Press Menu 9WXYZ 3DEF.

The "Indicator display setting display" appears.

2 Choose from the following options:



Indicator display setting display

1 Display information	▶Choose from the following options: Display text and information.		
	1 Contrast	▶Use ◉ to adjust the contrast and press ●. The display contrast can be adjusted through 9 levels from 1 (low) to 9 (high).	
	2 Clock type	▶Choose from the following options: Select the clock type.	
		1 Analog 1	Sets the analog 1 clock.
		2 Analog 2	Sets the analog 2 clock.
		3 Analog 3	Sets the analog 3 clock.
		4 Digital	Sets the digital clock.
	3 Phone number	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. Specify whether to display the caller’s phone number when you receive a voice call.	
	4 Mail	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. Specify whether to display the sender’s e-mail address, subject and the arrival date and time when you receive mail.	
	5 Connection	Specify whether to display text showing the connection status while you are dialing a voice or video-phone call, during the call itself, and during infrared or data communication. See “Setting the image display during a call”. →P. 127	
2 Display clock only	▶Choose from the following options: Display the clock only.		
	1 Contrast	▶Use ◉ to adjust the contrast and press ●. The display contrast can be adjusted through 9 levels from 1 (low) to 9 (high).	
	2 Clock type	▶Choose from the following options: Select the clock type.	
		1 Analog 1	Sets the analog 1 clock.
		2 Analog 2	Sets the analog 2 clock.
		3 Analog 3	Sets the analog 3 clock.
		4 Digital	Sets the digital clock.
3 OFF	No text or clock is displayed.		

Note

- Setting indicator display to “OFF” disables all its display functions except during some operations or when the camera is being used.
- If you select “Digital” in “Clock type”, this also applies to the “Display” setting in “Clock display”.
- The time displayed when “Analog 1-3” is set is an approximate guide only.
- The subject is not displayed for mail that has been automatically sorted into a folder for which mail security is set.

Setting the image display during a call

In the indicator display setting display... ➡ P. 126

1 Press 1 “Display information” ▶Press 5 “Connection” ▶Choose the following options:

1 ON	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. Displays the in-call status and sets the backlight to “ON”.
2 OFF	Does not display the in-call status.

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default settings	Lighting: ON (lit) + Power saving (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

Use this procedure to specify the lighting settings for the display, keypad and backlight.

1 Press Menu 7 QRS 0 ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Lighting	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the normal lighting settings for the backlight. When "OFF" is selected, the icon appears on the stand-by display.		
	1 ON	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the Power Saving mode options.	
		1 ON	▶ Enter a delay time (02-20 minutes). Once the specified delay has elapsed, the stand-by display and indicator display turn off (Power Saving mode). Set the delay before the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press ●.
		2 OFF	Disables Power Saving mode.
	2 OFF	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the Power Saving mode options.	
		1 ON	▶ Enter a delay time (02-20 minutes). Once the specified delay has elapsed, the stand-by display and indicator display turn off (Power Saving mode). Set the delay before the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press ●.
		2 OFF	Disables Power Saving mode.
2 Charging	▶ Selects 1 あ "Standard" or 2 ABC "All time ON". Select the lighting settings for the backlight during charging.		
3 Area	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the area that is backlit.		
	1 LCD+Keys	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad.	
	2 LCD	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel only.	
4 Brightness	▶ Selects 1 あ "Level 3", 2 ABC "Level 2" or 3 DEF "Level 1". Select the brightness.		

Note

- You can also turn the backlight on or off by holding down 5 JKL for 1 second or longer.
- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight turns on when a call is received and lights for roughly 15 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the FOMA terminal keys, and fold or unfold the FOMA terminal. The backlight also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select "OFF", the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight turns on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- Even if the "Charging" setting is set to "ALL time ON", when the charge light turns off after charging is completed, the phone operates using the "Lighting" settings.
- Even if the "Charging" setting is set to "ALL time ON" during charging, if there is no operations performed for about is seconds, the brightness of the display backlight is set to "Level 1" to increase charging efficiency.
- When the body of a mail or a Message Request/Free is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- If the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saving mode while it is unfolded, ☆ and ☆ flash for roughly 5 seconds. Press any of the FOMA terminal's keys to cancel Power Saving mode.
- If you select "Display clock only" in "Indicator display" and then fold the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal does not switch to Power Saving mode when the specified delay has elapsed.

<Display design>

Changing the Display Color

Default settings	Color pattern: Standard Background1: OFF Background2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change the design of the text, background, the upper and lower sections of the display, and the software keys.

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 6 MNO ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Color pattern	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the colors used for the display. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.	
	1 Pattern 1	Sets pattern 1.
	2 Pattern 2	Sets pattern 2.
	3 Pattern 3	Sets pattern 3.
	4 Pattern 4	Sets pattern 4.
	5 Pattern 5	Sets pattern 5.
2 Background1	▶ Choose from the following options: Select background pattern 1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display). If you set a 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA vertical) image in the stand-by display, it is displayed as described below. When "OFF" is set, no background is displayed in the upper part of the display and the entire image is shown. If any other setting is selected, the selected background appears in the upper part of the display and overlaps the top 25 dots of the image. Select this option to give precedence to displaying the icons in the upper part of the image.	
	1 OFF	Sets no pattern (not displayed).
	2 Pattern 1	Sets pattern 1.
	3 Pattern 2	Sets pattern 2.
	4 Pattern 3	Sets pattern 3.
	5 Pattern 4	Sets pattern 4.
	6 Pattern 5	Sets pattern 5.
	7 Pattern 6	Sets pattern 6.
	8 Pattern 7	Sets pattern 7.
	9 Pattern 8	Sets pattern 8.
3 Background2	▶ Selects 1 "Pattern 1", 2 ABC "Pattern 2" or 3 DEF "Pattern 3". Select the pattern used for background 2 (the background pattern for the software keys). The selected pattern appears on the display during selection.	

Note

- Changing the color in this function does not change the color of icons and images. There are also some types of data and functions that are not affected by changes to the settings in this function, such as the screens for i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode <Set menu display>

Default settings	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: Detail Theme: Light & Shade

This feature allows you to specify whether the guidance display for main setting (function) icons selected in the main function selection display and for minor settings (functions) in the "Settings" menu is shown in detail or as a list. You can also use this procedure to set the background and icons in the main settings selection display.

● Original menus are displayed as lists, regardless of the setting in this function.

Guidance displays



"Picture & Text"

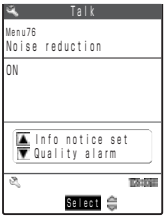


"Text"

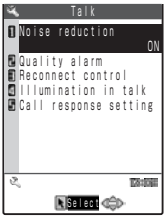


"OFF"

Menu displays



"Detail"



"List"

Themes



"Light & Shade"



"ステンシル"*

*Cannot be displayed in English by changing the "Select language" setting to English.

1 **Press Menu 5 JKL 7 PQRS.**

The "Menu display settings menu display" appears.

2 **Choose from the following options:**



Menu display settings display

Menu display settings menu

1 Guidance	▶Choose from the following options: Set the guidance display for the main settings.	
	1 Picture & Text	Displays the guidance using pictures and text.
	2 Text	Displays the guidance using text.
	3 OFF	No guidance is displayed.
2 Menu display	▶Select 1 あ "Detail" or 2 ABC "List". Set the display mode for the minor settings.	
3 Theme	▶Choose from the following options: Set the background and icons used in the main settings selection display.	
	1 Light & Shade	Sets Light & shade.
	2 ステンシル	Sets stencil.
	3 Original theme	See "Changing the main menu display" →P. 131

Changing the main menu display

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used in the main setting selection display (main menu).

In the menu display settings display... ➡ P. 131

1 **Press J DEF "Theme" ▶Press J DEF "Original theme"**

The "Original theme display" appears.
Select an image from the "My picture" pre-installed menu folder.

2 **Choose from the following options:**



Original theme display

Original theme menu

1 Mail	Sets the mail icon image.
2 i-mode	Sets the i-mode icon image.
3 i-αppli	Sets the i-αppli icon image.
4 Settings	Sets the settings icon image.
5 Data box	Sets the data box icon image.
6 Tool	Sets the tool icon image.
7 Network service	Sets the network service icon image.
8 Phonebook	Sets the phonebook icon image.
9 Own data	Sets the own data image.

Continued on next page

0 Background image	Sets the background image. This can also be used to set the color of the multi-task group frame. See "Multi Tasking" →P. 431

■ **To set the multi-task group frame**

Select Background image and press (左) (Play) ▶ (右) (Frame) ▶ Press ⊕ and select a color from the color palette, then press ●.

When you are selecting the color, pressing (左) (Change) switches the colors between 16 colors and 256 colors.

Note

- You can check the image for the selected setting by pressing (左) (Play) in the selection display.
- If even one image that is subject to UIM restriction functions is set as a menu icon or background image, the original theme will revert to the default theme set at the time of shipment if you change or remove the UIM card.
- You can set a JPEG, GIF or animated GIF image with a file size of 100 KB or less and an image size of up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.
- An animated GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animated GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Using the function menu in the original theme display

In the original theme display... ➡ P. 131

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Original theme settings display function menu

1 Reset	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
2 All reset	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

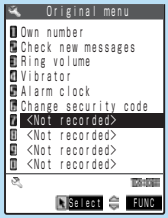
Creating an Original Menu <Store original menu entry>

Default settings	Show own number, Check new message, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

- You can store up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be included in the original menu are the main settings for "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-αppli", and the medium and minor settings (functions) for "Settings", "Data box", "Tool", "Network service", "Phonebook" and "Own data".
- You cannot store the same function twice.

1 Press Menu 5 JKL 2 ABC.

The "Store original menu entry display" appears.



Store original menu entry display

2 Select an "<Not recorded>" entry and press ● ▶ Use ⊕ to select a menu category.

■ **To change a function added previously**

Select the entry for the added function and press ●.

3 Select the function to be added and press ●.

■ **When the selected category is "i-mode".**

You can only select the major settings for "Mail", "i-mode" or "i-αppli".

Note

- If you attempt to add an entry (FUNC) that has already been added, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

Using the function menu in the store original menu entry display

In the store original menu entry display... ➡ P. 132

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Store original menu entry display function menu

1 Add to org. menu	Stores an entry in the original menu.
2 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" → P. 136
3 Reset org. menu	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Restores the default entries set at the time of purchase.
4 Release	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Release all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

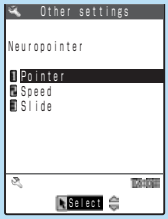
Default settings	Pointer: ON Simple: Speed (Standard)

To make the pointer (: Blue or : White) controlled by the neuropointer key (●) easier to use, you can use this procedure to turn the pointer on or off and set the speed of pointer movement.

- When setting the neuropointer speed from the initial settings (P. 44), select either "1 Normal" or "2 High" in "Simple" (P. 134).
- The pointer can be used when appears on the display.
- When the pointer is blue ( ), moving the pointer automatically selects the text. When the pointer is white ( ), moving the pointer will not automatically select the text. The pointer is white ( ) on the i-motion preview and title list screen. →P. 370

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ▶ Press 1 "Other settings" ▶ Select "Neuropointer" and press ●.

The "Neuropointer display" appears.



Neuropointer display

2 Choose from the following options:

Neuropointer menu

1 Pointer	▶ Selects 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Set the pointer display.	
2 Speed	See "Adjusting the pointer movement speed" → P. 133	
3 Slide	1 Adjust	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Slide your finger over the neuropointer key as instructed by the on-screen guidance.
	2 Reset	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Adjusting the pointer movement speed

In the neuropointer display... ➡ P. 133

Continued on next page

1 **Press 2 ABC “Speed” ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 Simple	▶ Selects 1 あ “Normal” or 2 ABC “High” ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Choose from 2 speed settings.	
2 Detail	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the speed settings for each display.	
	1 Standard	▶ Use ↕ to select “FIRST”, “LOW” or “HIGH” ▶ Use ↔ to adjust the speed ▶ Select “OK”. The speed can be adjusted from level 0 (left end) to level 11 (right end). Move the key to the right to increase the speed and to the left to decrease the speed.
	2 MainMenu	
	3 T9/Prediction	
	4 Software*	
3 Reset	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.	

*: This setting may be not applicable depending on an i-αppli.

<illumination>

Setting the Call Alert Indicator Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls

Default settings	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 Message Request: Color 1 Message Free: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flashing pattern) in which the call alert indicator flashes when you receive voice or video-phone calls, mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free.
The table below lists the available settings.

- You can set different flashing colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from specific phone numbers, e-mail addresses and groups. →P. 107
- The flashing pattern for ← and → is the same as that set for the call alert indicator except that they flash orange.

1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 9 WXYZ ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 Set color	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the color pattern. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.	
	1 Phone	▶ Select a color and press ●. Selects the flashing color respectively. Color 1 to 12: Each color blinks. Gradation: The color 1 to 12 blinks in order.
	2 Video-phone	
	3 Mail	
	4 Chat mail	
	5 Message Request	
	6 Message Free	
2 Set pattern	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the call alert indicator flashing pattern.	
	1 Standard	Sets the standard flashing pattern.
	2 Melody linkage	Sets a melody-linked flashing pattern. If flashing mode is not set to the melody or Chaku-motion is received, flashing with the standard pattern.
3 Adjust color	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the color.	
	1 Edit color name	▶ Select the color and press ● ▶ Enter the color name and then press ●. The color name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
	2 Adjust color tone	▶ Select the color and press ● ▶ Use ✣ to adjust the color tone.

Note

- If "Ring tone 1-3" is selected in the Ring tone setting, the call alert indicator flashes in time to the melody regardless of the setting specified in this function.
- Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when call mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
  ① Illumination for phonebook utilities ② Illumination for group utilities ③ Illumination setting
- If "Melody linkage" is set and there is no vibration pattern stored for melody linkage in the ring tones, the "Standard" pattern is used.
- If an i-motion is selected in "Select ring tone", the call alert indicator flashes in the "Standard" pattern.
- While the FOMA terminal is exchanging data with the miniSD memory card, the FOMA terminal flashes at "Color 5" regardless of the setting specified in this function.

<Illumination in talk>

Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Call Alert Indicator

Default settings	OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the call alert indicator flashes during a voice or video-phone call.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 2 ABC "Talk" ▶ Select "Illumination in talk" and press ● ▶ Select the color and press ●.

OFF: The call alert indicator for incoming call is not blinked.
Color 1 to 7: Each color blinks.
Gradation 1 to 3: The color 1 to 7 blinks in order.

Note

- While recording "Record message", playing the answer message or while on answer hold, the call alert indicator flashes in the same pattern as during a call.

<Call time display>

Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls

Default settings	ON

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal displays the call time during voice and video-phone calls.

- If the call time exceeds "19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the count restarts from "0 seconds".
- The displayed call time is intended solely as a guide and should not used as an accurate figure.
- No call time is calculated during i-mode or packet communication.

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 8 TUV ▶ Select 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC "OFF".

<Font>

Changing the Font

Default settings	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Use this procedure to change the text shown in the display and indicator display to your preferred font (typeface).

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 6 MNO ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Type	▶ Select 1 あ "Font 1" or 2 ABC "Font 2". Selects the font. A sample of the selected font appears at the bottom of the display.
2 Thickness	▶ Select 1 あ "Thin", 2 ABC "Medium" or 3 DEF "Bold". Selects the thickness. A text sample in the selected thickness appears at the bottom of the display.

Continued on next page

Note

- You can only change to "Font 2" for alphabetic letters (full-pitch or half-pitch), numbers (full-pitch or half-pitch), hiragana and katakana (full-pitch or half-pitch) and some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. Kanji and all other characters are displayed in "Font 1". The text used for phone number input and clock display also cannot be changed to "Font 2".
- Regardless of the setting specified in this function, the settings in this function do not apply to text displayed in the indicator display.

<Clock display>

Setting the Clock Display

Default settings	Display: ON Size: Big

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 9 WXYZ ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Display	▶ Select 1 "ON", 2 ABC "OFF".
2 Size	▶ Select 1 "Big", or 2 ABC "Small". Sets the clock size.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Adding frequently called phone numbers and frequently used functions to the stand-by display as desktop icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions.

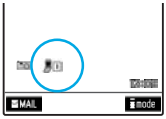
- The following can be added into the stand-by display as desktop icons:
  - Phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies, i-motions, "Chara-den" characters, i-αppli programs
  - The camera, ToDo list display, access reader, bar code reader, infrared receive, dictionary and original menu functions
- You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the stand-by display.
- Original animations and melodies or images that were pre-installed on the FOMA terminal cannot be added as desktop icons.

Adding desktop icons

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu on the display of the function you want to add, the data list display, or the details display.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

See "3 Add desktop icon" in the "Phonebook detail display function menu 2/4" table in "Using the function menu in the phonebook detail display". →P. 101



Titles of added desktop icons

Displayed icon	Type	Title
1	Phone number	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
1	e-mail address	Name stored in the phonebook (e-mail address if no name is stored)
SMS 1	SMS address	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
1	URL	Page title (URL excluding "http://" or "https://" if no title is stored)
1	Melody	Melody title ("Melody" if no title is stored)

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Image	Image file name (“Image” if no file name is stored)
	Movie or i-motion Movie or i-motion	Movie or i-motion title (“i-motion” if no title is stored)
	Chara-den	Chara-den title (“Chara-den” if no title is stored)
	i-αppli software	Software name
	Camera	The respective function name
	ToDo	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters of the title are displayed.

Using desktop icons to retrieve data or functions

1 In the stand-by display, press ●.

The “Desktop icon display” appears.
The title of the icon in the current cursor location is displayed.



Desktop icon display

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to retrieve.

■ **If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored**

The ◆ icon is shown on the left or right of the display. You can use ○ to scroll through the icons.

3 Press ●.

Using the function menu in the desktop icon display

In the desktop icon display... ➡ P. 137

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Desktop icon display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press ●. The title can contain up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 Reset desktop	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. The desktop reverts to its default status at the time of purchase (“Camera” only).
3 Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Checking desktop icon information

1 **Press Menu 6 MNO 3 DEF.**

The “Desktop display” appears.

2 **Select a desktop icon title and press ●.**



Desktop display

Note

● In the desktop icon information display for URLs, you can use ◎ to scroll the display and check all the URLs.

Using the function menu in the desktop display

In the desktop display... ➡ P. 138

1 **Press ◎右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Desktop display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press ●. The title can contain up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” ➡P. 526
2 Reset desktop	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. The desktop reverts to its default status at the time of purchase (“Camera” only).
3 Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Desktop icons that provide information

Icon	Information provided	Subsequent display/Activation details
New	Notifies you of received mail, including mail received while you were out of signal range.	Shows the list display for the Inbox folder containing your latest mail.
CHAT	Notifies you of received chat mail.	Shows the Chat display.
MISS	Notifies you of missed mail.	Displays the “Missed calls” record.
MSG	Notifies you of recorded messages.	Launches “Play/Erase msg.”.
VM	Notifies you that you have recorded messages at the Voice Mail Service Center.	Launches “Voice mail”.
MISS	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm.	Displays the information for the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
Not run	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to automatically launch an i-αppli.	Shows the “Auto start” display.
APPLI	Notifies you that the i-αppli stand-by display shut down due to an error.	Displays the security error history.
UPDATE	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Shows the update results display after you enter your security code.

Note

- You cannot make a call before completing the procedure for displaying the confirmation display from a desktop icon notifying you of information. When "Operation preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided. Press (iモード) or (CLR) to return to the stand-by display before performing the operation.
- Even when there is no "New mail" icon displayed, there may still be new mail at the i-mode Center that has not been received on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, there may still be recorded messages at the Voice Mail Service Center even when there is no "Voice mail" icon displayed.
- Desktop icons that notify you of information are deleted once the respective functions are launched. To clear all the icons, hold down the (CLR) key for 1 second or longer.
- If you select "Not display" for "Missed calls display" in the "Ringing time" setting, calls that you missed during the time taken for the FOMA terminal to start ringing do not appear in the Received calls record. However, this excludes calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

<Select icons setting>

Selecting the Icons in the Stand-by Display

Default settings	ON

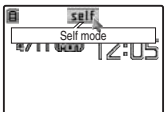
You can use this procedure to select the display icons, date or time in the stand-by display using the neuropointer.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ◎ ▶ Press 1 "Other settings" ▶ Select "Select icons setting" and press ● ▶ Press 1 "ON".

■ **To make icons not selectable**
Press 2 "OFF".

Selecting a display icon with the neuropointer

1 In the stand-by display, slide your finger over ● to display the neuropointer, and move the cursor to the icon you want to check.

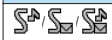
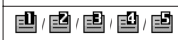
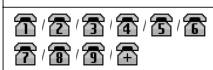


The icon title appears.
You can also select the date or time.
You can also use ◎ to select an icon.

2 Press ●.

Selective icon	Status after being selected
P	Displays "PIM lock".
D / DP	Displays "Keypad dial lock".
DP	Shows the "Keypad dial lock" and "PIM lock" selection display.
(White)/ (Red)/ / (White)/ (Red)	Displays the "Inbox".
R (White)/ R (Red)	Displays "Message Request".
F (White)/ F (Red)	Displays "Message Free".
(White)/ (Red)/ R (White)/ R (Red)/ F (White)/ F (Red)	Displays "Check new message".
	Displays "Receive option".
self	Displays "Self mode".
/	Displays "Task menu".
/ /	Displays the "Vibrator" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection display.

Continued on next page

Selective icon	Status after being selected
	· Normal Mode (when not in manner mode) “Ring volume” and “Mail/Msg. ring time” selection screens are displayed. · Manner Mode, Super Silent Mode A message stating it cannot be set is displayed. · Original Manner Mode “Original” and “Mail/Msg. ring time” selection screens are displayed.
	Displays “Manner mode set”.
	Displays “Remote observation”.
	Displays “Alarm”.
	A message stating that nothing was recorded is displayed.
	Displays “Play/Erase msg.”
	Displays “Voice mail”. If there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, the “10 Voice mail” message appears.
	Displays “Display light”.
	Displays “Side keys guard”.
Date	Displays “Schedule”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
Clock	Displays “Alarm clock”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
	Switches and displays the task in operation.

Security Settings

About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal 142
Changing Your Security Code <Change security code> 142
Setting Your PIN Codes <PIN Setting> 143
Release PIN lock 144

Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Lock Functions 145
Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal <All lock/Remote all lock> 145
Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule <Secret mode/Secret only mode> 147
Hiding Your Personal Information <PIM lock> 149
Disabling the Side Keys <Side keys guard> 150

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls and Transmissions

Locking the Keypad <Keypad dial lock> 150
Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays <Record display set> 151
Preventing Unwanted Mail Display <Mail security> 151
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers <Restrictions> 152
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers <Call setting w/o ID> 154
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook <Ringing time> 155
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook <Reject unknown> 156
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. <Self mode> 156

Other Security Settings

Other Security Settings 157

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code. In addition to this security code for the various FOMA terminal operations, you also have an i-mode password and a Network security code that is used for accessing network services. Take care to use the appropriate access code when using your FOMA terminal.

FOMA Terminal Security Code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. →P. 142

- If you forget your FOMA terminal security code, you must bring the FOMA terminal*, your current UIM card and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

* The subscriber must take the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo shop in person otherwise service may be denied.

Network security code

The security code is a 4 digit number that you specify when you apply to use DoCoMo e-sites or use various network services.

- If you forget your security code contact "Inquiries" on the back cover of this manual. Alternatively, bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset. You can also apply for e-sites from your PC if you have a "user ID" and "password".

* See the back cover of this manual for detail regarding "DoCoMo e-sites".

PIN1 code, PIN2 code

You can set 2 security codes for your UIM: the PIN1 code and the PIN2 code.
When you first subscribe, these security codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security codes at any time.
The PIN1 code is a number (code) between 4 and 8 digits long that you enter when you load the UIM card into your FOMA terminal or when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user and is designed to prevent improper use of your UIM by others. Entering the PIN1 codes enables you to make and receive calls and to use the FOMA terminal functions.
The PIN2 code is a security code between 4 and 8 digits long that is used when you use or request user certificates or perform tasks such as resetting the total call charges.

i-mode password

You need a 4-digit i-mode password to add or remove sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites.
When you first subscribe, your i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. (You may also have other passwords set independently by your Internet service providers.)

- If you forget your i-mode password, you will need to bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

Note

- To prevent improper use of your FOMA terminal, you should change your FOMA terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code and i-mode password to a number of your choice after subscribing.
  Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Avoid using readily predictable numbers (e.g. the last 4 digits or your phone number) and take great care not to disclose your security codes to others.

<Change security code>

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting	0000 (4 zeros)

- To change your security code from the initial setting (P. 44), you need not press Menu 2 9 in step 1.

1 Press (Menu) (2 ABC) (9 WXYZ) ▶ Enter your security code and then press ● ▶ Enter a new security code of between 4 and 8 digits and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

● The setting in this function changes the security code used for the FOMA terminal functions.

<PIN Setting>

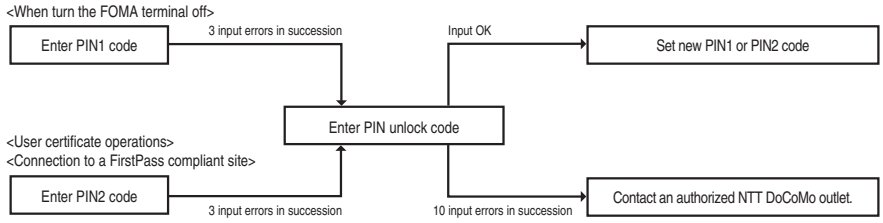
Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF

The PIN1 code is a number between 4 and 8 digits long that you enter when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code is designed to prevent improper use of your UIM.

The PIN2 code is a number between 4 and 8 digits long that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such Internet connection and site access. On the FOMA terminal, your PIN2 code is required to connect to FirstPass compliant sites and for user certificate operations (your user certificate is issued for access to FirstPass).

- If you buy a new FOMA terminal and transfer your current UIM card to the new phone, you can continue using your existing PIM1 and PIM2 codes.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in succession, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use your PIN codes. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) gives your PIN unlock code. The PIN unlock code is an 8-digit number that will unlock a locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PIN unlock code incorrectly 10 times in succession, your UIM is then completely locked. Keep your FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) in a safe place to ensure that you do not lose it.
- If you forget your PIN unlock code and your UIM is completely locked, you will need to bring your current UIM card and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.



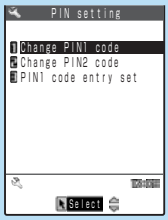
Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code number

● To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press (7 PQRS) "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "PIN setting" and press ● ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.

The "PIN setting display" appears.

For information on security code →P. 142



PIN setting display

2 Choose from the following options:

Continued on next page

1 Change PIN1 code	▶Enter your current PIN1 code (4-8 digits) and press ● ▶Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN1 code and press ● ▶Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN1 code again and press ●. Changes the PIN1 code.
2 Change PIN2 code	▶Enter your current PIN2 code (4-8 digits) and press ● ▶Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN2 code and press ● ▶Enter the new 4-8-digit PIN2 code again and press ●. Changes the PIN2 code.
3 PIN1 code entry set	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”.

Entering your PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code input display appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 **Turn on the FOMA terminal.**

2 **Enter your PIN1 code (4-8 digits) and press ●.**

If the PIN1 code is correct, the stand-by display appears.



Release PIN lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in succession in a display that requires PIN code input, a message appears notifying you that the respective PIN code has been locked and the Enter PUK code display then appears. If this occurs, you must unlock the locked PIN code and then set a new PIN code.

● More information on your PIN unlock code, refer to the FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) that you received when you subscribed to FOMA.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 **Enter your 8-digit PIN unlock code and press ●.**



2 **Enter a new 4-8-digit PIN1 code and press ●.**

3 **Enter the new PIN1 code again and press ●.**

Note

● You can still make emergency calls (to 110, 119 or 118) while you are entering your PIN unlock code.

Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Ref. page
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	All lock/Remote all lock	P. 145
To prevent others from viewing data in your "phonebook" or "schedule"	Secret mode/Secret only mode	P. 147
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	P. 149
To prevent inadvertent use of the side keys	Side keys guard	P. 150
To prevent private calls	Keypad dial lock	P. 150
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	P. 151
To use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice or video-phone calls	Self mode	P. 156

<All lock/Remote all lock>

Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal

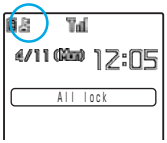
Default setting	OFF

You can set "All lock" either using the FOMA terminal or remotely.

- When All lock is applied, none of the FOMA terminal's keys can be used except for the following:
  - Turning the FOMA terminal on/off.
  - Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118).
- You cannot use any of the "IC-card function".
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel All lock.
- You cannot receive calls while "All lock" is set, but you can receive Remote observation images.

Using the FOMA terminal to set All lock

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 7 PRS "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "All lock" and press ● ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.



All lock is set and "All lock" and appear on the display.
For information on security code →P. 142

Setting Remote all lock

Default setting	Remote all lock: OFF Monitoring (minutes): 3 Recv. calls (times): 5

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal from a pay phone or other phone.

- Remote all lock allows you to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal when it receives the number of missed calls set in "Recv. calls (times)" from the phone number set in "Accept phone number" within the time set in "Monitoring (minutes)".
- Either voice calls or video-phone calls can be used.
- Calls received during another call (including calls received during a call when Call waiting is activated) do not trigger the start of the monitoring time and are not counted as received calls.

1 Press (Menu) 9 WXYZ 9 WXYZ ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Press 1 あ "ON" ▶ Press 1 あ "Accept phone No.".

The "Store accept phone number display" appears.
For information on security code →P. 142

Continued on next page

2 **Select "<Not recorded>" and press ●.**

■ **To change the currently stored accept phone number**
Select the option for the accept phone number and press ●.

3 **Enter the phone number and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).**
You can store up to 3 accept phone numbers.



Store accept phone number display

4 **Press 2 ABC "Monitoring" ▶ Enter the monitoring time (01-10 minutes).**
Sets the monitoring period during which Remote all lock can be set once a call from the accept phone number has been missed. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press ●.

5 **Press 3 DEF "Received calls" ▶ Enter the number of received calls (03-10).**
Sets the number of calls from the accept phone number that will set the remote all lock function.
Enter a 2-digit number as the number of calls. To set the number currently shown, just press ●.

6 **Press 左 (Finish).**

Using the function menu in the store accept phone number display

In the store accept phone number display... ➡ P. 145

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Store accept phone number display function menu

1 Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: Use other functions to browse for a number.	
	1 Phonebook	Browses the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 Dialed calls	Browses the dialed calls record. See "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" →P. 50
	3 Received calls	Browses the received calls record. See "Using the Received Calls Record" →P. 62
2 Pay phone	Sets calls from a pay phone as the accept phone number. "Pay phone" is displayed as the accept phone number.	
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes one number. If there are no accept phone numbers stored, the Remote all lock function is set to "OFF".	
4 Delete all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the accept phone numbers. The Remote all lock function is set to "OFF".	

Setting All lock remotely

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal by calling the FOMA terminal by using a voice call or video-phone call from a phone set as a "Accept phone number".

- Set "Remote all lock" to "ON" beforehand.
- All lock that has been set remotely can be released as described in "Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock". →P. 147
- Releasing All lock does not release Remote all lock.

1 **Call the FOMA terminal from a phone number set as an "Accept phone number".**

2 **Wait for the busy tone, etc. and then hang up (missed call).**

Repeat steps 1 and 2 within the time set in “Monitoring (minutes)” until you have logged the total number of missed calls set in “Recv. calls (times)”. The “Recv. calls (times)” is reset by making a call with a Accept phone number.

3 **Listen to the answer message and then hang up.**

All lock is set on the FOMA terminal.

Note

- When the phone number set as an “Accept phone number” or a payphone is set in “Call rejection”, calls from that number are still counted as calls in Remote all lock.
- Calls received from a phone number other than the “Accept phone number” are not counted as received calls.
- If you manual reject a call from the accept phone number or forward the call to the Voice Mail Service Center or the call forwarding number, it is still counted as a call in Remote all lock.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or a call from the accept phone number is answered on the FOMA terminal, the received call count is reset.
- You can make remote all lock calls while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.
- All lock cannot be released remotely.

Setting All lock

- While All lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive voice or video-phone calls. Once you release All lock, the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While All lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is reached. Once you release All lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While All lock is set, you can still used automatic answering to respond to Message Request/Free, i-mode mail, SMS or chat mail, but no incoming call display or call results display appears. Once you release All lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the stand-by display.
- If there are desktop icons pasted into the display, setting All lock removes the icons from the display. When you release All lock, the icons reappear.

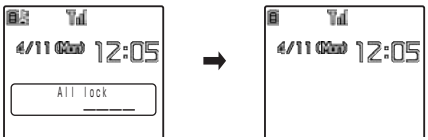
Using the FOMA terminal to release All lock

- If you fail to correctly release All lock 5 times in succession, the FOMA terminal turns itself off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 **In the display shown when All lock is set, enter your security code and press ●.**

All lock is released and 🔒 no longer appears on the display.

For information on security code →P. 142



<Secret mode/Secret only mode>

Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret only mode: OFF

This function allows you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” while the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.

In Secret mode, you can retrieve all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. Secret only mode allows you to retrieve only those “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

- If you receive a voice or video-phone call in Secret or Secret only mode, the current mode is cancelled.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off cancels Secret or Secret only mode.

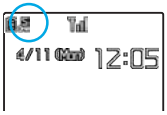
Continued on next page

Storing Phonebook or Schedule Entries as Secret Data

● The procedures for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” in Secret or Secret only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 0 ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.



Secret mode is set and S appears on the display. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, D/S appears.
For information on security code →P. 142

■ To cancel Secret mode

Press PWR.
Secret mode is cancelled and S no longer appears on the display.

2 Store the information in the “Phonebook” or “Schedule”.

The entry is stored as secret data.
See “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook” →P. 93
For information on adding information to your schedule →P. 439

Note

- “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only retrieved, modified or deleted in Secret or Secret only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of “schedule” events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.
- If a “phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- When someone whose phonebook entry is stored as secret data calls and provides a caller ID or sends an e-mail and the FOMA terminal is no longer in Secret or Secret only mode, that person’s phone number or e-mail address is displayed, but the stored name is not. And while the caller’s phone number is logged in the “Received calls”, the name stored in the phonebook is not shown. If you switch the FOMA terminal to Secret mode or Secret only mode, the stored name is displayed. The person’s e-mail address is not logged in the “Received address”.
- The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
  · Automatic display →P. 110 · Restrictions →P. 152 · Utilities →P. 107
- If you modify your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode, the modified data becomes secret. Even if you only modify 1 phone number or e-mail address in Secret mode, all the phone numbers and e-mail addresses stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when you press PWR, when you make a call, or when you receive a call, even if you are unable to answer the call. You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret only mode by pressing Menu 4 GHI 0 or Menu 4 GHI 1.
- If “All lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”, releasing “All lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- If you press or in Secret mode or Secret only mode, the FOMA terminal reverts to the stand-by display without dialing a call and Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule or while viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret only mode, Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled and when you return to the phonebook or schedule display and resume the procedure you were using, the security code entry display appears. When you enter your security code, Secret mode or Secret only mode is set and you can then continue the procedure.

Viewing just secret data <Secret only mode>

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 1 ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.



Secret only mode is set and S appears on the display along with the number of entries stored as secret data. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, D/S appears.
The stand-by display reappears after about 2 seconds.
For information on security code →P. 142

■ To cancel Secret only mode

Press PWR.
Secret only mode is cancelled and S no longer appears on the display.

2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
For information on checking your schedule →P. 441

Note

- When you make a call by retrieving secret data, it is not recorded in the "Dialed calls" or "Redial".

Changing secret data back to normal data

In Secret or Secret only mode, retrieve the phonebook entry or scheduled event that you want to make non-secret.
For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
For information on checking your schedule →P. 441

<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

1 Press ▶ Press ▶ Press 6 "Release secret".

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the flashing S! icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ Scheduled events

See "6 Release secret" in "Schedule list display function menu 1/2" in Using the function menu in the schedule list display.
See "Using the function menu in the Schedule list display". →P. 442

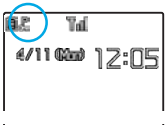
<PIM lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information

Default setting	OFF

Set this function to lock access to FOMA terminal features such as the phonebook, schedule, mail, camera and My picture so as to prevent other people from viewing, altering or adding new personal information and from changing the FOMA terminal's settings. Once PIM lock is set, all FOMA terminal operations are disabled except for procedures such as viewing pre-installed data, menu operations and incoming and outgoing calls that do not affect stored data.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 7 "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "PIM lock" and press ● ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.



PIM lock is set and P! appears on the display. If "Keypad dial lock" is set at the same time, P! appears.
For information on security code →P. 142

■ Releasing PIM lock

Repeat step 1.
PIM lock is released and P! no longer appears on the display.

Note

- When you set PIM lock, all the entries left up to that point in the Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls records, sent address list and received address list are deleted. Entries for incoming or outgoing calls after PIM lock is set are retained.
- You cannot delete desktop icons while PIM lock is set. Desktop icons that are not displayed while PIM lock is set, such as "New mail", Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Email address", reappear when PIM lock is released.
- When PIM lock is set, you cannot play or view i-motions, Chara-den characters or My Picture files or melodies that were not pre-installed. If you set data of this sort that cannot be played or viewed as a ring tone or as the stand-by display, the FOMA terminal uses the default settings while PIM lock is set. If you have set the calendar in the stand-by display, the calendar is displayed, but the schedule function is not activated. Also, if you have selected "Background", the FOMA terminal uses the "No background" display.
- While PIM lock is set, the alternate image sent to the other party during a video-phone is the "Pre-installed" alternate image.
- While PIM lock is set, you cannot check for "Missed calls" or "New mail" by pressing (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Continued on next page

Note

- If you set “All lock” while PIM lock is set, is replaced by .
- While PIM lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is reached. Once you release PIM lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- While PIM lock is set, you can still used automatic answering to respond to Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS, but no incoming call display or call results display appears. Once you release PIM lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the stand-by display.

<Side keys guard>

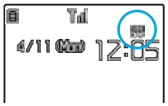
Disabling the Side Keys

Default setting	OFF

This function allows you to disable the FOMA terminal’s side keys to prevent the keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and put in a bag, etc.

- In the situations listed below, the side keys are enabled regardless of the setting specified here. However, holding down (( )) for 1 second or longer does not activate the camera.
  - When the FOMA terminal is unfolded
  - When an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
  - When a PC or similar device is connected to the external connection port and is shown on the display.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Press (1 second or longer).



The side keys are disabled (when the FOMA terminal is folded) and SIDE appears on the display.

■ To enable the side keys when the FOMA terminal is folded

Repeat step 1.

The SIDE icon disappears.

<Keypad dial lock>

Locking the Keypad

Default setting	OFF

This function prohibits anyone from making voice or video-phone calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS on the FOMA terminal. This means that calls can only be made using “Phonebook” entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the “Dialed calls” or “Redial” entries logged or “Sent address” after the keypad was locked.

In situations where the FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mail by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the “Phonebook” beforehand and then setting this function.

- While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice or video-phone calls, compose i-mode mail or write SMS:
  - Keypad entry
  - Received calls
  - Received address
  - Mail member
  - Desktop icons
  - Access reader
  - Bar code reader
  - Recorded message playback
- The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:
  - Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
  - Using the “Phone to”, “AV phone to” and “Mail to” functions
  - Sending and receiving phonebook data using infrared communication
  - Copying and editing phonebook entries using “UIM operation”
  - Importing phonebook entries from a miniSD memory card
  - Sending the AT command
- Locking the keypad deletes all pre-existing entries in the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address”. However, all entries logged in those records after the keypad is locked are retained. Where the FOMA terminal is set to save both the address and message for mail, the address is deleted and only the message is retained. Where the FOMA terminal is set to save only the address, the mail is deleted.
- Setting this function deletes chat group members.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 7PQRS "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "Keypad dial lock" and press ● ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.



Keypad dial lock is set and 🔒 appears on the display. If Secret or Secret only mode is set at the same time, 🔒 appears. If "PIM lock" is set at the same time, 🔒 appears.
For information on security code →P. 142

■ **Releasing Keypad dial lock**

Repeat step 1.
Keypad dial lock is released and 🔒 no longer appears on the display.

Note

- You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

<Record display set>

Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

You can use this function to prevent the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" from being displayed. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊖ ▶ Press 1 "Other settings" ▶ Select "Record display set" and press ● ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

For information on security code →P. 142

1 **Received calls**	▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2ABC "OFF". Specifies the display setting for the Received calls.
2 **Redial/ Dialed calls**	▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2ABC "OFF". Specifies the display setting for the Redial or Dialed calls.

Note

- Even when "Received calls" is set to "OFF", the missed calls icon still appears on the stand-by display when you have missed a call. However, when you try to view the Received calls record from the "Missed call" desktop icon, a message appears notifying you that record display is set to "OFF" and the desktop icon remains on the display. To clear the "Missed call" desktop icon, hold down CLR for 1 second or longer.
- You cannot play recorded messages when "Received calls" record display is set to "OFF".
- The Redial record only stores the most recent data. If you make 2 or more calls to the same number, only the most recent call is stored and the older call records are deleted.
- When a call is made to a previously dialed number, the call is logged as a new entry in the Dialed calls record and the previous entries are not deleted.

<Mail security>

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

Default setting	No security

This function allows you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox and Draft mailbox so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Boxes with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- The 🔒 icon appears next to mailboxes with security set.
- If you set security for the Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address list or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 **Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1あ “Mail settings” ▶ Press 7PQRS “Mail security” ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.**

For information on security code →P. 142

2 **Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and then press ●.**



The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect a ticked mailbox, select it again.

3 **After completing the settings, press (左) (Finish).**

Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for specific folders. Folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- For folders with security set, icons such as or appear before the folder name in the folder list display.

In the Inbox/Outbox folder list display function menu... ➡ P. 282

1 **Press 4GHI “Mail security” ▶ Enter the security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.**

For information on security code →P. 142

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting	All OFF

- You can specify incoming or outgoing restrictions for up to 20 phone numbers in each direction.
- You cannot set restrictions for the UIM phonebook.
- Restrictions are only effective when the caller provides a caller ID. Restrictions should always be set in conjunction with the “Caller ID request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance for the same phone number, or Specific call forwarding and Specific voice mail for the same number.
- Restrictions cannot be set for phonebook entries stored in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- If you set restrictions for a phone number and then modify or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected functions are released. However, you cannot modify or delete a phone number for which “Restrict dialing” is set.
- You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the Restrict dialing is set.

Setting restrictions on dialing and receiving for phone numbers

The same method is used to set restrictions on both dialing and reception for phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

In the phonebook detail display function menu... ➡ P. 101

1 **Press 7PQRS “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select the desired function.**



For information on security code → P. 142
A star (★) appears next to the selected function.

To lift the restriction on a restricted function

Select a function marked with a star (★).
The restriction is lifted and the star (★) no longer appears.

To set restrictions on both dialing and reception for multiple phone numbers

Press CLR to return to the phonebook detail display and then use ⊕ to display the desired phone number and repeat step 1.
Once you press PWR HLD to return to the stand-by display, you can no longer add further restrictions. To add more restrictions, lift the restrictions that have already been set for the phone number and then set the restrictions again including the unrestricted phone number.

Note

<Restrict dialing>
- Once you set Restrict dialing for a phone number, you can no longer correct or add to the corresponding phonebook entry, copy data between the FOMA terminal (phone) entry and the UIM, use "UIM operation" to work with the phonebook entry, or make calls from any of the dialing or received call record entries that include that phone number.
- Setting Restrict dialing deletes the "Dialed calls" and "Redial".
- To use "Automatic display" at the same time as Restrict dialing, set this function for phonebook entries for which "Automatic display" has already been set.
- Only data specified for a phone number is displayed in the phonebook.

<Call rejection/Call acceptance>
- Call rejection and Call acceptance are only valid for calls where the caller provides a caller ID. These functions should always be set in conjunction with the "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings for these functions.
- Setting "PIM lock" disables the Call rejection and Call acceptance functions.
- If you receive a call from a number that is specified on the call reject list or from a number that is not specified on the accept call list, the number is recorded as "Missed calls" in the call history and the "Missed call" desk top icon is displayed on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptance is set, the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" services are "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding services" is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of signal range, the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding service". Note that when this occurs, the received phone number is not logged in the "Received calls" and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display.
- You can still make calls when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.
- You cannot set Call rejection and Call acceptance simultaneously for the same phone number stored in the phonebook.
- Deleting all the data in the phonebook cancels the "Call rejection" and "Call acceptation".

<Specific call forwarding/Specific voice mail>
- Setting "PIM lock" disables Specific call forwarding and Specific voice mail.
- If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the designated call forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail", calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

Checking the restriction settings

Use this procedure to check the function settings for a phone number for which "Restrictions" is set. You can also lift the restrictions while checking them.

1 Press Menu 1 2 ▶ Enter your security code and press ●.

The "Restrictions display" appears.
For information on security code → P. 142



Restrictions display

Using the function menu in the Restrictions display

In the restrictions display... ➡ P. 153

1 Select a function marked by a star (★), and press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Restrictions display function menu

1 Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the selected function is set.
2 Release	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Lifts the restrictions on all the selected function settings.

<Call setting w/o ID>

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting	Accept all/Same as ring tones

This function allows you to accept or reject calls and video-phone calls from callers who do not provide a caller ID based on the reason given.

1 Press (Menu) (1あ) (0わを ん一) ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

For information on security code →P. 142

1 Not supported	▶ Choose from the following options: Specify whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to provide a caller ID, such as calls from overseas or from pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may also provide caller IDs in some cases.		
	1 Accept	▶ Choose from the following options: Accept received calls.	
		1 Same as ring tone	The same as "Phone" in "Select ring tone".
		2 Melody	Selects from "Melody".
		3 i-motion	Selects from "i-motion".
		4 Voice announce	Selects from "Voice announce".
		5 Random melody	Selects a folder containing saved melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies saved in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
		6 OFF	No ring tone.
	2 Reject	Rejects received calls.	

2 Payphone	▶Choose from the following options: Specify whether to accept calls dialed from pay phones.		
	1 Accept	▶Choose from the following options: Accept received calls.	
		1 Same as ring tone	The same as “Phone” in “Select ring tone”.
		2 Melody	Selects from “Melody”.
		3 i-motion	Selects from “i-motion”.
		4 Voice announce	Selects from “Voice announce”.
		5 Random melody	Selects a folder containing saved melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies saved in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
		6 OFF	No ring tone.
	2 Reject	Rejects received calls.	
3 User unset	▶Choose from the following options: Specify whether to accept calls made by callers who deliberately withhold their caller IDs.		
	1 Accept	▶Choose from the following options: Accept received calls.	
		1 Same as ring tone	The same as “Phone” in “Select ring tone”.
		2 Melody	Selects from “Melody”.
		3 i-motion	Selects from “i-motion”.
		4 Voice announce	Selects from “Voice announce”.
		5 Random melody	Selects a folder containing saved melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies saved in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
		6 OFF	No ring tone.
	2 Reject	Rejects received calls.	

Note

- The ring tone you select with this function is the ring tone for a no caller ID voice phone call. If you receive a video-phone call with no caller ID, the ring tone is the same as that specified in “Video-phone” for “Select ring tone”.
- If you select “Reject”, the FOMA terminal displays the “Missed call” icon when you receive a call without playing the ring tone. (The caller hears the busy tone.)
- Even if you have activated “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, calls from callers set for rejection who give User unset as the reason for withholding their caller ID are not connected to the respective services. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area or if the ringing time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) seconds, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is enabled.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

<Ringing time>

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting	Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the period for which the ring tone for a call from a voice or video-phone call not stored in the phonebook or an incoming voice or video-phone call without caller ID is muted before starting up (notifying you of the call). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period, from your call history.

- This function is enabled if even during voice and video-phone calls you receive a call.

1 Press Menu 9 0 ▶Choose from the following options:

Continued on next page

1 Set mute seconds	▶Enter a muted time (00 to 99 seconds). Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press ●.
2 Missed calls display	▶Select 1 “Display” or 2 “Not display” Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the missed calls record.

Note

- Ringing operations on the FOMA terminal include playing the ring tone, vibrating and lighting or flashing the call alert indicator.
- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- Even when the incoming call is from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook with the “186” or “184” prefix, the FOMA terminal starts ringing as soon as the call is received.
- If the muted time is longer than the ringing time for the Record Message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record Message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record Message is longer than the muted time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting	Accept

Use this procedure to specify whether the FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in FOMA terminal (phone) or UIM phonebook.

- Only available for numbers that send caller ID. It is also recommended that it is used in conjunction with “Caller ID request service” and “Call setting w/o ID”.

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press 7 “Lock/Security” ▶Select “Reject unknown” and press ● ▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Press 2 “Reject”.

For information on security code →P. 142

■ To receive a call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook

Press 1 “Accept”.

Note

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If this function is set at the same time as “Call rejection” or “Call acceptation” in “Restrictions”, “Call rejection” or “Call acceptation” has priority.
- When “Reject” is selected in this function and you receive a call from a phone number that is not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a “Missed call” in the “Received calls” and the “Missed call” icon appears on the stand-by display. Even if you have activated “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, the caller hears the tone. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the i-mode service area or if the ringing time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the tone and is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center or the forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” and is not displayed on the stand-by display as a “Missed call” desktop icon.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

<Self mode>

Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.

Default setting	OFF

Use this function to set the FOMA terminal so that it cannot make or receive voice or video-phone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mail. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice or video-phone calls.

- If you receive a voice or video-phone call when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, the caller hears a message saying that the FOMA terminal is out of signal range or is turned off. If you are using the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding services”, calls are handled in the same way as if the FOMA terminal were turned off.
- While in Self mode, the FOMA terminal does not use desktop icons such as “Missed call” to notify you of calls.

● Data communication using external equipment or infrared communication is not possible in Self mode. However, you can read and write the IC card data by using the FeliCa compatible i-αppli.
● You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode. Note that making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "Self mode" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Self mode is set and self appears on the display.

■ To cancel Self mode

Repeat step 1.
Self mode is canceled and self no longer appears on the display.

Note

● Message Request/Free and i-mode mail sent in Self mode is held at the i-mode Center, and SMS are held at the SMS Center.

Other Security Settings

Aim	Function/Services	Ref. page
To avoid nuisance phone calls such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls.	Nuisance call barring service	P. 472
To ignore calls that has no caller ID.	Caller ID request service	P. 473
To send data securely by using the user certificate service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass.	FirstPass	P. 232
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary.	Software update	P. 574
To protect the FOMA terminal against malicious data.	Scan function	P. 579
To accept only necessary i-mode mail	Receive option	P. 268
You can save information about the well-being of yourself or check information about the well-being of others in a time of disaster by using i-mode.	"i-mode disaster message board" service	See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual"
To change your mail address	Change mail address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Check address	
To accept mail from specified domain only	Domain specific accept	
To accept/reject mail only from a specified sender	Address specific accept/reject	
To accept/reject i-mode mail only	Receive i-mode mail only Reject i-mode mail only	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages from that phone in a day.	Restrict receipt of large amounts of i-mail from one sender	
To reject advertisements	Reject unsolicited ad mail	
To reject short messages (SMS)	SMS reject settings/confirmation	
To check the status of the mail function settings	Check status of settings	
To restrict the size of received mail	Mail size restrictions	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Stop the mail function	

Note

● Be careful when returning calls from numbers you do not know. In particular sending your caller ID to the other unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.
● Priority is assigned when the nuisance call barring function is set at the same time (① has the highest priority):
① Nuisance call barring service ② Call rejection
③ Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID ④ Ringing time

Camera

Before Using the Camera 160
Shooting Still Images <Photo mode> 166
Shooting Movies <Movie mode> 176
Changing the Photography Settings 182
Using the Bar Code Reader <Bar code reader> 184
Scanning Text <Access reader> 188

Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot photos (still images) and movies.
The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396

Looking after the camera

- The camera in your FOMA terminal uses a CCD imaging element and is made using extremely high-precision technology. Even so, images may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Noise such as points of a random color may also appear on photographed images, particularly in very poorly lit locations.
- Before taking a picture, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Finger marks or grease spots on the lens can prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this could damage the lens.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left for a long period in a hot location.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight for long periods or shoot directly into the sun or a powerful lamp. This can cause discoloration of photographed images and other camera faults.

Notes on taking pictures

- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual subject.
- If you try to shoot pictures directly into a bright light source such as the sun or a lamp, the image may appear dark or distorted.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not obstruct the camera when you are taking pictures.
- During picture taking, the camera uses large amounts of battery charge. Always turn the camera off immediately after you finish taking pictures. The screen may become dark or blurred if you take pictures when the battery is low.
- If any of the events listed below occurs while you are shooting a movie or taking consecutive photos, your FOMA terminal stops taking pictures and shows the respective display. Once you exit the display, the camera display reappears so that you can save the images or movies shot before you received the call or alarm, etc. If one of these events occurs while you are adjusting the camera zoom or brightness, the adjusted setting is confirmed and the camera menu reappears. If the auto timer is running when the event occurs, the auto timer stops.
  - ・You receive a voice call, video-phone call, or 64K data communication.
  - ・The FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm.
  - ・You use another FOMA terminal function.
- Camera operation is not cancelled in the following situations:
  - ・If you receive mail or a Message Request/Free while using the camera (including while the shooting display is displayed), the FOMA terminal continues taking pictures and does not display the reception results display, regardless of the setting specified in "Receiving display" (P. 294).
  - ・Select "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" (P. 433) to ensure that the FOMA terminal continues operating and does not stop taking pictures, cancel the camera settings or stop the auto timer when the time for a scheduled alarm is reached.
- The volume of the shutter sound and the Auto Timer starting tone is fixed regardless of the "Ring volume" setting.
- Even when "Manner mode" or "Driving mode" is set, the FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound and Auto Timer starting tone. When "Earphone" is selected in the "Earphone" setting and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds are still played through the speaker.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while it is taking a picture will blur the image. Either hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move while you are taking pictures, or use the Auto Timer. You should also avoid moving the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message is displayed just after you shoot a still image.
- When you shoot a still image, the FOMA terminal captures the image after you press the "●" key. After you hear the shutter sound, keep the FOMA terminal steady so that its does not move until it finishes capturing the image and displays the checking mode display.
- After you display a photographed image, switch to Camera mode or change the camera settings, there may be a short delay before image features such as the brightness or color tones are displayed optimally.
- When you save images or movies shot using the camera onto a miniSD memory card, you can specify the folder where the files are saved by setting the save destination folder before shooting. Note that if you switch the FOMA terminal off, when you switch it on again the save destination changes to last folder created.
- You cannot launch the Camera function while "PIM lock" is set.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Copyright Information

- Images or recordings made using your FOMA terminal should not be duplicated, modified or otherwise used in ways that infringe copyright laws, nor should images of other people be used or modified in ways that infringe the image rights of the people concerned. Note also that the photographing or recording of some stage performances, entertainments or exhibits may be prohibited, even when intended purely for personal enjoyment.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Using the camera

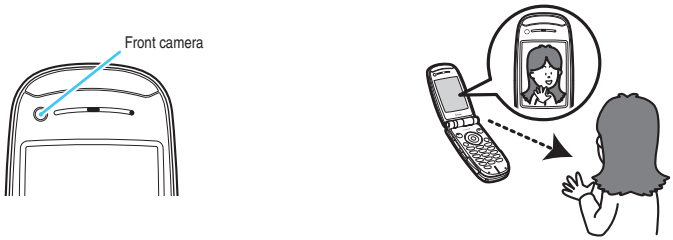
Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals and scenery. The subject appears on the display just as in real life. (Normal display: Objects are photographed as seen on the display.) You can also use the rear camera for close-up shots by switching to the macro lens.



Front camera

Use this camera to take pictures of yourself. The image is displayed just as if you were looking in the mirror. (Mirror display: Objects are photographed as mirror images of what appears on the display.)



To switch between the front and rear cameras, press 右 (FUNC) in the shooting display, select “Front camera” or “Rear camera” from the function menu and then press ●.

Note

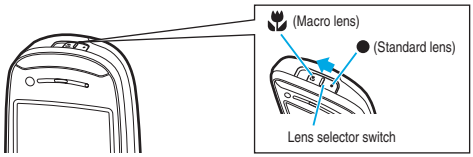
- You cannot use the rear and front cameras at the same time.

Lens selector switch

To take close-up pictures of a subject, set the lens selector switch to (Macro lens). Switching to the macro lens enables the camera to focus on subjects that are only 6 to 8 cm away from the rear camera lens.

Continued on next page

● You also switch to the macro lens when using the access reader or bar code reader.
Take care not to place your finger on the lens when using the lens selector switch. Also, make sure that you slide the switch fully to either the ● (Standard lens) or (Macro lens) position and do not stop midway.



Still photography

● You can use either of the following modes to shoot still images (photos):
Photo mode: Use this mode for still images.
Continuous mode: Use this mode to shoot up to 20 still images in rapid succession.
● The zoom can be adjusted from 1× to 4× in 16 steps on the rear camera. The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to roughly 2× in 2 steps.
● You can also use the camera's light to take indoor photos or in other situations where there is insufficient natural light.
● The FOMA terminal offers a range of photography modes for different shooting conditions and types of subject, such as night scenes or fast moving subjects (sporting events, etc.).
● Selecting the macro lens with the lens selector switch allows you to take clearly focused close-up shots.
● By saving your photos onto a miniSD memory card, you can then use them on PCs and other devices.
● You can also send your photos as attachments with i-mode mail.
● You can add icons or stamps to your photos, or place decorative frames around them.

■ Still image sizes and numbers of still images stored

● The FOMA terminal will hold up to 720 still images. However, depending on the image format and other settings, it may not be possible to store the maximum of 720 images.
● The table below lists the storage limits for the different image types.

Format	Camera		Storage setting	Storage limit		
				FOMA terminal (phone)	miniSD memory card	
	Rear camera	Front camera			16MB	32MB
UXGA (1616 × 1212) (1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high)	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 23	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 44	Approx. 94
SXGA (1280 × 960) (1280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 23	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 11	Approx. 44	Approx. 94
VGA (640 × 480) (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Normal	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
CIF (352 × 288) (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 7	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 90	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
Stand-by (240 × 320) (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	○	×	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 65	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 90	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
Mail(L) (176 × 144) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 180	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 260	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Format	Camera		Storage setting	Storage limit		
				FOMA terminal (phone)	miniSD memory card	
	Rear camera	Front camera			16MB	32MB
Mail(S) (128 × 96) (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	○	○	Super Fine	Approx. 36	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 180	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 240	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890

*: UXGA (1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high), SXGA (1280 dots wide × 960 dots high) is used for the FOMA terminal.

Movie photography

- The FOMA terminal offers the following camera modes for shooting movies:
  - Movie mode : Use this mode for normal movies. You can also shoot video only (no sound) or sound only in this mode.
  - Chance capture : Use this mode to avoid missing important scenes.
  - Picture voice : Use this mode to shoot movies consisting of still images with voiceover. You can shoot such movies either by shooting new still images or by using saved images.
- The zoom can be adjusted from 1× to 4× in 16 steps on the rear camera. The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to roughly 2× in 2 steps.
- You can also use the camera's light to take indoor photos or in other situations where there is insufficient natural light.
- The FOMA terminal offers a range of photography modes for different types of subject, such as portrait shots or scenery.
- Selecting the macro lens with the lens selector switch allows you to take clearly focused close-up shots.
- By saving your movies onto a miniSD memory card, you can then use them on PCs and other devices.
- You can send your movies as attachments with i-mode mail.
- You can also crop individual frames out of your movies as still images and send them as attachments with i-mode mail.

■ Movie size and numbers of movies stored

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 100 movies. However, depending on the image format and other settings, it may not be possible to store the maximum of 100 movies.
- At the time of purchase, the default movie length is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the type of subject and the amount of data involved.
- Because the amount of data stored varies according to the movie shooting time, the storage limit also changes.
- The table below shows the movie size, approximate movie storage limits and shooting times.

Format	File size setting	Movie type setting	Storage limit/Shooting time		
			FOMA terminal (phone)	miniSD memory card	
				16MB	32MB
Size(L) (176 × 144) 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (default setting)	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	—	1	1
		Video	—	1	Approx. 2
		Voice	—	Approx. 2	Approx. 5

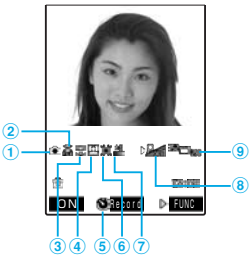
Continued on next page

Format	File size setting	Movie type setting	Storage limit/Shooting time		
			FOMA terminal (phone)	miniSD memory card	
				16MB	32MB
Size(S) (128 × 96) 128 dots wide × 96 dots high	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	—	1	Approx. 2
		Video	—	1	Approx. 2
		Voice	—	Approx. 2	Approx. 5

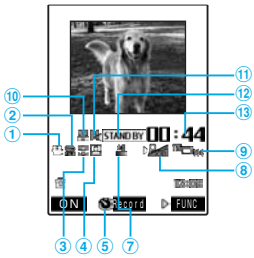
*: Shows the approximate number of movies when the total available shooting time (approx. 60minutes) is used with the default settings.

Guide to the shooting display

Photo mode shooting display

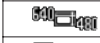
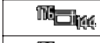
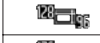


Movie mode shooting display



Function	Icon		Description		Reference Page
① CHG camera-mode		Movie mode	Movie mode is set.		P. 167 P. 177
		Chance capture	Chance Capture mode is set.		
		Picture voice	Picture Voice mode is set.		
		Photo mode	Photo mode is set.		
		Continuous mode	Continuous Shooting mode is set.		
② Storage setting/ File size setting		Super Fine	Photo Mode	Saved as a large-sized file when saving shot images.	P. 169
		Fine		Saved as a medium-sized file when saving shot images.	
		Normal		Saved as a small-sized file when saving shot images.	
		Restricted(Short)	Movie Mode	Shows that you can shoot up to 290KB.	P. 177
		Restricted(Long)		Shows that you can shoot up to 490KB.	
		Local playback		Shows that you can shoot up to 800KB.	
		Long time		Shows that you can shoot for a long time.	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

③ White balance		Auto		Automatically compensates the tone.	P. 179
		Fine		For shooting images outside on a sunny day.	
		Cloudy		For shooting images outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.	
		Light bulb		For shooting images using an incandescent light.	
		Fluorescent		For shooting images using a fluorescent light.	
④ Photo mode		Portrait		For shooting images of people	P. 179
		Scenery		For shooting images of scenery	
		Close-up		For switching to the macro lens and shooting images close up.	
		Sports mode		For shooting images of moving objects.	
		Night mode		For shooting night scenery.	
⑤ Auto timer/Number		Auto timer		Shows that the self-timer is set.	P. 183
		Shot number		Shows the number of continuous images (manual shooting) shot.	P. 172
⑥ Image quality		Auto correction		When automatic compensation of image quality is “ON”.	P. 168
⑦ Brightness				Shows the image brightness (–2/–1/±0/+1/+2).	P. 168 P. 178
⑧ Zoom				Shows the zoom settings.	P. 182
⑨ Select size		UXGA	Photo Mode	UXGA (1616×1212) is set.	P. 162
		SXGA		SXGA (1280×960) is set.	
		VGA		VGA (640×80) is set.	
		CIF		CIF (352×288) is set.	
		Stand-by		Standby (240×320) is set.	
		Mail(L)(176×144)		Large mail (176×144) is set.	
		Mail(S)(128×96)		Small mail (128×96) is set.	
		Large(176×144)	Movie Mode	Large size (176×144) is set.	P. 163
		Small(128×96)		Small size (128×96) is set.	
⑩ Storage setting		Normal		Shoots movies with a standard image quality.	P. 178
		Fine mode		Shoots movies with image quality as top priority.	
		Long dur. mode		Shoots movies with movie length as top priority.	
		Move mode		Shoots movies with movement as top priority.	
⑪ Movie type set		Normal		Shoots movies with video and voice.	P. 178
		Video		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Voice		Shoots movies with video voice only.	
⑫ Shooting status		Recording		Shows that movie shooting is in progress.	P. 176
		Standby		Shows that movie shooting is in standby mode.	
⑬ Remaining photography time				Shows the remaining time (in minutes and seconds) of a movie.	

<Photo mode>

Shooting Still Images

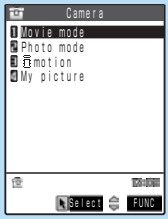
Use this procedure to take pictures with the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.

- You can save your images directly onto a miniSD memory card.
- You can also have the FOMA terminal automatically save your images after you shoot them by selecting the save destination folder beforehand.

Shooting with the FOMA terminal unfolded <Shoot open>

1 **Use ● to select 📷 and then press ●.**

The "Camera display" appears.



Camera display

2 **Press 2 ABC "Photo mode".**

The "Photo mode display" appears.

See "Changing the Photography Settings" →P. 182



Photo mode display

3 **Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or 📸 (📷).**

The "Image checking display" appears.

■ **To retake the shot**

Press CLR ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

4 **Press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select 1 "Phone" or 2 ABC "miniSD".**

■ **When "Phone" is selected as the save destination**

Select the save destination folder.

■ **When "miniSD" is selected as the save destination**

Images are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 412).



Image checking display

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Note

- Follow the procedure below to display Photo Mode display.
  - Press (Menu) ▶Select (Camera) and press (●) ▶Press (1) "Camera" ▶Press (2) "Photo mode".
- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message is shown on the display.
- The image quality may be poorer in some image formats. When images are shot in the Mail(L) (176 x 144) or Mail(S) (128 x 96) format with "Fit in display" selected in the Display screen size setting, the images are shown enlarged in the image checking display and may appear coarse as a result.
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save photographed images.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card or remove the miniSD memory card, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during shooting and turns green and remains lit while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Camera display

In the camera display... ➡ P. 166

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Camera display function menu

1 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press (●). See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Using the function menu in the Photo Mode display

In the photo mode display... ➡ P. 166

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

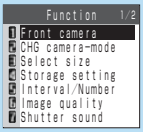


Photo mode display function menu

Photo mode display function menu 1/2

1 Front camera*	Switches the front camera and rear camera.	
2 CHG camera-mode	▶Choose from the following options: Select the camera mode.	
	1 Movie mode	Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" →P. 176
	2 Chance capture	See "Capturing important scenes" →P. 181
	3 Picture voice	See "Adding voiceover to images" →P. 181
	4 Photo mode	Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" →P. 166
	5 Continuous mode	Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" →P. 171
	6 Access reader	Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" →P. 188
	7 Bar code reader	See "Using the Bar Code Reader" →P. 184
3 Select size	Sets the format (image size). See Image sizes (formats) →P. 162	
4 Storage setting	See "Setting the file size during saving" →P. 169	

Continued on next page

5 Interval/ Number	See “Setting the shooting interval and number of shots” →P. 172	
6 Image quality	▶Choose from the following options: Select the quality of photographed images.	
	1 Auto correction (default setting)	▶Select 1 “ON” or 2 “OFF”. If you select “ON”, photographed images are automatically adjusted to give the highest image quality. Selecting “OFF” allows you to adjust the image quality or set the white balance.
	2 Brightness	▶Use ○ to adjust the brightness and then press ●. The brightness of photographed images can be adjusted through 5 levels (–2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is adjusted automatically. The brightness is set to “±0” when the camera is turned on. The brightness cannot be adjusted when “Auto correction” is set to “ON”.
	3 White balance	See “Setting the white balance” →P. 179 The white balance cannot be adjusted when “Auto correction” is set to “ON”.
	4 Color mode set	See “Setting effects in photographed images” →P. 179
	5 Photo mode	See “Selecting the right photography mode for the shot” →P. 179
	6 Image tuning	See “Suppressing flicker in photographed images” →P. 180 This option cannot be set for the Front camera.
7 Shutter sound (default setting: 1 Sound 1)	▶Select 1 “Sound 1”, 2 “Sound 2” or 3 “Sound 3”. Sets the shutter sound.	

*: If you have selected the Front camera, “1 Rear camera” is displayed. The default setting is the Rear camera.

Photo mode display function menu 2/2

1 Auto timer	See “Using the Auto timer” →P. 183	
2 Select frame	See “Shooting framed images” →P. 174	
3 Auto save set	▶Choose from the following options: Select the method used for saving photographed images.	
	1 ON	▶Press 1 “Phone” or 2 “miniSD”. This sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save photographed images. If you select “Phone”, images are saved in the Camera folder in My picture in the Data box. If you select “miniSD”, images are saved in the folder specified in “Select storage” (P. 412).
	2 OFF (default setting)	Cancels automatic saving.
4 File restriction	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
5 Display size	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display mode for images smaller than stand-by size (240 × 320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96).	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
6 Memory info	▶Check the available size and press CLR. Use this option to check the amount of data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	

Note

<Shutter Sound>
- The shutter sound does not sound when the phone is in manner mode.

<File Restrictions>
- You can also change the file restriction setting after saving the image.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Setting the file size during saving

In the photo mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167

1 Press 4 GHI "Storage setting" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Format / Storage Setting	UXGA (1616 × 1212) SXGA (1280 × 960)	VGA (640 × 480)	CIF (352 × 288)	Stand-by (240 × 320)	Mail(L) (176 × 144) Mail(S) (128 × 96)
1 Super Fine	Max. 595 KB	Max. 495 KB	Max. 495 KB	Max. 95 KB	Max. 95 KB
2 Fine	Max. 495 KB	Max. 95 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 15 KB
3 Normal	Max. 300 KB	Max. 50 KB	Max. 35 KB	Max. 35 KB	Max. 9.000 bytes

*: The sizes listed above are for images sent as mail. For saved images, add up to 5 KB to the above sizes.

Using the function menu in the Image Checking display

In the image checking display... ➡ P. 166

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

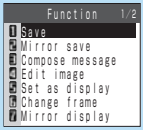


Image checking display function menu

Image checking display function menu 1/2

1 Save	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Mirror save	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Saves the image mirrored (inverted left-right).
3 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 175
4 Edit image	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press 1 ∞ "Phone" or 2 ABC "miniSD" ▶ If you selected "Phone", select a folder and press ● ▶ Edit the image. Adds a frame or other effect to the image. See "Editing Images" →P. 364 Images in formats larger than CIF (352 × 288) cannot be edited.
5 Set as display	■ To set the stand-by, sending calls, or incoming calls display or something. ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press 1 ∞ "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a display and press ●. ■ To set video-phone displays (except for sending vide-phone calls and incoming video-phone calls). ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press 1 ∞ "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select a display and press ● ▶ Select an image and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Sets a photographed image in the stand-by or other display. You cannot set images in formats of SXGA (1280 × 960) or larger or VGA (640 × 480) images saved in the "Super Fine" storage setting. A star (★) appears next to images that have been set in a display, except when the image was set in a video-phone display.
6 Change frame	See "Changing the frame" →P. 175
7 Mirror display*1	Displays the image in the checking display mirrored. Switches mirror display and normal displays.

*1 : If you have selected the Mirror display, "7 Normal display" is displayed.
Images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Continued on next page

Image checking display function menu 2/2

1 Display size	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display mode for images smaller than stand-by size (240 × 320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96).	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
2 File restriction	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which the file is sent.
3 Cancel	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the photographed image and so you can retake the shot.	

Note

<Compose message>
- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a photographed image attached by pressing (ｱ) (MAIL) during image checking.

<Edit image>
- Selecting "Edit image" changes the image display to normal display.
- The "Edit image" option can be used with images of the following sizes:
  CIF (352 × 288), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail(L) (176 × 144) and Mail(S) (128 × 96)

<File restriction>
- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.

Shooting with the FOMA terminal folded <Shoot closed>

Use this procedure to start up the Camera function and shoot still images when the FOMA terminal is folded with the stand-by display showing.

- Pressing (📷) does not start up the Camera function when "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".

1 Hold down (📷) for 1 second or longer.

The Camera function starts up in Photo mode. The image format is the format used for the last image shot.
To change the image format or adjust the brightness or zoom, open the FOMA terminal before proceeding.

■ To use the light

Press (☼) to turn the light on or off.

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶Press (📷).

3 Open the FOMA terminal and use the procedure described in "Shooting with the FOMA terminal unfolded" (P. 166) to check and save the photographed image.

Note

- You can also take pictures when the FOMA terminal is folded with the shooting display showing.
- By setting Auto save set to "ON", you can have the FOMA terminal automatically save photographed images without being opened.
- To exit the Camera function while the FOMA terminal is folded, hold down (📷) for 1 second or longer.
- The camera function automatically ends if you do not touch the keys for more than 3 minutes.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Continuous shooting <Continuous mode>

Default setting	Continuous mode: Auto Format setting: CIF (352×288) Interval: 1.0 seconds Number: 4

Continuous mode allows you to shoot a series of up to 20 rapid consecutive still images. You can use continuous shooting in either Auto or Manual mode.

- In Auto mode, once you set the number of images to be shot and the interval between shots, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots the remaining number of images at the specified interval.
- In Manual mode, the FOMA terminal takes the specified number of shots each time you press the shutter release key.
- Images can be shot in the CIF (352 × 288), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail(L) (176 × 144) and Mail(S) (128 × 96) formats.
- Images shot in Consecutive mode can also be stored as an original animation and made into an animated cartoon.
- You can have the FOMA terminal automatically save images shot in Continuous mode by setting the save destination folder beforehand.
- You cannot shoot continuously shoot if you fold the FOMA terminal. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates continuous shooting.

In the photo mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167

1 Press 2 “CHG camera-mode” ▶ Press 5 “Continuous mode” ▶ Select 1 “Auto” or 2 “Manual”.

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or ( ).

The “Continuous shooting checking display” appears and 4 images are shown as a list on the display.

■ To cancel continuous shooting

Auto mode: Press ▶ Select “NO” and press ●.
Manual mode: Press .

■ To select images for saving

Use to select an image and then press ●.
A check ( ) appears next to selected images.
Repeat this step to select more images.
To deselect a selected image, select the image to be deselected and press ●.



Continuous shooting checking display

■ To check images in detail

Use to select an image and press (Detail).
Use to check another image.
Press to return to the list display.
Follow the procedure below to save an image displaying details.
Press ●, select “YES”, press ● ▶ Select 1 “Phone” or 2 “miniSD”, select a folder and press ●.
There is no folder selection for “miniSD”.



Detail checking display

3 Select the save method.

See “Using the function menu in the Continuous Shooting Checking display” ➞ P. 173

Continued on next page

Note

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message is shown on the display.
- When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image format, you can select either "1.0 seconds" or "2.0 seconds" as the shooting interval. The number of shots is automatically fixed at 4 and cannot be changed.
- If you fold the FOMA terminal during continuous shooting, shooting stops and the continuous shooting checking display appears.
- If you press CLR during manual shooting, shooting stops and the continuous shooting display appears.
- When an event that interrupts shooting (e.g. an incoming call) occurs during continuous shooting, shooting ends. Once the call has finished, the continuous shooting checking display appears.
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card and this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save photographed images.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card, remove or insert the miniSD memory card FOMA, or used as a miniSD reader/writer, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during manual shooting. During automatic shooting, the call alert indicator glows green and also glows green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

In the photo mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167

1 Press 5 JKL "Interval/Number" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Default settings are "Interval: 0.5 seconds, Number: 5" for Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L)(176 × 144) and Mail (s)(128 × 96) formats.

1 Shot interval	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the shooting interval. This cannot be set in Manual mode.	
	1 0.5 seconds	Shoots images at 0.5-second intervals.
	2 1.0 seconds	Shoots images at 1-second intervals.
	3 2.0 seconds	Shoots images at 2-second intervals.
2 Shot number	▶ Enter the number of images to be shot (2 digits). Enters a 2-digit number between "05" and "20" (5 and 20 images). The default setting is 5. The number changes according to the image format. When you enter a 2-digit number, the number of shots is set automatically. To set the number shown, simply press ●.	

2 After completing the settings, press CLR.

Note

- You cannot set the interval to "0.5 seconds" when the CIF (352 × 288) format is selected.
- If you select the CIF (352 × 288) format when the interval is set to "0.5 seconds", the shooting interval changes to "1.0 seconds".
- If you select a format other than CIF (352 × 288) when the image size is set to CIF (352 × 288), the number setting changes to 5.
  If you select the CIF (352 × 288) format when the number of shots is set to 5, the number setting changes to 4.
  If you select the Stand-by (240 × 320) format when the number of shots is set to 11 or more, the number setting changes to 10.

Using the function menu in the Continuous Shooting Checking display

In the continuous shooting checking display... ➡ P. 171

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Continuous shooting checking display function menu 1/2

1 Store selection	▶ Choose from the following options: Save the selected still image.	
	1 Save 2 Mirror save	▶ Select a still image ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD" ▶ Select a folder and press ●. If you have selected miniSD, there is not folder selection.
2 Store all	▶ Choose from the following options: Save the all shot images.	
	1 Save 2 Mirror save	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD" ▶ Select a folder and press ●. If you have selected miniSD, there is not folder selection.
3 Store all & anime	▶ Choose from the following options: Save the all shot images and register them to anime	
	1 Save 2 Mirror save	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD" ▶ Select a folder and press ●. If you have selected miniSD, there is not folder selection.
4 Select this	Selects the current image.	
5 Select all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Selects all the images.	
6 Release this	Deselects the selected images.	
7 Release all	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deselects all the selected images.	

Continuous shooting checking display function menu 2/2

1 Mirror display*1	Displays the image in the checking display mirrored. Switches mirror display and normal displays.	
2 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Set restrictions on the currently selected photographed image files.	
	1 Files unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
	2 Files restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
3 Restriction all	▶ Choose from the following options: Set restrictions on all the photographed image files.	
	1 All files unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the files to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
	2 All files restricted	Prevents the files from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which the files are sent.
4 Cancel	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the photographed images so you can retake the shots.	

*1 : When you have selected the Mirror display, "1 Normal display" is displayed. The images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Continued on next page

Note

<Save all/anime>
- You cannot select "Save all/anime" when only one image has been shot or when 1 or more of the photographed images has already been saved.
- You cannot save data to a miniSD memory card.

<File restriction>
- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.

Using the function menu in the Detail Checking display

In the detail checking display... ➡ P. 171

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Detail checking display function menu

1 Save	Saves the displayed image.	
2 Mirror save	Saves the displayed image mirrored (inverted left-right).	
3 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 175	
4 Mirror display*1	Displays the image in the checking display mirrored. Switches the front camera and rear camera.	
5 Display size	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the display mode for images smaller than stand-by size (240 × 320). This option can only be set when the image format is Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96).	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
6 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.

*1 : When you have set Mirror display, "4 Normal display" is displayed Images shot using the front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" allows you to view the image as it was actually shot.

Note

<Compose message>
- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a photographed image attached by pressing (左) (MAIL) during image checking.

Shooting framed images <Framed photography>

This function allows you to add decorative frames to images in the CIF (352 × 288), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail(L) (176 × 144) and Mail(S) (128 × 96) formats.
- You can use either the frames pre-installed on the FOMA terminal or downloaded frames.
- You can download frames from an i Menu site. →P. 202
- The 5 pre-installed frames are shown below.


Heart


Heart (Rainbow)



A-Chooo!



Bar


Pattern

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

In the photo mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167

1 **Press ○ ▶ Press 2 “Select frame” ▶ Select a frame and press ●.**

■ **To cancel framed photography**
Select “OFF” and press ●.

2 **Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or ▮ (📷).**

3 **Use the procedure described in “Shooting with the FOMA terminal unfolded” (P. 166) to check and save the photographed image.**
You can change the frame before storing the photographed image. →P. 175

Note

- In the frame selection, you can press 左 “Play” to check the selected frame.
- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message is shown on the display.
- You can also use framed photography with the FOMA terminal folded. However, the selected frame does not appear in the image window.
- Framed shots taken using the front camera are displayed mirrored. When the images are saved they are automatically saved as normal images. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frame is also inverted left-right.
- Even when a frame is the same size as the image, it cannot be selected if the height and width are different.
- The frame is removed when you quit the Camera function.

Changing the frame

You can change frames before saving them.

In the image checking display function menu... ➡ P. 169

1 **Press 6 “Change frame” ▶ Select a frame and press ●.**
You cannot deselect the frame.

2 **Check the reframed image and then press ●.**
The Image Checking display reappears.

■ **To cancel a selected frame**
Press 左 (Cancel).

Note

- You can also set or cancel a frame by pressing 右 (FUNC) in the new frame checking display, selecting “Set” or “Cancel” and pressing ●.

Composing a message with an image attached

If you have selected “Compose message” for an image format of CIF (352 × 288) or larger, use this procedure to choose whether to send the image at its current size or resize the image.
If the image is Stand-by size (240 × 320) or smaller, the Compose Message display appears without the size selection display appearing first.

<Example: When “Compose message” is selected in the Image Checking display>

In the image checking display function menu display... ➡ P. 169

1 **Press 3 “Compose message” ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 **Send Noresize**	Sends the photographed image at its current size without resizing it first.
2 **Image size resized**	Reduces the image size to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or less while retaining the image’s aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

Continued on next page

2 Compose the message.

For more information on composing and sending i-mode mail →P. 245

Note

- When a large image (a still image between 10,001 bytes and 500 KB in size) is attached to i-mode mail, the image to be sent is saved in the Camera folder in My picture.
- Images with file sizes larger than 10,000 bytes are deemed to be large images. When a large image is sent to the FOMA terminal, it is converted to an appropriate size for reception by i-mode terminals at the i-mode Center.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situation:
  - Where there are already 20 draft messages.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use this procedure to shoot movies with sound using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.

- You cannot shoot movies with the FOMA terminal folded. Folding the FOMA terminal or opening and closing the FOMA terminal slowly during shooting quits Movie mode.
- If File size setting is set to "Long time" you can save your images directly onto a miniSD memory card.
- The available shooting time varies according to the subject and shooting conditions.

1 Use ● to select 📷, press ● ▶ Press 1 "Movie mode".

The "Movie mode display" appears.
To change the settings during shooting → P. 182



Movie mode display

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or ▮ (📷).



The FOMA terminal starts shooting.
You can adjust the zoom during shooting.
A guide to the remaining shooting time appears on the display.

3 Press ● or ▮ (📷).

Shooting ends and the "Movie checking display" appears.
If you have set File size setting to "Long time", the "Movie checking display" is not displayed. The movie is automatically saved to the miniSD memory card.



Movie checking display

■ To play back the movie you shot for checking

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 (Play).

■ To reshoot the movie

Press CLR ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

4 Press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Edit the title and press ●.

5 Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD".

■ When "Phone" is selected as the save destination

Select the save destination folder.

■ When "miniSD" is selected as the save destination

The movie is saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 412).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

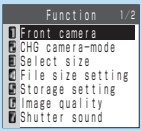
Note

- You can also use the following procedure to view the Movie Mode display:
  - Press (Menu) ▶Select (Toolbox) and press (●) ▶Press (1) "Camera" ▶Press (2) "Movie mode".
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while data is being saved to the card and this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- Shooting automatically stops and return to the movie checking display in the following situations:
  - When the available recording capacity is exceeded
  - When the battery runs out of charge
  - When the specified file size setting is exceeded during shooting
  - When you receive a call during shooting (the movie checking display reappears when the call ends)
- When the battery level is low, the FOMA terminal may be unable to save photographed images.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use Check miniSD, format the miniSD memory card, remove or insert the miniSD memory card FOMA, or used as a miniSD reader/writer, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- The call alert indicator flashes red during shooting and turns green and remains lit while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot shoot a movie during a call.

Using the function menu in the Movie Mode display

In the movie mode display... ➡ P. 176

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:



Movie mode display function menu

Movie mode display function menu 1/2

1 Front camera*1	Switches the front camera and rear camera.	
2 CHG camera-mode	▶Choose from the following options: Select the camera mode.	
	1 Movie mode	Used for shooting movies. See "Shooting Movies" →P. 176
	2 Chance capture	See "Capturing important scenes" →P. 181
	3 Picture voice	See "Adding voiceover to images" →P. 181
	4 Photo mode	Used for shooting still images. See "Shooting Still Images" →P. 166
	5 Continuous mode	Used for shooting a rapid series of consecutive still images. See "Continuous shooting" →P. 171
	6 Access reader	Starts up the access reader. See "Scanning Text" →P. 188
	7 Bar code reader	See "Using the Bar Code Reader" →P. 184
3 Select size	Sets the format (image size). For information on image size. →P. 163	
4 File size setting	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file size used for shooting.	
	1 Restricted (Short) (default setting)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a standard movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.
	2 Restricted (Long)	Allows you to shoot movies up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to shoot a large movie to be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.
	3 Local playback	Allows you to shoot movies up to 800 KB in size.
	4 Long time	Saves the movie onto a miniSD memory card while shooting.

Continued on next page

5 Storage setting	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image quality and shooting time when you shoot a movie.	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Shoots using normal quality and shooting time.
	2 Fine mode	Selects this option to shoot movies with better image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	3 Long dur. mode	Selects this option to shoot longer movies. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	4 Move mode	Selects this option to shoot movies of quickly moving subjects. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
6 Image quality	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image quality for movies.	
	1 Brightness	▶Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness and then press ●. The brightness of photographed images can be adjusted through 5 levels (–2 to ±0 to +2). If the key is not pressed for 2 seconds, the brightness is set automatically. The brightness is set to "±0" when the camera is turned on.
	2 White balance	See "Setting the white balance" →P. 179
	3 Color mode set	See "Setting effects in photographed images" →P. 179
	4 Photo mode	See "Selecting the right photography mode for the shot" →P. 179
	5 Image tuning	See "Suppressing flicker in photographed images" →P. 180 This option cannot be set for the front camera.
7 Shutter sound (default setting: 1 Sound 1)	▶Select 1 "Sound 1", 2 "Sound 2" or 3 "Sound 3". Sets the shutter sound.	

*1 : If you have selected the Front camera, "1 Rear camera" is displayed. The default setting is the Rear camera.

Movie mode display function menu 2/2

1 Auto timer	See "Using the Auto timer" →P. 183	
2 Movie type set	▶Choose from the following options: Select the movie shooting mode.	
	1 Normal (when the Camera function is activated)	Shoots a movie with both images and sound.
	2 Video	Shoots a movie with images only.
	3 Voice	Shoots a movie with sound only.
3 Auto save set	▶Choose from the following options: Select the method used for saving your movies.	
	1 ON	▶Select 1 "Phone" or 2 "miniSD". This sets the FOMA terminal to automatically save your movies. If you select "Phone", movies are saved in the Camera folder in i-motion in the Data box. If you select "miniSD", movies are saved in the folder specified in "Select storage" (P. 412).
	2 OFF (default setting)	Cancels automatic saving.
4 File restriction	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
5 Display size	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to fit the display.
6 Memory info	▶Check the available size and press CLR. Uses this option to check the amount of data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Note

<Shutter sound>
- No confirmation shutter sound is played when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.

<File restriction>
- You can also change the file restriction setting after a file is saved.

<Auto save set>
- You cannot specify the Auto save set or "File restriction" setting when "Long duration" is selected in "File size setting".

Setting the white balance

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167, 177

1 Press 6MNO "Image quality" ▶ Select "White balance" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Auto** (default setting)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under normal shooting conditions. This may result inn slightly reduced color intensity if colors in the image are distorted.
2 **Fine**	Because no color correction is performed, these settings produce better results and more vivid colors under the selected light source than the Auto setting.
3 **Cloudy**	
4 **Light bulb**	
5 **Fluorescent**	

- These settings are also applied to video-phone calls. →P. 79

Setting effects in photographed images

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167, 177

1 Press 6MNO "Image quality" ▶ Select "Color mode set" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Normal** (default setting)	Selects this option for normal color photography.
2 **Sepia**	Selects this option to shoot sepia-tone images.
3 **Monochrome**	Selects this option to shoot monochrome (black and white) images.

Selecting the right photography mode for the shot

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167, 177

1 Press 6MNO "Image quality" ▶ Select "Photo mode" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Portrait** (default setting)	This mode is best for shots of people, etc.
2 **Scenery**	This mode is best for shots of landscapes and other scenery.
3 **Close-up**	Uses this mode when you switch to Macro lens for close-up shots.
4 **Sports mode** *1	This mode is best for shots of fast-moving subjects.
5 **Night mode** *1	This mode is best for shots taken in dark locations, such as night scenes.

*1 : Not displayed in Movie mode.

Note
- Only the Portrait and Night mode photography modes can be used with the front camera.
- Night mode cannot be selected in continuous shooting.
- If camera shake occurs when you shoot in Night mode, select another mode.
- If you change from Camera mode to Movie mode or switch to the front camera while shooting in Sports mode, Scenery or Close-up mode, the photography mode changes to Portrait. If you switch to Movie or Continuous mode while in Night mode, the photography mode again reverts to Portrait.
- If you switch to the front camera in Continuous mode, you cannot then select the "Photo mode" setting.

Suppressing flicker in photographed images

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167, 177

1 Press 6 MNO "Image quality" ▶ Select "Image tuning" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Auto** (default setting)	Flicker is suppressed automatically.
2 **Mode 1 (50Hz)**	Selects this mode when shooting in regions where the power supply frequency is 50 Hz.
3 **Mode 1 (60Hz)**	Selects this mode when shooting in regions where the power supply frequency is 60 Hz.

Using the function menu in the Movie Checking display

In the movie checking display... ➡ P. 176

1 Press ▷ 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Movie checking display function menu

1 **Play**	Plays a movie you have shot.	
2 **Save**	Saves a movie you have shot.	
3 **Compose message**	▶ **Edit the title and press ● ▶ Compose the i-mode mail message.** Composes an i-mode mail message with the movie you have shot attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245 You cannot attach movies larger than 490 KB.	
4 **Set as stand-by**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Edit the title and press ● ▶ Select 1 あ "Phone" ▶ Select a folder and press ●.** Sets the movie you shot in the stand-by display.	
5 **Display size**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the image display mode.	
	1 **Actual size** (default setting)	Displays the movie at its actual size.
	2 **Fit in display**	Enlarges the movie to fit the display.
6 **File restriction**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the file restrictions.	
	1 **File unrestricted** (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 **File restricted**	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
7 **Cancel**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the movie ready for reshooting.	

Note

<Compose message>
- The movie you want to send is saved in the i-motion camera folder.
- You can also compose an i-mode mail message with a movie you have shot attached by pressing ◁ 左 (MAIL) in the Movie Checking display.

Capturing important scenes <Chance capture>

When you are using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot a movie, this function allows you to shoot additional scenes even when the available shooting time has been exceeded. This is extremely useful for capturing important scenes that you would otherwise miss.

- The FOMA terminal saves just the last part of the movie you shot, starting from the available shooting time (approx. 45 seconds using the default setting) prior to the time you stopped shooting. Footage you shot before that starting point is discarded.
- If you stop shooting before the available shooting time is exceeded, the entire movie from the start to the end of shooting is saved, as in "Movie mode".

In the movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 177

1 Press 2 "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press 2 "Chance capture".

2 Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or ▮ (📷).



The FOMA terminal starts shooting the movie.
You can adjust the zoom during shooting.
Once you exceed the available shooting time, the remaining time counter reverts to "00:00" and starts flashing.

3 Press ● or ▮ (📷).

Shooting ends.

4 Use the procedure described in "Shooting Movies" (P. 176) to check and save your movie.

Adding voiceover to images <Picture voice>

This function allows you to create movies by adding voiceover to Mail(L) (176 × 144) or Mail(S) (128 × 96) format still images.

<Example: Taking pictures and adding voiceover>

In the movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 177

1 Press 2 "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press 3 "Picture voice".

2 Select 1 "Photo mode" and press ● ▶ Point the camera at the subject ▶ Press ● or ▮ (📷).

The FOMA terminal shoots a still image.
For information on shooting still images →P. 166
The "Recording start display" appears.
You can set file space by selecting "File size setting." prior to record voice.



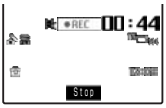
Recording start display

■ To add voiceover to images in My picture

Press 2 "My picture" and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select an image and press ●.

Continued on next page

3 Press ● or ▮ (📷).



Audio recording begins.
A guide to the remaining recording time appears on the display.

4 Press ● or ▮ (📷).

Audio recording stops.

5 Use the procedure described in "Shooting Movies" (P. 176) to check and save your movie.

Note

● You can also add voiceover to still images by pressing 右 (FUNC) in the Photo Mode display ▶ Press 2 "CHG camera-mode" ▶ Press 3 "Picture voice".

Using the function menu in the Recording Start display

In the recording start display... ➡ P. 181

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose the following options:

Recording start display function menu

1 File size setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the file size used for audio recording.	
	1 Restricted (Short) (when launching camera)	Allows you to record audio files up to 290 KB in size. Select this option to send a standard movie as an i-mode mail attachment.
	2 Restricted (Long)	Allows you to record audio files up to 490 KB in size. Select this option to send a large movie as an i-mode mail attachment.

Changing the Photography Settings

Use the procedures described in this section to use features such as the zoom and auto timer and to specify settings such as the image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom (Tele/Wide) allows you to adjust the image being shot to the desired size.

- The zoom can be adjusted from 1× to 4× in 16 steps on the rear camera.
- The front camera zoom can be adjusted from 1× to roughly 2× in 2 steps. Note that the zoom cannot be used with CIF (352 × 288) format images.
- You can also adjust the zoom setting when shooting a movie.
- The FOMA terminal's zoom is digital.

1 Use ⊙ to adjust the zoom.

⊙ (Tele): Zooms in by 1 step each time you press the key.
⊙ (Wide): Zooms out by 1 step each time you press the key.
Hold down ⊙ or ⊙ to zoom in or out continuously.

Note

- The zoom is set to "1x" when the Camera function starts up and reverts to "1x" when you change camera modes and image size. However, the zoom setting is retained when changing to the same image size and camera mode.
- The image quality may change slightly when you adjust the zoom.

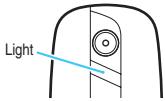
Using the light

When you are shooting in situations where there is insufficient natural light, such as indoors, you can use the FOMA terminal's light to make the subject brighter.

- If you turn on the light and do not take any pictures for around 30 seconds, the light automatically turns off.

1 Press (左) (ON) or (▼) (☼).

To turn the light off, press (左) (OFF) or (▼) (☼).



Note

- You cannot turn on the light when shooting a movie with sound only.

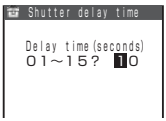
Using the Auto timer

Setting the Auto timer allows you to shoot images without having to hold the FOMA terminal.

- The Auto timer can be used to shoot both still images and movies.
- Once you have taken the shot, the Auto timer setting reverts to "OFF" and has to be set again each time it is used.

In the photo mode/movie mode display function menu... ➡ P. 167, 177

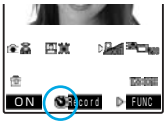
1 Press (○) ▶ Select (1あ) "Auto timer" ▶ Press (1あ) "ON" ▶ Enter the Auto timer delay (2 digits).



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" as the Auto timer delay.
Once you enter a 2-digit number, the Auto timer is automatically set. To set the time shown, simply press (●).
The default Auto timer delay is 10 seconds.

When you set the Auto timer

The (⏲) icon appears on the display to show that the Auto timer is set.



When you press (●) or (▼) (📷), the FOMA terminal emits the Auto timer startup tone and the timer starts running.
The call alert indicator, the (左) and (右) keys and the (⏲) icon flash.
Roughly 5 seconds before the shot will be taken, the countdown tone sounds and the call alert indicator and the (左) and (右) keys start flashing rapidly.

You can also take the shot manually while the Auto timer is running by pressing (●) or (▼) (📷).

■ To cancel the Auto timer setting

In the Photo Mode/Movie Mode display function menu, press (○) ▶ Press (1あ) "Auto timer" ▶ Press (2ABC) "OFF".

■ To stop the timer while it is running

Press (左) (Stop) or (CLR).

Continued on next page

Note

- The Auto timer cannot be used when continuous mode is set to Manual mode.
- The Auto timer turns "OFF" in the following situations:
  - When Auto Timer shooting ends
  - When you switch from automatic to manual photography in continuous mode
  - When you exit the Camera function

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

The FOMA terminal can use its built-in camera to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The scanned data can then be used for displaying, copying text, it can be stored in the Phonebook or as a bookmark, or used in functions such as Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To and i-αppli To. You can even use the FOMA terminal's camera to scan, play and save images and melody files.

- The FOMA terminal can store up to 5 scanned bar codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during scanning. You can reduce shaking by holding your hand under the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning bar codes, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm from the scanned code.
- For quicker and easier access to the bar code reader, add its desktop icon to the stand-by display.

JAN codes and QR codes

- What is a JAN code?



This is a bar code that uses vertical lines (bars) of varying thicknesses and spacings to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan both 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* JAN codes scanned with the FOMA terminal display "4942857113068".

- What is a QR code?



QR codes are a type of two-dimensional bar code that uses horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, letters, kanji characters, kana characters and pictographs. When QR codes are used to handle images or i-melody data, one set of data can be split among two or more QR codes.

* QR codes scanned with the FOMA terminal display "NTT DoCoMo Inc.".

Scanning codes

1 **Press (Menu) ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5 JKL "Bar code reader".**

The "Bar code reader display" appears.



Bar code reader display

2 **Press 1 あ "New" ▶ Change to the macro lens.**

For information on using the lens selector switch →P. 161

3 **Position the JAN code or QR code in the recognition field.**



The corners of the recognition field are displayed (⌜, ⌝ , ⌞ and ⌟).
Focus the image and center the JAN code or QR code so that it falls entirely inside the recognition field.

To adjust the zoom

○: Zooms out
○: Zooms in

To use the light

Press 左 (ON) or ▮ (☼).
To turn the light off, press 左 (OFF) or ▮ (☼).

4 **Press ● ▶ The FOMA terminal recognizes the scanned data.**

Scanning may take some time.

■ **To cancel scanning**

Press ● ▶ Press ●.

■ **To scan data split among multiple QR codes**

Press ● ▶ Repeat steps 3 and 4.

■ **To discard the scanned data**

Press CLR ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

5 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 "Save" ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select "OK" and press ●.**

Note

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Depending on the QR code version, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize codes that are scratched, stained, damaged, poorly printed or obscured by reflected light.
- If there are already 5 stored items of data in all when you press 1 "New", a confirmation message appears asking whether you want to replace the oldest existing entry. Select "YES" and press ● to overwrite the oldest data with the downloaded data.
- You can also start up the bar code reader from a text editing display. When you do this, the scanned data is then entered in the text editing display.
- You may be unable to scan some sizes and types of bar code.
- You cannot store JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot store progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. For more information on progressive JPEG images, see P. 219.
- You cannot save the downloaded data on a miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Bar Code Reader display

In the bar code reader display... ➡ P. 184

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

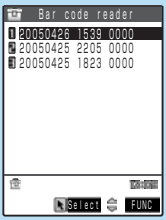
Bar code reader display function menu

1 **Add desktop icon**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Using the Reading data

1 **Press Menu ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5 JKL "Bar code reader" ▶ Press 2 ABC "Reading data list".**

The "Reading data list display" appears.



Reading data list display

Continued on next page

2 Select the data and press ●.

The "Reading data details display" appears.

3 Select a displayed item and press ●.

"Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address and memo to the phonebook all at once. →P. 93, 95

"Compose message" : Composes an i-mode mail message with the address, subject and message entered in the respective fields. →P. 245

"Add bookmark" : Adds the URL and title your list of bookmarks. →P. 213

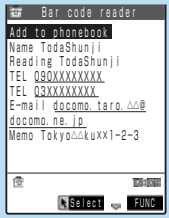
"Start i-αppli" : Launches the specified i-αppli. →P. 328 "Launching software from the bar code reader"

Melody icon : Plays the melody. →P. 391

Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function. →P. 222 "Phone To function"

E-mail address : Composes an i-mode mail message using the Mail To function. →P. 223 "Mail To function"

URL : Connect to the site Using the Web To function →P. 223 "Web To function"



Reading data details display

Note

● The titles of downloaded data are as follows.

If the date and time has been set.

- Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4 digits)
  If the same date and time is set more than once, the 4 digits are listed in numerical order up to "9999".

If the date and time has not been set.

- Title: 00000000_0000_xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits)
  The 4 digits are listed in numerical order up to "9999" and if "9999" is reached, they return to "0000".

Using the function menu in the Reading Data List display

In the Reading data list display... ➡ P. 185

1 Select scanned data and press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data List display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter a title and press ●. Edits the selected title of the scanned data. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 Result	Shows the reading data details display.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Using the function menu in the Reading Data Details display

In the Reading data details display... ➡ P. 186

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data details display function menu 1/2

1 Save	Stores the scanned data.
2 Display list	Shows the reading data list display. If the displayed data has not been saved, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the data.
3 Internet	If a URL is selected, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" →P. 223

4 **Compose message**	Selecting “Compose message” composes an i-mode mail message with the scanned data used in the addressee, subject and message fields. If the e-mail address is selected, an i-mode mail message is composed with the selected address used in the addressee field. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →P. 245
5 **Dialing**	If the phone number is selected, the FOMA terminal calls that number. See “Phone To function” →P. 222
6 **Add to phonebook**	Selecting “Add to phonebook” adds the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address and memo to the phonebook all at once. If the phone number is selected, the FOMA terminal calls that number. If the e-mail address is selected, that address is added to the phonebook. See “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook” →P. 93, “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” →P. 95
7 **Add bookmark**	Selecting “Add bookmark” adds the URL and title in the information to your list of bookmarks. If a URL is selected, that URL is added to your list of bookmarks. See “Adding bookmarks” →P. 213

Reading data details display function menu 2/2

1 **Save image**	**▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select an option and press ●.** The selected image is saved in My picture in the Data box. If you do not want to set the image in the stand-by display, select “NO” after you select the folder.
2 **Save melody**	**▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select an option and press ●.** The selected melody is saved in Melodies in the Data box. If you do not want to set the melody as a ring tone or other tone, select “NO” after you select the folder.
3 **Start i-αppli**	Selecting “Start i-αppli” launches the i-αppli specified in the data. See “Launching software from the bar code reader”. →P. 328
4 **Copy**	Copies text included in the scanned data. See “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →P. 544

Note

- If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be read by the bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces.
- During “Self mode” set up, you cannot send i-mode mail nor connect to the Internet.

<Internet> <Add bookmark>

- You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>

- The address cannot be entered if it includes characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

- Full pitch/Half pitch numbers and symbols (#* +) are the only other characters that can be included in a phone number. A phone call cannot be made if any other characters are included.
- The TV phone image set by this function is effective only at the time of sending.
- Phone calls cannot be made during set up of specified call restrictions, dialed call restrictions, and self mode.

<Save image>

- The titles and file names of saved images are as follows.
  - Title: imagexxx (where “xxx” is a 3-digit number)
  - File Name: imagexxx (where “xxx” is a 3-digit number)

<Save melody>

- File names of saved melodies are as follows.
  - File Name: melodyxxx (xxx: 3 digits)
- Melodies without titles are shown in the Melodies list under their file names (excluding the extension).
- The melody volume is the volume that was set at “Phone” in “Ring volume”.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.

<Start i-αppli>

- You cannot activate i-αppli from downloaded data if “Bar code “i-αppli To”” in “Set i-αppli To” is deselected.
- The i-αppli will not start if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using its built-in camera, the FOMA terminal can scan printed text and then add the scanned text data as a Phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose mail. It can even use the data to make calls or display Internet websites.

- The FOMA terminal can store up to 8 sets of scanned text data.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during scanning. You can reduce shaking by holding your hand under the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning text, hold the rear camera about 6-8 cm from the text to be scanned.
- This function will also scan vertically written Japanese text.

■ Scanning modes

The scanning modes are shown below. Select the mode that best suits the data to be scanned.

Card read	Use this mode to scan names, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, postal codes, street addresses and memos printed on business cards and then store the scanned data in the phonebook all at once.
Compose message	Use this mode to scan the addressee, subject and message in an e-mail message and then compose i-mode mail with the scanned data used in the respective fields.
URL	Use this mode to scan a URL and then connect to the scanned URL or add it to your list of bookmarks.
Mail address	Use this mode to scan an e-mail address and then use the scanned e-mail address to compose i-mode mail.
Phone number	Use this mode to scan a phone number and then call that number.
Free memo	Use this mode to scan English or Japanese text and store the scanned text as a text memo.

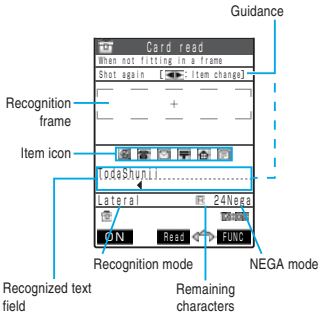
■ Limits on readable text

The number of characters that can be scanned varies according to the type of information being scanned, as shown below.

Scanned item		Maximum readable characters
Card read	Name	Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters
	TEL	Up to 26 half-pitch numbers Text editing can also be used to enter hash symbols (#), asterisks (＊), plus symbols (+) and pauses (p).
	E-mail	Up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
	Post Code	Up to 7 half-pitch digits
	Address	Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters
	Memo	Up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters
Compose message	Receiver	Up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
	Subject	Up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters
	Message	Up to 128 full-pitch or 256 half-pitch characters
URL		Up to 256 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
Mail address		Up to 256 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols
Phone number		Up to 256 half-pitch numbers
Free memo		Up to 128 full-pitch or 256 half-pitch characters
Dictionary	Japanese	Up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters
	English	Up to 64 half-pitch characters

■ Guide to the scanner display

The illustration below shows how to read the information in the scanner display using Card read mode as an example.



Guidance	: Shows the current operation.
Recognition frame	: Shows the recognition area. The recognition frame color transitions (red → orange → green) indicate whether the image is focused. A green frame indicates that the image is focused.
Item icon	: Shows the item being scanned. Card scan mode: Name, Phone number, E-mail address, Postal code. Street address or Memo. Compose message mode: Addressee/ Subject/Message
Recognized text field	: Shows the scanned text.
Recognition mode	: Shows the recognition mode used for scanning (Kanji (lateral writing or vertical writing), Postal code, Phone number, e-mail address or URL).
Remaining characters	: Shows the number of remaining half-pitch characters that can be scanned.
NEGA mode	: Shown when "Negative fix" is selected in the "NEGA/POSI mode" setting.

Scanning text

<Example: Scanning text in Card scan mode>

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 4 GHI "Access reader".

The "Access reader display" appears.



Access reader display

2 Press 1 (New).



The "Scanning mode selection display" appears.

See "Scanning modes". →P. 188

Continued on next page

3 Press 1 “Card read” ▶ Change to the macro lens.

The “Access reader scanning display” appears.
For information on using the lens selector switch →P. 161



Access reader scanning display

4 Display the text recognition field.

Focus the image and position the text so that the tops and bottoms of the characters are entirely inside the recognition field.
If the text to be scanned will not all fit in the recognition field, it can be read in multiple scans.

■ To adjust the zoom

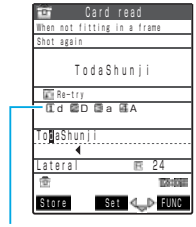
: Changes from “Standard” to “Large”.
: Changes from “Large” to “Standard”.

■ To use the light

Press (左) (ON) or (☼).
To turn the light off, press (左) (OFF) or (☼).

5 Press ●.

The FOMA terminal scans the text and recognized text appears in red.
If the scanned text does not all fit in the display, press ◎ or (Home) and (Memo/Check) to scroll the display and check the remaining text.
The scanned text can be corrected in either of the ways described below.



Proposed alternates

■ Selecting text to correct it

Use ◎ to move the cursor to the character to be corrected ▶ Press the number for the correct proposed character.
For characters that have a lower case form, press (#) to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ To rescan the text

Press (CLR) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.



■ Editing the text

Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ 1 “Edit” ▶ Edit the text.
Use this method to correct scanned text using ordinary text editing.
To revert to proposed candidate selection, press (右) (FUNC) and then press 1 “Select recog. data”.
After completing the data editing, proceed to step 6.

6 Press ●.

The data is set as text.

■ To scan remaining text

Repeat steps 4 to 6.
When continuing, ensure that the last 2 characters in the last text scanned are included in the recognition area.

■ To scan another item

Use ◎ to select the item to be scanned ▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6.
In Card scan mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 e-mail addresses.

7 Press (CLR) ▶ Press (左) (Save).

The reading data details display appears. Press (CLR) to return to the reading data list display.

Note

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal does not move while "Processing..." is displayed.
- The FOMA terminal will only scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. Note that it cannot scan some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. The FOMA terminal may also fail to recognize text in faxed or photocopied documents, text that is printed in decorative fonts or at irregular intervals, and text that does not stand out clearly from the background. Also, depending on conditions such as the ambient lighting, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize some characters correctly.
- If there are already 8 stored items of data in all when you select 1 "New", a confirmation message appears asking whether you want to replace the oldest existing entry. Select "YES" and press ● to select and replace stored data.
- You can also start up the access reader from a text editing display. When you do this, the scanned data is then entered in the text editing display.
- When the access reader is started up from the dictionary text editing screen, select "Dic. (Japanese)" or "Dic. (English)" scanning mode.
- If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 3 minutes or longer before starting to scan text, the access reader scanning display quits and the access reader display reappears.
- If you scan some text and then receive a voice or video-phone call or 64K data communication, or you are notified of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm, or you use another FOMA terminal function before saving the scanned text data, the scanned text is briefly saved while you change to the respective display. Later, when you have completed the operation, the reading data list display or details display reappears.

Using the function menu in the Access Reader display

In the access reader display... ➡ P. 189

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Access reader display function menu

1 **Add desktop icon**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Using the function menu in the Access Reader Scanning display

In the access reader scanning display... ➡ P. 190

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Access reader scanning display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit**	Edits the scanned text data. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Store**	Saves the scanned text data.
3 **Internet**	During scanning in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" →P. 223
4 **Compose message**	When the data is scanned in compose message mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data all entered in the respective fields. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, an i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
5 **Dialing**	For text data in phone number mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.
6 **Add to phonebook**	When the data is scanned in card read mode, the scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, the scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in phone number mode, the scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, the scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93 See "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" →P. 95
7 **Add bookmark**	For text data in URL mode, this option adds the scanned URL to your bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" →P. 213

Continued on next page

Access reader scanning display function menu 2/2

1 Search phonebook	Uses the scanned text data to search the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98 You cannot search when you are in card read mode or compose message mode.	
2 Add to memo	When the data is scanned in URL mode, the scanned URL is stored as a text memo. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, the scanned e-mail address is stored as a text memo. When the data is scanned in phone number mode, the scanned phone number is stored as a text memo. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, the scanned data is stored as a text memo. See "Composing a Text Memo" →P. 452	
3 Reading mode set	▶Choose from the following options: Change the scanning mode.	
	1 Card read	Switches to Card Read mode.
	2 Compose message	Switches to Card Read mode.
	3 URL	Switches to URL mode.
	4 Mail address	Switches to Mail Address mode.
	5 Phone number	Switches to Phone Number mode.
	6 Free memo	Switches to Free Memo mode.
4 NEGA/POSI mode	▶Choose from the following options: Set the type of printed output.	
	1 Auto setting	Automatically chooses negative or positive output.
	2 Positive fix	Selects this option when printing dark text on a light background.
	3 Negative fix	Selects this option when printing light text on a dark background.
5 Guidance OFF*1	Sets whether to display or hide guidance.	
6 Vertical writing*2	Selects vertical or lateral (horizontal) writing for the Japanese text to be scanned.	

*1 : If you have selected the Guidance OFF, "5 Guidance ON" is displayed.
*2 : If you have selected the Vertical writing, "6 Lateral writing" is displayed.

Note

- When you scan data in URL mode, the "http://" or "https://" prefix is added to the scanned text in the following situations:
  - If the scanned text does not include ":/", "http://" is added to the beginning of the text. However, if the text begins with "/" or "//", the "/" or "//" is converted to "http://".
  - If the scanned text already includes ":/", the "//" is converted to "http://". However, if the ":/" is preceded by "s" (s://) or "S" (S://), the "//" is converted to "https://".
- If you launch the access reader from the dictionary, select "1 Dic (Japanese) or 2 Dic (English)" scanning mode.

Using the Reading data

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Tools and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 4 GHI "Access reader" ▶2 ABC "Reading data list".

The "Reading data list display" appears.



Reading data list display

2 Select the text data and press ●.

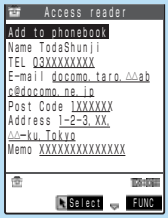
The “Reading data details display” appears.

3 Select a displayed item and press ●.

“Add to phonebook” : Adds the name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address and memo to the phonebook all at once. →P. 93, 95

“Compose message” : Composes an i-mode mail message with the address, subject and message entered in the respective fields. →P. 245

* Selecting an item such as the phone number or e-mail address and pressing ● enables you to edit the respective data.



Reading data details display

Using the function menu in the Reading Data List display

In the Reading data list display... ➡ P. 192

1 Select the Reading data and press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit	Editing is not possible in the list display.
2 Internet	For text data in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See “Web To function” →P. 223
3 Compose message	When the data is scanned in compose message mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data all entered in the respective fields. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, an i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →P. 245
4 Dialing	For text data in Phone Number mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.
5 Add to phonebook	When the data is scanned in card read mode, the scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, the scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in phone number mode, the scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, the scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo. See “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook” →P. 93 See “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” →P. 95
6 Add to bookmark	For text data in URL mode, this option adds the scanned URL to your bookmarks. See “Adding bookmarks” →P. 213
7 Search phonebook	Uses the scanned text data to search the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98 For text data in Card Scan mode or Compose Message mode, this option uses the displayed information to search the phonebook.

Reading data list display function menu 2/2

1 Add to memo	Stores the selected text data as a text memo. See “Composing a Text Memo” →P. 452 Data cannot be stored in Card Scan mode or Compose Message mode.
2 Display detail	Shows the reading data details display for the selected text data.
3 Copy	Copies the text data. See “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →P. 544
4 Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
5 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Using the function menu in the Reading Data Details display

In the Reading data details display... ➡ P. 193

Continued on next page

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Reading data details display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit**	Edits the text data for the selected option. See "Entering Text" →P. 526 The data cannot be edited when "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.
2 **Internet**	For text data in URL mode, this option connects to the site with that URL. See "Web To function" →P. 223
3 **Compose message**	When an e-mail address is selected in data scanned in card read mode, an i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed. When "Compose message" is selected for data scanned in compose message mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data entered in the respective fields. When the recipient, subject or message body is selected in data scanned in compose message mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned data entered in the respective field. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, an i-mode mail message addressed to the scanned address is composed. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, an i-mode mail message is composed with the scanned text entered as the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
4 **Dialing**	When a phone number is selected in data scanned in card read mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number. When the data is scanned in phone number mode, the FOMA terminal calls the scanned phone number.
5 **Add to phonebook**	When "Add to phonebook" is selected for data is scanned in card read mode, the scanned data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook. When the name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address or a memo is selected in data is scanned in card read mode, the selected data is stored in the respective fields in the phonebook. When an e-mail address is selected in data scanned in compose message mode, the selected e-mail address is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in mail address mode, the scanned e-mail address is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in phone number mode, the scanned phone number is stored in the phonebook. When the data is scanned in free memo mode, the scanned data is stored in the phonebook as a memo. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93 See "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" →P. 95
6 **Add bookmark**	For text data in URL mode, that URL is added to your list of bookmarks. See "Adding bookmarks" →P. 213
7 **Search phonebook**	Uses the selected text data to search the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98 No search is conducted if "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.

Reading data details display function menu 2/2

1 **Add to memo**	Stores the selected text data as a text memo. See "Composing a Text Memo" →P. 452 Data is not stored if "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message" is selected.
2 **Display list**	Shows the reading data list display.
3 **Copy**	Copies the selected text data. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544
4 **Delete this**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
5 **Delete all**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ●** ▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** For information on security code →P. 142

Note

- You cannot connect to the Internet or send i-mode mail while the FOMA terminal is set to "Self mode".

<Dialing>

- The characters that can be used when making calls are half-pitch numbers and half-pitch symbols (#, ＊ and +). If other characters are included, only the numbers and symbols are used when the call is dialed.
- The video-phone image set for this function is only valid for the current call.
- You cannot make calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is set.

i-mode

What is i-mode? 196
Displaying the i-mode Menu <i-mode menu> 202

Viewing Sites

Viewing a Site 203
Viewing and Using Sites 208
Adding My Menu Entries <My Menu> 211
Changing Your i-mode Password <Change i-mode Password> 211
Viewing Internet Websites <Connect to Internet> 212
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly <Bookmark> 213
Saving Site Content <Screen memo> 216

Downloading Images and Melodies from Sites

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages <Save image> 218
Downloading Melodies from Sites <i-melody> 219
Downloading "Chara-den" Characters from Sites 220
Downloading Data Files from Sites 221

i-mode Utility Functions

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions
<Phone To/Mail To/Web To function> 222

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

Specifying Your i-mode Settings 224

Using the Message Services

When You Receive a Message <Receive message> 227
Checking for Messages <Check new message> 229
Viewing Messages in the Message Box <Message Request/Free> 230

Using Certificates

Using SSL Certificates 232
Setting FirstPass 232
Changing the Certificate Host 234

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail, connecting to the Internet and connecting to i-mode sites (programs).

■ Site (program) connection

This service allows you to access a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider), such as weather reports and news bulletins, simply by selecting them from the i-mode menu listings. You can also use this service to download and use games and stand-by display images.

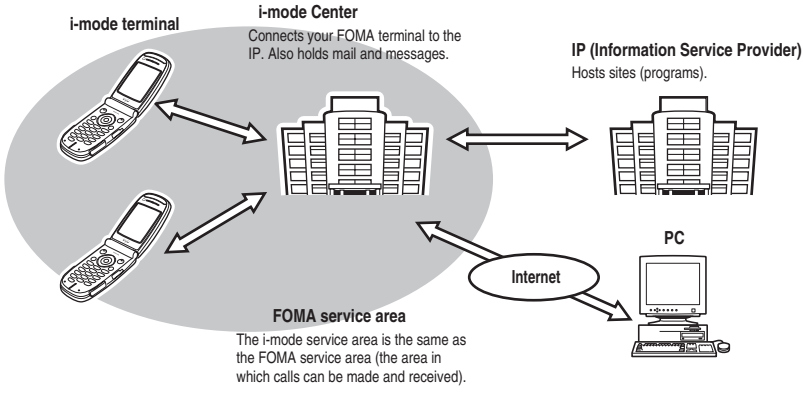
■ Internet connection

This service allows you to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites by directly entering the URL of the website on your i-mode terminal.

■ i-mode mail

This service allows you to exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 full-pitch characters long not only with other i-mode terminals but with anyone who has an internet e-mail address. You can also use other exciting e-mail functions such as exchanging Deco-mail, still images and movies.

Service Configuration



i-mode is a paid service to which you must subscribe. For information on subscribing to i-mode, refer to the back cover of the Manual.

Note

- New subscribers to FOMA services can access all the services as of the day of their subscription.
- If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to a FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" information used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this event, you will need to re-register. For information on which sites will maintain your "My Menu" data, refer to "お知らせ&ヘルプ(News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- The i-mode service charges are based on the amount of information (the number of packets) you send and receive. This Instruction Manual does not provide any specific information on the charges. For information on usage charges etc., refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.
- The i-mode service details are subject to change. Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Site (program) connection

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs (information service provider) to use their various online services.
For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries, or download ring tones.

● Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu display appears first. From this display, you can access a variety of other sites such as the "週刊iガイド(What's New!!)".
See "Viewing a Site" →P. 203



The above is a screen image. The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on your settings.

Item	Description
1マイメニュー (1My Menu)	By adding a frequently visited site to My Menu, you can make it easier and quicker to visit the site again next time (P. 211). The URLs of paid sites are automatically added. Up to a maximum of 45 sites can be added.
2週刊iガイド (2What's New)	This site provides information on new or recommended sites. Updated daily from Monday to Friday.
3メニューリスト (3Menu List)	Lists all the sites by category and area for your convenience. Select an interesting site and connect to it from here.
4とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu)	Interesting sales campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (Provided by: D2 Communications).
5iエリア (i-Area)	Provides quick access to information on the area you are currently in and its surroundings, including weather reports, maps and local facilities.
6かんたん検索 (Simple search) Provides an easy way to locate sites using keyword-based searches from categories such as "Games" and "Stand-by displays".	・ i-αppli search Provides a menu giving a targeted overview of sites offering free information on i-αpplis and gaming sites.
	・ Useful site search Provides a menu that categorizes and briefly introduces useful sites on the menu list that you can access on a routine basis.
7マイボックス (My Box)	A service aimed at members that provides quick access to pre-registered sites or stores that provide services.
8オプション設定 (4Options)	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
9お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
■料金&お申込 (■ Free & application)	Go here to check and pay your i-mode charges and to change or upgrade your subscription.
ENGLISH	Can be used to display the iMenu in English.

Note

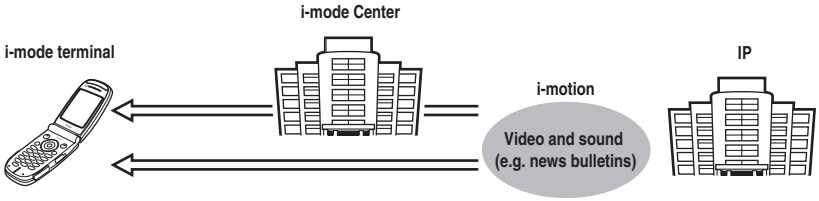
- The sent information "FOMA terminal manufacturer number and UIM card ID number" is used by the IP (information service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The sender's mobile phone information "FOMA terminal manufacturer number and UIM card ID number" is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. However, your phone number, address, age, and sex, are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider).
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by IPs.
- Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply if you are not exchanging data with the i-mode Center.
- If you subscribe to the "Dual Network Service", part of the iMenu display changes.

Other Features and Functions

i-motion

This service allows you to download videos and sounds to an i-mode terminal from i-mode sites and then view the video or set it in your stand-by display.

- To download an i-motion →P. 334
- To play an i-motion →P. 334
- To set an i-motion for automatic playback →P. 336



You can download an i-motion using either packet communication via the i-mode Center or directly using digital communication.

Chaku-motion

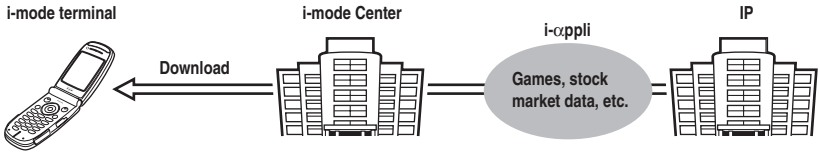
This allows you to download an i-motion to your FOMA terminal from an i-mode site and then set that i-motion as the ring tone played and image shown when you receive a call. You can use this to set not just a melody, but a song sung by your favorite artist, as your ring tone. You cannot set some incompatible i-motions or Chaku-motions.

- To set a Chaku-motion →P. 115

i-αppli

By downloading i-αppli from websites, you can make your FOMA terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to a FOMA terminal or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-αppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- To download an i-αppli →P. 317
- To run an i-αppli →P. 320
- To launch an i-αppli automatically →P. 326



i-αppli stand-by display

This function allows you to set an i-αppli as your stand-by display, making it possible to receive mail and make calls directly from the stand-by display. This provides you with the means to set up an even easier-to-use stand-by display, with quick and easy access to the latest news and weather information, as well as allowing you to set your favorite characters for various mail and alarm notification functions.

- To set the i-αppli stand-by display →P. 124, 329

i-αppli DX

i-αppli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received Calls record and phonebook data) to make i-αpplis even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character display, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices. →P. 316

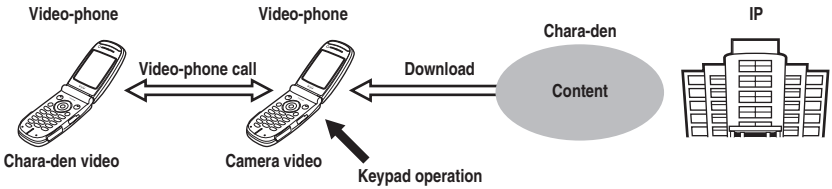
3D Sound

The stereo speaker (or stereo headphones) on a 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal produces a 3 dimensional and resonating sound enabling you to enjoy the rich sound of i-αppli games, ring tones, and i-motions. (Only available with 3D sound compatible content.)

Chara-den

When you are making or receiving a video-phone call and you do not want to send an image of yourself to the other party, "Chara-den" provides you with an alternative in the shape of a cartoon character. You can even make the "Chara-den" character's mouth move in time with sounds and control its movement using your phone's keypad. You can even download your favorite character, shoot it as a still image or movie file and set it in the stand-by display or send it as a mail attachment. (Note that you cannot send an image or movie file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.)

- To download a Chara-den character →P. 220
- To check a Chara-den character →P. 384
- To set a Chara-den character →P. 386
- To control a Chara-den character →P. 385
- To photograph a Chara-den character →P. 388



Infrared communication function

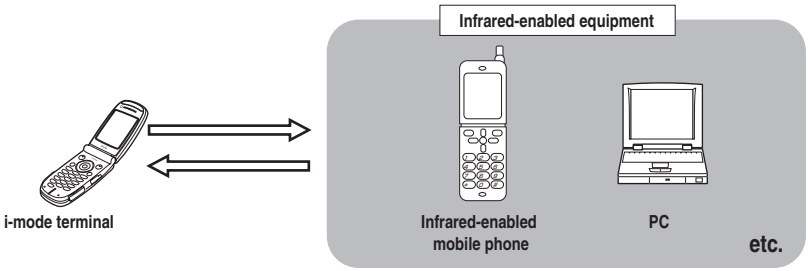
Mobile phones equipped with infrared functions can exchange information such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks with personal PC and other devices.*

Using an i-αppli in conjunction with the Infrared Communication function allows you to link up with other devices equipped with infrared communication functions, expanding the range of uses for your FOMA terminal.

For example, a mobile phone can be used as a TV remote control or as a corporate ID.

* Depending on the equipment used by the other party, it may not be possible to exchange data even where the equipment is infrared-enabled.

To use the Infrared Communication function →P. 413

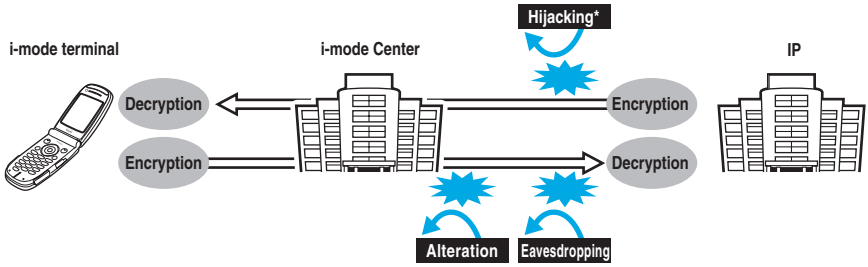


SSL transmission

SSL is an abbreviation for Secure Sockets Layer, and is an encryption technology that is used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from an SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping, site hijacking*, or altering the data, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) stored in the FOMA terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site.

- To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the FOMA terminal →P. 206
- To use FirstPass user certificates →P. 232

Continued on next page



* Hijacking: Where a site is mimicked by a third-party site to allow unauthorized parties access to confidential data.

■ UIM card restrictions

These functions place restrictions on files such as melodies, images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you load a UIM card containing your data (such as phone numbers and some phonebook data) into a FOMA terminal. When you insert a different UIM card or turn the phone on without inserting the UIM card, these functions also prevent the obtained files from being played or viewed.

<Files that have card restrictions>

- Images files
- Melody files
- i-αppli
- Movie files
- Chara-den
- Images inside screen memos (including Flash images)
- Files attached to Message Request and Message Free
- Files attached to i-mode mail
- Images inserted into the body of Deco-mails
- Images and movies saved using the video-phone record function

* Images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved in the FOMA terminal from outside memory sources are not subjected to this function.
* If the files are set (for example ring tone and standby screen settings) in other i-mode terminals, these settings are reset by this function.

■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or your favorite tunes from web sites to an i-mode terminal and then use them as ring tones.

→P. 219

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animations from an i-mode site or Internet website to an i-mode terminal and then run the animation on your stand-by display or receiving display. →P. 218

■ Flash™

Flash is an animation technique that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash images to an i-mode terminal and set them in the stand-by display. →P. 210

Some Flash images are able to access the terminal data on your i-mode terminal. Such images may use the following types of stored data:

- Battery Level
- Reception Level
- Clock Time
- Ring Tone Settings
- Bilingual Settings
- Model Information

■ Downloaded dictionaries

You can download dialect or specialist dictionaries from web sites to an i-mode terminal and set them as the kanji-conversion dictionary. →P. 221

■ Message service

Message services allows you to have information that you need automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal. The message services consist of the Message Request and Message Free services.

Message Request	If you subscribe to a site that offers a message service, the desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
Message Free	The messages are delivered free via packet communication.

For information on using message services →P. 227, 229
As of October 1, 2004, Message Free is set to “ON” as the default setting for all subscribers who signed a new FOMA contract and at the same time applied for i-mode. If you don’t want to receive Message Free, you have to set Message Free to “OFF”.
*For those subscribers other than the above, to receive Message Free you have to change the settings in options and settings. The default setting is “OFF”.
If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range (displayed), Message Request and Message Free are held at the i-mode Center.

- The table below shows the numbers of messages held at the i-mode Center and the periods for which they are held. If the limit on the holding number or period is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest message.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

- Use “Check new message” to retrieve Message Request and Message Free held at the i-mode Center. →P. 229

■ トクだねニュース便

This is a service offered by DoCoMo which uses the Message Request function to send information such as news and weather updates to i-mode terminals.
トクだねニュース便 is a paid service to which users must subscribe. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically added to your My Menu list and you can then view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.
See “Viewing Messages in the Message Box”. →P. 230

● i-mode password

You have to enter an “i-mode password” to add or delete sites in My Menu, specify your i-mode mail settings, or subscribe to pay i-mode sites. At the time of purchase, the i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default, but you should change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice. →P. 211
Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

Connecting to the Internet

You can use your FOMA terminal to connect to the Internet and view i-mode-compatible websites simply by entering the URL of the website that you want to visit.
For information on viewing Internet websites →P. 212

Note

- Internet web pages that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly. To be i-mode-compliant, websites must be written using i-mode-compliant tags. For details →P. 212
- Sites may appear different to the way they appear on a PC.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to display some Internet websites with URLs longer than 256 half-pitch characters.

■ When you display pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from i-mode sites or Internet websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press ⊙ to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or Internet website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press ⊙. Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.
- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits is not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message indicating that the SSL page will be displayed.

Continued on next page

■ Notes on Using i-mode

- The information on sites or Internet websites (pages) is normally protected by copyright laws. The downloading of documents, pictures, and other data from these sites or Internet websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Message, screen memos, i-αppli and i-motions) or stored (bookmarks, etc.) in your i-mode terminal is retained for about 1 month even if the battery pack is removed or is completely discharged. However, data may be lost after that period. Note also that the information stored in your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in the i-mode terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other work performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded in i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. Note also that when the UIM card is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no UIM card inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent or received mail (images, movies or melodies), screen memos and Message Request/Free messages.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the UIM card is set as the stand-by display or as a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the initial default settings if the UIM card is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the UIM card inserted.

■ Important

Data stored in your bookmarks should be noted in writing or backed up onto a miniSD memory card.

<i-mode menu>

Displaying the i-mode Menu

Starting up i-mode

1 Press (右) (i-mode).

The "i-mode menu display" appears. The i-mode menu consists of 9 items.



■ When is displayed

You are outside the service area or in a location where signal reception is poor. Move around until a signal level icon such as appears.

■ When is flashing

If you try to connect to an i-mode site (P. 203) or Internet website (P. 212) or send i-mode mail (P. 245) while you are in the service area but you are not already using the i-mode service, the icon flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ When is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), flashes.

Item	Description	Ref. page
1 iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you connect to the i-mode Center. You can access various sites (programs) and "週刊 i ガイド(What's New!!)" from this page.	P. 197, 203
2 Bookmark	Allows you to store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	P. 213
3 Screen memo	Shows the displays for i-mode sites stored in your i-mode terminal.	P. 216
4 Last URL	Displays the last site or Internet website you visited.	P. 208
5 Go to location	Allows you to connect to an i-mode or Internet site by directly entering the site address.	P. 212
6 Message	Displays received Message Request/Free. The message service automatically delivers requested information to your FOMA terminal.	P. 230
7 Check new message	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new mail or Message Request/Free.	P. 229
8 Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to perform operations such as downloading data or requesting user certificates.	P. 232
9 i-mode settings	Enables you to specify the i-mode settings your FOMA terminal.	P. 224

Note

- You can also launch i-mode as follows:
  - Press (Menu) ▶ Select i-mode and press ●.
- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- The i-mode menu can still be displayed when you are outside the service area but you cannot send or receive information to sites or via the Internet.

Viewing the iMenu display

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press (1 あ) "iMenu".

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the iMenu display (the first i-mode display) appears.

■ To cancel page retrieval

Press (CLR) or (左) (Quit).



i-mode menu display



iMenu display

Exiting i-mode

1 While using i-mode, press (PWR HLD) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

⇔ flashes and then i disappears.

Note

- Holding down (PWR HLD) for 2 seconds or longer turns the FOMA terminal off.

Viewing a Site

Use the procedure below to access the services provided by an IP (information service provider). (You may need to subscribe.)

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press (1 あ) "iMenu".

2 Press (3 DEF さ) "メニューリスト (Menu List)" ▶ Select a site and press ●.

The "Sites display" appears.



Sites display

About “みんなNらんど”

You can download and save i-αppli, dictionary, face stamp, Deco-mail template from the site “みんなNらんど” of iMenu that can be used on your FOMA terminal and use them for a number of reasons.
The procedure for connecting to a site “みんなNらんど” is as follows:
“iMenu” →“メニューリスト” →“ケータイ電話メーカー” →“みんなNらんど” in order.

Note

- You cannot display a site while “PIM lock” is set or the FOMA terminal is in “Self mode”.
- Some sites may require you to submit an application on a separate display before using the site.
- Some sites may require you to provide additional information fee in order to use the site.
- You may be unable to view images displayed on some sites.
- If an image cannot be downloaded, the icon appears.
- You can still make and receive calls while you are connected to a site. You can also send and receive mail. However, you cannot receive video-phone calls during i-mode communication.
- You can use ⓘ to scroll the display even while the “RECEIVING PAGE” message is displayed.
- You can select any of the underlined sites on the Sites display. When selected, the item is highlighted.
- The currently displayed site display may not be updated automatically in some cases. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the Function menu.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. For this reason, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible Internet websites, some characters may be difficult or impossible to see due to the colors selected.

Using the function menu in the Sites display

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Sites display function menu display

Sites display function menu 1/4

1 **Add bookmark**	Adds the URL for the currently displayed page to your list of bookmarks. See “Adding bookmarks” →P. 213
2 **Save screen memo**	Saves the currently displayed page as a screen memo. See “Saving a screen memo” →P. 216
3 **iMenu**	Shows the iMenu display.
4 **Bookmark**	Shows the Bookmark folder list display. See “Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or Internet website” →P. 214
5 **Screen memo list**	Shows the Screen memo list display. See “Displaying a screen memo” →P. 214
6 **Reload**	Updates the current page.
7 **Save image**	See “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” →P. 218

Sites display function menu 2/4

1 **Refer dic.**	Uses a dictionary from the current page. See “Using dictionaries from other functions” →P. 456
2 **Enter URL**	**▶Press ● ▶Enter the URL and press ● ▶Select “OK” and press ● ▶Press ●.** The FOMA terminal connects to the Internet website with the entered URL.
3 **Add to phonebook**	See “Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook” →P. 210
4 **Add desktop icon**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.** See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136

5 Compose message	▶Choose from the following options: Allow you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.	
	1 Attach URL	Composes i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
	2 Attach mail	▶Select an image and then press ●. Composes i-mode mail with the image for the currently displayed page attached to the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
	3 Insert dec. mail	▶Select an image and then press ●. Composes Deco-mail with the image for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" →P. 254
6 Save schedule	Allows you to store a scheduled event by browsing the currently displayed page. See "Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries" →P. 437	
7 Set as home URL	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Stores the URL of the currently displayed page as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.	

Sites display function menu 3/4

1 Display home	Displays the page stored as your home URL.	
2 Title	▶Check the title ▶Select "OK" and press ●. Checks the title of the currently displayed page.	
3 URL	▶Check the URL ▶Select "OK" and press ●. Displays the URL for the currently displayed page. The URL is displayed up to 512 half-pitch characters.	
4 Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the currently displayed page supports SSL.	
5 Change CHR code	If the current page is not displayed correctly, this option reloads the page using a different character set.	
6 Set image display	▶Choose from the following options: Specify the image display setting for the page.	
	1 ON	Displays images.
	2 OFF	Does not display images. 🖼 is displayed instead of the image which cannot be displayed.
7 i-motion type	See "Setting the downloaded i-motion type" →P. 337	

Sites display function menu 4/4

1 Sound effect	▶Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Specifies the settings for Flash image sound effects.
2 Retry	Plays the Flash image or animation on the currently displayed page again from the beginning.

Continued on next page

Note

<Compose message>
- You can enter paste URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long into a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>
- If you have already set a home URL, a message appears asking whether to replace the current home URL. Select "YES" to replace the current URL or "NO" to retain the current URL.
- Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid/Invalid" setting for "Home URL".

<Display home>
- "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
- If a Flat-type earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the stand-by display will also display the site set as the home URL.

<Title>
- You cannot edit the displayed title.
- You can display titles up to 128 half-pitch characters long.

<URL>
- You cannot edit the displayed URL.
- If not all the URLs are shown, press ● to display the cursor and then use ◎ to move the cursor to view other URLs. Pressing ● again hides the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the Page display.

<Certificate>
- This setting displays up to 4 certificates. If you have multiple certificates, you can use ◎ to view previous and subsequent certificates.
- When certificates are displayed, the display scrolls 1 line at a time regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>
- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure for the 4th time, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not display correctly even when the character code is changed.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>
- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback of the image from the beginning.

Displaying SSL pages

1 Display an SSL page.



SSL page display

The SSL page appears and the SSL icon is displayed.

■ To cancel display during authentication

Press ●.

■ To cancel page loading after authentication

Press 左 (Quit).

2 Move from the SSL page to an ordinary page ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

SSL communication ends and the SSL icon no longer appears.

Note
- If a message appears saying, "This site is not certified Do you connect?" when you display an SSL page, the SSL certificate for the site has expired or you are attempting to display a page that is using a different SSL certificate from that used by the FOMA terminal. When this happens, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES", but you should note that you cannot safely send personal information such as your credit card number or contact information. To cancel page display, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press ● to return to the original display.
- To display an SSL-compatible page, set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a web page, Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or a list will not fit on the display, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

■ Scrolling one line at a time

Press ◯ to scroll down one line to view the next list item or line of text.
Press ◯ to scroll up one line to view the previous list item or line of text.
You can also set the number of lines scrolled each time you press ◯ or ◯. →P. 224

■ Scrolling one screen at a time

Press (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen to view the next part of the list or text.
Press (Home) to scroll up one screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press ●.



2 Select "English" then press ●.



Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

Note

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu), iエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金&お申込 (Fee & application) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What's new!! site will be updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New!!.

Mobile phone/FOMA Card (UIM) Manufacturer numbers

If you select an item and press ● while an i-mode site or Internet web page is displayed on the FOMA terminal, a message may appear notifying you that the manufacturer number of the mobile phone or UIM will be sent. To send the information, select "YES" and press ●. To cancel the transmission, select "NO" and press ●. Press ◯ (Return) or ◯ to return to the previous display.

Continued on next page

● The disclosure notification message is always shown before your mobile phone or UIM information is sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

Note

- The transmitted manufacturer number for the mobile phone or UIM is used by your IP (internet service provider) to identify you and to provide information tailored to your needs. It is also used to determine whether content provided by your IP (internet service provider) can be used on your mobile phone.
- Disclosed mobile phone information "FOMA terminal/FOMA (UIM) card manufacturer numbers" are sent via the Internet to your IP (Internet service provider) and is subject to possible interception by third parties. This procedure does not provide personal information such as your phone number, address, age or gender to your IP(internet service provider).

Reconnecting to the Last Displayed Page <Last URL>

When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last website displayed is stored by the "Last URL" function. You can use this function to reconnect to the last website you visited.

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press 4 GHI "Last URL".

Note

- Each time you display a page, the "Last URL" setting is updated to the URL of the currently displayed page.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations you can use while viewing i-mode or web sites.

Image display

Pages at i-mode sites and Internet websites often display images.

- Your FOMA terminal will display GIF and JPEG format images and Flash images (P. 210). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format used.
- The (color) appears while an image is loading and the image itself appears when loading is completed.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in the "Set image display" setting (P. 205). If you change the "Set image display" setting in the function menu from "OFF" to "ON" while a page on a website is loading and then use "Reload" (P. 210), images are displayed for the (color) icons. If you changed the setting from "ON" to "OFF", loaded images remain displayed as images and do not revert to icons.

■ Displayed image icons

(color) : Displayed while an image is loading or when "OFF" is selected in the "Set image display" setting.
: Displayed when image loading failed or the image format is not supported.
(B/W) : Displayed when image loading failed.

Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.

- Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Links

Displayed pages may include links to related pages.

- You can use the same procedure with links that are set in images.

Radio buttons

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options. The ⦿ icon indicates a selected radio button.

Checkboxes

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options. The ☑ icon indicates a selected checkbox.

Text boxes

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text input display appears.

Pull-down menus

Pull-down menus allow you to choose one of a range of options. Some menus show or hidden sub-options that appear as a list when you select an option.

Note

- Depending on how the site was constructed, pull-down menus may include multiple available options. Each time you use ⊙ to select an option and press ●, the option is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press 左 (Finish) or CLR to end the procedure.

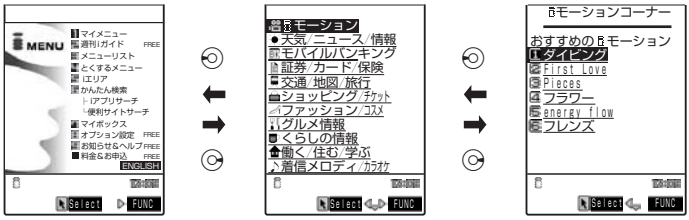
Selection boxes

Selection boxes allow you to choose from a list of options. On some sites, you can see the part of options.

Jumping to previous pages

Use this procedure to jump forward or back to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache.

1 Press ⊙ to jump back to the previous page or ⊙ to jump forward to the next page.

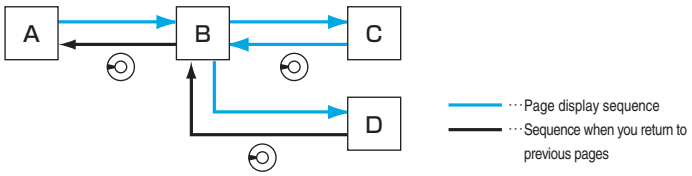


Page before last　Last page　Current page

Note

- You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing ⊙. However, when you have pressed ⊙ to return to an earlier page (from C to B) and then gone from that page to another page (from B to D), pressing ⊙ twice from page D will not display page C, but will take you back to B and then to page A (see below).

■ When the page display sequence is A → B → C → B → D



- For information on the cache →P. 201

Reloading data

Use this procedure to update the currently displayed page.

In the sites display function menu... ➡ P. 204

1 Press 6 MNO “Reload”.

Note

- If you use “Reload” to view a site after you have entered text or entered your ID or password, etc., a message may appear asking whether to resend the data. (This message will appear even without “Reload” being used on sites that reload automatically.) Select “YES” to update the site.
- If you use “Reload” in the final completion display for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message appears asking whether to resend the data. Note that selecting “YES” may resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

Use this procedure to add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a telephone number displayed on a site page>

In the sites display function menu... ➡ P. 204

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 3 DEF “Add to phonebook” ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Add to phonebook.

See “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook” →P. 93
If the name, reading and mail address are attached to telephone number, they are also entered to the phonebook telephone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Working with Flash images

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash image to your FOMA terminal and set it in the stand-by display.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Depending upon a Flash image vibrate the FOMA terminal during playback. Note that it vibrate, even if the vibrator setting have set to “OFF”.
- Some Flash images may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a even when ◁▲▽▷ does not appear at the bottom of the display.
- Flash images are not displayed if you select “OFF” in “Set image display”.
- Selecting “YES” in “Use saved data” (P. 226) allows you to load data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

Note

- To rerun a Flash image, select “Retry” from the Function menu. → P. 205
- Some Flash images use sound effects. To run a Flash image without the sound effects, select “Sound effect” in the Function menu and then select the “OFF” setting. When the vibrator is set to “Melody linkage”, the FOMA terminal’s vibrator may fail to vibrate when sound effects are played.
- Sound effects for Flash images set in the stand-by display are not played.
- Depending upon a Flash image vibrate to set the vibrator setting to ON. If you set them to incoming call display, incoming video-phone call display or incoming mail display, the FOMA terminal vibrate according to the settings of the “Vibrator” or “Manner mode set”. However if you set to stand-by or wake-up display, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- When some Flash images are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.

<My Menu>

Adding My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can store up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be added to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to an Internet website, use "Bookmark" (P. 213).

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1. **Select "Add to My Menu" and press ●.**
2. **Select the "Input password" box and press ● ▶ Enter your 4-digit i-mode password and press ●.**

   For information on your i-mode password → P. 211
3. **Select "決定" (OK) and press ●.**

Note

- Pay sites in the iMenu list are automatically added to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites stored in My Menu

1. **Press 右 (i-mode) ▶ Press 1 あ "iMenu" ▶ Press "English" ▶ Press 1 あ "My Menu" ▶ Select the number for the site.**

Note

- To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be added to My Menu.
- Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries added on their mova terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries added on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to add or remove sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services or paid i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take great care to keep your i-mode password private.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have it reset. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

1. **Press 右 (i-mode) ▶ Press 1 あ "iMenu" ▶ Press "English" ▶ Press 4 GHI "Options" ▶ Press 2 ABC "Change i-mode Password".**
2. **Select the "Current Password" box and press ● ▶ Enter your current i-mode password and press ●.**

   The entered password appears as [*].

Continued on next page

3 **Select the "New Password" box and press ● ▶ Enter the new password and press ●.**

Enter 4 digits as your i-mode password.

4 **Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" box and press ● ▶ Enter your new i-mode password again and press ●.**

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 **Select "Select" and press ●.**

■ **If you enter your "Current Password" incorrectly**

A message appears saying that your i-mode password is incorrect.

■ **If you enter different numbers in "New Password" and "New Password (Confirmation)"**

A message appears saying that your i-mode password do not match.

<Connect to Internet>

Viewing Internet Websites

This function allows you to view any Internet website simply by entering its URL.

- Internet websites that are not i-mode-compatible may not be displayed correctly.
- The FOMA terminal operations available in Internet websites are the same as those available in ordinary i-mode sites.

1 **Press 右 (i-mode) ▶ Press 5 JKL "Go to location" ▶ Press 1 あ "Enter URL" ▶ Select "New" and press ●.**

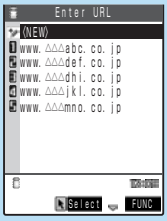
The "Enter URL display" appears.

For information on "Entering Text" →P. 526

2 **Enter the URL and press ●.**

3 **Select "OK" and press ●.**

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press ● or CLR to connect to the Internet website with the entered URL.



Enter URL display

■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with "http://" or "https://"**

A message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.

Note

- Some Internet sites may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing ●.
- You can add the displayed page as a bookmark or store it as a screen memo, desktop icon or as your home URL.
- To enter a URL while a page is displayed, select "Enter URL" from the Function menu and enter the URL.
- You can enter URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long including "http://" or "https://".

Viewing Sites From the URL History

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 **Press 右 (i-mode) ▶ Press 5 JKL "Go to location" ▶ Press 1 あ "Enter URL".**

2 **Select a URL number ▶ Select "OK" and press ● ▶ Press ●.**

■ **To edit the selected URL**

Select the "Internet address" box, press ● and edit the URL.

Note

- Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.
- The URL history displays URLs up to 22 half-pitch characters long, not including the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

Using the function menu in the Enter URL display

In the Enter URL display... ➡ P. 212

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Enter URL display function menu

1 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
2 Compose message	Allows you to compose i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
3 Set as home URL	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Stores the selected URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
4 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Delete selected	▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmarks folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.
- The "アドレス確認" (Confirm Mail Address) page is already stored in your bookmarks at the time of purchase.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

In the sites display function menu... ➡ P. 204

1 Press (1 あ) "Add bookmark" ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select a folder number.

If there are already 100 bookmarked sites

A message appears asking whether to delete a bookmark before adding the new site. To bookmark the new site, select "YES" and then select the folder and the bookmark to be deleted. To cancel bookmarking, select "NO".

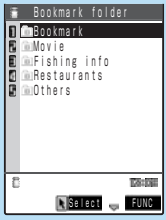
Note

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").
- You cannot add bookmarks while PIM lock is set.

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or Internet website

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press 2 ABC “Bookmark”.

The “Bookmark folder list display” appears.



Bookmark folder list display

2 Select a folder number.

The “Bookmark display” appears.

3 Select a bookmark number.



Bookmark display

Note

● Page titles in the Bookmarks list are shown in the order they were used.

Using the function menu in the Bookmark Folder List display

You cannot rename or delete the “Bookmark” folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

In the bookmark folder list display... ➡ P. 214

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Bookmark folder list display function menu

1 **Add folder**	▶ **Enter the folder name and press ●.** You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the folder name. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 **Edit folder name**	▶ **Enter a folder name and press ●.** You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the folder name. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
3 **No. of bookmark**	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
4 **Send all Ir data**	Sends all your bookmarks via infrared communication. See “Sending all data entries” →P. 417
5 **Delete folder**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.** For information on security code →P. 142
6 **Delete all**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.** For information on security code →P. 142

Note

● You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.

<Add folder>

● New added folders appear below the existing saved folders.

● To add a folder, you must enter the folder name.

<Edit folder name>

● You can add a folder with the same name as an existing folder.

<Delete all>

● Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the Bookmarks folder is not deleted.

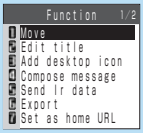
● This option also deletes the "アドレス確認" bookmark stored at the time of purchase.

● This option can still be used even when no bookmarks are stored.

Using the function menu in the Bookmark display

In the bookmark display... ➡ P. 214

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Bookmark display function menu display

Bookmark display function menu 1/2

1 **Move**	"Moving Bookmarks to Other Folders" ➞P. 216
2 **Edit title**	**▶ Enter the title and press ● (Set).** You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters as the bookmark title. See "Entering Text" ➞P. 526
3 **Add desktop icon**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon.
4 **Compose message**	Allows you to compose i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" ➞P. 245
5 **Send Ir data**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**
6 **Export**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**
7 **Set as home URL**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Stores a bookmarked URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Bookmark display function menu 2/2

1 **Copy URL**	**▶ Highlight the head of text to copy by using ✣ and press ● ▶ ✣ "Start" ▶ Highlight the last of text to copy and press ● "End".** Copies a bookmarked URL.
2 **No. of bookmarks**	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
3 **Delete**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**
4 **Delete selected**	**▶ Use ↕ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**
5 **Delete all**	**▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** For information on security code ➞P. 142

Note

● If you copy phonebook data from another phone, the "アドレス確認" (Confirm Mail Address) entry stored in the bookmarks is deleted.

<Edit title>

● If you delete the title and press ●, the URL is added without the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

<Delete all>

● "Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

Moving Bookmarks to Other Folders

Use this procedure to organize your bookmarks into categories by moving them in to other folders.

In the bookmark display function menu... ➡ P. 215

1 Press 1あ “Move” ▶ Select a folder number ▶ Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐) for a folder and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

In the sites display function menu... ➡ P. 204

1 Press 2ABC “Save screen memo” ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

If the memory for saving screen memos is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted screen memos before saving the new screen memo. To save the new screen memo, select “YES” and press ●. Then select the screen memo to be deleted.

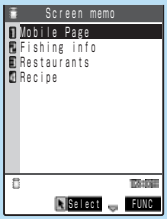
Note

- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- Titles for saved screen memo can be up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters long. Longer titles are truncated.
- If you save the same page twice, the 2nd time it is saved as a new screen memo and does not replace the earlier save.
- When you save a display such as the data download completion display, the data for that display is saved along with the display. (Data download completion displays for i-motions with set playback period cannot be saved.) Some data download completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. Other than the data download completion display itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 half-pitch characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 Press 右 (i-mode) ▶ Press 3DEF “Screen memo”.

The “Screen memo list display” appears.



Screen memo list display

2 Select a screen memo number.

The “Screen memo (Screen memo detail display)” appears.



Screen memo
(Screen memo detail display)

Note

- The information in a screen memo is the information current at the time the memo was saved and may not reflect the latest information.
- If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen Memo List display as “No title”.

Using the function menu in the Screen Memo List display

In the screen memo list display... ➡ P. 216

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Screen memo list display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Enter the title and press ●. You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters as the bookmark title. “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with the icon. The icon disappears when the protection is removed. Note that protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
3 No. of memos	Shows the total number of saved screen memos.
4 Delete	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
5 Delete selected	▶ Use (上下) to a select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Protect ON/OFF>
- You can protect up to 50 screen memos, but the number that can actually be protected varies depending on the amount of data in each memo.

<Edit title>
- If you delete the title and press ●, the screen memo is added as “No title”.

<Delete>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memo.

<Delete selected>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos.

<Delete all>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memos.

Using the function menu in the Screen Memo Detail display

In the screen memo detail display... ➡ P. 217

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Continued on next page

Screen memo detail display function menu 1/2

1 Save image	Saves the image displayed in a screen memo. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" →P. 218	
2 Add to phonebook	Stores the phone number and e-mail address shown in the screen memo in the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93	
3 Refer dic.	Uses a dictionary from the screen memo. See "Using dictionaries from other functions" →P. 456	
4 Edit title	▶Enter a title and press ●. You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters as the bookmark title. "Entering Text" →P. 526	
5 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with the icon. The icon disappears when the protection is removed. Note that protected screen memos cannot be deleted.	
6 Compose message	▶Choose the following options: Allow you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL displayed in the screen memo pasted into the message or the image attached/pasted.	
	1 Attach URL	Composes i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
	2 Attach mail	▶Select an image and then press ●. Composes i-mode mail with the image for the currently displayed page attached to the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
	3 Insert dec. mail	▶Select an image and then press ●. Composes Deco-mail with the image for the currently displayed page pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" →P. 254
7 Save schedule	Allows you to store a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos. See "Storing schedule events" →P. 437	

Screen memo detail display function menu 2/2

1 URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
2 Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
3 Sound effect	▶Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Specifies the settings for Flash image sound effects.
4 Retry	Plays the Flash image or animation in the screen memo again from the beginning.
5 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

<URL>
● You cannot edit the displayed URL.
<Retry>
● Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.
<Delete>
● You cannot use this option to delete protected screen memos. Remove the protection before deleting the screen memo.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Use this function to save an image displayed on the current site or sent to you in Message Request/Free and then set the saved image in the stand-by display or another display.

● If you save an image or animation attached to or displayed in i-mode mail, screen memos or sites, it can be set in the stand-by display or as the wake-up display.

<Example: Saving an image displayed on a site>

In the sites display function menu... ➡ P. 204

1 Press 7 "Save image" ▶Select image and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Select a folder number.

Position the frame (▭) over the image to be saved.
To set the image in the stand-by or other display, proceed to step 2.

■ **If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved images is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted image before saving the current image. To save the image, select "YES" and press ●. Then select the image to be deleted.

2 Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select an option and press ●.

■ **To skip setting the image in a display**

Select "NO" and press ●.

Note

- You cannot save JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide, 1212 dots high or GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save images with a file size larger than 100 KB.
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If there is no file name specified, the part between "/" and "." of the URL from where the file was downloaded becomes the file name. However, if there is nothing in between "/" and ".", the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- If "Image display" is set to "OFF", you cannot save the image. The image can also not be saved if  is displayed.
- If you try to save an image while you are receiving a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while downloading a large file.
- Images that meet the following requirements are saved as frames or stamp images.
  - Transparent GIF file which is not an animation GIF file.
  - The file extension is "ifm".
  - A frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), Sub-QCIF (128 × 96), Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128), and a stamp that is an image other than a frame that is smaller than 240 dots wide × 240 dots high.

■ Important

Stored data can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to back up data saved on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card as a precautionary measure. Users with PCs can use the Data Link Software (P. 562) or the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the data on the PC.

■ **Progressive JPEG-format images**

The progressive JPEG format is an image format for images to be used on i-mode sites or Internet websites. Images in this format are initially displayed coarsely (at low resolution) and then displayed clearly as more data arrives.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

Use this function to set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Select a melody and press ●.

Continued on next page

2 Select “Save” and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ●.



■ **If the FOMA terminal’s memory for saved melodies is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted melody before saving the current melody. To save the melody, select “YES” and press ●. Then select the melody to be deleted.

■ **To play the melody**

Select “Play” and press ●.

■ **To view the melody information**

Select “Property” and press ●.

3 Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select an option and press ●.

■ **To skip setting the melody as a ring tone**

Select “NO” and press ●.

Note

- You may not be able to download melodies from some sites.
- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- The URL in the data download completion display is not stored in “Last URL”. In this situation, the URL for the page displayed just prior to the data download completion display is stored as the last URL.
- Downloaded melodies may not play correctly in some cases.
- Only when the file name of saved melody consists of half-pitch alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 half-pitch characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. If there is nothing between the slash and the period, the melody is saved as “melodyXXX” (XXX = 3-digit number).
- Melodies without titles are shown in the Melodies list as “No title”.
- Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume setting specified for “Phone” in “Ring volume”.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If you attempt to save a melody while receiving a large image, a confirmation message appears notifying you that you cannot perform that operation while receiving a large file.

Important

Stored data can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users with PCs are advised use the Data Link Software (P. 562) or the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the data on the PC as a precautionary measure.

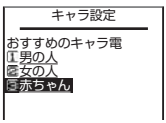
Downloading “Chara-den” Characters from Sites

Use this procedure to download your favorite “Chara-den” cartoon characters from i-mode sites.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed characters.

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Select a Chara-den character and press ●.



2 Select “Save” and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.



■ **If the FOMA terminal’s memory for saved Chara-den characters is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete an unwanted Chara-den before saving the current one. To save the Chara-den, select “YES” and press ●. Then select the Chara-den to be deleted.

■ **To view the “Chara-den” character**

Select “Play” and press ●.

For information on using Chara-den characters →P. 385

■ **To view the “Chara-den” information**

Select “Property” and press ●.

Note

- If you try to save a Chara-den character during 64K data communication, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while data communication is in progress.

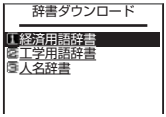
Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Select the data file and press ●.



2 Select “Save” and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select an option and press ●.



■ **To view the dictionary information**

Select “Property” and press ●.

■ **If the memory for saved dictionary files is full**

Select the dictionary you want to delete and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●. Overwrite the selected dictionary and a dictionary is registered.

Note

- If you try to save a face stamp during 64K data communication, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while data communication is in progress.
- Templates with no decorations at all or that contain images that it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal cannot be saved.
- If a file is attached to the template, the attached file is deleted.
- The file name used for a template is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute). If the date and time are not set, the title is “templateXX” (where X = 01 to 45).
- Some data files cannot be downloaded from some sites.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making calls, sending mail and viewing Internet websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site.

● You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with mail sent from a PC.

Phone To function

Use this function to make a call to a phone number displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

● When used for video-phone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.

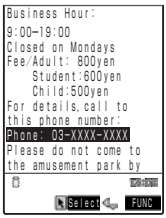
● Not all sites support this function.

● You can use up to 26 half-pitch character as phone number.

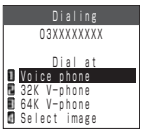
<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Select the phone number and press ●.



2 Press 1 “Voice phone”.



■ To make a video-phone call

Press 2 “32K V-phone” or 3 “64K V-phone”.

3 Press 1 “Dial”.



■ To withhold your caller ID when “Caller ID notification” is set to “ON”

Press 3 “Notify caller ID” ▶ Press 1 “Don’t notify”.

■ To provide your caller ID when “Caller ID notification” is set to “OFF”

Press 3 “Notify caller ID” ▶ Press 2 “Notify caller”.

■ To follow the setting of “Caller ID notification”

Press 3 “Notify caller ID” ▶ Press 3 “Cancel prefix”.

Note

● You cannot use the Phone To function to make calls while “Keypad dial lock”, “Restrict dialing” or “Self mode” is set.

● You can return to the original display and continue the i-mode procedure by holding down C for 1 second or longer during a call.

● It is sometimes possible to use the Phone To function with highlighted information other than a phone number.

● You can also use this function to make calls to phone numbers provided as mail sender or recipient addresses and to phone numbers included in e-mail addresses with the “[phone number]@....” format.

Mail To function

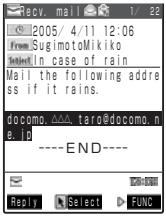
Use this function to send mail to an e-mail address displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages prepared.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- This function only supports e-mail addresses up to 50 half-pitch characters long.

<Example: Sending mail from the received mail detail display>

In the received mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 Select the e-mail address and press ●.



2 Compose and send the i-mode mail.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 245.

Note

- You cannot use the Mail To function to send mail when "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- If you have entered the e-mail address incorrectly, correct the address before sending the mail.
- It is sometimes possible to use the Mail To function with highlighted information other than an e-mail address.

Web To function

Use this function to view the site for a URL displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 half-pitch characters as a URL.

<Example: Displaying a web page from the received mail detail display>

In the received mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 Select the URL and press ●.



Continued on next page

Note

- The URL display differs depending on the site.
- In some cases, you can also use the Web To function by highlighting information other than a URL.

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press 9 “i-mode settings”.

The “i-mode settings display” appears.

2 Choose from the following options:



i-mode settings display

i-mode settings display 1/2

1 **Scroll** (default setting: 1 1 line)	▶ **Select 1 “1 line”, 2 “3 lines” or 3 “5 lines”.** Sets the number of scrolling lines in the detail display for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on an i-mode site.	
2 **Character size** (default setting: 1 Standard)	▶ **Select 1 “Standard”, 2 “Small” or 3 “Large”.** Changes the character size of the site screen or the Message Request/Free details screen.	
3 **Set image display**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the image display setting for the Detail display for Message Request/Free messages, screen memos and pages on i-mode or Internet sites.	
	1 **ON** (default setting)	Displays images.
	2 **OFF**	Does not display images. An icon ( ) appears in the place of the image.
4 **i-motion setting**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set for the i-motion.	
	1 **Automatic replay**	See “Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically” →P. 336
	2 **i-motion type**	See “Setting the downloaded i-motion type” →P. 337
5 **Message auto display**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set for the messages automatically be displayed.	
	1 **Msg. Req. preferred** (default setting)	Gives preference to automatic display of Message Request.
	2 **Msg. Free preferred**	Gives preference to automatic display of Message Free.
	3 **Msg. Request only**	Displays only Message Request automatically.
	4 **Msg. Free only**	Displays only Message Free automatically.
	5 **OFF**	Does not automatically display messages.
6 **Auto melody play**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the Message Request/Free.	
	1 **ON** (default setting)	Automatically plays melodies.
	2 **OFF**	Does not automatically play melodies.
7 **Use saved data**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether stored data is used during Flash image playback.	
	1 **YES** (default setting)	Sets the FOMA terminal to use stored data during Flash image playback.
	2 **No**	Sets the FOMA terminal to not use stored data during Flash image playback.

8 Message list display	▶Choose from the following options: Set the number of the message list screen lines.	
	1 2 lines (default setting)	Displays 2 lines for each message.
	2 1 line	Displays 1 line for each message.
9 Home URL	▶Choose from the following options: Set for the home URL display function. Up to 256 half-pitch can be entered to the URL.	
	1 Invalid (default setting)	Disables the home URL display setting.
	2 Valid	Enables the home URL display setting. Select the home URL field and enter the URL to be stored.
0 Sound effect setting	▶Choose from the following options: Set whether play the sound effect for the Flash images in the site or screen memo.	
	1 ON (default setting)	Plays the sound effects for Flash images.
	2 OFF	Does not play the sound effects for Flash images.

i-mode setting display 2/2

1 Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
2 Reset last URL	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Resets the last URL stored. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL.
3 Reset	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Returns the "i-mode settings" to the default values set at the time of purchase. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Scroll>
- When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time.

<Set image display>
- Even if "ON" is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, is displayed.
- If "OFF" is set, is displayed and data is not received.

<Sound effect setting>
- Even if sound effects are set to "ON", some Flash images may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>
- When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or the last URL, selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu display.

Setting the Connection Timeout <Set connection timeout>

Default setting	60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press 8 TUV "Connection setting" ▶Select "Set connection timeout" and press ● ▶Choose from the following options:

1 60 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response after 60 seconds.
2 90 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response after 90 seconds.
3 Unlimited	Does not automatically stop trying to connect.

Note
- Even when you select "Unlimited", the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Changing the i-mode host (IP connection) <Host selection>

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Default setting	i-mode

Use this procedure to select a different host when you are using a service other than i-mode. If you change to a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

● You can store up to 10 hosts other than "i-mode".

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 1 あ ▶ Select "<Not recorded>" and press 左 (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

For information on security code →P. 142

See "Entering Text" →P. 526

1 **Title**	Sets the title. The title can consist of up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
2 **Host name**	Sets the host name. The name can consist of up to 30 half-pitch characters.
3 **Host address**	Sets the host address. The address can consist of up to 99 half-pitch characters.

2 After completing the settings, press 左 (Finish).

Note

- You cannot change your i-mode host while you are using i-mode. Exit i-mode and then change the host.
- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- To change a stored "User setting host", use the procedure for storing the host name.
- If you delete a stored "User setting host", select the host to be deleted and select "Delete" from the Function menu. Enter your security code, press ●, select "YES", and press ●. If the "User setting host" that you delete is set as the host, the host returns to "i-mode".
- If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to "i-mode".

Specifying Whether to Use Stored Data in Flash Images <Use saved data>

Use this function to specify whether stored data is used when a Flash image is running.

● The saved data may be used depending on the particular Flash image. In order for the Flash image use the saved data, you need to set "Use saved data" of "i-mode settings" to "ON". The default setting is "YES". The saved data is follows:

- Battery level
- Reception level
- Date and time information
- Ring volume setting
- Bilingual setting
- Model info

In the i-mode settings display... ➡ P. 224

1 Press 7 PQRS "Use saved data" ▶ Choose the following options:

1 **YES**	Sets the FOMA terminal to use stored data in Flash image playback.
2 **NO**	Sets the FOMA terminal not to use stored data in Flash image playback.

When You Receive a Message

While the FOMA terminal is within signal range, Message Request and Message Free are automatically set to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received Message Request and Message Free respectively. However, the number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for Message Request and between 10 and 100 Message Free depending on the amount of data in each saved message.
- You can set your own choice of ring tone for incoming Message Request and Message Free in "Select ring tone" (P. 114) and vary the flashing pattern used by the call alert indicator in "Illumination" (P. 134).

Displaying New Messages

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto display" (P. 224).



The R (white) or F (white) icon flashes and the "Message Request Receiving..." or "Message Free Receiving..." message is displayed.

- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop reception while a message is being received, hold down CLR for 1 second or longer. Note that depending on the timing of the cancellation, you may still receive the message.



- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and message (requested and free) received are displayed in the reception results display for roughly 15 seconds. You can change the display period using "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 119).
- To view the Message Request list display or Message Free list display, select "Message Request" or "Message Free" and press ●.



- If you have received a message while the FOMA terminal is in stand-by mode, the contents of the received Message Request or Message Free are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the stand-by display was retrieved from the Task menu while any of the menu functions was being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- If you use operations such as scrolling while a Message Request or Message Free is displayed, the contents of the message continue to be displayed.
- If none of the FOMA terminal keys are used for 15 seconds, the stand-by display reappears.

If you disable automatic display

This ensures that the Reception Results display appears when you receive a Message Request or Message Free while using the FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page

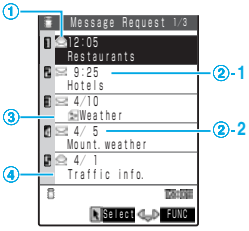
Note

- Automatic display for Message Request/Free can be selected in "Message auto display". If you do not want messages to appear automatically, select "OFF".
- When a new Message Request/Free arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with any Message Request/Free or i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Received Message Request/Free are not automatically displayed if PIM lock or All lock is set, if the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, if an i-αppli is running, or if the current display is not the stand-by display.
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of Message Request/Free when you receive a Message Request/Free, the oldest Message Request/Free that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- While the R (Red) or F (Red) icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal can receive no further Message Request or Message Free. Remove the protection (P. 231, 232) or read the unread Message Request and Message Free until the icons are no longer displayed.
- If the (White) or (White) icon appears on the FOMA terminal's display, there is a Message Request/Free held for you at the i-mode Center. Read some of your unread Message Request/Free or unprotect some messages and then check for new messages.
- If the (Red) or (Red) icon appears on the FOMA terminal's display, the space for your Message Request/Free at the i-mode Center is full. Use "Check new message" to download your Message Request/Free.
- After automatic display, messages are still marked as unread in the Message Request or Message Free list display. However, if you use an operation such as scrolling the screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read in the Message Request or Message Free list display.
- If you simultaneously receive multiple i-mode mail, SMS chat mail or Message Request/Free, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and illumination pattern set for the last chat mail received.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free when a display other than the stand-by display is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display (P. 294)", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal rings and the Reception Results display appears.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive a Message Request/Free during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

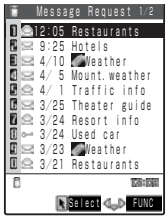
Viewing the Message Request and Message Free List Display

The Message Request and Message Free list displays appear as shown below.

- Some of the icons displayed in the Message Request and Message Free list displays are also shown in the Message Request and Message Free detail displays.



List display (2-line display)



List display (1-line display)



Detail display

① Shows the Message Request/Free status.

- : Unread Message Request/Free
- : Read Message Request/Free
- : Unread and protected Message Request/Free
- : Read and protected Message Request/Free

② Shows the message arrival time and date.

- ②-1 Only the time is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived today.
- ②-2 The date is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived yesterday or earlier.

③ Shows any attached or pasted file.

- : Indicates an attached or pasted melody.
- : Indicates multiple attached or pasted melodies, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached or pasted melodies are corrupted.
- : Indicates an attached image. This icon is also shown when "OFF" is selected in "Set image display" in the Message detail display (P. 224).
- : Indicates multiple attached images, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached images are corrupted.
- : Indicates multiple pasted data items.

The following icons are displayed when 1-line display is selected in a list display:

- : Indicates an attached or pasted file.
- : Indicates multiple attached or pasted files, one or more of which is corrupted.
- : Indicates that all the attached or pasted files are corrupted.

④ Shows the subject.

Note

● If the time and date are not set on the FOMA terminal, the date and time are displayed as "--:--" and "--/--" respectively.

<Check new message>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, Message Request and Message Free)

● Message Request and Message Free delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode Center:

- When the FOMA terminal is turned off
- When is displayed
- When the FOMA terminal's memory is full

● Use "Set check new message" (P. 297) to specify which items are checked for.

1 Hold down (左) (MAIL) for 1 second or longer.

The checking new message display appears.
The checking new message is done in order "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free".
The message icons ((White) and R (White) or F (White)) flash, and the "Checking..." message appears on the display while the FOMA terminal downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.
The number of the new received i-mode mails, Message Requests, and Message Frees is displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down (CLR) for 1 second or longer during inquiry.
When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive i-mode mails or Message Free/Request.

2 Check the number of new i-mode mail and Message Request/Free you have received.

Note

● You can also use the following procedures to check for mail and messages:

- Press (左) (i-mode) ▶ (7 PQRS) "Check new message"
- Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ (7 PQRS) "Check new message"

● If the R (White) or F (White) icon was displayed, you have Message Request/Free held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your Message Request/Free is full, the R (Red) or F (Red) icon is displayed.

● If icons such as (Red), R (Red), F (Red) and (Red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (P. 231, 232) your unread mail and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Mail, a Message Request, and a Message Free which are read, or protection is canceled are overwritten sequentially from an old one at the time of reception.

● The table below shows the numbers of Message Request/Free held at the i-mode Center and the periods for which they are held.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest message.

● Even if a Message Request or Message Free is stored at the i-mode center, the R (white) or F (white) may not be displayed if the FOMA terminal is OFF, or if is displayed.

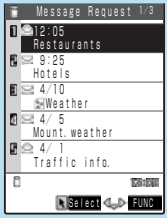
<Message Request/Free>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

● When a Message Request/Free from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the R (white) or F (white) icon appears at the top of the display.

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press 6 (は MNO) "Message" ▶ Press 1 (あ) "Message Request" or 2 (か ABC) "Message Free".

The "Message list display" appears.



Message list display

2 Select the message to be displayed and press ●.

The "Message detail display" appears.
To display the next or previous message in the Message Detail display, press ○.
In the Message Detail display, press C (CLR) to return to the Message List display.



Message detail display

Note

● Keys such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a Message Request/Free. In such cases, the keys can be used in the same way as keys in a site.

Using the function menu in the Message List display

In the message list display... ➡ P. 230

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Message list display function menu 1/2

1 Display all	Returns from a sorted or filtered display to the original display (all items shown in chronological order).	
2 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Arrange the Message Request/Free in chronological or reverse chronological order.	
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges Message Request/Free. in chronological order.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges Message Request/Free. in reverse chronological order.
3 Filter	▶ Choose from the following options: Display only the Message Request/Free that meets the specified criteria.	
	1 Unread	Displays only unread messages.
	2 Read	Displays only read messages.
	3 Protected	Displays only protected messages.
	4 Melody	Displays only messages with attached/posted melodies.
	5 Image	Displays only messages with attached images.

4 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free. For protected messages, the icon beside the time or date changes to or . When the protection is removed, the original icon reappears.
5 Unprotect all	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Removes the protection from all protected Message Request/Free.
6 No. of messages	Displays the number of saved Message Request/Free and the number of unread and protected messages.
7 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Message list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete selected	▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 右 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Delete read	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Sort>
- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread messages in chronological order, select "Unread" in the Filter menu and then "Chronological ↓ " in the Sort menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list in the Sort display and then exit the display, when you display the respective list displays again the list will revert to showing all the messages.

<Filter>
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list using the Filter function and then exit the display, when you display the respective list displays again the list will revert to showing all the messages.
- If "OFF" is selected in "Set image display", you cannot select "Image".
- Selecting "Delete read" or "Delete all" when a list of filtered Message Request/Free is displayed deletes all the currently displayed read or unprotected messages respectively.

<Delete>
- This option can be used to unread Message Request/Free also.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected Message Request/Free.

<Delete selected>
- This option can also be used to delete unread Message Request/Free.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected Message Request/Free.

<Delete read>
- You cannot use this option to delete read Message Request/Free that are protected.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete read" deletes only the unprotected and read Message Request/Free shown in the current list display.

<Delete all>
- This option deletes unread Message Request/Free also.
- This option does not delete protected Message Request/Free.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes only the unprotected Message Request/Free shown in the current list display.

Using the function menu in the Message Detail display

In the message detail display... ➡ P. 230

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Message detail display function menu 1/2

1 Add to phonebook	Stores the phone number and e-mail address shown in the Message Request/Free in the phonebook. See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93
2 Save melody	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Saves the melody attached to or pasted into the Message Request/Free.
3 Save image	Saves the image attached to a Message Request/Free. See "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" →P. 218
4 Reload image	Reloads an image when image loading has failed.

Continued on next page

5 Protect ON/OFF	If it is protected, next to the title the icon changes from " " to " ". If you turn the protect "OFF", the icon returns to what it was previously.
6 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

<Save melody>
- To play the specified melody, highlight the attached melody and press ●.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- When you save a melody, it is saved under its title, not under the file name. If the melody is untitled, it is stored under the file name.
- Saved melodies may not be played correctly in some cases.

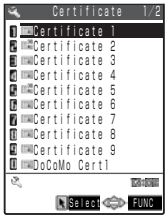
<Reload image>
- Some images may not display correctly even when reloaded.
- Only images in the message body can be reloaded. You cannot reload attached images. Images with displayed also cannot be reloaded.

<Delete>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected Message Request/Free.

Using SSL Certificates

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press 8 TUV "Connection setting" ▶Select "Certificate" and press ●.



2 Select a certificate and press ● ▶Check the certificate.

■ Validating and invalidating SSL certificates

Select the SSL certificate and press 右 (FUNC) ▶Press 2 ABC "Valid/Invalid".

Note
- All the certificates are set to "Valid" at the time of purchase.
- The icon appears when you select "Valid" and the icon appears when you select "Invalid".
- If you select "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

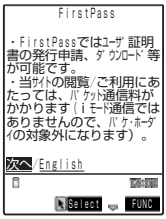
Setting FirstPass

User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your UIM card and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Operating the user certificates.
- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the UIM card (blue).
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. →P. 44
- The displays and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 Press (右) (i-mode) ▶ Press (8 TUV や) “Client certificate” ▶ Select “English” and press ●.



2 Select an option and press ●.



■ If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

■ To request a certificate

Select “Request your certificate” and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

Enter your PIN2 code in the PIN2 code entry display.

For information on your PIN2 code → P. 143

■ To download your certificate

Select “Download your certificate” and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

■ To apply for an invalidation

Select “Other settings” and then select “Revoke your certificate”.

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Press (PWR HLD).

Note

- Note that packet communication charges incurred while you are downloading or completing the application for a FirstPass user certificate are not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal. However, packet communication charges incurred while you are accessing FirstPass compliant sites during i-mode communication are covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select “Usage regulations (Japanese only)” and read the information carefully.
- You cannot use the following functions while connected to the FirstPass Center:
  - Making or receiving video-phone calls (making and receiving voice calls is permitted)
  - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is permitted)
  - Check new message (Check new SMS is available)
  - Sending or receiving Speed photo mail
  - Receiving Message Request/Free
  - Downloading i-motion
  - Web To function
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- You cannot consecutively send a user certificate request, download the certificate and request that the certificate be invalidated. After each step is completed, you must briefly connect to the FirstPass Center to complete the procedure.
- To use FirstPass after invalidating your certificate, send a user certificate request and download the certificate again.
- To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificates” (P. 232).

Using a User Certificate to Connect to a Site

In the sites display... ➡ P. 203

1 Confirm user certificate transmission ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Enter your PIN2 code.

Note

- To connect to a FirstPass compliant site using a downloaded user certificate, you must enter your PIN2 code.
- If you connect to a FirstPass compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES", but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press ● to return to the original display. Download a user certificate from the FirstPass Center before reconnecting to the site.

■ Notes on Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's digital authentication service. When you use FirstPass, the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates so that both parties can each conduct client authentication by checking the certificate provided the other party.
- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the CD-ROM bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the PDF-format "FirstPassManual" contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM.
  To view the PDF-format "FirstPassManual", you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).
  If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional call charges will apply.) Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your display before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (P. 143). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your UIM card or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your UIM card is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at an NTT DoCoMo service counter.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing Your Certificate Host

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Default setting	DoCoMo

Use this procedure to select a different host when you are downloading a user certificate.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 8 TUV "Connection setting" ▶ Select "Certificate host" and press ●.

2 Press 2 ABC "<Not recorded>" and press 左 (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

For information on security code →P. 142

1 Default URL	Sets the URL for the host in the initial display. The name can consist of up to 100 half-pitch characters.
2 Host address	Sets the host address. The address can consist of up to 99 half-pitch characters.

3 After completing the settings, press (左) (Finish).

Note

- To change a stored “User setting host”, use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored “User setting host”, select “Delete” from the Function menu.

Mail

What is i-mode mail? 238
Displaying the Mail menu <Mail menu> 244

Composing i-mode mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail <Compose message/Send> 245
Composing and Sending Deco-mail <Deco-mail> 254
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail 258
Attaching Files <Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail> 262
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later <Save i-mode mail> 263
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists 265

Receiving and Using i-mode Mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail <Auto receive mail> 266
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively <Receive option> 268
Checking for i-mode Mail <Check new message> 269
Replying to i-mode Mail <Reply to mail> 270
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients <Forward mail> 272
Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook 273
Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail <Save melody> 274
Loading Images in Image Mail <Receive image mail> 274
Loading i-motions from i-motion Mail <i-motion mail> 275

Using Mailboxes

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox <Inbox/Outbox> 276

Using the Mail Records

Using the Mail Records <Received address/Sent address> 292

Specifying Your Mail Settings

Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions <Mail settings> 294

Using Chat Mail

Composing and Sending Chat Mail <Compose chat/Send> 299
Registering Chat session members in a Chat group 304

Using SMS

Composing and Sending SMS <Compose SMS/Send> 308
When You Receive an SMS <Receive SMS> 310
Checking for SMS 312
Specifying Your SMS Settings <Set SMS> 313
Saving SMS to Your UIM <UIM operation> 314

What is i-mode mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS.
To use i-mode mail, you must first subscribe to the "i-mode" service. For more information on how to send and receive i-mode mail →P. 245, 266.

● You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode. For information on how to send and receive SMS →P. 308, 310

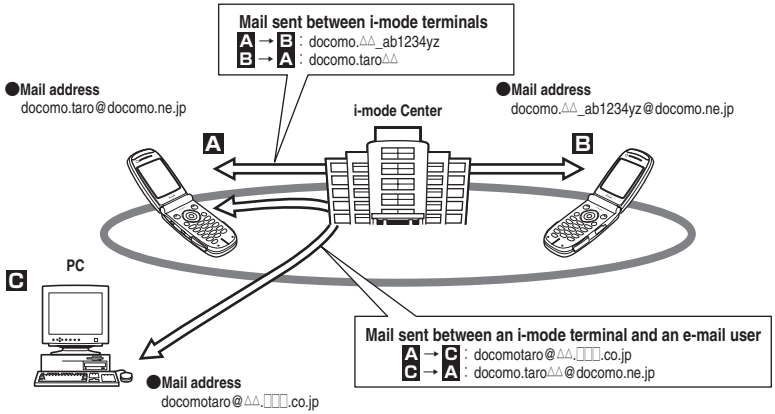
About i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.
Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

New i-mode subscribers

The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<To check your own e-mail address>
Menu display ▶"English" ▶Press 4 "Options" ▶ 1 "Mail Settings" ▶ "Confirm Mail Address"

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode-terminals (including movas), only the part before the @ symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp", must be used.



- For information on sending i-mode mail →P. 245
- For information on receiving i-mode mail →P. 266

Receiving mail selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before downloading your mail. →P. 268

Specifying your mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>
Menu display ▶"English" ▶Press 4 "Options" ▶ 1 "Mail Settings" ▶"Settings"

* For details, refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing your mail address <Change Mail Address>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part that precedes the "@" symbol to your preferred name.

■**Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>**

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

■**Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>**

Use this feature to reset your mail address to "[your phone number]@docomo.ne.jp".

■**Confirming your mail address <Confirm Mail Address>**

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■**Mail accept/reject settings**

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

① Domain-selective reception <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Mail from Selected Domains>

・Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among au, Vodafone, TU-KA and DDI Pocket.

・Also accepts only mail from specified domains when the mail is not from one of the above providers.

＊You continue to receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode and i-shot services and the Charge Notice service, as well as e-billing invoice notifications and M-stage Visualnet mail.

② Address-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Selected Mail/Reject Selected Mail>

・This feature allows you to accept or reject mail from specified addresses among all the mail you receive.

③ i-mode mail-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive only i-mode mail/Reject only i-mode mail>

・Use this feature to accept or reject only mail from other i-mode subscribers (rejects mail sent via the Internet).

④ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Mass i-mode Mail Senders>

・This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including movas) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is "Reject", so you can reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders simply by leaving this setting unchanged.

⑤ Unsolicited advertising* mail rejection <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Unsolicited Ad. Mail>

・This feature lets you reject mail marked as "未承認広告*" that is sent to you without your consent. The FOMA terminal's default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. (Senders are legally required to include "未承認広告 *" (6 full-pitch Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)

＊You cannot set "Domain-selective reception", "Address-specific reception", "Address-specific rejection", "i-mode mail-specific reception" and "i-mode mail-specific rejection" at the same time.

⑥ Reject SMS <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Set/confirm SMS Rejection Settings>

・This function allows you to reject all SMS or only SMS with no caller ID, and to confirm status.

■**Checking your mail settings <Confirm Settings>**

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■**Restricting mail size <Limit Mail Size>**

Use this option to limit the size of accepted mail to a preset size.

■**Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>**

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■**Preventing nuisance mail**

Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

Note

<Secret Code Registration>

●If you register your secret code, you may not be able to receive failed mail delivery messages if you send mail to an address other than a DoCoMo address.

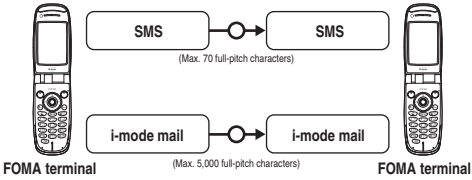
● Your SMS address

Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".

Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

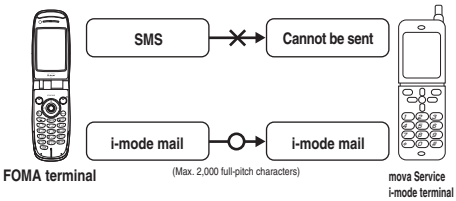
FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal

You can only exchange SMS with other FOMA terminal users.



FOMA terminal-to-mova Service i-mode terminal

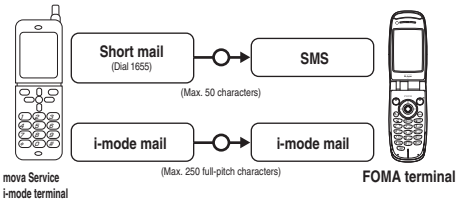
To send messages from the FOMA terminal to a mova Service i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.



*: You can't send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to a mova Service i-mode terminal.

mova Service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova Service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



*: Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.

- Short Mail cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal. Dialing 1655 does not enable you to send Short Mail from your FOMA terminal.
- On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova Service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the limits on the number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail and SMS.

■ i-mode mail

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.)
Subject	15	30
Address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

*: The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image or i-motion) is attached to the message. Note also that the number characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

■SMS

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.*1)
Address	—	20 (numbers only)*2
Message	70	160*3

*1: Half-pitch katakana characters are counted as 1 full-pitch character.
*2: 21 characters if a half-pitch "+" is included at the beginning.
*3: Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols (excluding periods, quotation marks, curly or square brackets, the "I" symbol, commas, bullets, hyphens, the degree symbol (゜), carets (^), apostrophes and tildes). (Up to 70 characters when other characters are included.)

Note

<i-mode mail>
- You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send or receive files that are incompatible with i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "(添付ファイル削除) Attached file delete" message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message. (The "(添付ファイル削除) Attached file delete" message is included the count of the number of characters that can be received.)
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- When you send i-mode mail to a mova Service i-mode terminal, the message body can contain up to a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters. If you receive a mail with the URL of the attached image.
- If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- Except for mail exchanged between i-mode-terminals (including movas), do not use half-pitch katakana or pictograms in the messages as they may not display properly.

If the FOMA terminal cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, or if you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 294), the mail is stored at the i-mode Center.
While mail is held at the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times over a set period of time. Using the "Other" setting, you can select and download your mail at the i-mode Center.

Note

<i-mode mail>
- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

- Mail that is left at the i-mode Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. When this happens, the icon appears on your FOMA terminal's display. If you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 294), does not appear on your FOMA terminal when the limit is exceeded.
- You can download mail held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new message" (P. 269) or Receive option (P. 268). When the new mail arrives on your FOMA terminal, other held mail and messages are also downloaded at the same time.
- All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been downloaded to your FOMA terminal. The downloaded mail is saved on your FOMA terminal. →P. 266
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- If you use "Stop mail function", new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

<SMS>
- SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using "SMS validity period" (P. 295, 309).
- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period are automatically deleted.
- You can download SMS held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new SMS" (P. 312).
- SMS held at the SMS Center are deleted once they have been downloaded to your FOMA terminal. The downloaded SMS are saved on your FOMA terminal.
- SMS downloaded to your FOMA terminal can be moved or copied to your UIM →P. 314

Other useful features

■**Attachments**

・**Attached melodies**

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail

Continued on next page

attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

・To send i-mode mail with an attached melody →P. 262

・To receive i-mode mail with an attached melody →P. 274

・Attached images

Still images that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet website or retrieved from external memory can be attached to i-mode mail and then sent and received on your FOMA terminal. (Note that you cannot attach images when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited. If you send mail other than i-shot mail with an image attached to a mova Service i-mode terminal, the attached image is deleted.)

・To send i-mode mail with an attached image →P. 262

・To receive i-mode mail with an attached image →P. 274

■i-shot mail

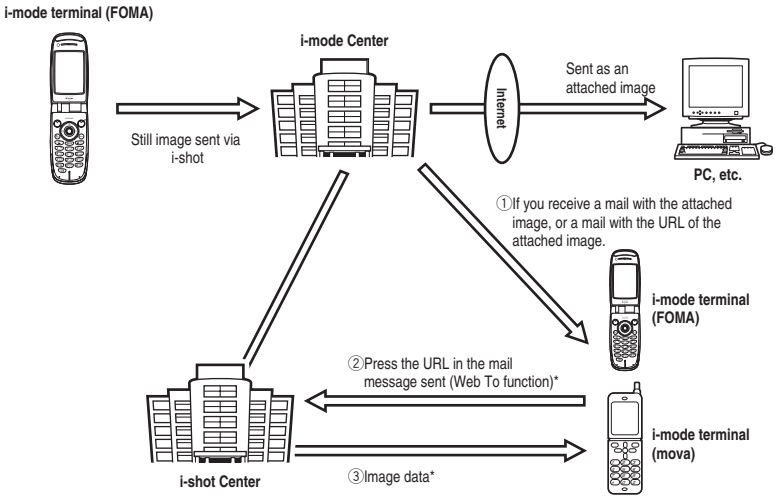
You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using a terminal with a camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including movas), PCs or third-party mobile phones.

The attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is automatically sent to the recipient, and clicking the URL can download the image.

The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch (369 bytes) long. If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

・To send i-mode mail with an attached image →P. 262

・To receive i-mode mail with an attached image →P. 274



*: If you receive a mail with the URL of the attached image.

Images are held for up 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.

■i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites with phones that support i-motion mail. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.)

・To send i-motion mail →P. 262

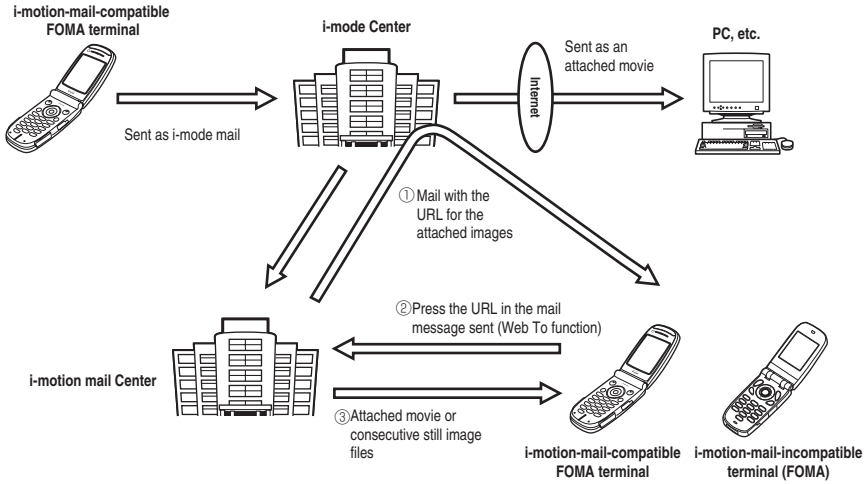
・To receive i-motion mail →P. 275

■How the service works

Movie files attached to i-motion mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, The URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by selecting the URL.

If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by selecting the URL displayed in the mail.



Images are stored at the i-motion mail center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.

■ Deco-mail (Decoration mail)

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting items into the message body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)

If you send Deco-mail to a phone that does not support this function, a URL is included in the message body. The recipient clicks on the URL to view the Deco-mail. (Deco-mail can be sent to non-compatible phones from December 2004.)

・ See “Composing and Sending Deco-mail” →P. 254

・ Compatible phones: 90Xi series, 880iES (Only capable of receiving Deco-mail)

■ Templates

You can use templates pre-installed on the FOMA terminal to send Deco-mails and to receive festive mail messages such as Christmas, birthday and New Year’s greetings.

・ See “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” →P. 258

■ Sending broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to multiple (up to 5) recipients at once. →P. 249

● The call charges for broadcast mail are the same as if only one message was sent. (However, the charge increases by the amount of data in the additional recipient addresses.)

■ CC/BCC sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select “To”, “Cc” and/or “Bcc” as the recipient when editing i-mode mail.

However, if there is no address in the “To” field, the mail cannot be sent. →P. 248

See “7 Change rcv. type” in “New Mail display function display 1/3” in “Using the function menu in the New Mail display” →P. 248

■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

● If there are multiple parties exchanging chat mail, the call charges are the same as for broadcast mail.

Continued on next page

Note

<Attached melodies/images>
- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send photos shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can only send 1 JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>
- If you send i-motion mail to an i-mode terminal, each i-motion browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and the i-motion can be downloaded 50 times. Once it has been accessed downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can no longer be downloaded.
- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

<Broadcast mail>
- The call charges for broadcast mail are the same as if 1 message were sent to each recipient. However, you are only charged for the data in the additional recipient addresses.

<Chat mail>
- Communication charges for chat mail with multiple recipients are the same as when broadcast mail is sent.

Important
- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using a FOMA USB cable (optional) and Data Link Software (P. 562).
- You may lose the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying the Mail menu

1 Press 左 (MAIL).

Mail menu 1/2

1 **Inbox**	Shows the Inbox folder list display. Mail can be organized into different folders. Mail or chat mail from mail-connected i-αpplis is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS records. →P. 276
2 **Outbox**	Shows the Outbox folder list display. Mail can be organized into different folders. Mail or chat mail from mail-connected i-αpplis is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS records. →P. 276
3 **Draft**	Shows the Draft mail list display. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. →P. 263
4 **Compose message**	Shows the display used for composing i-mode mail. →P. 245
5 **Chat mail**	Shows the display for using Chat mail. →P. 299
6 **Compose SMS**	Shows the display used for composing SMS. →P. 308
7 **Check new message**	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and downloads any i-mode mail held at the Center. →P. 269
8 **Receive option**	Use this option to check the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the i-mode mail to be downloaded or delete items of i-mode mail before it is downloaded.
9 **Check new SMS**	Sends an inquiry to the SMS Center and downloads any SMS held at the Center. →P. 312
0 **Template**	Shows the Templates display. →P. 260

Mail menu 2/2

1 **Mail settings**	See "Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions" →P. 294

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory →P. 396

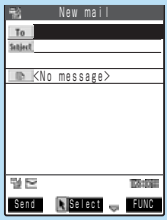
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- To attach a melody, image, movie or i-motion →P. 262
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. For more information on Deco-mail →P. 254
- See “Entering Text” →P. 526

1 Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ (4 GHI) “Compose message”.

The “New mail display” appears.



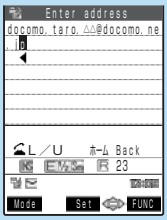
New mail display

2 Select To and press ●.

The “Address entering display” appears.
Press (左) (FUNC) in the new mail display, you can enter an address by using the address reference input from a function menu (P. 247).

3 Enter the address and press ●.

See “Using the function menu in the address/subject entering display” →P. 250



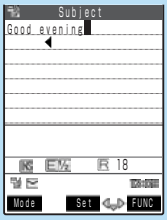
Address entering display

4 Select Subject and press ●.

The “Subject entering display” appears.

5 Enter the subject and press ●.

The subject can consist of up to 15 full-pitch characters or 30 half-pitch characters.
See “Using the function menu in the address/subject entering display” →P. 250



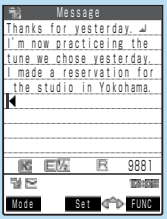
Subject entering display

6 Select and press ●.

The “Message display” appears.

7 Enter the message body and press ●.

The message body can consist of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character and shown as “ ↵ ”. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.
See “Using the function menu in the message entering display” →P. 251
You can compose and send the Deco-mail.→P. 254
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. →P. 258

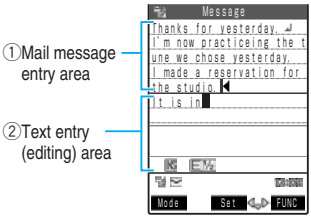


Message display

Continued on next page

■ Display shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The display when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.



① Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.

② Text entry (editing) area: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area. →P. 533

8 Check the message and then press (左) (Send).



An animation is displayed while the i-mode mail is being sent. Press ● to return to the Mail Menu display.

■ To interrupt transmission

Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer.

Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent anyway.

● Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook display



Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press ●.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the New mail display.

● Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail

Select "Save" from the Function menu on the New mail display while composing the message.

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.

Once you have 20 draft i-mode mail messages stored, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail or SMS.

You can subsequently re-edit and send i-mode mail saved in the Draft mailbox.

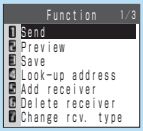
Note

- If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail (equivalent to 1,536,000 full-pitch or 3,072,000 half-pitch characters), sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not replaced.
- If "Restrict dialing" (P. 152) is set, you can only browse the phonebook to retrieve the phone numbers specified in "Restrict dialing". Also, if "Keypad dial lock" (P. 150) is set, you cannot enter the address directly.
- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use half-pitch katakana or pictograms in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- If you press the CLR or PWR key without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing display. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original display without discarding the text.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Select "NO" to return to the original display.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. However, you must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- If you enter and address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (P. 102), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.
  Secret codes are only added to addresses comprised of phone numbers or that use the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format.
- Provided the recipient is an i-mode subscriber, you can also send i-mode mail from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- Spaces (blanks) are also counted in the same way as characters.

Using the function menu in the New Mail display

In the new mail display... ➡ P. 245

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



New mail display function menu display

New mail display function menu 1/3

1 Send	Sends i-mode mail.	
2 Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message.	
3 Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. See "Saving i-mode mail" →P. 263	
4 Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: Enter the address by browsing the phonebook, records or mailing lists.	
	1 Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 248
	2 Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	3 Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	4 Mail member	Enters e-mail addresses from a mailing list. See "Entering mailing list member addresses" →P. 250
5 Add receiver	▶ Choose from the following options: Add the address from the phonebook, records or mailing list. See "Adding addresses" →P. 249	
	1 Phonebook	Adds an e-mail address by searching the phonebook.
	2 Sent address	Adds an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	3 Received address	Adds an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	4 Enter address	Adds an e-mail addresses directly entering each character.

Continued on next page

6 Delete receiver	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.	
7 Change rcv. type	▶Choose from the following options: Select address and changes the address type.	
	1 To	The recipient's address. Displayed to the recipient.
	2 Cc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
	3 Bcc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.

New mail display function menu 2/3

1 Template	You can also use templates to create and send Deco-mail. See "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail". →P. 258	
2 Attach file	Attaches a melody, image or i-motion file to an i-mode mail message. See "Attaching Files" →P. 262	
3 Activate camera	▶Choose from the following options: Activate camera function. "Shooting Still Images" →P. 166 "Shooting Movies" →P. 176	
	1 Photo mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96).
	2 Movie mode	Starts up the Camera function so you can shoot a movie. Movie capacity can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).
4 Delete att. file	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
5 Del all att. files	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
6 Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.	
7 Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.	

New Mail display function menu 3/3

1 Erase message	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
2 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

Note

<Change rcv. type>
- You cannot send i-mode mail with no address set in the "To" field.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

<Add header> <Add signature>
- If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature" the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message. →P. 296
- If the combined size of the text (including attached melodies or images) and the pasted header and/or signature exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you will not be able to paste the header and/or signature into the mail.

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for e-mail addresses in the phonebook.

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press 4 GHI "Look-up address" ▶Press 1 あ "Phonebook" ▶Select the search method and press ●.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

2 In the Phonebook Detail display, select the mail address and press ●.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 245.

Note

- If the phone number or e-mail address is already entered, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing data. Select "YES" to overwrite the previous recipient or "NO" to retain the previous recipient.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only retrieve phone numbers nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings.

Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses. If you have already entered 5 addresses and no more addresses can be added, the "Add receiver" option is no longer available in the Function menu.

<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press 5 なJKL "Add receiver" ▶ Press 1 あ "Phonebook" ▶ Select the search method and press ●.

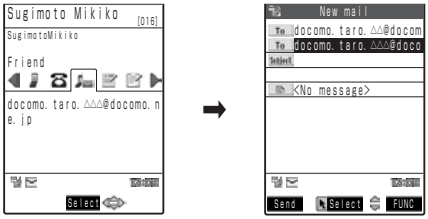
For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

2 Select the mail address in the Phonebook details display and press ●.

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.

■ To change the entered address

Select the address you want to change and re-enter the mail address.
You can also change (overwrite) the address by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu.



3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For more details, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 245.

Note

- If mail could not be sent to a recipient, a message appears notifying you that mail could not be sent to an address.
- If you try to send an i-mode mail message with the same address entered more than once, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated address.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using “Mail member” allows you to add multiple addresses at once.
To use “Mail member”, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. →P. 265

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press 4 GHI “Look-up address” ▶ Press 4 GHI “Mail member”.

2 Select the mail member and press ●.



Select the mail member to enter it into the recipient column.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it.

For more details, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 245.

Note

- When “Keypad dial lock” (P. 150) is set, you cannot brows and enter address from mailing lists.
- If a recipient has already been entered and you specify a recipient from a mail member, a message is displayed asking you whether you want to overwrite the recipient. Select “YES” if you want to overwrite the recipient. Select “NO” if you don’t want to overwrite the recipient.

Using the function menu in the address/subject entering display

In the address/subject entering display... ➡ P. 245

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Address/Subject entering display function menu 1/4

1 **PI•SB input mode**	See “Entering symbols and pictographs continuously” →P. 538
2 **Upper case**[*1]	See “Switching between upper case and lower case” →P. 536
3 **Full pitch**[*2]	See “Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters” →P. 528
4 **Copy**	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
5 **Cut**	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
6 **Paste**	See “Pasting text” →P. 545
7 **Common phrases**	See “Entering common phrases” →P. 541

*1: Display “2 Lower case” in the subject entering display.
*2: Display “3 Half pitch” in the subject entering display.

Address/Subject entering display function menu 2/4

1 Space	See “Inserting a space (blank)” →P. 536
2 Line feed	See “Inserting a line feed” →P. 537
3 Symbols	See “Inserting symbols” →P. 537
4 Pictograph	See “Entering pictographs” →P. 538
5 Kuten code	See “Entering Kuten Codes” →P. 546
6 Overwrite*3	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry.
7 Quote phonebook	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542

*3: If you have selected the overwrite, “6 Insert” is displayed.

Address/Subject entering display function menu 3/4

1 Quote own number	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542	
2 Access reader	Pastes text information gathered with the “Access reader”. See “Scanning Text” →P. 188	
3 Bar code reader	Pastes text information gathered with the “Bar code reader”. See “Using the Bar code Reader” →P. 184	
4 Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. See “Using Dictionaries.” →P. 454	
5 Prediction ON*4	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF. →P. 533	
6 CHG input method	▶Switch the input method. Switch the input method.	
	1 Mode 1(5-touch)	The character input method switches to “5-touch method”.
	2 Mode 2(2-touch)	The character input method switches to “2-touch method”.
	3 Mode 3(T9)	The character input method switches to “T9 Input method”.
7 T9 Kanji CHG mode*5	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. When “T9 change mode” is set to “T9 Kanji change mode,” “T9 Kana CHG mode” is displayed. Conversely when “T9 change mode” is set to “T9 Kana change mode,” “T9 Kanji CHG mode” is displayed. You can only switch conversion modes while entering characters when on the character input (edit) screen. Once you have finished entering the characters and the next character input screen is displayed, it returns to the setting specified in “Character input method”.	

*4: Display “5 Prediction OFF” in the subject entering display.

*5: If you have selected the T9 Kanji CHG mode, “7 T9 Kana CHG mode” is displayed.

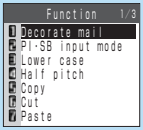
Address/Subject entering display function menu 4/4

1 Jump	▶Choose from the following options: Move the cursor quickly.	
	1 To beginning	Jumps to the top of the page.
	2 To end	Jumps to the bottom of the page.

Using the function menu in the message entering display

In the message entering display function menu... ➡ P. 245

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:**



Message entering display function menu display

Continued on next page

Message entering display function menu 1/3

1 Decorate mail	See “Decorating a message” →P. 255
2 PI•SB input mode	See “Entering symbols and pictographs continuously” →P. 538
3 Lower case	See “Switching between upper case and lower case” →P. 536
4 Half pitch	See “Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters” →P. 528
5 Copy	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
6 Cut	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
7 Paste	See “Pasting text” →P. 545

Message entering display function menu 2/3

1 Common phrases	See “Entering common phrase” →P. 541
2 Space	See “Inserting a space (blank)” →P. 536
3 Line feed	See “Inserting a line feed” →P. 537
4 Symbols	See “Inserting symbols” →P. 537
5 Pictograph	See “Entering pictographs” →P. 538
6 Quote phonebook	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542
7 Quote own number	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542

Message entering display function menu 3/3

1 Refer dic.	Uses the dictionary. See “Using Dictionaries” →P. 454	
2 Jump	▶Choose from the following options: Move the cursor around quickly.	
	1 To beginning	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the message.
	2 To end	Moves the cursor to the end of the message.
3 Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.	
4 Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.	
5 Preview	Displays a preview of the message.	
6 Change window	When you are replying to mail while referring to the original message, this option switches between the reference display and the message entry display. See “Changing the Active Display” →P. 549	

Note

<Undo>
- After you press “Undo” and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel “Undo”.
- On the message body input screen, if you press ●, return to the new mail screen, and then go back to the message body input screen you cannot “Undo”. (On message entering display if you select “Preview”, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)

<Preview>
- When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-αppli in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview display. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

Sending an image you shot during a call <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to take a picture while you are in the middle of a voice call and then send the picture to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the phonebook under the same memory number beforehand.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

In the In-call display function menu... ➡ P. 49

1 Press 1 “Speed photo mail” ▶ Press 2 “Photo mode”.

■ To send an image already saved on the FOMA terminal

Press 1 “Speed photo mail” ▶ Press 4 “My picture”.

Images that cannot be sent cannot be selected.
You can only send “Restricted (Long)” or “Restricted (Short)” images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size.

2 Press ● or ▮ (📷) to take the picture.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.
You can use the Camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. →P. 167
The “Speed photo mail display” appears.



Speed photo mail image display

3 Press ● ▶ Press ●.



A send confirmation message appears.

■ If multiple e-mail addresses are registered

Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Note

- This function cannot be used in the following situations:
  - When the other party’s phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
  - When the other party’s phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”
  - When the called party has not provided a caller ID (unwilling or unable to notify, etc.)
  - When Restrict dialing is set and the other party’s phone number is not designated in the Restrict dialing settings
  - When PIM lock is set
  - During packet communication (PPP)
  - When the Draft mailbox is full
  - During call waiting
  - When the call was made during software updating
- If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation display are highlighted in the following priority order (where ① has the highest priority):
  - ① i-mode address (where the “@” symbol is followed by “docomo.ne.jp”)
  - ② Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain name is the part that follows the “@” symbol)
  - ③ The first address stored in the phonebook
- Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.
- If “Image-valid” is selected in “Attached file” (P. 294), images in Speed photo mail are deleted on arrival.
- If UXGA (1616 × 1212), SXGA (1280 × 960), VGA (640 × 480), CIF (352 × 288) or “Stand-by (240 × 320) is selected in “Select size”, the setting reverts to “Mail (L) (176 × 144)” when this function is launched.
- If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “Mail (L)” (176 × 144) and “Mail (S)” (128 × 96) formats can be selected.

Using the Function menu in the Speed photo mail display

In the speed photo mail image display... ➡ P. 253

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Check speed photo mail image display function menu

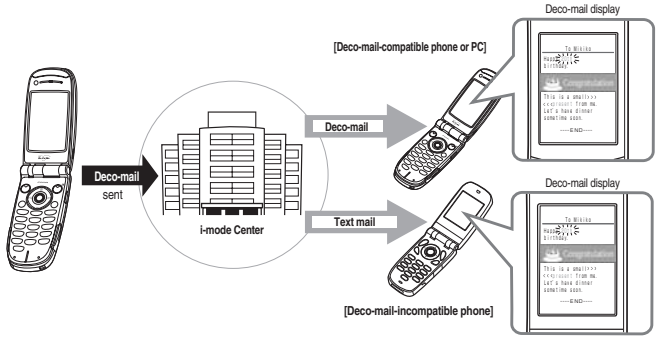
1 Save & send	▶ Press "YES" and press ●. Saves the photographed image in My Picture and then sends it as Speed photo mail.	
2 Compose message	▶ Select an e-mail address and press ●. Sends the photographed image as Speed photo mail without saving it.	
3 Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as Speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "5 Set as display" in "Using the function menu in the Image Checking display". →P. 169	
4 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
5 Cancel	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the photographed image and so you can retake the shot.	

<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.
- Using Deco-mail to add decorative features to your mail decreases the number of characters that you can enter in the message in text mail.
- If you send Deco-mail to a phone that does not support this function, a URL is included in the message body and the recipient can view the Deco-mail with the Web To function by clicking on the URL. Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the mail may not be received or displayed correctly.



Note

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, images with decorations inserted appear as quoted in the message.
- If you use "Reply with quote" or "Forward" with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

Decorating a message

In the message entering display function menu... ➡ P. 251

1 Press (i) "Decorate mail" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 FColor	▶ Use ● to select a color and press ● ▶ Enter the message and press ●. Selects the color of the entered text from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time ※ (Change) is pressed.	
2 Size	▶ Choose from the following options ▶ Enter the message and press ●. Select the size of the entered text.	
	1 large	Sets large text.
	2 standard	Sets standard-size text.
	3 small	Sets small text.
3 Image	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the image to be inserted.	
	1 Image	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. →P. 345
	2 Camera	Launches the Camera function so you can shoot the image to be inserted. →P. 166
4 Blink	▶ 1 begin ▶ Enter the message and press ● ▶ Press ※ (FUNC) ▶ Press (i) "Decorate mail" ▶ 4 Blink ▶ 2 end . Make the entered text flash.	
	1 begin	Sets the point at which blinking starts.
	2 end	Sets the point at which blinking ends.
5 Ticker	▶ 1 begin ▶ Enter the text to be used as the subtitle and press ●. Display the entered text as subtitles.	
	1 begin	Sets the point at which tickering starts.
	2 end	Sets the point at which tickering ends.
6 Swing	▶ 1 begin ▶ Enter the text that is to swing and press ●. Make the entered text swing.	
	1 begin	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
	2 end	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
7 Align	▶ Choose from the following options ▶ Enter the message and press ●. Select the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.	
	1 left	Sets left-justified text.
	2 center	Sets centered text.
	3 right	Sets right-justified text.
8 Line	Inserts a line.	
9 BColor	▶ Use ● to select a color and press ●. Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time ※ (Change) is pressed.	
* Edit	See "Changing the decorations" →P. 256	
0 Reset All	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the decorations.	

Continued on next page

Note

- The last 5 colors of the 256-color palette selected are displayed at the bottom of the 25-color palette.
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Pictograms are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Change", specify the extent to be changed and then select "Cancel".
- If you move the cursor to text set to a different size, the text size setting for that text changes.
- You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message plus the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes.
- You can insert up to 10 images. However, if there are too many images to display, "" may appear before 10 images are reached. When the memory-low warning appears, press ●.
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit the image and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit display, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image (This remains valid during re-editing).
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops after a set time has elapsed.
- The image size for images shot using the Camera function is Mail (S) (128 × 96).
- You cannot insert an image when it is prohibited to output that image to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send that image as an attachment.
- Flashing, subtitling or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.
- If you used "Add header" or "Add signature" in the Compose Message display, the pasted header and signature take the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and end of the message respectively. To change the decorations used for the header or signature, select "Decorate mail" and "Change" after pasting them into the message.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you deleted the text by holding down CLR for 1 second or longer, both the text and the decoration data is deleted.

Changing the decorations

In the message entering display function menu... ➡ P. 251

1 Press 1 "Decorate mail" ▶ Press Edit ▶ Use ● to select a starting point and press ● ▶ Use ● to select an ending point and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Color	▶ Use ● to select a color and press ●. Selects the color of the text to be changed from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors each time (Change) is pressed.	
2 Size	▶ Choose from the following options: Change the size of the text in the specified area.	
	1 large	Changes to large text.
	2 standard	Changes to standard-size text.
	3 small	Changes to small text.
3 Image	Inserted images cannot be modified. Delete the image in the text entry display and then insert the correct image.	
4 Blink	▶ Choose from the following options: Change or cancels flashing for the text in the specified area.	
	1 select	Changes the blink setting.
	2 reset	Cancels blink.
5 Ticker	▶ Choose from the following options: Change or cancels subtitling for the text in the specified area.	
	1 select	Changes the tickering setting.
	2 reset	Cancels tickering.
6 Swing	▶ Choose from the following options: Change or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.	
	1 select	Changes the swing setting.
	2 reset	Cancels swinging.

7 Align	▶**Choose from the following options:** Change the position of the text in the specified area.	
	1 left	Changes to left-justified text.
	2 center	Changes to centered text.
	3 right	Changes to right-justified text.
8 Line	Inserted lines cannot be changed. Delete the line in the text entry display and then insert the line again.	
9 BGColor	The specified background color cannot be changed. In the message entry display, press (FUNC) and change the background color by selecting “Decorate mail”, “Background” in that order.	
0 Reset	Cancels decorations to text “Text color”, “Font size”, “Blink”, “Subtitles” and “Swing” in the specified area, except for the text position.	
# Back	Returns you to the message entry display.	
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration in the specified area to its status in the previous step.	

Deco-mail images

The Deco-mail image below is saved in the “Decomail-picture” folder in “My picture”.

- In the message body input display, select (FUNC) → “Decorate mail” → Image → Image → “Decomail-picture”.
- The depictions of Deco-mail shown here may differ slightly from what actually appears on the display.



Continued on next page


Bummer


Not Fair!


Happy


Fantastic!


Surprise!



I Love You



Thank You! 2



How Are You?


Smile


Shock! 1



Cheer Up! 2


Cold Sweat


Angry! 2


Congratulations 4


Shock! 2


ZZZ


Dash!


Fine

©BVIG

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using pre-installed templates. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.
For information on the templates stored at the time of purchase →P. 261

- You can download templates from sites. To download a data file from a site. See "Downloading Data Files from Sites" →P. 221
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen →P. 261.
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
  - When there is already text entered in the mail message
  - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file
- You cannot select a template that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail.
- See "Entering Text" →P. 526

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Template" ▶ Press 1 "Load template" ▶ Select a template and press ●.

■ To display a preview of the template

Highlight the template and press 左 (Demo).

- The template is shown in the preview. →P. 261
- During preview display, use ○ to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the display, use ○ to scroll the display.
- To select the template from the Preview display, press ●.

2 Press ● and edit the message.



After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use "Decorate mail" (P. 254) to add a range of decorative features.

3 Press ●.



This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the New Mail display.
When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-αppli in the i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview display. However, the "Phone To (AV Phone to)", "Mail To" and "Web To" functions cannot be used.

4 Press 左 (Send).

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments or pasted files other than inserted images, those attachments or pasted files are deleted when the template is saved.
- Text-only mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the mail menu.

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 あ "Template" ▶ Press 2 ABC "Save template" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

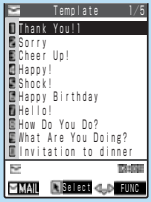
Note

- The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
  If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

Viewing the templates list

1 **Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press (0わ) "Template".**

The "Template display" appears.



Template display

Using the function menu in the template display

In the template display... ➡ P. 260

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Template display function menu 1/2

1 Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. See "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →P. 258	
2 Sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Arrange the templates according to the specified criteria.	
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges the templates in reverse chronological order by save date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges the templates in chronological order by save date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges the templates in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges the templates in descending order by title.
3 Edit title	▶ Enter title and press ●. Edits the template titles. Titles can consist of up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
4 Info	Displays the template save date, size and whether or not it includes images.	
5 Memory info	Shows the number of saved templates.	
6 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
7 Delete selected	▶ Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	

Template display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Compose message>

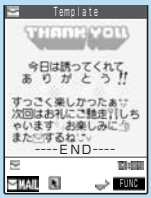
● If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

In the templates display... ➡ P. 260

1 Select a template and press ●.

The "Template preview display" appears.



Template preview display

Using the function menu in the Template Preview display

In the template preview display... ➡ P. 261

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Template preview display function menu

1 **Compose message**	You can also use templates to create Deco-mail. See "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →P. 258
2 **Edit**	Edits the template.
3 **Save insert image**	▶ **Select the image and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ●.** ■ **If the image can be set as the stand-by display** ▶ **Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select an item and press ●.** Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not want to set the image in the stand-by display, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

Note

<Compose message>

● If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

● The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute). If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

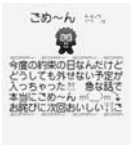
● If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

Pre-installed templates

● Actual displayed templates may differ slightly from those shown here.



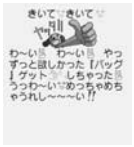
Thank You! 1



Sorry



Cheer Up!



Happy!



Shock!



Happy Birthday



Hello!



How Do You Do?



What Are You doing?



Invitation to dinner

Continued on next page



The Blues



Heart



Good Night



Hi!!



Flower



Twinkle



Balloon



I Love You



Thank You! 2



How Are You?

©BVIG

Attaching Files

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 2 abc “Attach file” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Attach melody	▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select the melody and press ● to attach the melody.
2 Attach image	▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select the image and press ● to attach the image.
3 Attach i-motion	▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select the i-motion and press ● to attach the i-motion.

■ To switch the Image List display

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 あ “Title name”.
The Picture List display changes to the Titles List display. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.
To return to the Picture List display, select “Picture” from the Function menu.

■ To display an image

Use ○ to select the desired image and press 左 (Demo).
Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.
To return to the list display, press CLR.

■ To play a melody

Highlight the melody you want to play and press 左 (Demo).
Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.
To stop melody playback, press ☎, ⊡, 米 Mail, # ｼｬｰﾌﾟ, CLR, 0 わ ﾙｰ-9 WXYZ keys, ▯ (Home) or ▯ (Memo/Check).
If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select “YES” to play the melody.

■ To send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal using i-shot mail

You can use i-shot mail to send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal.
If you send an i-shot to a mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode or Internet website, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.
When you send mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, unless the recipient has multi-part mail reception enabled, he or she can only receive messages up to 184 full-pitch characters long. If the recipient has multi-part mail reception enabled, you can send up to 2,000 full-pitch characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is held).

■ To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail

To attach an image with a file size larger than 500 KB that is stored in the My picture Inbox folder, Camera folder or in a folder you have created, select “Size for mail” → “Attach mail” from the function menu in the image list display and reduce the file size to 500 KB or less with no change in image size. → P. 355

If the file size you are attaching is larger than the screen (240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high) select "Size for mail" → "QVGA scale down" from the function menu and reduce the file size to less than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. →P. 355

A file size of 240 dots wide × 320 dots high is the best size to send to an i-mode compatible terminal.

■ To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail

To attach an i-motion that is larger in size than 500Kb to a mail, select "Trim for mail" from the function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500Kb. →P. 383

Note

● The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail

File type	Max. files attached to 1 e-mail	Comments
Melody	10	You can attach up to 10 image and/or melody files in all, up to a total size of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters). The maximum number of files varies according to file size.
Image*1		
Large image*2	1	You can attach 1 large image, movie or i-motion.
Movie/i-motion*3 (i-motion mail)		

*1 : Still image shot using the FOMA terminal camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters) or less that was downloaded from a site.

*2 : JPEG or GIF format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters) but no larger than 512,000 bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch or 512,000 half-pitch characters). Note that the image is compressed down to 102,400 bytes (equivalent to 51,200 full-pitch or 102,400 half-pitch characters) at the i-mode Center before being sent to the recipient.

*3 : Movie or i-motion of 500k bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch or 512,000 half-pitch characters).

● If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA size (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or stand-by size (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), the confirmation message "Large size image. Attach to mail?" is displayed. Selecting "YES" and pressing ● attaches the image to the i-mode mail. Select "NO" and press ● to not attach the image.

● If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.

● When you attach a large image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters).

● Images that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

● When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing the image is sent so the image can be viewed.

● When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.

● The file sizes of some i-motions may change and it may not be possible to attach them to mail.

● You cannot attach movies stored on a miniSD memory card (third-party). Import the movie first.

● An image shown in the New Mail display may differ from the image as it is displayed in My picture. Images that are too large may not appear at all in the New Mail display. When this occurs, the image shown in My picture is sent to the recipient. Consequently, to view the image correctly, the recipient must save the image on his or her mobile phone and then view it using My picture.

● You can send still images shot on the FOMA terminal's built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by clicking the URL. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch (369 bytes) long (when the number of characters that can be received by the mova terminal is 250 full-pitch characters). If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

● GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal. Also, you cannot send an attached melody to a mova service i-mode terminal.

● You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it to phones other than FOMA terminals.

● You can attach images shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".

● If the recipient is not using a FOMA N901iC, melodies you send may not be playable.

● You cannot attach melodies when there are no melodies stored on your FOMA terminal.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you sent and saved earlier.

Saving i-mode mail

This function saves mail you are composing in the Draft mailbox.

● You can save up to 20 mail and/or SMS in all.

Continued on next page

● Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

In the new mail display function menu... ➡ P. 247

1 **Press 3 DEF "Save".**

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. If there is an attached file, the file can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 **Press 左 (MAIL) ▶ Press 3 DEF "Draft".**

The "Draft mail display" appears.

2 **Select a mail message and press ●.**

3 **Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the message.**



Draft mail display

Using the function menu in the Draft Mail display

In the Draft mail display... ➡ P. 264

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Draft mail display function menu 1/2

1 List setting	▶ Select "1 Subject", "2 Name" or "3 Address". Changes the way the mail list is displayed.
2 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Sends mail using infrared communication.
3 Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" →P. 417
4 Export	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Exports the selected mail to the miniSD memory card.
5 No. of messages	Shows the number of i-mode mail messages in the Draft mailbox.
6 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
7 Delete selected	▶ Use ○ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Draft mail display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory →P. 396

Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

Default setting	Not stored

If you store groups of addresses on your FOMA terminal as members in a mailing list, you can then address i-mode mail to multiple addresses simply by selecting a mailing list when you compose the message.

● You can store up to 20 mailing lists with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

1 **Press Menu 9 7.**

The "Mail member list display" appears.



Mail member list display

2 **Select a mailing list and press ●.**

The "Mail member detail display" appears.

3 **Select "<Not stored>" and press 左 (Edit) ▶ Enter an e-mail address and press ●.**

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters in each e-mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 3.

See "Entering Text" →P. 526



Mail member detail display

4 **Press CLR.**

Note

- You cannot display mailing list members when PIM lock is set.
- If you attempt to send mail to mailing list members that have the same address, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated addresses before sending the mail. Select "YES" to delete the addresses before sending the mail, or "NO" to cancel the transmission.

Using the function menu in the Mail member list display

In the mail member list display... ➡ P. 265

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Mail member list display function menu

1 **Compose message**	Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mailing list pasted into the recipients field. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
2 **Edit member name**	**▶ Enter the member name and press ●.** Edits the name of the mailing list. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
3 **Reset member name**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Resets the mail member name to the defaults name.

Using the function menu in the Mail member detail display

In the mail member detail display... ➡ P. 265

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Mail member detail display function menu

1 Edit address	▶ Enter the mail address and press ●. Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
2 Look-up address	■ If the address isn't stored. ▶ Choose from the following options: ■ If the address is stored ▶ Select "YES" and choose from the following options: Enter the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook and records.	
	1 Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	3 Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. All the inside the selected mailing list are deleted. For information on security code →P. 142	

<Auto receive mail>

When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 i-mode mail and/or SMS in all.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P. 114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P. 134) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- The FOMA terminal can also receive i-mode mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal.

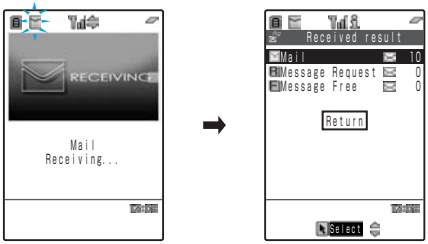
1 When you receive i-mode mail, the (white) icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears.

Once the mail has been received, the Reception Results display appears showing the number of mail and Message Request/Free received.

Select "Mail" to display the Received Mail List display.

If you not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 15 seconds, the original display reappears. You can change the period for which the Reception Results display is shown in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 119).

The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at "Mail" in "Ring volume". (P. 65)



When you receive mail from the i-shot Service

If you receive i-shot mail sent from an i-mode terminal with mova service, images arrive as attached files.

If you receive a mail with a large image attached.

If a large image that is more than 10,000 bytes in size attached to i-mode mail is successfully downloaded automatically, is displayed and the received image is stored in My picture. If the image could not be downloaded automatically, select in the Mail Detail display to download the image and save it in My picture.

If the saved image memory is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then download the image. If you want to download the image, select "YES" and press ●. Then select the images you want to delete.

Note

- When the (white) icon is flashing, the FOMA terminal is receiving mail. When all the mail has been received, the icon stops flashing and remains on the display.
- When the (Red) or (Red) icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further mail. Read your mail or remove the protection (P. 286, 289) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- If the total number of received i-mode mail messages stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 messages or the FOMA terminal's storage capacity (equivalent to 1,536,000 full-pitch or 3,072,000 half-pitch characters), received mail in the Trash box and old received mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →P. 286, 289
- If you select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 294) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is held at the i-mode Center (the icon appears at the top of your display). In this situation, you can use "Check new message" (→P. 269) to download all the i-mode mail held at the Center, or use "Receive option" to the check the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. →P. 268
- When an extremely large i-mode mail message is sent to you that cannot be accepted by the i-mode Center, it is returned to the sender together with an error message.
- You can use "Attached file" (P. 294) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- Once the FOMA terminal has received your i-mode mail, the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted.
- i-mode mail allows you to send and receive mail with melodies or images included as attached files. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "Attached file deleted" message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered to your FOMA terminal, you also receive any other i-mode mail or Message Request/Free that were being held at the i-mode Center.
- If you receive i-mode mail from a phone capable of specifying "To", "Cc" and "Bcc" recipients, refer to the Mail Details display to see whether your own address was in the "To", "Cc" or "Bcc" field. →P. 279
- You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive.
- If a tools group function (P. 431) is active or the FOMA terminal is ringing and you select , a message appears saying that you cannot retrieve a large still image and the image is not retrieved. Quit the active function before retrieving the image.
- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail (① has the highest priority):
  - ① The settings specified for each e-mail address in phonebook utilities. →P. 107
  - ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities.
  - ③ The "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" settings. →P. 114, 134
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and call alert indicator flashing pattern set for chat mail.
- If you receive i-mode mail when the stand-by display is not shown on the FOMA terminal and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results display.
- If you receive i-mode mail when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive i-mode mail while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.
- If you receive an i-mode mail during a chat mail, the reception results display is not displayed.

Viewing new i-mode mail

- Depending upon the Deco-mail's background color, the color of the URL text to download the image or i-motion may overlap and hence unreadable.

1 Press ● ▶ Select and press ●.

Continued on next page



2 **Select a received mail message and press ●.**

Note

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with mail received from a PC.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

This function allows you to check information such as the titles of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to download or delete mail at the Center before you download it.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P. 294).

When mail arrives

When the FOMA terminal notifies you of mail received from the i-mode Center, it displays the (White) icon rather than (White) or .

Refer to steps 1-3 in "Receiving mail selectively" (P. 268).

Receiving mail selectively

1 **Press ◎左 (MAIL) ▶ Press 8TUV "Receive option".**

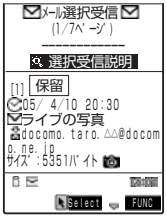
■ If "Receive option" is set to "OFF"

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail Menu display reappears.

If you used this function to show the Receive option display, the icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.

The icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the Mail display.

2 **Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail.**



“受信” Accept:Accepts the selected mail.
“削除” Delete:Deletes the selected mail.
“保留” Hold:Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center
Use “Check new message” (P. 269) to download the mail.

■ To delete all the mail

Select “削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page and press ●, then select “Set” and press ●.

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Select “前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page) to move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted. When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.
The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ (Size): XXXバイト (bytes)” are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.

3 Select “受信/削除” (Receive/Delete) and press ● ▶ Select “Set” and press ●.

The completion display appears and mail downloading begins.



■ To cancel selective downloading

Select “キャンセル” (Cancel) and press ●.

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “Receive/Delete” mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

Note

- You can also access “Receive option” as follows:
  - Press (メニュー) (i-mode) ▶ Press (1) “iMenu” ▶ Press (9) “Menu list” ▶ Select “Receive option” and press ●.
- If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be downloaded even if the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new message” (P. 297) if you do not want to receive any mail.
- If the Receive option setting is “ON”, you cannot automatically receive mail, the mail ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate.

<Check new message>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting	Check for all (mail, Message Request and Message Free)

- i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your mail is held at the i-mode Center:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When “Receive option setting” (P. 294) is set to “ON”
  - During a video-phone call or remote observation
- You cannot check for new mail when is displayed.
- Use “Set check new message” (P. 297) to specify which items are checked for.

Continued on next page

1 Press and hold down (左) (MAIL) for 1 second or longer.



The Check New Message display appears.
The FOMA terminal checks first for "Mail" → "Message Request" → "Message Free". The (white), R (white) and F (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the display. The FOMA terminal then downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down (CLR) for 1 second or longer.
When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and messages.

2 Check for new i-mode mails, Message Requests, and Message Frees.

Note

- You can also use the following procedures to check for mail and messages:
  - Press (左) (i-mode) ▶ Press (7) "Check new message".
  - Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press (7) "Check new message".
- If the (white) icon was displayed, you have i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your i-mode mail messages is full, the (red) icon is displayed.
- If icons such as (red), (red), R (red) and F (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail and Message Request/Free or read or unprotect (→P. 231, 286) your unread mail and Message Request/Free until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail and Message Request/Free are then overwritten as new mail and messages arrive, starting with the oldest received items.
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the icon may not displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal was turned off or the (white) icon was displayed.
- You cannot use this function to check for SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to download SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. When replying, you can either compose a new message, compose a reply while referring to the original message, or quote the body of the received message in your reply.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.
- See "Entering Text" →P. 526

Replying by composing a new message

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press (1) "Reply" ▶ Edit the subject and message body and then send the message.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P. 245.

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

After selecting "Reply", select "To sender".
To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".
If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed Mail Reply display.
If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed Mail Reply display.
After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the icon changes to .

Note

- The Fm icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 half-pitch characters).
- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- If an i-mode mail message contains pasted data, you cannot quote the pasted data in your reply.
- When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.
- When you reply to a Deco-mail, you cannot quote the inserted image or decoration.

Replying by referring to received mail

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press J "Reply with ref".



In "Reply with ref", the top part of the display is the Message entry window, while the lower part shows the received message (Reference window).

■ To switch between the Reference and Message Entry windows

Select "Change window" in the Function menu or by holding down ⊡ for 1 second or longer.

■ To copy the message, subject or address from the Reference Window

Select "Copy" and then "Message", "Subject" or "Address" from the Function menu in the Reference Window.

For more information on copying ➞ P. 544

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

After selecting "Reply with ref", select "To sender".

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply with ref" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed Mail Reply display.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed Mail Reply display.

2 Edit the message body and then send the message.

■ To edit the subject

Press ● to return to the Mail Reply display, select Subject and re-enter the subject.

If you press ● to return to the Mail Reply display and then display the Message Entry window again, the Reference window is not displayed.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 6-8 on P. 245.

After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the ✉ icon changes to ↩.

Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

● Attached files are deleted when you quote i-mode mail.

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press 2 “Reply with quote” ▶ Edit the subject and message body and then send the message.

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**

After selecting “Reply with quote”, select “To sender”.

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with quote” and then “To all”.

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A single quotation symbol (set to “>” by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply.

Quotation symbols are not shown at the beginning of each line.

To edit the quotation symbol →P. 296

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4-8 on P. 245.

After the reply has been sent, the Received Mail Detail display appears and the icon changes to .

Note

- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- If you add a quotation symbol to an i-mode mail message and the combined size of the message and the quotation symbol exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, a message appears informing you that you have exceeded the limit on the accept phone number of characters. Press ● to display the message entry display and then delete text until the message length no longer exceeds the limit.
- If there is a file attached to the i-mode mail messages you are replying to, a message appears notifying you that the attached file will be deleted. Pressing ● deletes the file and displays the Reply to mail display.
- If you insert an image into the body of a Deco-mail message when it is prohibited to output that image to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send that image as an attachment, the image is deleted before the message is sent.

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

● Forwarded mail has “Fw:” automatically inserted in the subject line. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including “Fw:”), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press 4 “Forward” ▶ Enter the address and then press ●.

■ **Entering an address from the phonebook, address lists or mailing lists**

Select “Look-up address” from the Function menu in the Forward Mail display.

For detailed information on entering addresses →P. 248, 250

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to a total of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 Press 左 (Send).

When the message is sent, the received mail details screen is displayed, and “ ” changes to “ ”.

Note

- You cannot forward mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- When you forward i-mode mail that has "Fw:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Fw2:" is inserted into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is inserted in the forwarded message, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "W" ("FW:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Fw:" in the forwarded message.
- If it is forbidden to attach files to the forwarded i-mode mail or if it is forbidden to send the file attached or pasted into the forwarded i-mode mail to phones other than FOMA terminals, the file and its information is deleted.
- If the image wasn't downloaded, it cannot be attached.
- An i-mode mail message that contains pasted data is quoted. However pasted data cannot be quoted when it has been forwarded using the Data Link Software or the infrared communication function.

Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Save address".

■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

In the e-mail address selection display, select the e-mail address and press ●.

■ To add a recipient e-mail address or phone number in a send i-mode mail

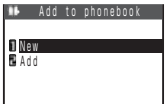
Select "Save address" from the Function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display.
If the mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

Select "Add to phonebook" from the Function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display or Received Mail Detail display.

2 Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press 1 "Phone" ▶ Press 1 "New".

The Add New Phonebook Entry display appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.
See "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" →P. 93



■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

After selecting "YES", select "UIM".
When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

Note

- If a phone number you are attempting to add includes non-numerical characters such as parentheses or hyphens, a message appears saying that some of the characters cannot be added.

<Save melody>

Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody (or) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender was not using a FOMA N901iC, the received melody may not play correctly.
- Select the melody.

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press ▶ Press 3 “Save data” ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ●.

To set the melody as a ring tone, etc., proceed to step 2.

■ To stop the melody

Press , , keys 0 to 9, or .

■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail

Set “Auto melody play” (P. 294) to “OFF”.

■ If the memory for storing melodies is full

A message appears asking whether to delete a melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select “YES” and press ●. Then select the melody to be deleted.

2 Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Select an option and press ●.

■ If you do not want to set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

Select “NO” and press ●.

Note

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Loading Images in Image Mail

This function enables you to save images ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

- Select the image beforehand.

In the received mail detail display function menu... ➡ P. 289

1 Press ▶ Press 3 “Save data” ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ●.

If multiple images are attached, all the images are displayed.
Select the file name for the image to be viewed and press ● to view the image.

■ To change from image display to file name display

Select the image that you want to see as a file name.
To return to image display, select the file name to be displayed as an image.

■ If the memory for storing images is full

A message appears asking whether to delete an image before saving the new image. To save the new image, select “YES” and press ●. Then select the image to be deleted.

2 Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Select an option and press ●.

■ **If you do not want to set the image in the stand-by display, etc.**

Select “NO” and press ●.

Note

- Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, images that are too large may not be displayed at all in some cases.
- Images may be displayed differently in i-mode mail and My picture. Consequently, to view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder.
- If you attempt to delete an image that has been selected using a function such as “Display setting” (an image marked with a star (★) when “Set as display” was selected from the Function menu in the Data box), a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the image. Select “YES” to delete the image.
- When you delete a melody that has been set in a display using functions such as “Display setting”, the corresponding item reverts to its default setting.
- A JPEG image attached to an i-mode mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically loaded. If it is not automatically loaded, you can load it by selecting “ ” in the i-mode mail.
- If your FOMA terminal successfully automatically downloads a image, the received image is saved to My pictures in Data box.

<i-motion mail>

Loading i-motions from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the file is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to download the i-motion is attached.
- Select the i-motion mail beforehand.

In the mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 Select URL and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Once the i-motion has been downloaded on your FOMA terminal, the “Data acquisition display” appears.



Data acquisition display

■ **To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way**

Press 左 (Quit).

■ **To save a download i-motion**

You can save a downloaded i-motion in the FOMA terminal by selecting “save” on the Data acquisition display. →P. 336

■ **To display information about the downloaded i-motion**

Select “Properties” on the Data acquisition display. →P. 336

Note

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.
- If “ON” is selected in “Automatic replay” (P. 336), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
- You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing during downloading (first playback only).

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

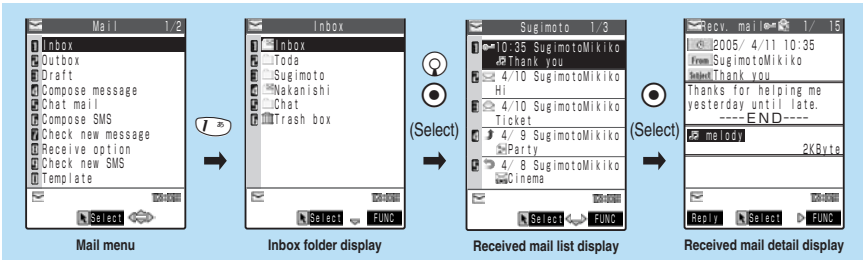
The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400 sent mail and/or SMS. The number of mail messages that can be saved varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When files sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved decreases.

- i-mode mail allows you to send messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters and receive mail with messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1 Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press 1 “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select an i-mode mail message and press ●.



Mail menu | Inbox folder display | Received mail list display | Received mail detail display

■ To view the previous or next i-mode mail message

Press ⊙ in the Received Mail Detail display.
Press CLR to return to the Received Mail List display.

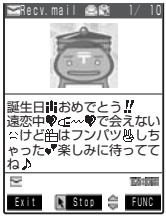
Note

- To view the contents of a folder for which mail security is set, enter your security code and press ●. However, if “Mail security” (P. 151) is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu, you do not have to enter your security code because you have to enter it to view the Inbox folder list display or Outbox folder list display.
- By selecting “Mail info” from the Function menu in the Received Mail List display, you can check the sender, the subject and the date and time a message arrived at the i-mode Center before actually opening the mail.
- You can also paste the e-mail address of an i-mode mail sender or one of the broadcast mail recipients into your stand-by display as a desktop icon. You can then use the pasted desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address. However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the Fm, To or Cc icon as desktop icons. Note that for broadcast mail also, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.

■ Mail-connected i-αpplis

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-αppli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-αppli.
- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-αppli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-αppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
  If there is no dedicated folder but the “Auto-sort” function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the “Auto-sort” settings. If the “Auto-sort” function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-αppli activates the software.
- To view the Mail List display for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select “Open folder” from the Function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)

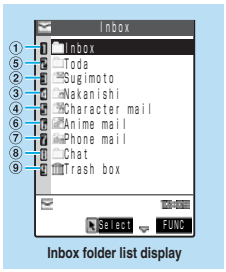


● By selecting “Read out message” from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
To interrupt reading, press ●. (Pressing ● after reading has been stopped restarts the reading from the beginning of the message.) To exit reading-out mode, press 左 (Exist).
・ You can set the voice used to read out received mail using “Read out setting” (P. 297).
・ Messages are read out at the volume set in “Phone” in the “Ring volume” setting (P. 65). If “Silent” or “Step” is set, messages are read out at the “Level 2” volume.
・ While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the display, as shown in the figure. If the sender’s address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.

● While a message is being read out, you can scroll around the message by pressing ◎, ▲ or ▼. Also, holding down 5 JKL for 1 second or longer turns the backlight on or off. Pressing any of the FOMA terminal’s other keys or closing the FOMA terminal stops the reading.
● If you select “Read out message” from the Function menu while the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking you whether the FOMA terminal should read out the message.
● If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading is interrupted and the Receiving display appears.
● If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in “Receiving display” takes effect. Also, if the specified time for an alarm is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in “Alarm setting” takes effect.
● If you interrupt the FOMA terminal while it is reading out a message, you cannot restart the reading from the same point by pressing ●.
● The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some messages received as mail from PC, etc.

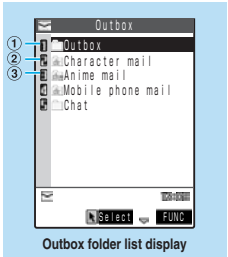
Guide to the Folder List displays

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Folder List displays.
● Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Inbox”, “Chat” and “Trash box” folders and the folders for the pre-installed mail-connected i-αpplis, but you can add folders using the Function menu and mail-connected i-αpplis.
● Mail can be also saved in any of the folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Outbox”, “Chat” and “Trashbox” folders and the folders for the pre-installed mail-connected i-αpplis, but you can add folders using the Function menu and mail-connected i-αpplis.
● The Draft mailbox does not contain any folders.



Inbox folder list display

① : Contains no unread mail.
② : Contains unread mail.
③ : Contains no unread mail and security (P. 282) is set.
④ : Contains unread mail and security is set.
⑤ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (P. 317).
⑥ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli containing unread mail.
⑦ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set.
⑧ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set and containing unread mail.
⑨ : Trash box folder.
: Trash box folder with security set.

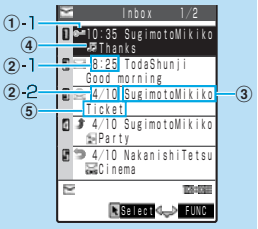


Outbox folder list display

① : Sent mail folder.
: Sent mail folder with security (P. 282) set.
② : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli (P. 317).
③ : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-αppli with security set.

Guide to the Mail List displays

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Mail List displays.



Received mail list display

① Shows the mail status.

①-1 Received mail

: Unread mail

: Read mail

: Forwarded mail

: Replied-to mail

: Unread protected mail

: Read protected mail

: Forwarded protected mail

: Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list display

①-2 Sent mail

: Mail sent successfully

: Mail sent unsuccessfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

: Protected mail sent successfully

: Protected mail sent unsuccessfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

② Shows the time and date of transmission

②-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received today.

②-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

③ Shows the sender/recipient. For a sender/recipient stored in the phonebook, this can be changed to show the e-mail address, phone number or name. If the sender's address is stored in the phonebook and an image is also stored, is displayed.

④ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2-line display>

: SMS

: SMS with SMS report received

: SMS stored in the UIM

: Attached or pasted melody

: Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted

: All the attached or pasted melodies were invalid or deleted.

: Attached or pasted image

: Multiple attached or pasted images, some of which were invalid or deleted

: All the attached or pasted images were invalid or deleted. Or there are too many attached images to be displayed on the mail details display.

: Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.

: Large image attached to i-mode mail was downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.

: Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.

: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.

: Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached movie or i-motion has been sent.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or edited.

: Before downloading a large image or i-motion pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.

: An i-αppli can be launched from the message body.

: Mail sent or received by a mail-connected i-αppli

: Multiple pasted files. Also shown when the file is pasted along with i-αppli To.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different UIM was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1-line display>

: One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.

: Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached, including one or more large files.

: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.

: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different UIM was used when the mail was sent or received.

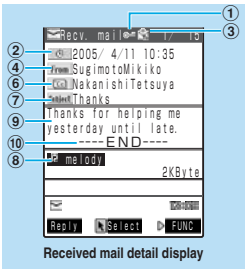
⑤ Shows the message subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed.
For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Voice Mail notice" is displayed.

Note

- If the date and time are not set (For information on setting time →P. 44), the date and time in the Received Mail List display and Sent Mail List display are shown as "--/--".
- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the Received Mail Detail display or Sent Mail Detail display, the display switches between image display and file name display each time you press ●.

Guide to the Mail Detail displays

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the Mail Detail displays.



Received mail detail display

① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the Mail List display on P. 278.)
② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).
③ Shows the sending type of received mail.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

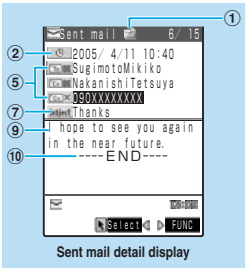
: Received mail broadcast by the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

④ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.

From : Sender's e-mail address.

Fm : E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters, etc.)



Sent mail detail display

⑤ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.
Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

To OK : Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

To ✕ : Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.

Cc OK : Recipient to which broadcast mail was successfully sent.

Cc ✕ : Recipient to which broadcast mail was not successfully sent.

Bcc OK : Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.

Bcc ✕ : Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

⑥ Shows received mail with multiple recipient addresses specified (not including the current FOMA terminal user). Up to 4 recipients can be shown.

Continued on next page

: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.

: The sender sent a copy of a message to the recipient as broadcast mail.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail

The , and icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ④, ⑤ and ⑥. To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook. →P. 93

⑦ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, is displayed (if the SMS is in the UIM) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report request" for SMS reports). When an SMS report request has been received, the icon is also displayed.

⑧ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

: Pasted melody. If the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.

: Multiple pasted files. Also displayed when a file is pasted along with i-αppli To.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or edited.

: An attached image was deleted.

: A large image file was loaded and then deleted. Also shown when the data has been edited or replaced after retrieval.

: An attached melody was deleted.

⑨ Shows the mail message.

⑩ Shows the end of the message body.

In the following situations, the e-mail address and not the "Name" is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When "Restrict dialing" (P. 152) is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
- When details are displayed in Secret only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

Changing the mail character size

In the Mail Detail displays, you can change the size of the text in the message body.



Note

- If you move to a display other than a Mail Detail display, the character size automatically reverts from Small or Large to Standard. When you return to the Mail Detail display, the character changes back to Small or Large.
- When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in "Character size" (P. 294) also changes.
- The character size can be changed in the same way in the mail message reading out display (P. 276).

Changing the Mail List display mode (1 line/2 line)

You can switch between 1-line display and 2-line display using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu. →P. 294



2 line mode

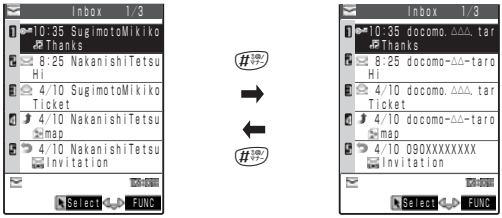


1 line mode

Changing the Mail List display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the Mail List display, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

● Mail List display (2-line mode)



● Mail List display (1-line mode)

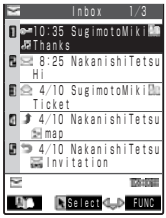


Note

● You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the Function menu in the Received Mail List display, Sent Mail List display or Draft Mail List display and then selecting “Name”, “Address”, or “Subject”.

Mail that shows faces

When you are viewing a Mail List display, the icon is displayed for received mail when the sender's address is stored in the phonebook along with an image.
You can then view the stored image by selecting the mail with the icon and pressing (左) [ ].



(左)
(📷)
➡
⬅
(右)
(Exit)



Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the Function menu in the Folder List display.
To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the Mail List display for the mail in folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the Function menu.

Backlight function

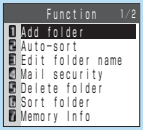
When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's backlight comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the backlight stays on in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 119).) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
The backlight does not turn on if "Lighting" is set to "OFF" in "Display light" (P. 128).

Using the function menu in the Inbox and Outbox List displays

- You can add up to 22 folders.
- You can specify automatic sorting of received i-mode mail and SMS into added folders.
- You cannot delete or rename the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

In the inbox/outbox folder list display... ➡ P. 277

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Inbox/Outbox folder list display function menu display

Inbox/Outbox list display function menu 1/2

1 **Add folder**	▶ **Enter the folder name and press ●.** Adds a new folder. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Auto-sort**	Automatically sorts received i-mode mail and SMS into folders in the Inbox or Outbox according to e-mail address, phone number and phonebook group settings, etc. See "Automatic sorting settings" →P. 283
3 **Edit folder name**	▶ **Enter the folder name and press ●.** You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
4 **Mail security**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Sets or cancels folder security. See "Setting security for individual folders" →P. 152 For information on security code →P. 142

5 Delete folder	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142
6 Sort folder	▶Select a location and press ●. Sorts the folders.
7 Memory info	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.

Inbox/Outbox list display function menu 2/2

1 Open folder	Displays list of the mail in the selected folder.
2 Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected folder using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" →P. 417
3 Delete read*1	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the read mail.
4 Delete all*2	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the mail. For information on security code →P. 142

*1 : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list.
*2 : If you have selected the "Outbox folder list", "3 Delete all" is displayed.

Note

<Add folder>
● When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created.
<Auto-sort>
● You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders in automatic sorting.
● If "Mail security" (P. 151) is set for the "Inbox" or "Outbox" in the Mail menu, is displayed next to "Inbox" and "Outbox" in the Mail menu. In this situation, you have to enter your security code.
● If Mail security (P. 151) is set for an added folder, you must enter your security code after step 1.
● Mail sent as broadcast mail is not sorted.
<Edit folder name>
● You cannot edit the names of mail-connected i-αppli folders.
<Mail security>
● You cannot delete or edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.
<Delete folder>
● You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or mail for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
● You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder list display or Outbox folder list display is also deleted.
● If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.
<Sort folder>
● You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders and you cannot run "Sort folder" when any of these folders is selected.
● You cannot run "Sort folder" when there are no added folders.
<Delete read>
● This option does not delete SMS or read i-mode mail that is protected.
<Delete all>
● This option does not delete SMS or protected i-mode mail.
<Delete all>
● This option also deletes unread mail. However, it does not delete SMS or protected i-mode mail.

● Automatic sorting settings

● You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
● If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below, with ① having the highest priority. Note that mail for mail-connected i-αpplis is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
① Sort all ② Sort subject ③ Reply/Send impossible ④ Number/Address sort ⑤ Mail member ⑥ Phonebook group
● Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remain stored in their original folders.
● Select a folder already specified as a sort destination.

In the inbox/outbox list display function menu... ➡ P. 282

Continued on next page

1 Press 2 “Auto-sort” ▶ Select the automatic sorting settings from the following options:

Auto-sort settings display function menu 1/2

1 Address sort	▶ Choose from the following options: Set an e-mail address to be used for automatic sorting.		
	1 Look-up address	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or Received/Dialed calls.	
		1 Phonebook	Sets an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
		2 Received address	Sets an e-mail address from the Received address list.
		3 Sent address	Sets an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	2 Look-up group	▶ Select a mail member and press ●. The mail address of a selected group is set.	
	3 Look-up member	▶ Select a group and press ●. The mail address of a selected mail member is set.	
	4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in an e-mail address. See “Entering Text” →P. 526	
2 Subject sort	▶ Enter a subject and press ●. Sets a received mail subject as an auto-sort criterion. See “Entering Text” →P. 526		
3 Reply impossible*1	Sets a reply-impossible or reply impossible e-mail address as an auto-sort criterion.		
4 Sort all	This can only be set for mail-connected i-αppli folders. Sorts all mail into a mail-connected i-αppli folder.		
5 Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified e-mail address or mail subject.		
6 List setting	▶ Select 1 “Name” or 2 “Address”. Changes the display mode for the list of e-mail addresses to be used for automatic sorting.		
7 Release	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.		

*1 : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox-folder, “3 Send impossible” is displayed.

Auto-sort settings display function menu 2/2

1 Release selected	▶ Use ↕ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press Y! (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
2 Release all	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

Note

- If auto-sort criteria is already stored and you store a different set of criteria in the same folder, a message is displayed asking you if you want to change the settings. Select "YES" to change the settings. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the UIM.

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" folder.
- Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- "Reply impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Send impossible>

- "Send impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Sort all>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the UIM.
- "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.
- Setting "Sort all" disables all other sort settings.

<List setting>

- You can also switch between the "Name List display" and "Address List display" by pressing #(ｼﾌﾄ) in the Auto-sort Settings display.

Using the function menu in the Received Mail List display

In the received mail list display... ➡ P. 278

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Received mail list display function menu 1/3

1 Move	▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Moves the selected mail to another folder.		
2 Search mail	▶ Choose from the following options: Search for mail using a specified sender or subject.		
	1 Search sender	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input.	
		1 Phonebook	Sets an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
		2 Received address	Sets an e-mail address from the Received address list.
		3 Sent address	Sets an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
		4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in an e-mail address.
	2 Search subject	▶ Enter a subject and press ●.	
3 Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use folder functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").		

Continued on next page

4 Sort	▶Choose from the following options: Sort mail according to the specified criteria.	
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.
	3 By address ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.
	4 By address ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.
	5 By subject ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.
	6 By subject ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.
5 Filter	▶Choose from the following options: Display mail according to the specified criteria. Setting 1/2	
	1 Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
	2 Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
	3 Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
	4 Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.
	5 Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted downloading information for large images.
	6 i-motion	Displays only mail with an attached i-motion .
	7 i-αppli	Displays only i-mode mail that includes i-αppli startup information.
	Setting 2/2	
	1 SMS	Displays only SMS.
6 List setting	▶Select 1 "Subject", 2 "Name" or 3 "Address". Changes the display mode for the Mail List displays.	
7 Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.	

Received mail list display function menu 2/3

1 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
2 Unprotect all	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Unprotects all protected mail.
3 Send Ir data	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Export	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
5 UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal to the FOMA memory card (UIM) or Move or copy the SMS in the FOMA memory card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal. →P. 314
6 Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail message.
7 No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.

Received mail list display function menu 3/3

1 Move trash box	▶Use ○ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 文 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
2 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete selected	▶Use ○ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 文 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete read	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Delete all SMS-R	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142
6 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Move>
- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the UIM to another folder.

<Search mail>
- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search for i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as the subject search criteria.

<Sort>
- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in the Received Mail List display in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓ " in the Sort menu and then "Unread" in the Filter function.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the Received Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>
- If you view mail with the Filter function, exit the display and then view the Received Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this display by selecting "Display all".

<List setting>
- You can also switch between "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing #待 in the Received Mail List display.

<Read all>
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>
- If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P. 276), precedence is given to deleting mail in the "Trash box" folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the "Trash box" folder, read and unprotected received mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS in the UIM.
- You cannot protect mail in the "Trash box" folder.

<Unprotect all>
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Unprotect all", protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<Move trash box>
- This option moves mail to be deleted to the "Trash box" folder. Mail moved to the "Trash box" folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the "Inbox" folder is full, mail in the "Trash box" folder is the first mail to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or reports in the UIM to the "Trash box" folder.
- If you move unread mail to the "Trash box" folder, it is marked as read.
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Move trash box", only the currently displayed mail can be moved to the "Trash box" folder.
- If you select "Move trash box" from the Received Mail List display Function menu and select the mail to be moved to the "Trash box" folder when the limit on the permitted number of saved messages has already been reached, a message appears confirming that the moved mail will be given priority in automatic deletion when mail is received. Select "YES" to move the mail to the "Trash box" folder.

<Delete>
- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>
- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>
- You cannot use this option to delete read i-mode mail or SMS that are protected.

<Delete all SMS-R>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>
- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

Using the function menu in the Sent Mail List display

In the sent mail list display... ➡ P. 278

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Continued on next page

Sent mail list display function menu 1/3

1 Move	▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 左 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Moves the selected mail to another folder.		
2 Search mail	▶Choose from the following options: Search for mail using a specified sender or subject.		
	1 Search receiver	▶Choose from the following options: Set the mail address by consulting the Phonebook or history, or direct input.	
		1 Phonebook	Sets an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
		2 Received address	Sets an e-mail address from the Received address list.
		3 Sent address	Sets an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
		4 Enter address	Allows you to directly key in an e-mail address. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
	2 Search subject	▶Enter a subject and press ●. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
3 Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use folder functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").		
4 Sort	▶Choose from the following options: Sort mail according to the specified criteria.		
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges mail in reverse chronological order by date/time.	
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges mail in chronological order by date/time.	
	3 By address ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.	
	4 By address ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.	
	5 By subject ↓	Arranges mail in ascending order by subject.	
	6 By subject ↑	Arranges mail in descending order by subject.	
5 Filter	▶Choose from the following options: Display mail according to the specified criteria.		
	1 Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.	
	2 Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies.	
	3 Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted large image information.	
	4 i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or movies and i-mode mail with pasted i-motion information.	
	5 SMS	Displays only SMS.	
	6 Failed	Displays only i-mode mail and SMS that could not be sent.	
6 List setting	▶Select 1 "Subject", 2 "Name" or 3 "Address". Changes the display mode for the Mail List displays.		
7 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.		

Sent mail list display function menu 2/3

1 Unprotect all	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Unprotects all protected mail.
2 Send Ir data	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Export	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
4 UIM operation	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal to the UIM and vice-versa. →P. 314
5 No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
6 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
7 Delete selected	▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 左 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Sent mail list display function menu 3/3

1 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

<Move>
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the UIM to another folder.

<Search mail>
- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search for i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as the subject search criteria.

<Sort>
- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the protected mail in the Received Mail List display in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓ " in the Sort menu and then "Protected" in the Filter function.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the Sent Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>
- If you view mail with the Filter function, exit the display and then view the Sent Mail List display again, the display reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this display by selecting "Display all".

<List setting>
- You can also switch between "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing #VOICE in the Received Mail List display.

<Protect ON/OFF>
- If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P. 276), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message.
- You cannot protect SMS in the UIM.

<Delete>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

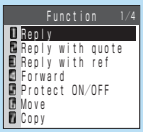
<Delete selected>
- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete all>
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

Using the function menu in the Received Mail Detail display

In the received mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:



Received mail detail display function menu

Received mail detail display function menu 1/4

1 Reply	See "Replying by composing a new message" →P. 270
2 Reply with quote	See "Replying by quoting the received message" →P. 272
3 Reply with ref	See "Replying by referring to received mail" →P. 271
4 Forward	See "Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients" →P. 272
5 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
6 Move	▶Select a folder and press ●. Moves the mail to another folder.
7 Copy	▶Select 1 "Message", 2 "Subject" or 3 "Address". Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address from the i-mode mail message. See "Copying (or cutting) text" →P. 544

Continued on next page

Received mail detail display function menu 2/4

1 **Save address**	See “Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook” →P. 273
2 **Add to phonebook**	See “Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook” →P. 273
3 **Save data**	Saves a melody or image that is attached to or pasted into mail. See “Loading Melodies from i-mode Mail” →P. 274 See “Loading Images in Image Mail” →P. 274
4 **Save insert image**	**▶Select the image and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ● ▶Select an option and press ●.** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the stand-by display, select “NO” after selecting the folder and pressing ●.
5 **Save schedule**	Stores a scheduled event by browsing an i-mode mail message. →P. 439
6 **Add desktop icon**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.** See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136
7 **Save template**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.** Saves a received i-mode mail as a template.

Received mail detail display function menu 3/4

1 **Refer dictionary**	Activates the dictionary. See “Using Dictionaries” →P. 454
2 **Property**	**▶Select the image and press ●.** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
3 **URL**	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
4 **Read out message**	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail. →P. 276
5 **Chat**	Launches Chat. →P. 303
6 **Send Ir data**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.**
7 **Export**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.**

Received mail detail display function menu 4/4

1 **UIM operation**	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal to the UIM and vice-versa. →P. 314
2 **Scroll**	**▶Select 1 “1 line”, 2 “3 lines” or 3 “5 lines”.** Sets the number of scrolling lines for the display.
3 **Character size**	**▶Select 1 “Standard”, 2 “Small” or 3 “Large”.** Sets the size of the displayed text.
4 **Delete att. file**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.** Deletes the attached file. Note that if you delete a large image, only the URL pasted into the mail is deleted and the file saved in the “Inbox” folder for the My picture is not deleted.
5 **Move trash box**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.** Moves the mail to the “Trash box” folder.
6 **Delete**	**▶Select “YES” and press ●.**

Note

<Move>
- You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the UIM to another folder.

<Copy>
- If you use “Copy” while writing the message in Deco-mail, the decoration information is also copied.

<Delete att. file>
- You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or reports in the UIM to the “Trash box” folder.

Using the function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display

In the sent mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Sent mail detail display function menu 1/3

1 Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject and message body and then press (左) (Send). Re-edits the message. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 Resend	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Resends the message.
3 Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the message.
4 Move	▶ Select a folder and press ●. Moves the message to another folder.
5 Copy	▶ Select 1 "Message", 2 "Subject" or 3 "Address". Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address from the i-mode mail. See "Copying (or cutting) text" →P. 544
6 Save address	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" →P. 273
7 Add to phonebook	See "Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook" →P. 273

Sent mail detail display function menu 2/3

1 Save data	Saves a melody, image or i-motion that is attached to or pasted into the message. →P. 274, 275
2 Save insert image	▶ Select the image and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select an option and press ●. Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the stand-by display, select "NO" after selecting the folder and pressing ●.
3 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
4 Save template	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template.
5 Refer dictionary	Activates the dictionary. See "Using Dictionaries" →P. 454
6 Property	▶ Select the image and press ●. Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
7 Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report request for an SMS. →P. 309

Sent mail detail display function menu 3/3

1 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Export	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
3 UIM operation	Moves or copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (phone) to the UIM and vice-versa. →P. 314
4 Scroll	▶ Select 1 "1 line", 2 "3 lines" or 3 "5 lines". Sets the number of scrolling lines for the display.
5 Character size	▶ Select 1 "Standard", 2 "Small" or 3 "Large". Sets the size of the displayed text.
6 Delete att. file	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the attached file. Note that if you delete a large image or i-motion, only the URL pasted into the mail is deleted and the file saved in the "Inbox" folder for the Movie Player or Image Viewer is not deleted.
7 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

<Resend>

- Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is deleted. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is deleted.

<Disp. SMS report>

- If there is no SMS report for the selected message, this function cannot be used.
- Even when "ON" is specified in "SMS report request", no SMS report is provided for mail that cannot be sent (that does not reach the recipient).

<Received address/Sent address>

Using the Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent Address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received Address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail phone number or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent Address and Received Address lists.
- If a sender address is invalid, it may not be recorded in the address lists.
- E-mail addresses stored in the phonebook as secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" are not recorded in the address lists.
- If you received or sent mail while mail security was set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail display, the e-mail address of the sender or the recipient is not added to the address list.

Checking an address list

Use this procedure to check the Received Address or Send Address list.

<Example: Viewing the Received Address List display>

1 Hold down ○ for 1 second or longer.

The "Received address list display" appears.

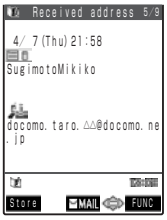


Received address list display

■ To display the Sent Address List display

Hold down ○ for 1 second or longer.

2 Select a sender and press ●.



Received address detail display

The "Received Address Detail display" appears.

3 Check the details.

Note

- The following procedure can also be used to display the Received Address List display:
  - Press (Menu) ▶ Select 電話帳 and press ● ▶ Press 2 “Received calls” ▶ Press 1 “All calls” ▶ Press (右) “Change”
- The following procedure can also be used to display the Sent Address List display:
  - Press (Menu) ▶ Select 電話帳 and press ● ▶ Press 3 “Dialed calls” ▶ Press (右) “Change”
- You cannot display the sent or received address lists when “OFF” is selected for “Redial/Dialed calls” and “Received calls” in “Record display set”.
- The following icons are used in the Received Address List and Received Address Detail displays:
  - : i-mode mail received.
  - : SMS received.
- The following icons are used in the Sent Address List and Sent Address Detail displays:
  - : i-mode mail transmission successful.
  - : i-mode mail transmission failed.
  - : SMS transmission successful.
  - : SMS transmission failed.

Using the function menu in the Received Address and Sent Address List displays

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the Received Address and Sent Address Detail displays.

- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others seeing them.

In the received/sent address list display... ➡ P. 292

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Received/Sent address list display function menu 1/2

1 **Add to phonebook**	See “Adding Mail Addresses to the Phonebook” →P. 273
2 **Add desktop icon**	**▶ Select “YES” and press ●.** See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136
3 **Compose message***1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the e-mail address pasted into the recipient’s field. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →P. 245
4 **Dialing**	Uses the Phone To function to call the phone number in the phonebook entry that contains the e-mail address. →P. 222
5 **Received calls***2	Switches to the Received Calls display (or Redial display (list)). →P. 50, 62
6 **Delete this**	**▶ Select “YES” and press ●.**
7 **Delete selected**	**▶ Use (上下) to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (右) (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.**

*1 : When an SMS is selected, this option changes to “3 Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient. See “Composing and Sending SMS “. →P. 308

*2 : “5 Dialed calls” is displayed in the sent address list display.

Received/Sent address list display function menu 2/2

1 **Delete all**	**▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.** For information on Security code →P. 142

Note

<Received calls>

- The displayed Received Calls display is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Use this procedure to set the mail functions on your FOMA terminal.

1 **Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 “Mail settings”.**

The “Mail settings display” appears.

2 **Choose from the following options:**



Mail settings display

Mail settings menu 1/2

1 **Scroll** (default setting: 1 1 line)	▶ **Select 1 “1 line”, 2 “3 lines” or 3 “5 lines”.** Sets the number of lines are scrolled when you press ○ on the mail details screen.	
2 **Character size** (default setting: 1 Standard)	▶ **Select 1 “Standard”, 2 “Small” or 3 “Large”.** Sets the mail details screen text size. Standard :Displays text in the mail details display at the standard size. Small: Displays text in the mail details display at the small size. Large: Displays text in the mail details display at the large size.	
3 **Mail list disp.**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the number of lines to display on the mail list screen.	
	1 **2 lines** (default setting)	Displays 2 lines for each entry.
	2 **1 line**	Displays 1 line for each entry.
4 **Message display**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the position from where to start displaying the message body.	
	1 **Standard** (default setting)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
	2 **From message**	Displays the message from the message body onwards.
5 **Auto melody play**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether to automatically display the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.	
	1 **ON** (default setting)	Automatically plays melodies when i-mode mail is opened.
	2 **OFF**	Does not automatically play melodies when i-mode mail is opened.
6 **Header/ Signature**	See “Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols”. →P. 296	
7 **Mail security**	See “Setting security for individual mailboxes”. →P. 152	
8 **Receiving display**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether to give display priority to reception and reception result screen if a mail, Message Request, or Message Free is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.	
	1 **Alarm preferred** (default setting)	Shows the Receiving display and Reception Results display.
	2 **Operation preferred**	Gives priority to the display being used rather than showing the Receiving display and Reception Results display.
9 **Receive option setting**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether to receive mail selectively.	
	1 **ON**	Does not automatically receive mail.
	2 **OFF** (default setting)	Receives mail automatically.
0 **Attached file** (default setting: ☑ Melody-valid ☑ Image-valid)	▶ **Use ○ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish).** Specifies whether to receive attached files. When ☑ is selected, files attached to received mail are also received. Set “Melody-valid” and “Image-valid”.	

Mail settings menu 2/2

1 **Speed photo auto disp.**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** If you set Speed Photo auto display to "OFF" and you receive a Speed Photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.	
	1 **ON** (default setting)	Automatically displays the images when Speed photo mail is received.
	2 **OFF**	Does not automatically display the images when Speed photo mail is received.
2 **Read out setting**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the voice that reads out the mail.	
	1 **Female 1** (default setting)	Reads out mail in the Female 1 voice.
	2 **Female 2**	Reads out mail in the Female 2 voice.
	3 **Male 1**	Reads out mail in the Male 1 voice.
	4 **Male 2**	Reads out mail in the Male 2 voice.
	5 **Robot**	Reads out mail in the Robotic voice.
3 **Chat**	See "Specifying the Chat settings" →P. 306	
4 **SMS report request**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	1 **ON**	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	2 **OFF** (default setting)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
5 **SMS validity period**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS center.	
	1 **None**	SMS are not held at the SMS Center.
	2 **1 day**	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 1 day.
	3 **2 days**	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 2 days.
	4 **3 days** (default setting)	SMS are held at the SMS Center for 3 days.
6 **SMS input character**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the SMS body character input method.	
	1 **Japanese (70 char.)** (default setting)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	2 **English (160 char.)**	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
7 **Check settings**	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".	
8 **Reset**	Resets the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default settings. →P. 299	

Continued on next page

Note

<Scroll>
- The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the main details screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Character size>
- You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing ⊖ or ⊕ for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail settings screen or Read Out Mail screen by selecting "Character size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- When you switch to a display other than the Mail Detail display, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the Mail Detail display, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

<Mail list disp.>
- Selecting "2 lines" switches the list display to "Name".
- Selecting "1 line" switches the list display to "Subject".

<Message display>
- If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Auto melody play>
- Even when you select "ON" in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N901iC correctly.

<Receiving display>
- When you are using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-αppli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera and you have set "Alarm preferred", the Receiving and Reception Results displays may not appear when you receive mail or Message Request/Free.

<Receive option setting>
- This setting applies to i-mode mail only. SMS, Message Request, and Message Free are all downloaded automatically regardless of what this setting is set to.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. You also cannot activate chat.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. i-mode mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode mail center, and " " is displayed. To receive mail, manually check for new messages or set the "Receive option setting".
- If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be downloaded even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new message" (P. 297) if you do not want to receive any mail.
- You cannot receive SMS by selecting SMS.

< Attached file>
- If you receive an attached file when the checkbox (☐) is deselected, the attached file is deleted at the i-mode center.
- If you select the "Melody-valid" check box, you can receive melodies, but melodies sent from a phone other than the FOMA N901iC may not play correctly.

<SMS report request>
- You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder.

<SMS input character>
- You cannot set this option when the message is already entered.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Symbols

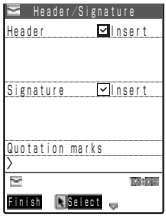
Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail message. This function also allows you to insert a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

● See "Entering Text" →P. 526

In the mail settings menu display.... ➡ P. 294

1 Press 6 MNO は "Header/Signature" ▶ Select the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature and press ● ▶ Select the header or signature box and press ● ▶ Enter your header or signature and press ●.



Enter the header, signature and quotation symbol in the respective fields.
A header or signature can consist of up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.

■ **To compose mail without adding a header or signature**

Deselect the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature.

2 Select the Quotation mark box and press ● ▶ Enter the quotation mark and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).

A quotation symbol can consist of up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

Note

- Even if you select the "Insert" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into Speed Photo mail, Template, Chat display or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-αppli.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new message>

Default setting	All (Check new message)

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center "Check new message". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "Message Request" and/or "Message Free".

- A deselected checkbox (☐) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 8 TUV "Connection setting" ▶ Select "Set check new message" and press ●.

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- If you do not want your Message Request/Free distributed, deselect the relevant checkbox.

Setting the voice used for reading out mail

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS reports (P. 309), mail with no message body, mail that consists solely of an i-αppli-activation URL or pasted melody, or Deco-mail with no message.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or during 64K data communication.

In the mail settings menu display... ➡ P. 294

1 Press ◎ ▶ Press 2 ABC "Read out setting" ▶ Select the voice you desire and press ●.

● Rules used for reading out mail

The Read Out Mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ **Symbols, special characters and pictographs**

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.

* The FOMA terminal may be unable to correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

Continued on next page

■ Numbers

● The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

E.g.: 1234 → “One thousand two hundred and thirty-four”

■ Monetary amounts

● If a currency symbol (e.g. “$” (full-pitch or half-pitch character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.

If commas (,) are used a delimiting character in an input string, the mova will only recognize the string as a monetary amount if the commas are used every 3 digits.

E.g. $12345
$12,345 ┐ “Twelve thousand three hundred and forty-five dollars”

■ Phone numbers

● If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers and not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by “Tel:” as phone numbers.

E.g. Tel: 12-3456-7890 → “Tel (pause) one-two (pause) three-four-five-six (pause) seven-eight-nine-zero”

Ordinary phone numbers			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone numbers			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free numbers			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* “X” indicates a number.

■ Times

● Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as times. If the hours component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minutes component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as a time. If “AM” or “PM” is added before or after the number, it is read out after the number.

“Hour”:”Minute” (”Hour” = 0-29: “Minute” = 00-59) E.g. 23:15 → “Twenty-three fifteen”
AM “Hour”:”Minute” or “Hour”:”Minute” AM (”Hour” = 0-12; “Minute” = 00-59) E.g. AM 5:05 → “five-oh-five AM”
PM “Hour”:”Minute” or “Hour”:”Minute” PM (”Hour” = 0-12; “Minute” = 00-59) E.g. 5:05PM → “five-oh-five PM”

■ Dates

● Numbers separated by a slash (/) or period (.) are read out as dates. If “M”, “T”, “S” or “H” (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

“Year”/”Month”/”Day” or “Year”.”Month”.”Day” (”Year” = 0-9999; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31) E.g. 2004/5/5 2004/05/05 2004.5.5 2004.05.05 ┐ “May 5th two thousand and four
“M” “Year”/”Month”/”Day” or M” “Year”.”Month”.”Day” (”Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31) E.g. M10/04/20 → “April 20th Meiji 10”
“T” “Year”/”Month”/”Day” or “T” “Year”.”Month”.”Day” (”Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31) E.g. T8.10.15 → “October 15th Taisho 8”
“S” “Year”/”Month”/”Day” or “S” “Year”.”Month”.”Day” (”Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31) E.g. S50.3.6 → “March 6th Showa 50”
“H” “Year”/”Month”/”Day” or “H” “Year”.”Month”.”Day” (”Year” = 0-99; “Month” = 1-12; “Day” = 1-31) E.g. H15.7.24 → “July 24th Heisei 15”

・The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, times and dates can also be used with full-pitch characters.
・When monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates are read out, if the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly when read out. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, times or dates read out, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
0-9, A-Z (upper case), colon (:), backslash (\), slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (half-pitch or full-pitch)

■Symbols

●The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

$ (dollars)	% (percent)	¥ (yen)	˚ (degrees)
˚C (degrees)	¥ (yen)	$ (dollars)	% (percent)
ミリ (mm)	キロ (kilograms)	センチ cm	メートル (meters)
グラム (grams)	トン tons	アール ares	ヘクタール hectares
リットル ml	ワット watts	カロリー calories	ドル dollars
センチ cm	パーセント (percent)	ミリバール millibars	ページ pages
mm (millimeters)	cm (centimeters)	km (kilometers)	mg (milligrams)
kg (kilograms)	cc	m^2 (square meters)	

■Other

●Alphabetic letters are read out as such, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
●Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the mova may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
●Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
●Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically.

Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:
・Compose your e-mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
・Use punctuation marks when composing e-mail.

Resetting your Mail function settings <Reset>

In the mail settings menu display... ➡ P. 294

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 8 TUV “Reset” ▶ Enter the security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

By setting up a chat mail session with several people, you can exchange messages just as if you were sitting together having a conversation.

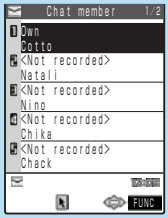
●You cannot launch Chat in the following situations:
・When “ON” is selected in “Receive option”.
・If your Inbox is full of saved mail.
・When PIM lock is set.
●The communication fee for chatting with several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
●You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Selecting Chat session members <Chat members>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 **Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ 5JKL “Chat mail” ▶ (右) (FUNC) ▶ 3DEF “Chat member”.**

The “Chat member display” appears.
For details of the subsequent procedure, see “2 Refer address” on P. 300.



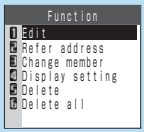
Chat member display

Using the function menu in the Set Chat Member display

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

In the Chat member display... ➡ P. 300

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**



Chat member display function menu

Set chat member display function menu

1 **Edit**	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself. See “Entering Text” →P. 526	
2 **Refer address**	■ **When no e-mail address is stored** ▶ **Choose from the following options:** ■ **When an e-mail address is stored** ▶ **Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:** Enter the chat member’s mail address from the phonebook or history.	
	1 **Phonebook**	Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 **Sent address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	3 **Received address**	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
3 **Change member**	See “Changing chat session members” →P. 301	
4 **Display setting**	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.	
5 **Delete**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●.** Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.	
6 **Delete all**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●.** Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.	

Note

<Edit>
- You cannot add an e-mail address that is already registered for another chat group member.
- If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If it is not registered a chat group, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are displayed. If the e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>
- If you enter a registered chat group member e-mail address that is stored in the phonebook, the member's name and image are also changed.

<Display setting>
- If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>
- You cannot delete yourself.

Changing chat session members

In the set chat member display function menu... ➡ P. 300

1 Press 3DEF "Change member" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Chat group	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the member to be changed from the group list or member list.	
	1 Group list	▶ Select "Chat group" and press ●.
	2 Member list	▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).
2 Mail member	▶ Select "Mail member" and press ●.	

Note
- If there are some chat group members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat group members. Select "YES" to replace all the members, or "NO" to cancel replacement.
- If you receive chat mail addressed to a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, it does not appear the Chat display. If you exit Chat without deleting the chat mail, the next time Chat is selected the mail is not displayed in the Chat display but is saved as i-mode mail.

Composing and sending Chat mail

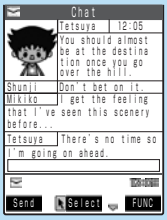
Use this procedure to compose and send a new Chat mail message.

1 Press 左 (MAIL) ▶ Press 5JKL "Chat mail".

The "Chat display" appears.

2 Press ● ▶ Enter your message and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Send).

You can send up to 250 full-pitch characters or 500 half-pitch characters from the Chat display.
When sending is completed, your message appears in the Latest Message area.
To send another message, repeat step 2.



Chat display

■ If message transmission fails

The Latest Message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed Chat mail message.

■ To end a Chat mail session

See P. 302 for information on ending a Chat session.

Continued on next page

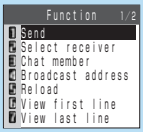
Note

- If "Mail security" is set for the "Inbox", "Outbox" or "Chat" mail folder in the Mail menu or for a folder that contains chat mail, you must enter your security code.
- If the FOMA terminal's memory for received mail is full with unread and/or protected mail, you cannot launch Chat. Delete some unwanted mail, read some unread mail or unprotect some protected mail and then try again.
- Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- Sent and received chat mail is stored in the "Chat" folder. To resend Chat mail, send it from the "Chat" folder.
- The subject used for chat mail you send is "Chat mail" (half-pitch characters).
- Chat mail received in the Chat display is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.
- If you try to send chat mail without entering a message, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to send the chat mail without a message, or "NO" to cancel chat mail transmission.
- If you receive ordinary i-mode mail while Chat is running, the Reception Results display does not appear.

Using the function menu in the Chat display

In the chat display... ➡ P. 301

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Chat display function menu

Chat display function menu 1/2

1 **Send**	Sends Chat mail.
2 **Select receiver**	▶ **Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish).**
3 **Chat member**	See "Selecting Chat session members" →P. 300
4 **Broadcast address**	See "Adding Chat session members by referring to broadcast mail addresses" →P. 303
5 **Reload**	Downloads the Chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
6 **View first line**	Displays the most recent message in the Latest Message area.
7 **View last line**	Displays the oldest message in the Latest Message area.

Chat display function menu 2/2

1 **Delete read**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the read and unprotected Chat mail you have sent and received.
2 **Quit**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the read and unprotected Chat mail you have sent and received and then quits Chat.

Note

<Broadcast address>
- You cannot set this option for more than 6 chat group members.

<Reload>
- If you receive mail other than chat mail, the Chat display is not reloaded.

<Delete read>
- This option also deletes Chat mail that could not be sent.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected Chat mail.

<Quit>
- To quit Chat without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
- If you quit Chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox List display and Inbox List display respectively. However, when "Sort all" is selected, it is saved in the specified folders.

● Adding Chat session members by referring to broadcast mail addresses

You can only use this function with FOMA terminals that support chat mail.

In the chat display function menu... ➡ P. 302

1 Press 4 “Broadcast address” ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).

■ When all the addresses are for Chat session members

Press 4 “Broadcast address” ▶ Select “OK” and press ●.

Receiving Chat mail <Chat mail recv.>

If you receive chat mail while Chat is not running, the CHAT icon appears on the FOMA terminal’s stand-by display. Selecting this icon launches Chat so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 full-pitch characters (or 500 half-pitch characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat mail screen.
- If you didn’t delete the chat mail at the end of the previous session, when starting the next session the date appears in the message record area.
- When closing the chat mail screen, you can delete all chat mail. You can also delete chat mail from the mail list screen.
- If you launch Chat by selecting CHAT or by selecting “Chat” from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, the Chat session members and recipients change as follows:
  - When the sender’s e-mail address was set in the list of Chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a Chat session are again set. However, if you launched Chat from the Received Mail Detail display, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you selected CHAT, members are added as specified in “Select receiver”, and when the sender’s e-mail address is not included, it is added to the list of recipients.
  - If the sender’s e-mail address is not set as a Chat session member but is registered in a Chat group, all the members of the Chat group to which the sender belongs are set as Chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
  - If the sender’s e-mail address is not set as a Chat session member and is not registered in a Chat group, only the sender’s e-mail address is set as a Chat session member.

1 Press ● ▶ Select CHAT and press ●.



Stand-by display

■ When the sender is not registered as a Chat session member

Select “YES” and press ●.

A message appears asking whether to delete the Chat session members and launch Chat. Select “YES” to change the current Chat session members and launch Chat.

■ If you select “NO”

Select “NO” and press ●.

The current Chat session member settings are retained and the Mail Menu display appears.

2 The Chat session begins.

Received Chat mail appears in the Latest Message area. If you have undeleted Chat mail, it appears in the message record area in chronological order.

Continued on next page

Note

- The FOMA terminal recognizes mail as Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:
  - The subject line includes "Chat mail" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters).
  - The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a member of a Chat session or Chat group.
  - When it is not mail-connected i-αppli.
  - When it is not Deco-mail.
  - When it is not SMS.
- You can also launch Chat from the Received Mail Detail display.
- If the message of received chat mail includes a phone number, e-mail address or URL, it cannot be used with the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function.

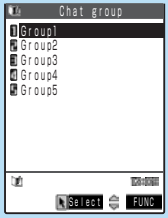
Registering Chat session members in a Chat group

Registering proposed Chat session members in a Chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering Chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a Chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 Chat groups.
- You cannot register the same Chat session member in more than 1 Chat group.
- When you register a Chat session member in a Chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.
- You cannot register Chat session members while PIM lock is set.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Chat! and press ● ▶ Press 5 JKL "Chat group".

The "Chat group list display" appears.



Chat group list display

2 Select a Chat group and press ●.

The "Group member list display" appears.

3 Select "<Not registered>" and press 左 (Edit) ▶ Enter the e-mail address and press ●.

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters as the e-mail address.
To add another e-mail address, repeat steps 2-3.
See "Entering Text" →P. 526



Group member list display

■ To enter a mail address from the phonebook

On the enter a mail address display, select "Quote phonebook" from the function menu.
Select the search method and select the mail address you want to enter. See "Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook" →P. 542

4 Press (CLR).

Note

- When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat group member, you must store the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp".
- The first 8 characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set.
- If a member with the same e-mail address is already registered in another chat group, a message appears saying that you cannot register the member and registration fails.

Using the function menu in the Chat Group List display

In the chat group list display... ➡ P. 304

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

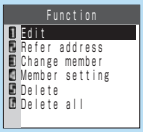
Chat group list display function menu

1 Active chat	Sets the Chat group as the Chat session members and launches Chat.
2 Edit group name	▶ Edit the group name and press ●. Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters as the group name. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
3 Reset group name	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Resets the group name to the default name.

Using the function menu in the Group Member List display

In the group member list display... ➡ P. 304

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Group member list display function menu display

Group member list display function menu

1 Edit	▶ Enter the e-mail address and press ●. Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of members. Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 15 half-pitch characters as the e-mail address. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
2 Refer address	■ When no e-mail address is stored ▶ Choose from the following options: ■ When an e-mail address is stored ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options: Enter the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history.	
	1 Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address from the Phonebook Detail display. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	3 Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
3 Change member	■ If the member is registered ▶ Select (1) "Mail member" ▶ Select the mailing list member and press ●. ■ If the member is not registered ▶ Select (1) "Mail member" ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select the mailing list member and press ●.	
4 Member setting	See "Setting member details" →P. 306	
5 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
6 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the members in the selected group. For information on security code →P. 142	

Continued on next page

Note

<Change member>

- If there are some group members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat group members. Select "YES" to replace all the members, or "NO" to cancel replacement.
- If a chat group member with the same e-mail address is registered in another chat group, a confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to delete the previously registered member and add the new member. Selecting "NO" cancels the procedure.

Setting member details

In the group member list display function menu... ➡ P. 305

1 Press 4 GHI "Member setting" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Edit member name	▶ Enter the member name and press ●. Edits the member's name. You can enter up to 8 half-pitch characters as the member name. Enters and registers a member name. See "Entering Text" → P. 526	
2 Set image	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the image shown for each member in the Chat display. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
	2 Camera	Selects an image shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
	3 Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from "Cotto", "Natali", "Dimo", "Chika", "Chuck" and "Nana".
3 Set voice	▶ Choose from the following options: Select the member voices used when messages are read out in the chat display.	
	1 Female 1 (Default setting)	Reads out chat mail in Female Voice 1.
	2 Female 2	Reads out chat mail in Female Voice 2.
	3 Male 1	Reads out chat mail in Male Voice 1.
	4 Male 2	Reads out chat mail in Male Voice 2.
	5 Robot	Reads out chat mail in a Robot Voice.

Note

<Edit member name>

- If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

<Set image>

- You cannot change the background color.

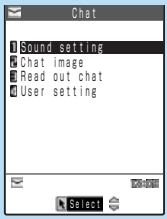
Specifying the Chat settings

In the mail settings menu display... ➡ P. 294

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 3 DEF "Chat".

The "Chat setting display" appears.

2 Choose from the following options:



Chat setting display

Chat setting menu display

1 Sound setting	▶Choose from the following options: Set the tone sounded in the Chat display when new Chat mail is received or Chat mail is sent. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from a site or the Internet.
	2 Pre-installed	Selects a melody or ring tone from the preinstalled folder.
	3 Voice announce	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in "Voice announce".
	4 OFF	No notification tone sounds.
2 Chat image	▶Choose from the following options: Set whether to display an image in the new chat mail area.	
	1 ON (default setting)	Displays an image in the Latest Message area in the Chat display.
	2 OFF	Displays no image in the Latest Message area in the Chat display.
3 Read out chat	▶Choose from the following options: Set whether to read out new chat mail.	
	1 ON	Reads out Chat mail.
	2 OFF (default setting)	Does not read out Chat mail.
4 User setting	See "Setting user details" →P. 307	

Note

<Sound setting>
● The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat group member.

● Setting user details

In the chat setting menu display... ➡ P. 306

1 Press 4 GHI "User setting" ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Name	▶Enter the user name and press ●. Enters the user name, You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters as the user name. See "Entering Text". →P. 526	
2 Image	▶Choose from the following options: Select the image you want to display on the chat screen. When you have made your own folder, it is displayed after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	1 Inbox	Selects an image saved in the inbox.
	2 Camera	Selects an image taken by the FOMA terminal.
	3 Pre-installed	Selects an image from the preinstalled folder. Choose from "Cotto", "Natali", "Nino", "Chica", "Chack" and "Nana".
3 Voice	▶Choose from the following options: Select your voice when messages are read out in the chat display.	
	1 Female 1 (default setting)	Reads out chat mail in Female Voice 1.
	2 Female 2	Reads out chat mail in Female Voice 2.
	3 Male 1	Reads out chat mail in Male Voice 1.
	4 Male 2	Reads out chat mail in Male Voice 2.
	5 Robot	Reads out chat mail in a Robot Voice.

Note

● You cannot change the background color.
<Name>
● If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, "Own" is used.

Composing and Sending SMS

● This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas service providers other than DoCoMo. For information on the service activation schedule and the supported overseas providers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

Composing and sending an SMS

1 Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ (6 MNO) "Compose SMS".

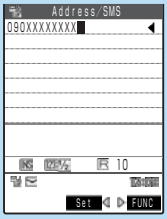
The "New SMS display" appears.



New SMS display

2 Select To and press ●.

The "SMS address entering display" appears.
You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.
You can look up an address by selecting "To", pressing (右) (FUNC) and selecting "Look-up address" from the Function menu.



SMS address entering display

3 Enter the phone number of the recipient and press ●.

■ **If the recipient is using an overseas service provider other than DoCoMo**

Enter + (hold down the 0 key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number.
If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

■ **To change the entered recipient**

Select the address in the New SMS display and enter the phone number again.
You can also change the recipient by selecting "Look-up address" from the Function menu in the New SMS display and changing (overwriting) the number.
In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

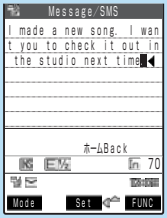
- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks (*), hash symbols (#) or plus signs (+)
- When it includes a space

If you try to send an SMS to a phone number preceded by "184", "186", "#31#" or "*31#", a confirmation message appears asking whether to send the message with the Notify Caller ID prefix deleted. Select "YES" to delete the "184", "186", "#31#" or "*31#" prefix and send the SMS.

4 Select ▤ and press ●.

The "Entering SMS message display" appears.

5 Enter the message and press ●.



Entering SMS message display

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the Message Entry display are as specified in the "SMS input char." settings (P. 310). If "Japanese" input is selected, you can enter up to 70 full-pitch or half-pitch characters in all. If "English" input is selected, you can enter up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (excluding periods, quotation marks, curly or square brackets, the "|" symbol, commas, bullets, hyphens, the degree symbol (˚), carets (^), apostrophes and tildes).
Spaces are counted in the same way as characters.
You can use the "Enter address" function menu while entering a message.

6 Press (左) (Send).

An animation is displayed while the message is being sent. Once the message has been sent, press "OK" to return to the Mail Menu display.

To edit sent and unsent SMS →P. 291

SMS reports <SMS report req.>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report req." (P. 309), you are sent an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient. To view an SMS with an SMS report ( ), select "Disp. SMS report" from the Function menu. You can also view an SMS report by selecting the report in the Received Mail List display. SMS reports are indicated by "SMS SMS Report" in the subject line.

Note

- You cannot send SMS from a FOMA terminal to a mova Service i-mode terminal.
- If you exceed the limit (P. 276) on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail is not deleted.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- When you press (CLR) or (PWR HIS) in the New SMS display without sending the message, the information is discarded and a message appears asking whether to end message editing. Select "YES" to clear the text entered so far, or "NO" to retain the entered text and return to the original display.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in half-pitch alphanumeric input mode.
- Spaces (blanks) are also counted in the same way as characters.

Using the function menu in the New SMS display

In the new SMS display... ➡ P. 308

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

New SMS display function menu 1/2

1 **Send**	Sends an SMS.	
2 **Preview**	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.	
3 **Save**	Saves the current SMS in the Draft mailbox. You can save up to a total of 20 messages including i-mode mail. You can send saved SMS later.	
4 **Look-up address**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Enter a recipient by referring to the phonebook or records. →P. 248	
	1 **Phonebook**	Enters phone number by searching the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98
	2 **Sent address**	Enters a phone number from the Sent address list.
	3 **Received address**	Enters a phone number from the Received address list.
5 **SMS report req.**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Specify whether to request an SMS report.	
	1 **ON**	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transactions.
	2 **OFF** (Default setting)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transactions.
6 **SMS valid. per.**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the period for which SMS are held at the SMS Center.	
	1 **None**	SMS are not held at the SMS center.
	2 **1 day**	SMS are held at the SMS center for 1 day.
	3 **2 days**	SMS are held at the SMS center for 2 days.
	4 **3 days** (Default setting)	SMS are held at the SMS center for 3 days.

Continued on next page

7 SMS input char.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the SMS input method.	
	1 Japanese (70 char.) (Default setting)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	2 English (160 char.)	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.

New SMS display function menu 2/2

1 Erase message	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Only the message body is deleted.
2 Delete	▶Select "YES" and press ●. The SMS being edited is deleted.

Note

<SMS input char.>

- If you set the SMS input method in the Mail Settings display, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the SMS input method set in the Function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

<Receive SMS>

When You Receive an SMS

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, it automatically receives SMS from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal can hold up to 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P. 114) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P. 134) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.

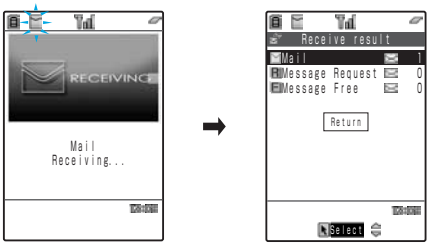
1 When you receive SMS, the (white) icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears.

Once the SMS have been received, the Reception Results display appears showing the number of SMS, i-mode mail and Message Request/Free received.

Select "Mail" to display the Received Mail List display.

If you not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for 15 seconds, the original display reappears. You can change the period for which the Reception Results display is shown in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P. 119).

The ring tone is played at the volume set for "Mail" in "Ring volume" (P. 65).



Note

- If the total number of received i-mode mail messages stored on the FOMA terminal (total i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit (equivalent to 1,536,000 full-pitch characters or 3,072,000 half-pitch characters), received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that unread and protected received mail is not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →P. 286, 289
- Once you reach the limit on the number of unread or protected received mail messages that cam be stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS), you can no longer receive mail and (red) appears on the display. To enable the FOMA terminal to receive SMS, delete received mail stored on the FOMA terminal, read unread mail or remove the protection from protected mail until the (red) icon is no longer displayed. Then use "Check new SMS".
- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS (① has the highest priority):
  ① The settings specified for each phone number in phonebook utilities →P. 107
  ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities.
  ③ The "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" settings →P. 114, 134
- When you receive multiple SMS at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and illumination pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- If you receive Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- If you receive an SMS when a display other than the stand-by display is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal rings and the Reception Results display appears.
- If you receive an SMS when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive an SMS during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

Viewing received SMS

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the Received Mail List display.
- "SMS report" is displayed as the subject for received SMS reports.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecallvoicemail" is displayed.

1 Press ● ▶Select New and press ●.



2 Select the received SMS and press ●.

Note

- If a received SMS includes special delimiting characters that are not half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols, or full-pitch characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the current SMS is highlighted. Pressing ● while the number is highlighted makes a voice or video-phone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.
- You are only sent SMS reports when the FOMA terminal is set to received SMS reports in "SMS report req." (P. 309). You can also view the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" (P. 291) from the Function menu in the Sent Mail Detail display.

Forwarding and replying to Received SMS

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

● You cannot enter a subject.
See “Replying by composing a new message” →P. 270

Note

- You cannot reply to an SMS by referring to or quoting the received message.
- If you reply to short mail sent from a mova, a message appears after you send the reply saying that the message could not be sent.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID or is sending from a pay phone or a phone that does not support caller ID notification.
- You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report.
- If you reply to an SMS on the UIM, the remains on the display and the or icon does not appear in the Received Mail List display or Received Mail Detail display.

Checking for SMS

● SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.

● You cannot check for new messages when is displayed.

1 Press (左) (MAIL) ▶ Press 9WXYZ “Check new SMS”.

“SMS Checking” is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, a “check succeeded” appears. Press ●.
If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic downloading begins.
In some cases, automatic downloading may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

■ To cancel the inquiry

Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer.
Depending on the timing of the cancellation, SMS may be downloaded anyway.

Note

- When an icon such as (red) or (red) is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot accept any further i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unwanted mail, read unread mail or unprotect some of your protected mail (P. 286, 289) until the icons are no longer displayed. Unprotected mail that has been read is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- This function cannot be used to receive i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. To download your i-mode mail or Message Request/Free, use “Check new message”.

Specifying Your SMS Settings

Specifying the SMS center setting

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Default setting	DoCoMo

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 8 TUV "Connection setting" ▶ Select "SMS center selection" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **DoCoMo**	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
2 **User setting**	▶ **Enter the SMS center address and press ● ▶ Press 1 あ "International" or 2 ABC "Unknown".** Uses another provider's SMS center.
3 **Reset**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the "User setting" data and resets the setting to "DoCoMo".

Note

- If the entered SMS Center address includes a hash (#) or (✱), you cannot select "International"

SMS Rejection Settings

Default setting	Accept

Specifies the short message (SMS) rejection settings. You can restrict short messages (SMS) using one of the following methods.

- "Reject all": SMS can be rejected regardless of whether a caller ID is provided.
- "Reject SMS with no caller ID": Enables you to reject SMS sent from mova Service i-mode terminals and PHS or ordinary phones without a caller ID.

1 Press ✱ http:// 2 ABC 0 わ 1 あ 8 TUV 4 GHI ☎.

You are connected to the SMS center.

■ To Connect to the SMS Center via the iMenu Screen

iMenu screen → 8 TUV Optional settings → 1 あ Mail settings → "Other settings" in Mail reception settings → "SMS rejection settings/check" → Select SMS Center → (✱ 20184) and press ●.

2 Listen to the Guidance ▶ Choose from the following options:

You are connected to the SMS center.

1	Rejects all SMS.
2	Only rejects SMS with no caller ID.
9	Releases rejection settings.
✱	Exits the SMS rejection settings.

*: Rejecting all SMS or rejecting SMS that do not have caller ID are effective ways to stop nuisance SMS.

Continued on next page

Note

- The rejection does not apply to SMS messages sent under the "mopera Mail Notification", "Visualnet Conference Notification" and "FOMA Mail Notification" services provided by DoCoMo.
- You can only specify to reject SMS from FOMA terminals that have a FOMA card inserted. Customers with dual network service cannot connect to the SMS center.
- You are automatically disconnected from the network if you press 1, 2, 9, * in step 2 or after 3 incorrect operations.
- This setting does not incur communication or packet fees.

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS to Your UIM

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (phone) to your UIM. You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your UIM to the FOMA terminal.

- The UIM will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS to the UIM

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card>

1 Press 左 (MAIL) ▶ Press 1 "Inbox" ▶ Select the folder and press ● ▶ Select the SMS ▶ Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5 "UIM operation" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Move to UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The SMS is moved from the FOMA terminal to the FOMA card.
2 Copy to UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The SMS is copied from the FOMA terminal to the FOMA card.

Note

- When you move or copy received or sent SMS to the UIM, the moved SMS appears in the Inbox or Outbox folder respectively.
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, Sent Mail List display or Sent Mail Detail display.
- SMS in the UIM cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS to the UIM, the messages are unprotected on the UIM.
- If you already have 20 messages stored on the UIM, the , (white) or (red) icon appears and no further messages can be moved or copied to the UIM.
- If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the UIM are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS on the UIM to the FOMA terminal (phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card to the Inbox>

1 Press 左 (MAIL) ▶ Press 1 "Inbox" ▶ Select the folder and press ● ▶ Select the SMS ▶ Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5 "UIM operation" ▶ Choose from the following options:

3 Move from UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The SMS is moved from the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal.
4 Copy from UIM	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The SMS is copied from the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal.

Note

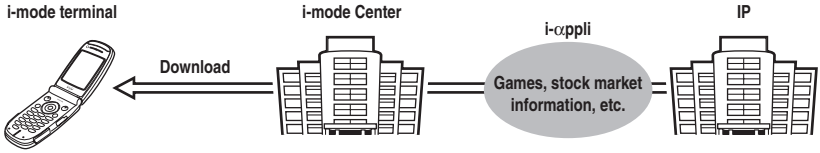
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the Function menu in the Received Mail Detail display, Sent Mail List display or Sent Mail Detail display.

i-αpplis

What is an i-αppli? 316
Downloading i-αpplis 317
Running i-αpplis 320
Launching i-αpplis Automatically 326
Running i-αpplis from Sites or Mail <i-αppli To function> 327
Setting the i-αppli Stand-by Display <Stand-by set> 329
Organizing i-αpplis 330

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli from i-mode sites or Internet websites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-αppli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-αpplis that enable you to store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or your schedule and i-αpplis with multimedia functions such as saving and downloading images.



● To download an i-αppli →P. 317
● To run an i-αppli →P. 320
● To have an i-αppli start up automatically →P. 326

Note

● Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone information (FOMA terminal manufacturer number and UIM card ID number, etc.).
● Some software applications use the FOMA terminal to communicate when starting, but can also be set to run without communicating.

Using stored data

Some i-αpplis can browse, store or use the data stored on an i-mode terminal (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information). The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Loading images from the Data box
- Saving images in the Data box
- Browse the Inbox/Outbox

● What is an i-αppli DX?

In an i-αppli DX, the information on the i-mode terminal (such as mail, dialed call records and phonebook data) is used by the software to make i-αpplis even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes features such as composing mail in your favorite cartoon character display, having a cartoon character tell you who a received call or message is from, and linking with mail functions to provide real time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices. →P. 324

Using stored data

An i-αppli DX can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-αppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icon information), but also information such as mail, redial records, received call records and ring tones. The stored data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose Message display
- Browsing the latest Dialed Call records
- Browsing the latest Received Call records
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (phone, Video-phone, chat mail and messages)
- Loading images from the Data box
- Saving images in the Data box
- Changing display settings (stand-by display, Dialing, Video-phone call Receive/Send Mail Receive, Message Request/Free)
- Saving i-motions
- Browse the Inbox/Outbox

Note

- Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differs depending on the software.
- To launch an i-αppli DX, the date and time must be set. →P. 44

What are mail-connected i-αpplis?

Mail-connected i-αpplis are a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., using software to make the FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.

・The i-αppli mail used for mail-connected i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.

Other features

■ i-αppli stand-by display

In the i-αppli stand-by display, you can use an i-αppli as the stand-by display and still receive mail or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your stand-by display to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. →P. 329

・This function can be used by software that supports i-αppli stand-by displays.

■ i-αppli Auto start

This feature allows you to specify a time, date or day of the week when a software application is automatically launched. There are also software applications that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. →P. 326

■ Using the camera

Some applications can take pictures using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera. →P. 160

・This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's Camera photography function.

■ Infrared communication

This feature allows a software application running on the FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with an infrared communications function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices. →P. 413

・This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's infrared communications function.

・Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an infrared communications function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows software applications to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. →P. 418

・This function can be used by software that supports the FOMA terminal's infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

Downloading i-αpplis

Use this procedure to download software from an i-mode site or Internet website and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 200 download i-αpplis (up to 5 mail-connected i-αpplis). However, depending on the application sizes, the actual number of downloadable i-αpplis varies between 10 and 200.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the receive and send folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αpplis, delete one or more of the existing dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αppli to create some available space for the new download.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli if you have already saved a mail-connected i-αppli that uses the same receive and send folders.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αpplis while mail security is set.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-connected i-αppli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-connected i-αppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mail.

Continued on next page

● If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli without deleting its folders and then download the mail-connected i-αppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αppli.

● If there is memory available for more saved items

1 Select and download the software.

When downloading is completed, the "Completed" message appears. For software that is immediately launched from the site (P. 319), the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

■ To interrupt data downloading in progress.

Press ● during downloading.

■ If the software setting display appears

Specify the software settings and then press (Finish).
For information on the software settings →P. 321

2 Select "YES" and press ●.

When you launch the software, appears at the bottom of the display. If an i-αppli DX starts up, is displayed.

■ To prevent the software launching

Select "NO" and press ●.

■ To cancel software launching

Press ● while the software is starting up.

Note

- You may be unable to download data from some sites.
- Some i-αpplis automatically open communication after being downloaded. However, to use this service, you must first specify "Network set" in "Software setting".
- You cannot switch tasks while downloading is in progress.
- If you download an i-αppli that utilizes an i-αppli DX and stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message appears notifying you that the i-αppli uses stored information or mobile phone data.
- When you are downloading i-αppli information or an i-αppli from an SSL site, the icon is displayed. →P. 206
- At the time of purchase, the default "Disp. software info" setting is "Not display." Selecting "Display" allows you to view the software information before downloading. When you press ●, a message appears asking whether to download the software. Select "YES" to start the download.
- During downloading, a message appears asking whether to sent the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer number. Select "YES" to start the download. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. Select "NO" to cancel downloading.
- If you download software that uses the FOMA terminal's communication functions or that can be set as a stand-by display, the Software Setting display appears. After selecting the settings for the downloaded software, press (Finish) or .
- Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download a FeliCa-compatible i-αppli even when there is space available in the software storage area. Following the instructions in the confirmation display, delete the displayed software and then try downloading the FeliCa i-αppli again. Depending on the type of software downloaded, some of the software may not be available for deletion. For some software, the user has to launch the software and delete data on the IC card before deleting the software program itself.
- If you again download software you have downloaded once using a different UIM card, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the software. Select "YES" to start the download. When downloading finishes, the software downloaded using a different UIM card is deleted.
- The term "i-αppli mail" refers to mail sent or saved by a mail-connected i-αppli and mail that has been sent to you to be used in a mail-connected i-αppli. i-αppli mail contains data that is automatically saved in i-αppli mail folders for use by i-αpplis.
- You can display 3-dimensional images in i-αpplis by loading the 3D polygon* engine.
  ※Uses combinations of polygons to display 3D images with depth.

● When the storage area for software is full

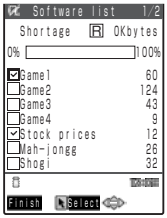
If you have already saved 200 software applications or if there is insufficient space available in the memory, a message appears asking whether to delete some applications before saving the new software. Delete some of the saved software to create space for new software downloads.

1 **Select “YES” and press ●.**

■ **If you do not want to delete software**

Select “NO” and press ●.

2 **Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).**



When you delete software and there is memory available.

With each software that you select, the “Shortage” and bar indicator decrease. Continue selecting software to be deleted until the “Shortage” and bar indicator reach zero.

3 **Select “YES” and press ●.**

Downloading restarts.

Viewing i-αppli information during downloading <Disp. Software info>

Default setting	Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether the software description is displayed for checking when you download software.

1 **Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 9 “i-αppli settings” ▶ Select “Disp. software info” and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:**

1 **Display**	Displays the software description during downloading.
2 **Not display**	Does not display the software description during downloading.

i-αpplis that are launched immediately from the site

Unlike ordinary i-αpplis, some i-αpplis are immediately launched from the site.

- These i-αppli are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading and do not appear in the Software List display.
- A message may appear while the software is running to ask whether to use the FOMA terminal’s communication functions.
- These i-αpplis cannot be launched as an i-αppli stand-by display.
- After the software quits, a message may appear asking whether to store the i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli software cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
- Once the i-αppli has been stored on the FOMA terminal, it can be launched in the same was as an ordinary i-αppli.

Running i-αpplis

Launching an i-αppli

1 Hold down (i-mode) for 1 second or longer.

The “Software list display” appears.

2 Select the software to be launched and press ●.



Software list display

Quitting an i-αppli

1 Press (PWR HLD) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

■ For software developers

When an i-αppli is written and does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference. Press (Menu) ▶ Select (Tool) and press ● ▶ Press (3 DEF) “i-αppli info” ▶ Press (4 GHI) “Trace info”. The trace information is displayed in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy the trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the Function menu. To delete the trace information, select “Delete info” from the Function menu.

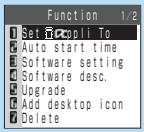
Note

- You can also use the following procedure to display the trace information:
  - Hold down (CLR) for 1 second or longer ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
- To launch an i-αppli DX, first set the date and time in “Set time”.
- To launch software automatically, set “Auto start set” to “ON” and specify a time in “Auto start time”. ➞ P. 326
- If you receive an i-mode mail, Message Request, or a Message Free while software is running, “ (white)”, “ R (white)”, or “ F (white)” is displayed. To display the i-mode mail, Message Request, or Message Free, either close the software or use the multi-task function.
- Melodies played while software is starting up are played at the volume set in “Ring volume”. Note that these melodies cannot be played during a call.
- i-αpplis that support 3D surround sound can be used to play melodies with rich and vibrant sound.
- If you receive a call while a software application is starting up, the software is paused. You are returned to the software display when the call ends.
- Some i-αpplis allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the i-αppli. However, you cannot use the Web To function from the i-αppli stand-by display.
- i-αppli mail used by mail-connected i-αpplis may not be displayed correctly in some cases.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is running as this will prevent the FOMA terminal from saving the data up to that point.
- Images used in i-αpplis* and data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
  - *: Here, “images used in i-αpplis” refers to images shot when a camera-linked i-αppli launches the Camera function, images downloaded using an i-αppli infrared communication function, images downloaded by an i-αppli from an i-mode site or Internet website, or images loaded by an i-αppli from the Data box.
    If the camera was activated from an i-αppli, the photographed images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
- If there is no trace information, the “Trace info” option is not displayed.
- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.

Using the function menu in the Software List display

In the software list display... ➡ P. 320

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Software list display function menu display

Software list display function menu 1/2

1 Set i-αppli To	See “Enabling software launching with i-αppli To” →P. 327		
2 Auto start time	See “Setting the launch date/time” →P. 326		
3 Software setting	▶Choose from the following options: Specify the software settings.		
	1 Stand-by set	See “Setting the i-αppli Stand-by Display” →P. 329	
	2 Network set	▶Choose from the following options: This function set whether to communicate when i-αppli is running.	
		1 ON	▶Press (左) (Finish). The i-αppli automatically communicates while i-αppli is running.
		2 OFF	▶Press (左) (Finish). The i-αppli does not communicate while i-αppli is running.
		3 Check every start	▶Press (左) (Finish). Allows you to select whether the i-αppli will communicate each time it starts.
	3 Stand-by net	▶Choose from the following options: This function set whether the i-αppli set as the Standby display communicates.	
		1 ON	▶Press (左) (Finish). Automatically communicates on the i-αppli Standby display.
		2 OFF	▶Press (左) (Finish). Does not communicate on the i-αppli Standby display.
	4 Icon info	▶Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether the use of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-αppli is running.	
		1 ON	▶Press (左) (Finish). Permits use of message icon information.
		2 OFF	▶Press (左) (Finish). Does not permit use of message icon information.
	5 Change mld./img.	▶Choose from the following options: Use this setting to specify whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages and images such as those used in the stand-by display or when mail is sent or received to be changed when an i-αppli DX is running.	
		1 ON	▶Press (左) (Finish). Permits ring tones and images to be changed.
		2 OFF	▶Press (左) (Finish). Does not permit ring tones and images to be changed.
		3 Check every change	▶Press (左) (Finish). Allows you to select whether ring tones and images are changed each time an i-αppli attempts an automatic change.
	6 See P.book/hist.	▶Choose from the following options: Use this setting to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest incoming and outgoing call history, and the newest unread e-mail when an i-αppli DX is running.	
		1 ON	▶Press (左) (Finish). Permits you to look up the phonebook, newest incoming and outgoing call history.
		2 OFF	▶Press (左) (Finish). Does not permit you to look up the phonebook, newest incoming and outgoing call history.
4 Software desc.	See “Checking the information for i-αppli” →P. 322		
5 Upgrade	See “Upgrading i-αpplis” →P. 330		
6 Add desktop icon	▶Select “YES” and press ●. See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136		
7 Delete	See “Deleting i-αppli” →P. 331		

Continued on next page

Software list display function menu 2/2

1 **Delete selected**	See "Deleting i-αppli" →P. 331
2 **Delete all**	See "Deleting i-αppli" →P. 331

Note

<Software setting (Network set)>
- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (icon info)>
- If you specify software that is set for the i-αppli standby display to "ON" for this function, as the icons for unread messages and mail, battery level, manner mode and in/out of range are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet in the same way as your phone/FOMA UIM card ID number, there is a chance that the information may be disclosed to a third party.

Checking the information for i-αppli

In the software list function menu display... ➡ P. 320

1 Press 4 GHI "Software desc." ▶ Check the software information.



Note
- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On a software list display, a software kind and settings can be checked by the following icons.

: This software is i-αppli DX. →P. 316
: This software is mail-connected i-αppli.
: This software is to be set as the stand-by display by using "Stand-by set" (P. 329).
: "Auto start time" has been set. →P. 326
: "Stand-by set" has been set.
: "Auto start time" and "Stand-by set" have been set.
: This software is downloaded from the site compatible with SSL.
: This software is FeliCa i-αppli. →P. 341

Specifying the illumination and vibrator settings

Default setting	All "Depend on system"

Use this function to specify whether the operation of the backlight, vibrator and indicator display when an i-αppli is running uses the FOMA terminal settings ("Depend on system") or the software settings ("Depend on software").

Operating feature	i-αppli setting	Operation details	
		Depend on system	Depend on software
Backlight	αDisplay light	"Display light" →P. 128	Dependent on the i-αppli settings
Vibrator	αVibrator	Does not operate*	
Indicator display	αIndicator display	"Indicator display" →P. 126	

*: If "αVibrator" is set to "Depend on system", the vibrator does not operate, regardless of the "Vibrator" setting (P. 117).

<Example: To set backlight operation>

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 9WXYZ "i-αppli settings" ▶ Select "αDisplay light" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Depend on system**	Uses the FOMA terminal settings for backlight operation.
2 **Depend on software**	Uses the software settings for backlight operation.

Note

- Some software applications set the backlight and vibrator settings to "OFF". If you select "Depend on software" the backlight and vibrator are turned off. To leave the backlight and vibrator turned on, select "Depend on system".

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select i-αppli and press ● ▶ Press 3DEF "i-αppli info" ▶ 2ABC "Security error history".

The "Security error history display" appears.

2 Check the details of the security errors.



Security error history display

Using the function menu in the Security Error History display

In the security error history display... ➡ P. 323

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Security error history display function menu

1 **Copy info**	Copies the security error details.
2 **Delete info**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the security error details.

Launching software from another software application

Use this function to launch a software application from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches a specific application enables you to launch that application without having to return to the Software List display.

- You must first download software capable of launching other applications.
- If the software application to be launched is not specified, specify the application.
- If the software application to be launched is specified but is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the application beforehand.

1 Select the setting for selecting the software and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

● If the URL of the software to be launched is specified in the software launch setting, a message appears asking whether to launch the specified software. Select "YES" to quit the currently active software and launch the specified software. To return to the current software, select "NO".

Pre-installed software

The FOMA terminal comes with 3 software applications ("Nゴルフ～3D～", "Edy" electronic cash and "Gガイド番組表リモコン"(G-Guide Program TV Remote Control)) pre-installed.

● Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time can cause eye strain.

● If you delete pre-installed i-αppli software on the FOMA terminal, and you want to re-install it visit the mobile phone manufacturer's web site and download it from "みんなNらんど.
To connect to "みんなNらんど. →P. 204
If the UIM card you are using is not the one used for downloading, UIM restriction functions will apply. →P. 37

● Playing N ゴルフ～3D～

Select the desired player and try all 18 holes in this realistic 3D golf course.

In the software list display... ➡ P. 320

1 Select "Nゴルフ～3D～" and press ●.



■ **For a detailed explanation of the game**
Select ㊥(右)(ヘルプ) from the title display

2 Select START and press ●.

3 Select from "MATCH PLAY", "STROKE PLAY", and "TRAINING" and press ●.
The game begins.

● Using "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control)

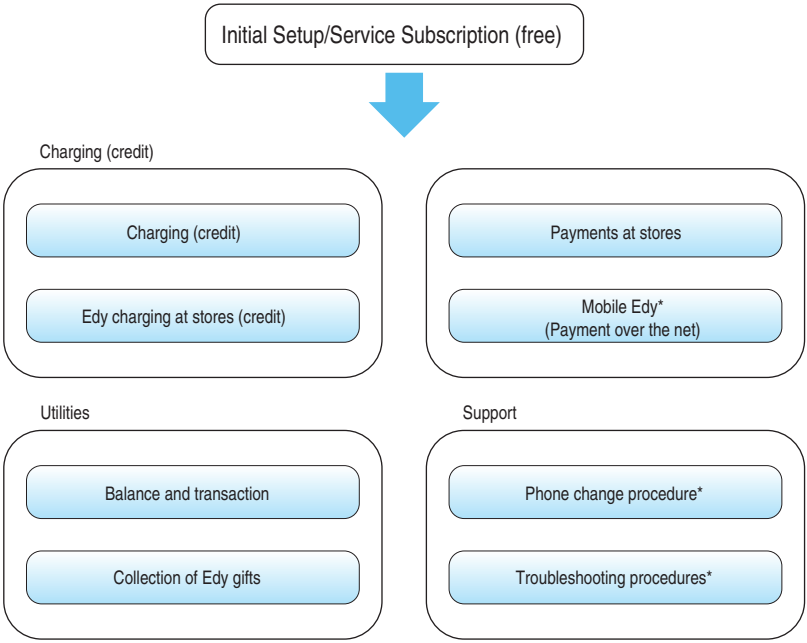
As for "G ガイド番組表リモコン"(G guide program table remote control), the TV program table and AV remote control functions were set to one. It is a convenient application. The TV program information on time to know always anywhere can acquire easily. Program title, contents of program and start / end time and a G code® can be known. If a favorite program is registered into a favorite, schedule registration can be performed and alarm can be sounded at the time of a program start. Furthermore, it is possible to search program information with keywords, such as a genre of a TV program and favorite talent. Moreover, remote control operation of television, video, and a DVD player can be performed.
Separate packet communication changes apply to the use of this product.
Refer to "Using the Infrared Remote Control Function" (P. 418) for "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control).

● Using Edy electronic money

The Edy electronic money service is a simple and straightforward private electronic cash service that anyone can use. The Edy electronic money service is provided by Bit Wallet, Inc. To use the service, you must confirm the terms and conditions of use and go through the initial setup procedure.

For information about FeliCa →P. 340

● Service details



* Services that require subscription in advance.

For detailed information on the Edy electronic money services, the stores where the service can be used, and information on Edy procedures when you change, damage or lose your FOMA terminal, visit the Edy Internet website or i-mode site, or contact Edy using the contact information given below.

Note

- Packet communication charges apply when you use i-mode communication such as "初期設定" (Main menu) and the i-αppli "主なメニュー" (Main menu).
- Note that when you change to a different FOMA terminal model and discard your previous phone, you can continue using the Edy card just as you did with the previous model.
- If "OFF" is selected in "Network set" for an i-αppli, or if the FOMA terminal is set to Self mode, no i-mode communication is possible and "初期設定" (Main menu) and the functions in the i-αppli "主なメニュー" (Main menu) cannot be used.
- Users using domain-selective reception should add "bitwallet.co.jp" to their list of approved domains because the Mobile Edy service (payments over the Internet) can only be used when the FOMA terminal is able to receive transaction initiation mail from the Edy Center.
- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the FOMA terminal.

■ Contact information for Edy service inquiries

Bit Wallet, Inc.

- For information on Edy, visit the Edy Internet website or i-mode site.
  Internet website: http://www.edy.jp
  i-mode site: http://imode.edy.jp
- In the event of difficulties with any of the Edy procedures:
  Edy emergency number: 0570-081999
  Operating hours: 9.00 am to 9.00 pm daily

Launching i-αpplis Automatically

Use this function have software applications launch automatically. You can set the date, time and the day of the week for automatic launching.

- To use automatic launching, the date and time must be set in "Set time" (P. 44).
- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 applications.

Enabling automatic launching (Auto start set)

Default setting	OFF

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select i-αppli and press ● ▶ Press 2 "Auto start set" ▶ Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

Setting the launch date/time <Auto start time>

Default setting	All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when the software is automatically launched.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following situations:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When the date and time are not set
  - When another function is running
  - During calls
  - When All lock or PIM lock is set
  - When the i-αppli menu is active
  - When an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching
  - When software updating is scheduled for the same time as automatic launching

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 320

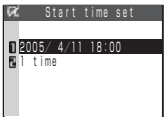
1 Press 2 "Auto start time" ▶ Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ●.



■ **To enable the time interval set for the software**
Select the "Time interval set" checkbox and press ●.

■ **To set the launch date and time**
Select the "Start time set" checkbox and press ●.

2 Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Set the launch date and time.



■ **To set the launch date and time**
Select date/time and press ● ▶ Enter the start date and time and press ●.

■ **To set repeated automatic launch times**
Select "Repeat" and press ● ▶ Select "Daily" or "Weekly" and press ●.
If you selected "Weekly", Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ●. Then press 左 (Finish).

3 Press 左 (Finish).

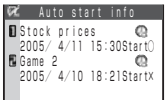
Note

- If you set the automatic launch interval and automatic launch time twice for the same software application and the automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the software will launch automatically for the first automatic launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also use this procedure to check software that failed to start up from an IC card function.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select i-αppli and press ● ▶ Press 3 DEF "i-αppli info" ▶ Press 3 DEF "Auto start info".



The display shows information such as the software application name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. "Start O" indicates that the software started up automatically, "Start X" indicates that it did not start up automatically, and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

Note

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the (not run soft) icon appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon to view the Auto Start Info display. Select the software to start up and press ● to launch the software. For more information on desktop icons, see P. 136.
- The information is also stored when the application could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another software application.

<i-αppli To function>

Running i-αpplis from Sites or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αppli from a function other than another i-αppli, such as a site or mail.

Enabling software launching with i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting	All ON

Use this setting to specify whether i-αpplis can be launched from sites, mail, the Infrared Communication function, the bar code reader or from an IC card function.

- This setting can be specified separately for each i-αppli.

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 320

1 Press 1 ∞ "Set i-αppli To" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Site "i-αppli To"	**▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 1 (Finish).** Allows software to be launched from a page on an Internet website or i-mode site.
Mail "i-αppli To"	**▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 1 (Finish).** Allows software to be launched from i-mode mail.
Ir "i-αppli To"	**▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 1 (Finish).** Allows software to be launched from the Infrared Communication function.
Bar code "i-αppli To"	**▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 1 (Finish).** Allows software to be launched from the bar code reader.
IC-Card "i-αppli To"	**▶ Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 1 (Finish).** Allows software to be launched from an IC card function.

Launching software from a site

When an i-αppli software launch specification is displayed on a site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

- This option cannot be used with some sites.

In the Sites display... ➡ P. 203

Continued on next page

1 **Select the setting for the software to be launched and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**

Launching software from mail

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

In the received mail detail display... ➡ P. 279

1 **Select the setting for the software to be launched and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**

Note

- If multiple links are pasted into the mail, the pasted data itself may not be displayed.
- If an i-αppli launch specification is included in an i-mode mail message, the i-αppli launch specification cannot be quoted when you reply, reply with a quote, or forward the message. You cannot quote a launch specification to launch an i-αppli by forwarding mail using the Data Link Software of the infrared communication function.

Launching software from the Infrared Communication function

This setting allows the software to be launched when an i-αppli software launch signal is received during infrared communication.

1 **Press Menu 7 9 ▶ Press 1 "Receive" ▶ Receive the i-αppli launch signal.**

Launching software from the bar code reader

This setting allows the software to be launched from a bar code when bar codes scanned by the bar code reader include an i-αppli software launch specification.

1 **Press Menu ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 5 "Bar code reader" ▶ Press 1 "New" ▶ Scan the bar code.**

2 **Select the setting for the software to be launched and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**

Launching software from an IC card function

This setting allows the software to be launched from an IC card function when the FeliCa icon on the FOMA terminal is held over a reader/writer (external device).

- You cannot launch an i-αppli in the following situations:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - When the i-αppli you are trying to launch is not installed
  - When IC-Card "i-αppli To" is not selected

1 **Hold the FeliCa icon on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer (external device).**

<Stand-by set>

Setting the i-αppli Stand-by Display

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli as the stand-by display on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli stand-by display is shown, the α or α icon appears at the bottom of the display.

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli stand-by display.
- The Web To function (P. 223) cannot be used from the i-αppli stand-by display.
- Some software applications cannot be set as the stand-by display.

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 320

1 Press 3 DEF さ “Software setting” ▶ Press 1 あ “Stand-by set” ▶ Press 1 あ “On” ▶ Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- The α icon is displayed for software set in the stand-by display.
- If software that communicates is set in the stand-by display, it may not run correctly when problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select “OFF” for “Stand-by net” in “Software setting”, you may not be primed with timely provision of information.
- When an i-αppli stand-by display is set, the image set for the stand-by display in “Display setting” (P. 122) is not shown.
- If you display the stand-by display while a menu function is running, the stand-by display selected in “Display setting” appears even when an i-αppli stand-by display has been set.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off and then on again while you are setting an i-αppli stand-by display, a message appears asking whether to launch the i-αppli stand-by display.
- If you set “All lock” (P. 145) or “PIM lock” (P. 149) while the i-αppli stand-by display is shown, the i-αppli stand-by display quits and the stand-by display set in “Display settings” appears. Once you release “All lock” or “PIM lock”, the i-αppli stand-by display reappears.

Switching the i-αppli stand-by display to Application mode

Use this procedure to launch the software application set in the i-αppli stand-by display.

1 In the i-αppli stand-by display, press CLR.

The i-αppli starts up and the α or α icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing α or α icon.



Note

- Some software applications allow you to return from application mode to the i-αppli stand-by display by pressing the FOMA terminal’s keys while the i-αppli stand-by display is shown. However, you cannot return to the i-αppli stand-by display while another menu function is running.

Deselecting the i-αppli stand-by display <Deselect i-αppli display>

● Deselecting the i-αppli stand-by display while it is running

1 Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer or press PWR HLD while the i-αppli stand-by display is running ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Cancel**	Cancels i-αppli stand-by display deselection.
2 **Ended**	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli stand-by display and restarts the i-αppli stand-by display.
3 **Terminated**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●.**

Deselecting the i-αppli stand-by display while it is shown

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 9WXYZ "i-αppli settings" ▶ Select "End stand-by display" and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 End	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli stand-by display and restarts the i-αppli stand-by display.
2 Terminate	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

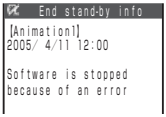
Note

- If you delete the i-αppli stand-by display, the image selected for "Stand-by" in "Display setting" appears in the stand-by display.

Checking the i-αppli stand-by display exit data

If an error occurs that causes the i-αppli stand-by display to be deselected, you can use this setting to check the recorded information showing the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select i-αppli and press ● ▶ Press 3DEF "i-αppli info" ▶ Press 1 "End stand-by info".



The software name, error date and time and the reason for the error are displayed.

Note

- No information is recorded if the i-αppli stand-by display ends normally (at normal exit).
- (右) (FUNC) may be displayed. Pressing (右) (FUNC) and selecting "Copy info" copies the information. To delete the information, select "Delete info" and then select "YES".

Organizing i-αpplis

- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may access software stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the software. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or use the software in a stand-by display. You can only delete the software or view the software details. To use the software again, you have to contact the IP (information service provider) and have them send an instruction to re-enable the software.
- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may send data to software stored on your FOMA terminal.
- When an IP (information service provider) sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to software stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

Upgrading i-αpplis <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

- When you download an upgrade, the software is automatically upgraded when you run the application.
- You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αppli that rename mail folders in the following situations:
  - When mail security is set
  - When folder security is set
  - When the dedicated receive or send folder for the mail-connected i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 320

1 Press 5 なJKL “Upgrade” ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Note

- When there is insufficient memory available, a message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted software before saving the upgrade. → P. 319
- If the software is not upgraded, a message appears after the software data has been downloaded notifying you that your current software is the latest version.
- When an SSL page is used, a message appears notifying you that SSL communication will begin.
- Before upgrading, a message may be displayed notifying you that the mobile phone manufacturer number and the UIM ID number will be used.
- Some software is upgraded automatically. In such cases, a message appears asking you whether to upgrade.

Deleting i-αppli <Delete i-αppli>

You can use these functions to delete individual i-αpplis or all the i-αpplis.

In the software list display function menu... ➡ P. 320

1 Select the following options:

Settings 1/2	
7 **Delete**	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
Settings 2/2	
1 **Delete selected**	▶ Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
2 **Delete all**	▶ Enter the security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. For information on security code → P. 142

Note

- If you try to delete software that is set in the stand-by display (software marked with ) or software that has been set to launch automatically, a message appears asking whether to delete the settings also.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message appears asking whether to delete the corresponding dedicated folders for the mail-connected i-αppli. Select “NO” to delete only the mail-connected i-αppli or “YES” to delete the mail-connected i-αppli, the dedicated send and receive folders for the mail-connected i-αppli and all the mail stored in those folders. Note that you cannot delete the dedicated send and receive folders for the mail-connected i-αppli if they are being used, if security is set for the folders, or if they contain protected mail.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-αppli, any incoming mail for the i-αppli that is received while the software is selected for deletion may also be deleted.
- You cannot delete i-αppli mail folders in the following situations:
  - When the folder details are displayed
  - When mail security is set
  - When folder security is set
  - When the folder contains protected mail
- Some FeliCa i-αpplis require you to launch the application and delete data on the IC card before the software itself can be deleted. If you have saved this type of software, the i-αppli cannot be deleted by selecting “Delete all”.
- Some FeliCa i-αpplis cannot be deleted.

i-motion

What is an i-motion? 334
Downloading i-motions <Download i-motion> 334
i-motion Settings 336

What is an i-motion?

An i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can set an i-motion as a ring tone (Chaku-motion). →P. 115

i-motion types

i-motions can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site and the file type.

■ Normal type

The FOMA terminal will hold normal i-motions up to 500 KB in size in either of the formats shown below. Some standard-type i-motions cannot be saved.

① Playable after downloading (max. 500 KB)

② Playable during downloading (max. 500 KB)

■ Streaming type

This type cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal can play i-motions of up to 2 MB in size. Because the data is discarded as soon as a streaming i-motion ends, it has to be downloaded again each time it is played.
Playback that happens while a streaming i-motion is downloading is called "streaming playback".

Note

● The FOMA terminal plays i-motions in the MP4 format.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motions

Downloading and playing i-motions from sites

1 Press ▷ (i-mode) ▶ Press 1 あ "iMenu" ▶ Select "English" ▶ Press 3 DEF "Menu List" ▶ Select the option for the site and press ●.

2 Select the i-motion and press ●.

When data downloading is completed, the "Data acquisition display" appears.

■ To cancel downloading

Press ◁ (Quit).

■ Normal-type i-motions

Use the "Automatic replay" setting in "i-motion setting" (P. 336) to specify whether normal i-motions are automatically played during downloading. Note that some i-motions may not play until they have finished downloading.

■ Streaming-type i-motions

You cannot download streaming i-motions if "Normal type" is selected in "i-motion type".
When a message saying "Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay" appears:

- "Normal type" is selected in the "i-motion type setting" (P. 337) in "i-motion setting". Press ● to return to the site display, select "i-motion type" from the Function menu, change the setting to "Norm • Streaming type" and then download the i-motion again.

When the "Replay streaming?" message appears:

- Select "YES" to begin playback, or select "NO" to return to the site display.
- To cancel playback in progress after you have selected "YES", press ◁ (Quit).

3 Select “Play” and press ●.

Start playing the downloaded i-motion.

See “Operations available during i-motion playback” →P. 370



Data acquisition display

Note

- i-motions without titles are shown in the data acquisition display as “No title”.
- Some sites and i-motions do not allow playback during downloading or data retrieval.
- With normal-type i-motions, if you stop playback while the i-motion is downloading, data downloading itself still continues.
- Even when you have selected “ON” in the “i-motion auto play” setting for i-motions, the i-motion is not automatically played when downloading ends if you play the i-motion during downloading.
- If you select “OFF” in the “i-motion auto play” setting for i-motions, the i-motion is not automatically played when downloading ends and the data download completion display appears instead.
- There are fixed play limitations for i-motions. “” is displayed in front of the title of an i-motion that has restrictions on the number of times it can be played, the playback duration or the playback period. If the playback period is restricted, the i-motion cannot be played outside that period. Also, if the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal are reset. In this event, i-motions with a restricted playback period or duration cannot be played. See “About i-motion information” →P. 374
- When an i-motion is playing during downloading, it may stop playing or the image may be disrupted due to problems with the signal quality, etc.
- Some downloaded i-motions may not be played back correctly.
- If you are playing a normal i-motion during downloading (first playback only), you cannot use fast forward, frame advance or slow playback. In streaming playback, neither these operations nor pause can be used. Press (左) (Stop) to stop playback.
- If data retrieval is interrupted due to problems with the signal quality, or if the retrieved data exceeds the limit on the permitted amount of data, and the FOMA terminal can display “Play”, “Save” or “Property” in the data acquisition display, a message appears saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data download completion display then appears.
- Playback during data retrieval may be interrupted or the image may be disrupted due to problems with the signal quality. If the i-motion is a normal-type i-motion, you can play the i-motion again after downloading is completed, but you cannot play a streaming i-motion again.

Using the Function menu on the Data acquisition display

In the Data acquisition display... ➡ P. 275, 335

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Data acquisition display function menu

1 **Save screen memo**	Saves the displayed data acquisition display to a screen memo. “Saving a screen memo” →P. 216

Note

<Save screen memo>

- You can also play an i-motion from a screen memo as the data acquisition display is saved as a “Screen memo” (P. 216). However, you cannot save the following i-motion Data acquisition display as a “Screen memo”.
  - i-motions with play restrictions
  - Streaming type i-motions
  - Incomplete i-motions
- i-motions that are saved to screen memos aren’t included in the i-motion folder list in the Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the play program or standby display functions with these i-motions.

Saving i-motions

When “Save” can be selected in the data acquisition display, the i-motion can be saved onto your FOMA terminal.

- With some i-motions, the downloaded data cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- The FOMA terminal will save up to a total of 100 i-motions and movies shot using the FOMA terminal’s camera. The actual number of i-motions that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the size of the i-motion files.

In the data acquisition display... ➡ P. 335

1 Select “Save” and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

■ To cancel saving

Select “NO”.

You are returned to the data download completion display without saving the i-motion.

■ When the memory used for saving i-motions is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted i-motions and then save the new i-motion.

To save the i-motion, Select “YES” and then select an i-motion to delete. To proceed without saving the i-motion, select “NO”. Selecting “NO” returns you to the data acquisition display without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the folder where the i-motion is to be saved and press ●.

A message appears notifying you that the i-motion has been saved.

Note

- An untitled i-motion is displayed simply as “movie”.
- You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site in the stand-by display. →P. 124
  Some i-motions cannot be set in the stand-by display.
- You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions from an i-motion set in the stand-by display.

Viewing i-motion details

Use this procedure to check detailed information on an i-motion, including the title, file size and whether any playback restrictions apply.

In the data acquisition display... ➡ P. 335

1 Select “Property” and press ●.

The “i-motion info display” appears. Use ◎ to scroll the display up and down to check information such as the limit on the number of times the i-motion can be played, the playback duration and the valid playback period. When you have checked the information, press CLR.

i-motion Settings

The settings that can be specified for i-motions are “Automatic replay” and “i-motion type”.

Specifying whether an i-motion is played automatically <Automatic replay>

Default setting	ON

Use this setting to specify whether an i-motion is automatically played back when it is downloaded from a site or when a screen memo that includes an i-motion is displayed.

- The “Automatic replay” setting is only valid for normal type i-motions. Streaming type i-motions are played automatically regardless of this setting.
  For information on i-motion types →P. 334

In the i-mode settings display... ➡ P. 224

1 Press 4 GHI “i-motion setting” ▶ Press 1 “Automatic replay” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **ON**	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motions are played back during downloading.
2 **OFF**	Displays the data download completion display without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

Notes

- If you select “OFF” and then select a normal-type i-motion in the Screen Memo List display or download a normal-type i-motion from a site, the FOMA terminal displays the data download completion display without automatically playing the i-motion.
- Note that streaming i-motions are played back automatically even when “OFF” is selected.

Setting the downloaded i-motion type <i-motion type setting>

Default setting	Normal type

Use this setting to specify the i-motion type when you download a new i-motion from an i-mode site or Internet website.

In the i-mode settings display... ➡ P. 224

1 Press 4 GHI “i-motion setting” ▶ Press 2 ABC “i-motion type” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Normal type**	Only downloads normal i-motions.
2 **Norm • Streaming type**	Downloads normal and streaming i-motions.

Notes

- When you download a streaming-type i-motion, you must select “Norm • Streaming type” in the “i-motion type setting”. If you do not select this setting, a message appears saying that the i-motion type setting must be changed and you cannot download the streaming i-motion.

FeliCa

What is FeliCa? 340
Launching FeliCa i-αpplis 341
Locking the IC Card Functions 342

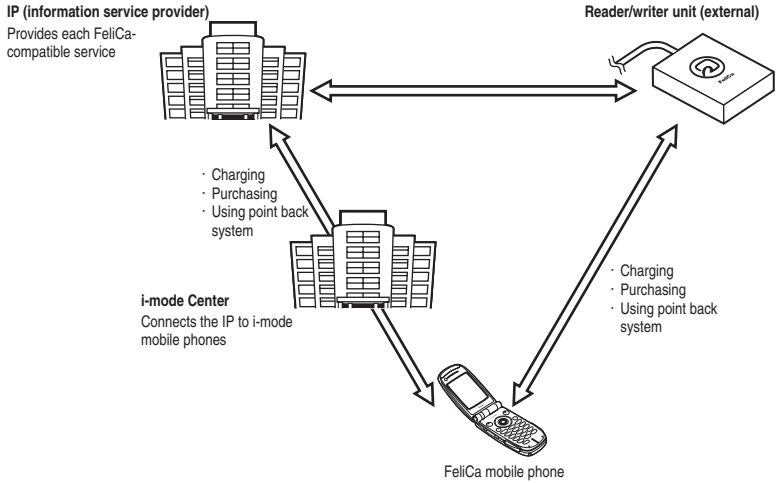
What is FeliCa?

FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows data to be read from and written to an IC card simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit (externally equipped*). FeliCa compatibility in mobile phones means that mobile phones can act as digital wallets, allowing users to pay for purchases using electronic cash simply by holding the handset over an external reader/writer unit*. The advent of FeliCa makes mobile phones an even more important and convenient lifestyle tool.

Compared with existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards, the IC card in your mobile phone is even more convenient, since it allows you to credit money to the card from an i-mode site or Internet website and to check your balance and transaction history. These useful FeliCa functions are referred to as IC card functions.

To use the IC card functions, first download a FeliCa i-αppli.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards



- The procedures for applying for and using the FeliCa services differ depending on the IP (information service provider) used. Contact the IP directly for specific information. Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's manual" for important notes on using the FeliCa services.
- You should make a note of the names of the FeliCa services you use and their contact details in case data on the IC card is corrupted or lost when the FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, replaced or otherwise mishandled. (When the FOMA terminal is sent for repairs, users are usually asked to erase their personal data.) Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for any loss or corruption of the data on the IC card. When data on the IC card is erased, lost or corrupted, the problem is dealt with differently depending on the FeliCa service used. Contact your IP (information service provider) beforehand for details.
- When your mobile phone is upgraded or exchanged following repairs at a DoCoMo service outlet, data stored on the IC card cannot be copied to the new phone. This problem is dealt with differently depending on the FeliCa service used. Contact your IP (information service provider) beforehand for details.
- Take particular care not to lose your FOMA terminal. If you lose your FOMA terminal, contact your IP (information service provider) for information on the FeliCa services you have been using. Note that restrictions can be imposed on IC card functions using the FOMA terminal's All lock and Remote all lock functions. →P. 145

Launching FeliCa i-αpplis

Launching a FeliCa i-αppli to read and record IC card data

This function launches a FeliCa i-αppli from the Software List display. You can then use the FeliCa i-αppli to perform a range of useful tasks, including reading or recording data on the IC card, topping the card up with electronic cash or travel vouchers, or checking your balance and transaction history from your mobile phone.

- Take care to manage your security codes and service passwords carefully.
- The events listed below will interrupt the transfer of data between an i-αppli and the IC card. When this happens, the data that has been transferred is discarded. The action required when the call ends differs depending on the service being used.
  - An incoming call while the i-αppli is running
  - Battery failure

1 Hold down 右 (i-mode) for 1 second or longer.

The "Software list display" appears.

2 Select a FeliCa i-αppli and press ●.

The selected FeliCa i-αppli starts up.

■ To cancel i-αppli startup

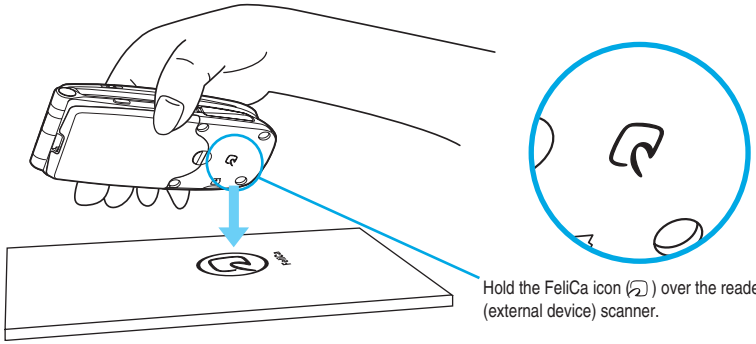
Press ● while the i-αppli is starting up.

Holding the FeliCa icon side of the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit (external)

This function allows you to use your FOMA terminal as a train ticket or to make purchases using electronic cash simply by holding the FeliCa icon ( ) on the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer (external device). This function can be used without having to launch a software application.

- You can hold the FeliCa icon side of the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit (external) and use the IC functions during a call or during i-mode connection, but you cannot launch a FeliCa i-αppli.

1 Hold the FeliCa icon ( ) on the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer (external device) to use the desired service.



Hold the FeliCa icon ( ) over the reader/writer (external device) scanner.

Notes

- Install the battery pack when using the IC card functions. You can still hold the FeliCa icon on the FOMA terminal over an external reader/writer unit and use the IC card functions when the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of battery charge, but you cannot launch a FeliCa i-αppli. Note that leaving the FOMA terminal without charging it after you have used the battery pack for a long period or the battery low alarm has sounded may prevent you from using the FOMA terminal later. Always charge the battery pack in such situations.
- If the FOMA terminal does not recognize the IC card, try changing the direction in which you move the FOMA terminal.

Locking the IC Card Functions

Use this procedure to lock the IC card functions so that they cannot be used by other people without your consent.

- You can lock the IC Card function using All lock or Remote all lock. See “Preventing Others From Using Your FOMA Terminal”. →P. 145
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not unlock the IC card functions.
- If you use the All lock or Remote all lock function to lock the IC card functions, the FOMA terminal can only be used for the following:
  - Turning the FOMA terminal on/off.
  - Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118).

Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files

Advanced Image Handling

About Data Box 344
Displaying Still Images <My picture> 345
Using the Function Menu in the Image List Display 348
Using the Function Menu in the My picture Display 358
Editing Images <Edit image> 364

Advanced Movie Handling

Playing Movies You Have Shot/i-motions <i-motion> 369
Using the function menu in the Movie List display 371
Using the function menu in the i-motion stopped display 375
Editing Movies <Edit movie> 379

Advanced Chara-den

What is Chara-den? 384

Advanced Melody Handling

Playing Melodies <Melody player> 391

Advanced miniSD Memory Card Handling

About miniSD Memory Cards 396
Copying FOMA Terminal Data to a miniSD Memory Card 403
Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card 403
Copying miniSD Memory Card Data to the FOMA Terminal 405
Managing miniSD Memory Cards 406
Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Memory Card Reader/Writer 407

Advanced File Handling

Working With Folders and Files 409
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding <Forwarding image> 412

Using Infrared Communication

About Infrared Communication <Infrared communication function> 413
Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries 414
Sending and Receiving All Entries 416
Selecting Infrared Communication Mode <Infrared mode> 418
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 418

Transferring Data

Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data With a PC <OBEX> 423

About Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box and the data taken in from the still image or movie photographed with the built-in camera, the mail, a site can distribute to a folder according to a kind.

- Together with the photographed image, a maximum of 720 can be saved at My picture. To i-motion, a maximum of 100 can be saved together with the photographed movie. A maximum of 400 can be saved on a Melody. Together with built-in Chara-den, a maximum of 10 can be saved at Chara-den.
- A folder can be added to My picture, i-motion, and a Melody to 20 pieces, respectively.
- The data saved on My picture, i-motion, and the Melody is movable to other folders within the item.

Item/Folder			File format	The contents of data
My picture	Inbox		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	You can select all images as the save destination. Images imported from miniSD memory cards and image transferred using the infrared communication function are stored in the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are stored in the Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Decomail-picture			You can select where to save the image in the same way as the camera folder and INBOX.
	Pre-installed			Animation and images for the pre-installed Standby and wake-up displays.
	(User created folders1 to 20)			It can choose as a preservation place of a image like inbox and a camera folder.
	Original animation		—	Displays the animation registered by continuation photography and the animation made yourself.
	miniSD	Picture	JPEG	Shot images, images exported from the FOMA terminal, images saved on the miniSD memory card from a PC.
		Image Box	JPEG, GIF	JPEG images (Not Exif format*2) saved to the miniSD card from a PC, GIF images, Animations.
	Frame		IFM	Pre-installed Frames. Downloaded Frames are saved.
	Stamp		IFM	Pre-installed Marker Stamps. Downloaded stamps are saved.
	Face stamp		FSD	Pre-installed Face Stamp. Downloaded face stamps are saved.
i-motion	Inbox		MP4	You can select it as the save destination for all movies and i-motions. The movie and i-motion imported from miniSD memory card, the movie and i-motion transmitted by infrared communication is saved at an inbox folder. Movies shot using Chara-den are stored in the Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Pre-installed		MP4	Pre-installed i-motions
	(User created folders 1 to 20)		MP4	It can choose as a preservation place of a image like inbox and a camera folder.
	miniSD		MP4 ASF*3	Shot movies, movies and i-motion exported from the FOMA terminal, movies saved on the miniSD memory card from a PC.
	Playlist*4		—	—
Melody	Inbox		SMF, MFi	You can select all melodies as the save destination. Melodies transmitted by Ir transmission and melodies scanned by the bar code reader are saved in the INBOX folder.
	Pre-installed		MFi	Pre-installed melodies and sound effects.
	(User created folders 1 to 20)		SMF, MFi	It can select as a preservation place of a image like inbox and a camera folder.
	Voice announce		—	Plays voice recorded in voice function.
	Playlist*4		—	—
Chara-den			AFD	Pre-install Chara-den. The downloaded Chara-den is saved.

*1 : SWF is the file format for a Flash image.

*2 : Exif is the image format for digital cameras.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

*3 : ASF format is only reproducible.
*4 : A playlist folder is a folder for using for program playing. Neither data preservation nor folder deletion can be performed.

Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your Data box and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save mail on miniSD memory card or your PC by using a FOMA USB cable (optional) and Data Link Software (P. 562).
- You may lose the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. We take no responsibility in such an event so please save them on miniSD or your PC by using a Data Link Software.

<My picture>

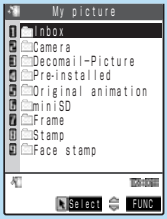
Displaying Still Images

Still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, downloaded from sites or saved on miniSD memory cards are displayed by My picture in the Data box.

- The FOMA terminal cannot display images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high. Also, progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be displayed. For more information on progressive JPEG image, see P. 219.

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Data box and press ● ▶ Press 1 あ "My picture".

The "Folder list display" appears.



Folder list display

2 Select a folder and press ●.

The "Image list display (Picture list)" appears.
For information on the Image List display → P. 346



Image list display (Picture list)

3 Select an image and press ●.

The "My picture display" appears.
Use ◎ to display the previous or next image.



My picture display

To display a image in an actual size

Images up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in size can be displayed at actual size.
Images 240 dots wide × 270 dots high in size cannot be resized.

Press ●.
Use ◎ to scroll the display.
Press ● to return to the My picture display.

Continued on next page

Note

- The Folder List display can also be displayed by selecting the " " desktop icon and pressing ● ▶ Press 4 "My picture".
- While displaying in the actual size, you can not change to the previous or next display by use ○ and display the function menu screen.
- GIF-format animations and Flash images can only be displayed at actual size or at the display size.
- It may take some time to display images if there is a lot of data in the FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card.
- Flash images are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting. If "Step" is set, Flash images are played at the "Level 2" volume.

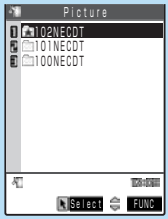
Displaying images stored on miniSD memory cards

In the folder list display... ➡ P. 345

1 Select "miniSD" and press ● ▶Select 1 "Picture" or 2 "Image box".

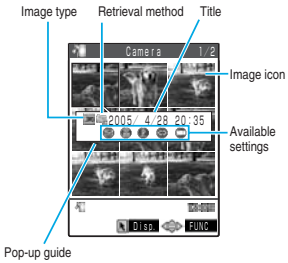
The "miniSD folder list display" appears.

2 Select a folder and press ● ▶Select a image and press ●.



Example: miniSD folder list display (Picture)

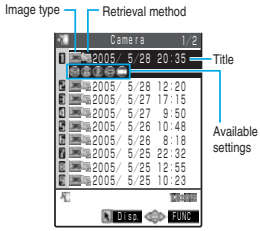
Guide to the Picture List and Title List



Picture list

Nine image icons appear on the display with the title of the selected image shown in a pop-up guide. Icons are also used to show the image type, how it was retrieved and which settings can be specified for the image.

*: When the images are saved at miniSD memory card (My picture), four sheets are displayed at a time.



Title list

Nine images are listed by title, with icons used to show the image type, how it was retrieved and which settings can be specified for the image.

Image type icons

JPG (Aqua blue), JPG (Blue), JPG (Eggplant)	JPEG-format image (Attachable as normal mail/Attachable as large mail/Cannot attach to mail)
GIF (Aqua blue), GIF (Blue), GIF (Eggplant)	GIF-format image (Attachable as normal mail/Cannot attach to mail (10,001 bytes to 100KB)/Cannot attach to mail (more than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 100KB).)
	GIF-format (IFM-format) frame
	FSD-format face stamp
	SWF-format Flash image*1

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. ➞P. 396

	MP4 or ASF-format movie or i-motion*1
	MP4 or ASF-format i-motion with sound effects*2
	MP4 or ASF-format i-motion with playback restrictions*3
	AFD-format "Chara-den" character
	Image to which UIM operation restrictions apply

*1 : The  icon is shown for icons of files with file restrictions set. You cannot send data by mail or the Ir communication function. However, this does not include Chara-dens shot with "Record file restrictions" if you specified file restrictions for images shot with your FOMA terminal.

*2 : The  (blue note) icon indicates an i-motion with sound effects. An orange note icon indicates an i-motion that can only be saved on a miniSD memory card.

*3 : The  or  icon indicates that the valid playback period for an i-motion has expired.

■ Retrieval method icons

No icon	Pre-installed data
	Data downloaded from a site or mail or loaded from an i-αppli.
	Data shot using the FOMA terminal's camera.
	Data imported from a PC, the bar code reader, a miniSD memory card or via infrared communication.
	Data shot with "Chara-den".
	Frame, marker stamp, face stamp*

*: The same icon is displayed for a frame marker stamp, pr face stamp regardless of how the item was retrieved.

■ Available settings icons

These icons are not displayed for miniSD memory cards (Image box).

	Data can be attached to i-mode mail (500 KB or more, 10,001 bytes or less, 100 KB or less) If data exceeds 500 K bytes, it is necessary to process in the capacity which can be transmitted to mail. See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" →P. 355 See "Trimming movies for use as mail attachments" →P. 383
	Data can be pasted into Deco-mail. To paste an icon into Deco-mail, the icon must be moved into the Deco-mail picture folder.
	Data can be set as a display, etc.
	Data can be set as a ring tone.
	Data can be sent via infrared communication.
	Data can be exported to a miniSD memory card.

■ Titles and file names

Titles and file names are automatically assigned to images and movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera or the "Chara-den" player.

Title : yyyy/mm/dd hh: mm (Date (year/month/day) and time)

File name : yyyymmddhhmmxxx (for images xxx (xxx: 3-digit number) is added.)

Date and time

*: Time: The time saving of a still image was completed. For movies, the time shooting ended.

Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motions, melodies and "Chara-den" characters.

The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.

The title is the name displayed in the Image List display on the FOMA terminal.

The file name is the name displayed when the file is downloaded to a PC, etc.

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files with the same name.

If the file name contains illegal characters, the file name becomes "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

Continued on next page

■ **Image and movie files that can be edited**

Folder	Icon	Data	Can be edited?
My picture	JPG (Aqua blue) / JPG (Blue) / JPG (Eggplant)	JPEG-format image*1	Editable
		Still image shot in "Chara-den".*2	
	JPG (Aqua blue) / JPG (Blue) / JPG (Eggplant)	The image of JPEG format that file restrictions are set up*3	No
	GIF (Aqua blue) / GIF (Blue) / GIF (Eggplant)	GIF-format image	
	GIF (Aqua blue) / GIF (Blue) / GIF (Eggplant)	The picture of GIF format that file restrictions are set up	
		Frame or marker stamp	
		Face Stamps	
		Flash image	
		Image to which UIM operation restrictions apply.	
i-motion		Movie shot on the built-in camera. *3	Editable
		Movie i-motion downloaded using infrared communication.*4	
		Movie shot in "Chara-den".*2	
		i-motion downloaded from a site.	No

*1 : See "Editing Images" →P. 364
*2 : You cannot edit still images and movies shot using "Chara-den" for which "File restricted" is set in "File restriction" after the image or movie is shot.
*3 : Images and movies shot with the FOMA terminal's built-in camera can be edited even if file restriction is set to "ON".
*4 : You may not be able to edit for some movies and i-motions.

Setting the Image List display mode <Viewer settings>

●Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image box) are always listed by title.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press 4 GHI "Display" ▶Select "Viewer settings" and press ● ▶Choose from the following options:

1 **Picture** (default setting)	Changes to the picture list.
2 **Title**	Changes to the title list.

Using the Function Menu in the Image List Display

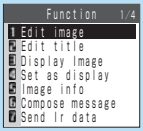
The options available in the Image List display Function menu differ depending on the folder in which the image is saved.

●Image List display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders →P. 349
●Image List display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder →P. 351
●Original animation List display Function menu →P. 362
●Image List display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture) →P. 353
●Image List display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box) →P. 354
●Image List display Function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders →P. 351
●Image List display Function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder →P. 352

In the image list display... ➡ P. 345

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Example: Image list display (Camera) function menu

Using the Image List display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

Image list display function menu 1/4

1 Edit image	See "Editing Images" →P. 364
2 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
3 Display image	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).
4 Set as display	■ To set as screens, such as a stand-by, sending call, incoming call display ▶ Select an item and press ●. ■ To set as a V-phone related (except for V-phone dialing and V-phone calling) display ▶ Select an item and press ● ▶ Check the image and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. The selected image is set to a stand-by display.
5 Image info	See "About image information" →P. 354
6 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 354
7 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Image list display function menu 2/4

1 Add desktop icon	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
2 Export	See "Copying FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card" →P. 363
3 Add image to PB	Stores the selected image in the phonebook. →P. 93
4 Size for mail	See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" →P. 355
5 Positioning	See "Setting the position when setting an image" →P. 356
6 Clipping area	See "Setting the area when setting an image" →P. 357
7 Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press ●. Edits the selected image file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" →P. 526

Image list display function menu 3/4

1 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions for the selected image.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
2 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected image to another folder.	
3 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142	
5 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410	

Continued on next page

6 **Memory info**	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
7 **Sort**	▶**Choose from the following options:** Sort images.	
	1 **Chronological** ↑ (default setting)	Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	2 **Chronological** ↓	Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	3 **By title** ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by title.
	4 **By title** ↑	Arranges images in descending order by title.
	5 **By size** ↑	Arranges images in ascending order by size.
	6 **By size** ↓	Arranges images in descending order by size.
	7 **By source**	Arranges images in ascending order by retrieval method.

Image list display function menu 4/4

1 **Title name***1	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title).
2 **Composite image**	See "Making a composite image from 4 images" →P. 357

*1 : If you selected the Title name, "1 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Note

● Icons in the Image List display show whether an image can be set in a display, attached to mail, pasted into Deco-mail, sent using the Infrared Communication function or saved onto a miniSD memory card. →P. 392

<Edit title>

● You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.

<Set as display>

● Can be set in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo displays.

● You cannot set the following images in a display:

- Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high
- Images with a file size larger than 100 KB

● Depending on the image format and the display in which the image is set, the image may not be displayed at its actual size.

● Some images cannot be set in a display.

<Add image to PB>

● You can only add images that have a file size no larger than 100 KB and an image format no larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

● You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set.

● You cannot add the following types of image:

- Images in formats other than JPEG or GIF

<Edit file name>

● You cannot edit the file names for the following image types:

- Images shot as Chara-den images with "File restricted" set after shooting
- Images that it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal

● You may be unable to edit file names if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.

● You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.

<File restriction>

● You cannot set file restrictions for the following image types:

- Images in formats other than JPG or GIF
- Images shot as Chara-den images with "File restricted" set after shooting

<Delete this> <Delete all>

● If you try to delete an image that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:

- Displays in which the deleted image was set revert to their default settings.
- Original animations and playlists are deselected.
- User icons in schedules revert to  .

● If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

<Sort>

● "By source" sorts images in the order shown below.

- Downloaded images or images retrieved from an i-αppli → Images shot using the camera → Images imported from an miniSD memory card or using infrared communication → Images shot using Chara-den

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Using the Image List display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder

Image list display function menu

1 **Display image**	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).
2 **Set as display**	▶**Select an item and press ●.** Sets the selected image in a display (stand-by display, etc.). →P. 124
3 **Title name**[*1]	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title).

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "3 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Note

<Set as display>
● Can be set in the Stand-by and Wake-up displays.

Using the Image List display Function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders

Image list display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit title**	▶**Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Display image**	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).
3 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354
4 **Edit file name**	▶**Edit the file name and press ●.** Edits the selected image file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
5 **Delete this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** Pre-installed frames, stamps and face stamp cannot be deleted.
6 **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code and press ●** ▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** Pre-installed frames, stamps and face stamps cannot be deleted. For information on security code →P. 142
7 **Multiple-choice**	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410

Image list display function menu 2/2

1 **Memory info**	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.
2 **Title name**[*1]	Changes the Image List display mode (Picture or Title).
3 **Face stamp demo**[*2]	Uses this option to check face stamp tracking. The demo shows the normal image.  appears when tracking is successful and  appears when tracking fails.

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "2 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".
*2 : Only displayed in the face stamp folder.

Note

<Edit title>
● You cannot edit the titles of pre-installed images.
● You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.
<Edit file name>
● You cannot edit the file names for the following image types:
- Pre-installed images
- Images that it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal

● You may be unable to edit file names if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.
● You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.

Using the Image List display Function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder

Image list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit title	▶Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
2 Display image	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).	
3 Image info	See "About image information" →P. 354	
4 Decorate mail	See "Composing a Deco-mail" →P. 356	
5 Edit file name	▶Edit the file name and press ●. Edits the selected image file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
6 File restriction	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions for the selected image.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
7 Move	▶Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected image to another folder.	

Image list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Pre-installed images cannot be sent.	
2 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Pre-installed images cannot be deleted. For information on security code →P. 142	
3 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410	
4 Memory info	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
5 Sort	▶Choose from the following options: Sort images.	
	1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges images in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges images in descending order by title.
	5 By size ↑	Arranges images in ascending order by size.
	6 By size ↓	Arranges images in descending order by size.
	7 By source	Arranges images in ascending order by retrieval method.
6 Title name*1	Changes the "Picture" or "Title name".	

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "6 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Note

<Edit title>
- You cannot edit the titles of pre-installed images.
- You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.

<Edit file name>
- You cannot edit the file names for the following image types:
  - Pre-installed images
  - Images that it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal
- You may be unable to edit file names if there is too little space available on the FOMA terminal.
- You cannot use half-pitch spaces in file names.

<File restriction>
- You cannot set file restrictions for the following image types:
  - Images in formats other than JPEG or GIF

<Delete this> <Delete all>
- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

<Sort>
- "By source" sorts images in the order shown below.
  - Downloaded images or images retrieved from an i-αppli → Images shot using the camera → Images imported from an miniSD memory card or using infrared communication → Images shot using Chara-den

Using the Image List display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture)

Image list display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit title**	▶**Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the selected image title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
2 **Display image**	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).	
3 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354	
4 **Compose message**	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 354	
5 **Import**	Copies the selected image to the FOMA terminal. See "Importing miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" →P. 363	
6 **Size for mail**	See "Changing the image formats for mail attachments" →P. 355	
7 **DPOF setting**	▶**Choose from the following options:** Specify the print settings for the selected image.	
	1 **Print**	▶**Enter a 2-digit number and press ●.** Sets the number of copies printed (01-99).
	2 **Print OFF**	Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.
	3 **All print OFF**	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.

Image list display function menu 2/2

1 **Copy**	▶**Select the copy destination folder and press ●.** Copies the selected image to another folder.
2 **Move**	▶**Select the folder to which the image is to be moved and press ●.** Moves the selected image to another folder.
3 **Delete this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**
4 **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code and press ●** ▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** For information on security code →P. 142
5 **Multiple-choice**	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410
6 **Memory info**	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.
7 **Title name***1	Changes the "Picture" or "Title name".

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "5 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "Picture".

Continued on next page

Note

<Edit title>

- You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card.

<DPOF setting>

- DPOF is the abbreviation for Digital Print Order Format. It specifies how to print images shot with a digital camera. Specifying the images that you shot with the FOMA terminal you want to print and the amount allows you to save the information to a memory card and print the images using that information
- You can only specify DPOF settings for up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the specified number of prints in "Image info.".

Using the Image List display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box)

Image list display function menu

1 **Display image**	Displays the selected image (Displays the my picture screen).
2 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354
3 **Import**	See "Copying miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" →P. 363
4 **Delete this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**
5 **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code and press ●** ▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** For information on security code →P. 142
6 **Multiple-choice**	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410
7 **Memory info**	Displays the amount of image data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.

About image information

You can check the following information.

Item	Description
File name	Displays the file name.
Format	Displays the file format. The format for Flash images is not displayed.
File size	Displays the file size in K byte.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) the file was saved at.
File restriction	Displays file restrictions "File restricted"/"File unrestricted".
Transfer for Repair	Shows whether or not the image file can be moved when a fault occurs.
Show Size	Displays the file display size (wide × high in dots).
Base	Displays where the file was received from. Empty when the image is a preinstalled image.
Set as display	Displays where the image is set. When no image is set, "No set" is displayed.
DPOF setting*1	Displays the specified number of prints. When no amount is set, "No set" is displayed. When more than 100 is set, "＊＊" is displayed.

*1 : Only displays image information in the miniSD memory card (Picture).

Composing a message with an image attached

If you have selected "Compose message" with a JPEG image with a file size more than 500 KB or more or a JPEG image format larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, use this procedure to resize the image so that it can be attached to i-mode mail.
In the case of JPEG and GIF images other than the ones above, the Compose i-mode mail screen is displayed without processing the images.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

<Example: For an image larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press 6 MNO “Compose message” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Attach mail**	Reduces the file size to 500 KB or less without changing the image format.
2 **QVGA scale down**	Reduces the image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.
3 **QVGA trim away**	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.

2 Check the edited image and press ● ▶ Compose the message.

For more information on composing and sending i-mode mail →P. 245

Note

- If either the image width or height is less than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, the image is enlarged without changing the aspect ratio and then the center of the image is trimmed to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size is greater than 500 KB, it is resized to 500 KB or less.
- Change of the position to trim the image cannot be performed in “QVGA trim away”. The central part of the image is trimmed.
- JPEG images that are larger than 10,000 bytes but no larger than 500 KB are deemed to be large images. If a large image is sent to a FOMA terminal, it is converted to an appropriate size for reception by i-mode terminals at the i-shot Center.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
  - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages
  - When the image is a Flash image
  - When the image is a GIF image larger than 9,000 bytes in size
  - When it is prohibited to output the image to devices other than a FOMA terminal

● Changing the image formats for mail attachments

Use this procedure to enable JPEG images with a file size more than 500 KB or an image format larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high to be attached to i-mode mail.
You cannot select this function other than above JPEG images and GIF images.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 4 GHI “Size for mail” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Attach mail**	Reduces the file size to 500 KB or less without changing the image format.
2 **QVGA scale down**	Reduces the image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.
3 **QVGA trim away**	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500 KB, it is reduced to 500 KB or less.

2 Check the edited image and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

- If either the image width or height is less than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, the image is enlarged without changing the aspect ratio and then the center of the image is trimmed to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size is greater than 500 KB, it is resized to 500 KB or less.
- The resized image is saved as a new file in the same folder as the original file.
- Change of the position to trim the image cannot be performed in "QVGA trim away". The central part of the image is trimmed.
- The titles and file names for saved images are assigned as described below.
  - Title: image XXX (where "XXX" is a 3-digit number)
  - File name: image XXX (where "XXX" is a 3-digit number)

Composing a Deco-mail

If you select "Decorate mail" for a JPEG or GIF image that is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or JPEG that has a file size larger than 9,000 bytes, the image is resized so that it can be attached to Deco-mail.
For GIF images and JPEG images other than the above, the Deco-mail compose screen is displayed without processing the image.

<Example: Image List display for the Deco-mail picture folder>

In the Deco-mail picture folder Image List display Function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press 4 GHI "Decorate mail" ▶ Choose from following options:

1 **Attach mail**	Reduces the file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image format.
2 **Sub-QCIF scale down**	Reduces the image size to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 9,000 bytes, it is reduced to 9,000 bytes or less.
3 **Sub-QCIF trim away**	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims center of the image to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high. If the file size exceeds 9,000 bytes, it is reduced to 9,000 bytes or less.

2 Check the resized image and Press ● ▶ Compose a Deco-mail.

For information on composing and sending Deco-mail → P. 254

Note

- If either the image width or height is less than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, the image is enlarged without changing the aspect ratio and then the center of the image is trimmed to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high. If the file size is greater than 9,000 bytes, it is resized to 9,000 bytes or less.
- You cannot change the trim position in "Sub-QCIF trim away". The center of the image is trimmed.
- You cannot compose Deco-mail in the following cases.
  - When you have 20 saved mails.
  - When the image is a GIF image that exceeds 9,000 bytes.

Setting the position when setting an image

When you are setting an image that is smaller than the image display area, use this procedure to specify the position in which the image appears.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 5 JKL "Positioning" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Center**	Displays the image in the center of the image display area.
2 **Top**	Displays the image at the top of the image display area.
3 **Bottom**	Displays the image at the bottom of the image display area.

<Example: For the stand-by display>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

Note

- The specified display position is valid in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.

Setting the area when setting an image

When you are setting an image that is larger than the image display area, use this procedure to specify which area of the image is displayed.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 6 MNO “Clipping area” ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **Center**	Displays the central part of the image.
2 **Upper**	Displays the upper part of the image.
3 **Lower**	Displays the lower part of the image.

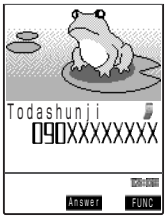
<Example: For a calling>



Central part displayed



Upper part displayed



Lower part displayed

Note

- The specified clipping area is valid in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.

Making a composite image from 4 images

- This function cannot be used with images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

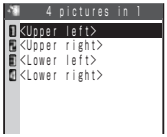
<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 2 ABC “Composite image”.

Continued on next page

2 **Select the layout position ▶Select a folder ▶Select an image and press ● ▶Repeat this process to select 4 images.**



■ **To deselect a selected image**

Select the image to be deselected and press ● ▶In the folder selection display, select "Release this" and press ●.

3 **Press 左 (Finish) ▶Press ●.**

■ **To redo the composite image**

Press 左 (Cancel).

Note

- Composite images are saved in the folder used when you select "Composite image" from the Function menu.
- The 4 images are integrated without being resized.

Using the Function Menu in the My picture Display

The Function menu in the My picture display varies depending on the folder in which the images are saved.

- My picture display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders →P. 358
- My picture display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder →P. 359
- Original Animation Playback display Function menu →P. 362
- My picture display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture) →P. 360
- My picture display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box) →P. 361
- My picture display Function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders →P. 360
- My picture display Function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder →P. 360

In the My picture display... ➡ P. 345

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:**



Example: My picture display (Camera) function menu display

Using the My picture display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

My picture display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit image**	See "Editing Images" →P. 364	
2 **Set as display**	**▶Select an item and press ●.** Sets the current image in a display (stand-by display, etc.).	
3 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354	
4 **Compose message**	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 354	
5 **Send Ir data**	**▶Select "YES" and press ●.**	
6 **Set image disp.**	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 **Fit in display**	Enlarges the image to the display size.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

7 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

My picture display function menu 2/2

1 Export	See "Copying FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card".→P. 363
2 Add image to PB	Stores the current image in the phonebook. →P. 93
3 Positioning	See "Setting the position when setting an image" →P. 356
4 Clipping area	See "Setting the area when setting an image" →P. 357
5 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
6 Retry	When you are playing an animation, this option restarts the animation from the beginning.

Note

● Icons in the Image List display show whether an image can be set in a display, attached to mail, pasted into Deco-mail, sent using the Infrared Communication function or saved onto a miniSD memory card. →P. 347

<Set as display>

● Can be set in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo displays.

● You cannot set the following images in a display:
- Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high
- Images with a file size larger than 100 KB

● Depending on the image format and the display in which the image is set, the image may not be displayed at its actual size.

● Some images cannot be set in a display.

<Add image to PB>

● You can only add images that have a file size no larger than 100 KB and an image format no larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high.

● You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set.

● You cannot add the following types of image:
- The images other than JPEG or GIF

<Delete this>

● If you try to delete an image that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
- Displays in which the deleted image was set revert to their default settings.
- Original animations and playlists are deselected.
- User icons in schedules revert to .

● If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

Using the My picture display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder

My picture display function menu

1 Set as display	▶Select an item and press ●. Sets the current image in a display (stand-by display, etc.).	
2 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
3 Retry	When you are playing an animation, this option restarts the animation from the beginning.	

Note

<Set as display>

● Can be set in the Stand-by and Wake-up displays.

Using the My picture display Function menu for the Frame, Stamp and Face stamp folders

My picture display function menu

1 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354	
2 **Set image disp.**	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 **Fit in display**	Enlarges the image to the display size.
3 **Delete this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** Pre-installed frames, stamps and face stamps cannot be deleted.	
4 **Facestamp demo***1	Uses this option to check face stamp tracking. appears when tracking is successful and appears when tracking fails.	

*1 : Only displayed in the face stamp folder.

Using the My picture display Function menu for the Deco-mail picture folder

My picture display function menu

1 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354	
2 **Decorate mail**	See "Composing a Deco-mail" →P. 356	
3 **Set image disp.**	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 **Fit in display**	Enlarges the image to the display size.
4 **Delete this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** Pre-installed images cannot be deleted.	
5 **Retry**	When you are playing an animation, this option restarts the animation from the beginning.	

Note

<Delete this>

- If you try to delete an image that has been set in a display or original animation or set as a user icon in a schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
  - Displays in which the deleted image was set revert to their default settings.
  - Original animations and playlists are deselected.
  - User icons in schedules revert to .
- If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.

Using the My picture display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Picture)

My picture display function menu

1 **Image info**	See "About image information" →P. 354	
2 **Compose message**	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 354	
3 **Set image disp.**	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 **Fit in display**	Enlarges the image to the display size.
4 **Import**	See "Copying miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" →P. 363	

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

5 DPOF setting	▶Choose from the following options: Specify the print settings for the selected image.	
	Print	▶Enter a 2-digit number and press ●. Sets the number of copies printed (01 - 99).
	Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the displayed image.
	All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.
6 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	

Note

<DPOF setting>
- You can only specify DPOF settings for up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the number of set prints in "Image info".

Using the My picture display Function menu for images on a miniSD memory card (Image box)

My picture display function menu

1 Image info	See "About image information" →P. 354	
2 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 320 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
3 Import	See "Copying miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal" →P. 363	
4 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	

Creating animations <Original animation>

Use this function to create animated cartoon up to 20 frames long using stored images.
- You ca mark up to 20 frames.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Data Box and press ● ▶Press 1 "My picture" ▶Select "Original animation" and press ●.

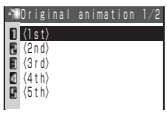
The "Original animation list display" appears.



Original animation list display

2 Select "<New>" and press ●.

3 Select a frame and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select an image and press ● ▶Repeat this process to set the desired images.



■ **To release a selected image**

Select the frame to be released and press ● ▶In the folder selection display, select "Release this" and press ●.

4 Press 左 (Finish).

Continued on next page

Note

- You can check the selected images by pressing (左) (Play) in the image selection display.
- When there are frames with no image set, only the frames with images set are played sequentially.
- You can set JPEG-format still images with an image size of 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or less.

Using the Function Menu in the Original Animation List Display

In the original animation list display... ➡ P. 361

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Original animation list display function menu

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected original animation title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" → P. 526
2 Org. animation	When <New> is selected, this option stores the original animation as a new file. When an existing original animation is selected, this option edits that original animation.
3 Display image	Plays the selected original animation (Displays the Anime view screen).
4 Set as display	▶ Select an item and press ●. Sets the original animation in a display (stand-by display, etc.).
5 Image info	Check the original anime settings. If there are no settings, "No settings" is displayed.
6 Release animat.	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Release the selected original animation.

Note

<Set as display>

- Can be set in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, and Checking displays.

Displaying an original animation

In the original animation list display... ➡ P. 361

1 Select an original animation and press ●.

The "Original animation playback display" appears.
Use (上下) to play the previous or next original animation.



Original animation playback display

Using the function menu in the Original Animation Playback display

In the original animation playback display... ➡ P. 362

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Original animation playback display function menu

1 Set as display	▶ Select an item and press ●. Sets the selected original animation in a display (stand-by display, etc.).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 396

2 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the display mode used for images smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	1 Normal (default setting)	Displays the images at their actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges the images to the display size.
3 Retry	Restarts the animation from the beginning.	

Note

<Set as display>
- Can be set in the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, and Checking displays.

Copying FOMA terminal images to a miniSD Memory Card

Use this procedure to export (copy) JPEG-format images stored in folders to a miniSD memory card.
- The exported images are saved in the folder selected during save destination folder selection (→P. 412).
- Icons in the Image List display indicate images that can be exported.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press ○ ▶Press 2 “Export”.

Note
- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data exporting.
- You cannot export pre-installed images.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- File names for exported images are assigned as described below.
  - File name: NEC_mmmm (mmmm = 0001-9999)
- You cannot export images in the following situations:
  - When the images are in formats other than JPEG
  - When the images are shot as Chara-den images with “File restricted” set after shooting
  - When it is prohibited to output the images to devices other than a FOMA terminal
  - When there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card
  - When the miniSD memory card is not compatible to the FOMA terminal
  - When an error occurs on the miniSD memory card
  - When the size of the exported files exceeds 600 KB
  - When miniSD memory card insertion processing is in progress
- When you export images to a miniSD memory card, the file sizes may increase.
- If you export an image that has a save date/time of “--/--/-- --:--”, the file save date is set to “2004/01/01 00:00”.

Copying miniSD memory card images to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) images stored on a miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.
- The imported images are saved in the My picture Inbox folder.

<Example: Image List display for a miniSD memory card (Picture)>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349

1 Press 5 “Import”.

Continued on next page

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data importing.
- You cannot import Flash images.
- You cannot import images with file sizes larger than 600 KB.
- You cannot import images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high pixels or progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. For more information on progressive JPEG images, see P. 219.
- Titles for imported images are assigned as described below.
  - The title set on the miniSD memory card
  - If no title is set on the miniSD memory card, the file name is used as the title.
- The file name used for an imported image is yyyymmddhhmmxxx (date, time and xxx (3-digit number)) or the file name of the imported image.

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Use the functions discussed here to edit images you have shot.

- The table below lists the images that can be edited.

Type of edit	Details	Image size	Ref. page
Frame	Frames an image.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high dots*1	P. 366
Retouch	Applies special effects such as sepia tones to images.	Less than 352 dots wide × 288 dots high *3 Less than 288 dots wide × 352 dots high *3	P. 365
Marker stamp	Pastes marker stamps such as hearts into images.	1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high Less than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high *3 Less than 480 dots wide × 640 dots high *3	P. 366
Character stamp	Pastes entered text stamps into images.		P. 367
Trim away	Trims an image down to the desired format.		P. 368
Brightness	Adjusts the image brightness.		P. 365
Rotate	Rotates images 90° or 180°left or right.		P. 365
Change size	Resizes images.		P. 365

*1 : The images except for 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 288 dots wide × 352 dots high, 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high, 144 dots wide × 176 dots high, 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, 96 dots wide × 128 dots high are not framed.

*2 : A bigger image than 640 dots wide × 288 dots high can be edited after reducing to below 640 dots wide × 288 dots high.

*3 : Depending on the image size relative to the pre-edited image size, it may not be possible to use some of the edit functions.

- For information on the images that can be edited →P. 348
- When “Edit image” is selected in the Photo Mode display Function menu, only the “Frame” and “Retouch” editing functions are available.

In the my picture display function menu... ➡ P. 358

1 Press (1 あ) “Edit image”.

The “Edit Image display” appears.



Edit Image display

Note

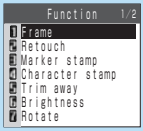
- Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase file size.
- On some images, the effects of editing may be difficult to see.
- Edited images are handled as images shot using the FOMA terminal’s camera.
- The 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high and 1280 dots wide × 960 dots high images are automatically reduced to the 640 dots wide × 480 dots high images before editing.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Using the function menu in the Edit Image display

In the edit image display... ➡ P. 364

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Edit image display function menu

Edit image display function menu 1/2

1 Frame	See "Adding frames" →P. 366	
2 Retouch	▶ Choose from the following options: Apply effects to an image.	
	1 Sharp	Sharpens the outlines in images.
	2 Blur	Softens the outlines in images.
	3 Sepia	Gives a sepia-tone image.
	4 Emboss	Gives the image an embossed effect as if it were in relief.
	5 Negative	Gives a negative image.
	6 Horizontal flip	Flips left and right in the image (mirroring).
3 Marker stamp	See "Pasting marker stamps" →P. 366	
4 Character stamp	See "Pasting character stamps" →P. 367	
5 Trim away	See "Trimming" →P. 368	
6 Brightness	▶ Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness and press ●. Adjusts the image brightness through 5 levels (–2 to ± 0 to +2).	
7 Rotate	▶ Choose from the following options: Rotate the image.	
	1 90° to right	Rotates the image 90° clockwise.
	2 90° to left	Rotates the image 90° counterclockwise.
	3 180°	Rotates the image 180°.

Edit image display function menu 2/2

1 Change size	▶ Choose from the following options: The length and height are retained so the image does not exceed the selected size.	
	1 VGA (640 × 480)	Changes to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high (VGA).
	2 CIF (352 × 288)	Changes to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF).
	3 QVGA (320 × 240)	Changes to 320 dots wide × 240dots high (QVGA).
	4 QCIF (176 × 144)	Changes to 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
	5 Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)	Changes to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high (SubQCIF).
	6 Stand-by (240 × 320)	Changes to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (for the stand-by display) (QVGA).
	7 VGA Vert. (480 × 640)	Changes to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high (VGA).
	8 CIF Vert. (288 × 352)	Changes to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF).
	9 QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)	Changes to 144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF).
	0 Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)	Changes to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high (SubQCIF).
2 Compose message	See "Composing a message with an image attached" →P. 354 You do not need to do Steps 2 and 3.	
3 Save	Saves the edited image.	

Continued on next page

2 Check the edited image and press ●.

3 Press ● ▶Select "YES" or "NO" and press ●.

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image.
Selecting "NO" saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder as the original file.

● Adding frames

- As well as the pre-installed frames (P. 174), you can also used downloaded frames.
- You can download frames from the sites listed on iMenu.

In the edit image display function menu... ➡ P. 365

1 Press 1あ "Frame" ▶Select a frame and press ●.

The image is displayed in the selected frame.
Use ◎ to change to the other frames.

■ To cancel the selected frame

Press 左 (Cancel).

Note

- Downloaded frames may be in portrait or landscape orientation. Frames can only be used when they match the size and orientation of the image.
- When a trimmed or resized image is the same size as a frame, the image and the frame form a composite image, which may cause the image quality of the composite frame to deteriorate.

● Pasting marker stamps

- As well as the pre-installed marker stamps, you can also use downloaded marker stamps.
- You can rotate and enlarge or reduce marker stamps.
- You can download marker stamps from the sites listed on iMenu.
- The table below shows the pre-installed marker stamps.

Cross		Heart1		Heart2	
Kiss		Tear		Flame	
Lightning		Sorry		Note	
Flower		Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger	
Right		Below		Left	
Above		Here		No.1	
No.2		No.3		Party	
OK		NG		Person	
Car		Asleep		Question	
Surprise		Shine		Whirlpool	
Punch		Nose		—	—

In the edit image display function menu... ➡ P. 365

1 Press 3さDEF "Marker stamp" ▶Select a marker stamp and press ●.

■ To edit a marker stamp

Press 左 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

1 90° to right	Rotates the marker stamp 90° clockwise.
2 90° to left	Rotates the marker stamp 90° counterclockwise.
3 180°	Rotates the marker stamp 180°.
4 Scale up	Enlarges the marker stamp to 2×.
5 Scale down	Reduces the marker stamp to 0.5×.

2 Position the marker stamp and press ●.



Use the ◆ to position the marker stamp.

■ To use a different marker stamp

Press 左 (Add) ▶ Repeat steps 2-3.

Note

- You can only use downloaded stamps measuring 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or less. Larger stamps are handled as GIF images.
- You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce a marker stamp.
- You cannot enlarge the marker stamp bigger than the edited image. You also cannot reduce the marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

● Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Character size: Standard size

- Character stamps can consist of up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters that can be entered differs depending on the image format and character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

In the edit image display function menu... ➡ P. 365

1 Press 4 GHI “Character stamp” ▶ Enter the text and press ●.

■ To edit a character stamp

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 Character input	▶ Enter the text and press ●. The text is reentered.	
2 Character color	▶ Use ◆ to select the color and press ●. Sets the color of the character stamp. Press 左 (Change) to switch to the other color palette.	
3 Font	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the font used in the character stamp.	
	1 Gothic style	Sets a gothic font.
	2 Pop style	Sets a pop font.
4 Character size	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the size of the character stamp.	
	1 Enlargement size	Sets a large character size.
	2 Standard size	Sets the standard character size.
	3 Reduction size	Sets a small character size.

Continued on next page

2 Position the character stamp and press ●.



Use the ✣ to position the character stamp.

Note

- The font thickness is the thickness specified in the "Font" setting.
- For an i-shot S (144 dots wide × 144 dots high) image, if you reduce the character size and ensure they do not overlap each other, you can paste up to 81 full-pitch or 162 half-pitch characters.

● Trimming

In the edit image display function menu... ➡ P. 365

1 Press 5 JKL "Trim away" ▶ Choose from the following options:

Trimming display 1/2

1 **CIF (352 × 288)**	Trims the image to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF).
2 **QVGA (320 × 240)**	Trims the image to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA).
3 **QCIF (176 × 144)**	Trims the image to 176 dots wide× 144 dots high (QCIF).
4 **Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)**	Trims the image to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high (SubQCIF).
5 **Stand-by (240 × 320)**	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA).
6 **CIF Vert. (288 × 352)**	Trims the image to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF).
7 **QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)**	Trims the image to 144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF).
8 **Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)**	Trims the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high (SubQCIF).
9 **Background (240 × 270)**	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 270 dots high for use in menu backgrounds.
0 **Menu icon (64 × 63)**	Trims the image to 64 dots wide × 63 dots high for use as a menu icon.

Trimming display 2/2

1 **Chat (80 × 80)**	Trims the image to 80 dots wide × 80 dots high for use in Chat.

2 Position the trimming frame and press ●.



Use the neuropointer or ✣ to position the trimming frame.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. ➞P. 396

<i-motion>

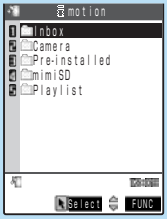
Playing Movies You Have Shot/i-motions

Use this procedure to use the FOMA terminal's Movie Player to play movies you have shot, i-motions downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites and movies stored on miniSD memory cards from the "i-motion" folder in the Data box.

● To download i-motions to the FOMA terminal →P. 334

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Data box and press ● ▶ Press 2 abc "i-motion".

The "Folder list display" appears.



Folder list display

2 Select a folder and press ●.

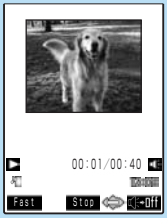
The "Movie list display (Preview)" appears.
For a guide to the Movie List display →P. 370



Movie list display (Preview)

3 Select a movie and press ●.

The "i-motion display" appears and movie playback begins.
Use ○ to play the next or previous movie.
For information on controls you can use during movie playback →P. 370



i-motion display

When playback ends, the "i-motion stopped display" appears.



i-motion stopped display

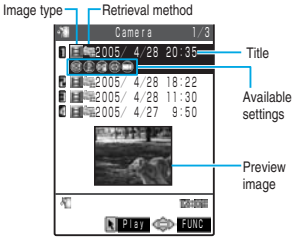
Continued on next page

Note

- The Folder List display can also be displayed by selecting the desktop icon and pressing ● ▶ Press J-sky "i-motion".
- If you try to play an i-motion or movie with sound when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the movie. Select "YES" and press ● to play the movie with sound. Select "NO" and press ● to play only the video with no sound.
- The video or sound in a movie may stop in mid-movie if you receive mail or a Message Request/Free during movie or i-motion playback.
- You may not be able to play movies that were not shot on a FOMA N901iC.

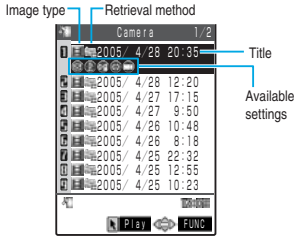
Guide to the Preview display and Title list

- For information on the icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings →P. 346
- For information on titles and file names →P. 347



Preview display

The display shows 4 movies listed by title with a preview image from the selected movie displayed below the titles. Icons show the image types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie.
Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video such as an sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice).



Title list

The display shows 9 movies listed by title with icons showing the image types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie.

Note

- At a preview display and a title list, a neuropointer is (white). Even if it moves a pointer, it is not selected automatically. If ● is pressed, it will be in a selection state, and it will become determination if ● is pressed once again.

Operations available during i-motion playback

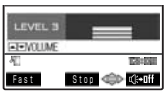
You can use the operations shown below during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Movie Player action
●	Pauses/resumes playback.
⊙ (↑), ⊙ (↓)	Adjusts the volume.
⊙	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion.*1
⊙	Fast forward
⊙	Mute (disabled when there is no audio)
⊙ for 1 second or longer	Skip back*2
⊙ for 1 second or longer	Skip forward*2

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Control keys	Movie Player action
● to pause playback and then 左	Frame advance (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)
● to pause playback and then select "Slow" from the Function menu.	Slow playback
CLR	End

*: You cannot control the movie if you play it from the Data acquisition display (P. 335).
*: May not be available in some i-motions.

Note

- The default i-motion volume set at the time of shipment is level 4. The volume can be set to a level between 0 and 6, and the setting is retained the next time the i-motion is played.
- The volume set for i-motions does not affect the ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- Folding the FOMA terminal during playback ends the i-motion and returns you to the folder list display.
- Seek (skip back/forward) can be used while movies are playing (including slow playback and fast forward) and while movies are paused. Sound is muted during seeking (skip back/forward).
- Seek (skip back/forward) cannot be used in the following situations:
  - When playback is stopped
  - While a streaming i-motion is playing
  - During playback of an i-motion that can be played during downloading
  - When the file has no seek points
  - When the interval between seek points is too wide
  - When the file only has a seek point at the beginning of the file
  - When the file is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip back/forward) or during frame advance playback.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

If an underlined phone number, e-mail address or URL is displayed at the bottom of the display when playback ends, you can use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (P. 222).
If you can use the Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be stored in the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the Function menu and then select "New" or "Add".

For information on adding data to the phonebook →P. 93



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Using the function menu in the Movie List display

The options available in the Movie List display Function menu differ depending on the folder in which the movie is saved.

- Movie List display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders →P. 372
- Movie List display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder →P. 373
- Movie List display Function menu for a miniSD memory card →P. 374
- If you set the ring tone, the ring tone setting is also set to the same ring tone.

In the movie list display... ➡ P. 369

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Example: Movie list display (Inbox) function menu

Using the Movie List display Function Menu for the INBOX, Camera, and User Created Folders

Movie list display function menu 1/3

1 Edit i-motion	See "Editing Movies" →P. 379	
2 Edit title	▶Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected movie title. The title can contain up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
3 Set as ring tone	▶Choose from the following options: Set the selected movie as a ring tone.	
	1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	2 Video-phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
	3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.
	6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.
4 Stand-by display	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the selected movie in the stand-by display.	
5 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" →P. 374	
6 Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the selected movie attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	
7 Send Ir data	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	

Movie list display function menu 2/3

1 Export	See "Copying FOMA Terminal Movies to a miniSD Memory Card" →P. 378	
2 Move folder	▶Select the folder to which the movie is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected movie to another folder.	
3 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136	
4 Edit file name	▶Edit the file name and press ●. Edits the selected movie file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
5 File restriction	▶Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions for the selected movie.	
	1 File unrestricted (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
6 Reset title	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Resets a changed title to the title used when the movie was retrieved.	
7 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	

Movie list display function menu 3/3

1 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142
2 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410
3 Memory info	Displays the amount of movie data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

4 Sort	▶Choose from the following options: Sort movies.	
	1 Chronological ↑ (default setting)	Arranges movies in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges movies in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges movies in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges movies in descending order by title.
	5 By size ↑	Arranges movies in ascending order by size.
	6 By size ↓	Arranges movies in descending order by size.
	7 By source	Arranges movies in ascending order by retrieval method.
5 Listing	▶Choose from the following options: Specify how to display the movie display list.	
	1 Title	Switches to title list.
	2 Title + image (Default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.

Note

<Set as ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion where setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable".

<Stand-by display>

- If you delete a movie or i-motion that was set in the stand-by display, the stand-by display reverts to its default setting.
- Movies or i-motions cannot be set in the stand-by display in the following situations:
  - When the movie or i-motion is voice only or text only
  - When the movie format is not MP4
  - When there are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - When the movie is not compatible with the FOMA terminal
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly in the stand-by display.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from an i-motion set in the stand-by display.

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
  - When the movie has a file size of over 500 KB
  - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages
  - When there are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - When the movie was shot as a Chara-den movie with "File restricted" set after shooting
  - When it is prohibited to output the i-motion to devices other than a FOMA terminal
- You can trim an i-motion to a size that allows it to be attached to i-mode mail. →P. 383

<Sort>

- "By source" sorts movies in the order shown below. Movies or i-motions with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
  - Downloaded i-motions or i-motions retrieved from an i-αppli → Movies shot using the camera → Movies imported from an miniSD memory card or using infrared communication → Movies shot using Chara-den

Using the Movie List display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder

Movie list display function menu

1 Set as ring tone	▶Choose from the following options: Set the selected movie as a ring tone.	
	1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	2 Video-phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
	3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.
	6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.
2 Stand-by display	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the selected movie in the stand-by display.	

Continued on next page

3 Listing	▶ Choose from the following options: Specify how to display the movie display list.	
	1 Title	Switches to title list.
	2 Title + image (Default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.

Using the Movie List display Function menu for a miniSD memory card

Movie list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected movie title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" →P. 374
3 Import	See "Copying miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal" →P. 379
4 Copy	▶ Select the folder to which the movie is to be copied and press ●. Copies the selected movie to another folder.
5 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the movie is to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected movie to another folder.
6 Reset title	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Resets a changed title to the title used when the movie was retrieved.
7 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Movie list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142	
2 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410	
3 Memory info	Displays the amount of movie data saved and the amount of available space on the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card.	
4 Listing	▶ Choose from the following options: Specify how to display the movie display list.	
	1 Name*1	Switches to title list. (or file name list).
	2 Name + Image*1 (Default Setting)	Switches to preview screen.
	3 File Name*2 (Default Setting)	Switches to file name list.

*1 : The name is either the file name or title.
*2 : If you have selected the File name, "3Title" is displayed.

About i-motion information

You can check the following information.

Item	Description
File name	Displays the file name.
Format	Displays the file format.
Default title	Displays the original title.
Creator	Displays the creator of the file. If there is no information about the creator, "Unknown" is displayed.
Copyright	Displays the copyright information of the file. If there is no copyright information, "Unknown" is displayed.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) the file was saved at.
File size	Displays the file size in kilobytes (Kb).
Display size	Displays the file display size (width × high in dots).
Received from	Displays where the file was received from.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Item	Description	
Description	Displays the file description. If there is no description, “Unknown” is displayed.	
File restriction	Displays file restrictions “File restricted/File unrestricted”.	
Replay restriction	If there are count restrictions	Displays “Remaining play count/Total play count”.
	If there are period restrictions	Displays “Date file stored/Date of play period”.
	If there are span restrictions	Displays “Playable date/Date of play span”.
	If there are play restrictions	“Not restricted” is displayed.
Video	Displays “Included/Not included/Unplayable” for video.	
Audio	Displays audio information “AMR/AAC/Not included/Unplayable/Playable”.	
Text	Displays “Included/Not included/Unplayable” for text.	
Ring tone	Displays whether the ring tone is “Available/Unavailable”. When a ring tone is set, the setting is displayed.	
Receive display	Displays whether the receive display is “Available/Unavailable”. When a receive display is set, the setting is displayed.	

Using the function menu in the i-motion stopped display

The options available in the Pause Movie display Function menu differ depending on the folder in which the movie is saved.

- i-motion stopped display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders →P. 375
- i-motion stopped display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder →P. 376
- i-motion stopped display Function menu for a miniSD memory card →P. 377

In the i-motion stopped display... ➡ P. 369

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

i-motion stopped display Function menu for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders

i-motion stopped display function menu 1/2

1 **Normal play**	Plays the movie at normal speed. When the movie is paused, this option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 **Slow**	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, select “Normal play” from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
3 **Fast**	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, select “Normal play” from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
4 **Stop**	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies List display.
5 **Position to play**	**▶Use ⊙ to select the point where playback is to begin and press ●.** Begins playback from a specified position.
6 **Edit i-motion**	See “Editing Movies” → P. 379
7 **Compose message**	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current movie attached. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P. 245

i-motion stopped display function menu 2/2

1 **Set as ring tone**	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the current movie as a ring tone.	
	1 **Phone**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	2 **Video-phone**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
	3 **Mail**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	4 **Chat mail**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	5 **Msg. Request**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.
	6 **Msg. Free**	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.

Continued on next page

2 Stand-by display	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the current movie in the stand-by display.	
3 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" →P. 374	
4 Send Ir data	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
5 Export	See "Copying FOMA terminal images to miniSD Memory Card" →P. 363	
6 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136	
7 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.

Note

<Slow>
- Movies are muted during slow playback.
- You cannot use slow playback with a streaming i-motion that is playing while you are downloading the i-motion.

<Fast>
- Movies are muted during fast playback.
- You cannot use fast playback with a streaming i-motion that is playing while you are downloading the i-motion.

<Position to play>
- You may not be able to select the playback position for some movies and i-motions.

<Set as ring tone>
- You can only set a movie or i-motion where setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether setting the i-motion as a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable".

<Stand-by display>
- If you delete a movie or i-motion that was set in the stand-by display, the stand-by display reverts to its default setting.
- Movies or i-motions cannot be set in the stand-by display in the following situations:
  - When the movie or i-motion is voice only or text only
  - When the movie format is not MP4
  - When there are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - When the movie is not compatible with the FOMA terminal
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly in the stand-by display.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from an i-motion set in the stand-by display.

<Compose message>
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
  - When the file size exceeds 500 KB.
  - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages
  - When there are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - When the movie was shot as a Chara-den movie with "File restricted" set after shooting
  - When it is prohibited to output the movie to devices other than a FOMA terminal
- You can trim an i-motion to a size that allows it to be attached to i-mode mail. →P. 383

<Set image disp.>
- "Fit in display" is only valid while a Data Box i-motion is stopped (or paused). When you return to the Movie List display, the setting reverts to "Actual size".

i-motion stopped display Function menu for the Pre-installed folder

i-motion stopped display function menu 1/2

1 Normal play	Plays the movie at normal speed. When the movie is paused, this option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 Slow	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
3 Fast	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
4 Stop	Exits Movie Player and returns to the Movies List display.
5 Position to play	▶Use ⊙ to select the point where playback is to begin and press ●. Begins playback from a specified position.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

6 Set as ring tone	▶Choose from the following options: Set the current movie as a ring tone.	
	1 Phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for voice calls.
	2 Video-phone	Sets the movie as the ring tone for video-phone calls.
	3 Mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for mail.
	4 Chat mail	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Chat mail.
	5 Msg. Request	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Request.
	6 Msg. Free	Sets the movie as the ring tone for Message Free.
7 Stand-by display	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the current movie in the stand-by display.	

i-motion stopped display function menu 2/2

1 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.

i-motion stopped display Function menu for a miniSD memory card

i-motion stopped display function menu 1/2

1 Normal play	Plays the movie at normal speed. When the movie is paused, this option restarts movie playback from the point where the movie was paused.
2 Slow	Plays the movie at slow speed. To return to normal playback, select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
3 Fast	Fast forwards the movie. To return to normal playback, select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.
4 Stop	Exits Movie Player and returns to the Movies List display.
5 Position to play	▶Use ◎ to select the point where playback is to begin ▶Press ●. Begins playback from a specified position.
6 i-motion info	See "About i-motion information" →P. 374
7 Import	See "Copying miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal" →P. 379

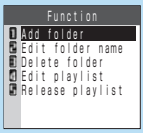
i-motion stopped display function menu 2/2

1 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size (default setting)	Displays images at actual size.
	2 Fit in display	Enlarges images to the display size.

Using the function menu in the Program folder

In the i-motion folder list display... ➡ P. 369

1 Select the Program folder and press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Program folder function menu display

Continued on next page

Program folder function menu

1 **Add folder**	▶**Enter the title and press ●.** Adds a folder. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Edit folder name**	You cannot edit the name of a program folder.
3 **Delete folder**	You cannot delete a program folder.
4 **Edit playlist**	Starts playlist editing. You can use this option to edit existing playlists. See "Playing movies in your preferred order" →P. 378
5 **Release playlist**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**

Playing movies in your preferred order <Play movie playlist>

In the program folder function menu... ➡ P. 377

1 Press 4 GHI "Edit playlist" ▶Select the number under which the movie is to be added and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select a movie and press ● ▶Repeat this procedure to add other movies to the playlist.



■ **To release an added movie**

Select the movie to be released and press ● ▶Select "Release this" in the folder selection display and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

2 Press 左 (Finish).

The "i-motion Folder List display" appears.
Selecting the Program folder and pressing ● starts program playback and the stored movie is played back repeatedly.

Note

- If you delete an i-motion or movie that has been added to a playlist, the playlist is canceled.

Copying FOMA Terminal Movies to a miniSD Memory Card

Use this procedure to export (copy) movies stored in the i-motion Inbox folder, Camera folder and user-created folders to a miniSD memory card.

- The exported movies are saved in the folder selected during save destination folder selection (P. 412).
- You cannot export movies for which file restrictions are set.

< Example: Movie list display for the camera and user-created folders >

In the function menu for the movie list display... ➡ P. 371

1 Press ○ ▶Press 1 あ "Export".

Start exporting to the miniSD memory card.
The exporting to the miniSD memory card may require time depending upon the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until export is completed.

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data exporting.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and movies are saved in the new folder.
- File names for exported movies are assigned as described below.
  - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001-FFF (hexadecimal notation))
- You cannot export movies in the following situations:
  - When the movies are shot as Chara-den movies with "File restricted" set after shooting
  - When it is prohibited to output the movies to devices other than a FOMA terminal
  - When there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card
  - When the media is not a compatible miniSD memory card
  - When an error occurs on the miniSD memory card
  - When miniSD memory card insertion processing is in progress
- If you export an movie that has a save date/time of "--/--/-- --:--", the file save date is set to "2004/01/01 00:00".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Copying miniSD memory card movies to the FOMA terminal

Use this procedure to import (copy) movies stored on a miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

● The imported movies are saved in the i-motion Inbox folder.

<Example: Movie List display for a miniSD memory card>

In the movie list display function menu... ➡ P. 371

1 Press 3 DEF “Import”.

Importing begins.

Depending on the size of the movie, importing may take some time. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until importing is completed.

Note

● Do not remove the miniSD memory card during data importing.

● You cannot import movies in the following situations:

- When the movie includes an unsupported codec
- When movie contains no voice or images
- When the movie image bit rate exceeds 384k bps
- When the movie format is not 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, 176 dots wide × 144 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high.
- When seek cannot be used

* You may be unable to import some movies even when none of the above applies.

● Movies larger than 800 KB are truncated to the first 800 KB or less.

● Titles for imported movies are assigned as described below.

- The title set on the miniSD memory card
- If no title is set on the miniSD memory card, the file name is used as the title

<Edit movie>

Editing Movies

● You cannot use the Multi tasking function while editing a movie.

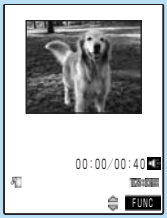
● For information on which movies can be edited →P. 348

<Example: Movie List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the movie list display... ➡ P. 369

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 “Edit i-motion”.

The “Edit movie display” appears.



Edit movie display

Note

● Movie editing may result in loss of quality or a change in the file size.

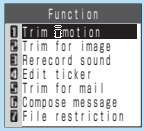
● If you receive a call, remove the battery pack or fold the FOMA terminal during editing, the editing information currently set is saved. However, the information is not saved if the FOMA terminal's memory for movies is full.

● The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Using the function menu in the Edit Movie display

In the edit movie display... ➡ P. 379

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Edit movie display function menu

Edit movie display function menu

1 **Trim i-motion**	See "Trimming sections of movies" →P. 380	
2 **Trim for image**	▶ **Press ● ▶ Press ● in the frame you want to trim ▶ Press (左) (Set) ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Select a folder and press ●.** Trims the selected frame as a still image.	
3 **Rerecord sound**	Erases the soundtrack so that new sound can be recorded. See "Rerecording sound" →P. 381	
4 **Edit ticker**	See "Adding tickers to movies" →P. 381	
5 **Trim for mail**	See "Trimming movies for use as mail attachments" →P. 383	
6 **Compose message**	Composes an i-mode mail message with the edited movie attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245	
7 **File restriction**	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the file restrictions for the edited movie.	
	1 **File unrestricted** (default setting)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 **File restricted**	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.

Note

<Compose message>
- You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following situations:
  - When the edited movie has a file size of 500 KB or larger
  - When there are already 20 stored draft mail messages

Trimming sections of movies

In the edit movie display function menu... ➡ P. 380

1 Press (あ) "Trim i-motion" ▶ Press (左) (Start) to start trimming.

■ To start trimming at a scene mid-way through the movie

Press ● to play the movie until the starting point for trimming is reached and then press (左) (Start).

2 Press ● at the end of the section to be trimmed ▶ Press (左) (End).

The trimmed section of movie is played. Playback stops automatically at the end of the section.

■ To check the trimmed section again

Press (左) (Play).

3 Press ● ▶ Press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during movie trimming.
- When an i-motion is trimmed, the playback time may increase.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Rerecording sound

In the edit movie display function menu... ➡ P. 380

1 **Press 3 DEF “Rerecord sound” ▶Press 左 (Start) to start recording.**

■ **To record sound mid-way through a scene**

Press ● to play the movies until the starting point for recording is reached and then press 左 (Start).

2 **When recording is completed, press 左 (End).**

Movie playback continues. Press 左 (Start), 左 (End) to continue recording.

3 **When you have finished rerecording, press ●.**

■ **To check the rerecorded movie**

Press 左 (Play).

4 **Press ● ▶Press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.**

Note

● Rerecording sound onto movies with tickers erases the tickers.

Adding tickers to movies

Default setting	Font color: Black Background color: White Font size: Normal Font position: Left Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

Use this procedure to add new subtitles to a movie or edit existing tickers.

● You can edit up to 5 tickers per movie. Each ticker can consist of up to 20 full-pitch characters.

● See “Entering Text”→P. 526

In the edit movie display function menu... ➡ P. 380

1 **Press 4 GHI “Edit ticker” ▶Press 1 あ “New”.**

2 **Press 左 (End) ▶Enter the ticker text and press ●.**

■ **To start the subtitles at a scene mid-way through the movie**

Press ● ▶Press ● at the scene where the subtitles are to begin and then press 左 (Start).

3 **Set any effect to be applied to the ticker.**

1 **Font color**	▶**Use ◆ to select the color and press ●.** Sets the text color. Press 左 (Change) to switch to the other color palette.
2 **Background color**	▶**Use ◆ to select the color and press ●.** Sets the background color. Press 左 (Change) to switch to the other color palette.
3 **Font size**	▶**Select 1 あ “Normal” or 2 ABC “Large”.** Sets the text size.

Continued on next page

4 Word alignment	▶Choose from the following options: Set text display position. This setting is only valid when scrolling is set to "OFF".	
	1 Left	Displays the ticker at the left edge of the display.
	2 Center	Displays the ticker in the center of the display.
	3 Right	Displays the ticker at the right edge of the display.
5 Blink	▶Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Specifies whether the tickers flash.	
6 Underline	▶Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF". Specifies whether the tickers are underlined.	
7 Scroll	▶Choose from the following options: Set the scrolling mode.	
	1 OFF	Cancels scrolling.
	2 Scroll in	Select "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top" or "Top to bottom" as the scrolling direction and then press ●.
	3 Scroll out	
	4 Scroll in & out	
8 Finish setting	Exits the ticker effects settings.	

4 When you have completed the settings, press 8 "Finish setting".

5 Press ● ▶Press ● at the point where ticker display is to end ▶Press ▼左 (End).

If a point is reached during playback at which previously recorded tickers begin, a message appears asking whether to set that point as the end point for the edited tickers. Select "YES" and press ● to add the new tickers. Select "NO" and press ● to return to the tickers List display.

To continue editing tickers, repeat steps 2-5.

■ If the tickers list appears

Press ▼左 (Finish).

To check the movie with the inserted subtitles, press ▼左 (Play).

To edit the subtitles, press ▼右 (Edit).

For information on editing subtitles →P. 382

Next, proceed to step 7.

6 When you have finished editing the tickers, press ▼右 (FUNC) ▶Press 6 "Finish editing".

7 Press ● ▶Press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

- The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- If 6 or more tickers are used in a movie that was retrieved using infrared communication or data communication, the 6th and subsequent tickers are deleted during editing. If a ticker contains more than 20 full-pitch characters, the 21st and subsequent characters are deleted and unsupported effects are also deleted.
- Ticker effects that are not supported on the FOMA N901iC may be deleted or modified.

● Correcting added tickers

- If you attempt to correct tickers in a movie to which tickers have already been added, a message appears warning you that the ticker data may be deleted. To correct an existing ticker, Select "YES" and press ●.

In the edit movie display function menu... ➡ P. 380

1 Press 4 “Edit ticker” ▶Press 2 “Edit”.



The “Tickers List display” appears.

■ To check the ticker details

Select the ticker and press ● ▶Check the details and press CLR.

2 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Change text	Edits the text of the ticker.
2 Change effect	Changes ticker effects such as the character color, background color and scrolling.
3 Change start po.	Resets the ticker starting point.
4 Change end point	Resets the ticker ending point.
5 Add ticker	▶Select “<Available>” and press ● ▶Add the ticker.
6 Delete ticker	▶Select “YES” and press ●.

3 When you have finished editing the tickers, press (左) (Finish).

Note

- You cannot edit the tickers when no tickers have been added.

● Trimming movies for use as mail attachments

In the edit movie display function menu... ➡ P. 380

1 Press 5 “Trim for mail” ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Mail (L)	Trims a movie larger than 290K bytes or more and smaller than 490K bytes to an image 290K bytes or less.
2 Mail (S)	Trims a movie smaller than 490K bytes to an image 290K bytes or less or 490K bytes or less. If the image is larger than 290K bytes or more or smaller than 490 K bytes, you can not select this image.

2 Press ● ▶Press ● at the start of the section to be trimmed ▶Press (左) (Start) to start trimming.

Playback stops automatically when the maximum size for use as a mail attachment is reached.

■ To check the trimmed section of movie

Press (左) (Play).

3 Press ● ▶Press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.

Note

- Movies with a file size of 290 KB or more shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera can be trimmed using “Trim for mail”.
- The tickered movie is not trimmed.
- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during movie trimming.

What is Chara-den?

“Chara-den” is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character to the other party’s FOMA terminal in a videophone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

Display Chara-den

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image setting: Dimo

- To download “Chara-den” characters →P. 220
- The pre-installed “Chara-den” characters are shown below.



Dimo

©BVIG



Cotto



Natali

1 **Press Menu ▶Select Data Box and press ● ▶Press 4 GHI “Chara-den”.**

The “Chara-den list display” appears.



Chara-den list display

2 **Select Chara-den and press ●.**

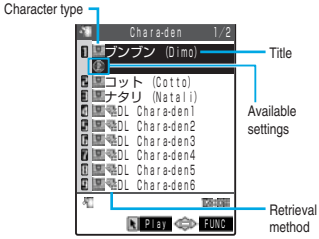
The “Chara-den player display” is displayed.



Chara-den player display

Guide to the Chara-den list

●For information on the retrieval method and available setting icons →P. 346
●For information on titles and file names →P. 347



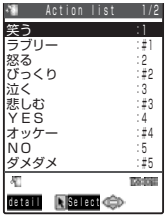
The display shows 9 Chara-den characters listed by title with icons that show the image types (Chara-den), retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each character.

Controlling the Chara-den character

This function allows you to choose from a range of pre-installed actions for your Chara-den character to perform.

In the Chara-den player display... ➡ P. 384

1 Press (i-mode) ▶Check the Action list.



The actions shown in the list differ depending on the type of character.
A number such as "1" or "#1" to the right of an action in the list indicates that pressing that key on the FOMA terminal's keypad during Chara-den playback will make the character perform that action.

■ To check the details of an action

Select the action and press (左) (detail) ▶Check the details and press (右) (Exit).

2 Control the Chara-den character.

■ To change the Action mode

Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ 6 "Change action".
This command switches to Partial Action mode when the is displayed and to Full Action mode when the is displayed.

(Full)
An action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Partial)
An action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move to express feelings.

■ To use the keypad to select actions during Chara-den playback

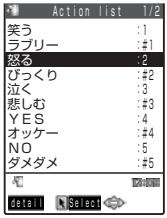
The keypad keys that can be pressed to make the displayed character perform actions are as follows:

Full action: Press the single-digit number (1-9) or hash-digit combination (#-1-#-9) shown to the right of the action in the action list.

Partial action: Press the double-digit number (1-1-9-9) shown to the right of the action in the action list.

Continued on next page

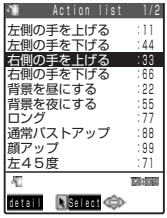
<Example: To show “Anger” in full-action mode>
※A Chara-den is displayed in normal view.





Press 2 ABC.

<Example: To raise the character’s left hand in partial-action mode>





Press 3 DEF 3 DEF.

■ To have the character’s mouth move in time to your voice



With some Chara-den characters, you can make the displayed character’s mouth move as if it were saying the things you say when you talk into the phone.

If you use the Function menu or press one of the keypad keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

Using the function menu in the Chara-den List display

In the Chara-den list display... ➡ P. 384

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Chara-den list display function menu 1/2

1 **Chara-den call**	▶ **Enter the phone number and press ⊡.** Makes a video-phone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image.
2 **Substitute image**	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the alternate image for video-phone calls.
3 **Rec. Chara-den**	See “Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie” →P. 388
4 **Edit title**	▶ **Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the selected Chara-den character title. The title can contain up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
5 **Chara-den info**	See “About Chara-den information” →P. 388
6 **Memory info**	Displays the amount of Chara-den data saved and the amount of available space.
7 **Add desktop icon**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●.** See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136

Chara-den list display function menu 2/2

1 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	
2 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142	
3 Multiple-choice	See "Selecting multiple data items" →P. 410	
4 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display (default setting)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
5 Reset title	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Resets a changed title to the title used when the movie was retrieved.	

Note

<Memory info>

- The displayed file size is intended only as an approximate guide.

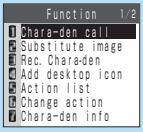
<Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you try to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as the alternate image for video-phone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If you selected "YES" to delete the character, a pre-installed Chara-den character (Dimo) is set as your alternate image. If you have already deleted Dimo, a pre-installed still image is sent as your alternate image.
- If you try to delete a "Chara-den" character that has been stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If you select "YES" to delete the character, the character stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

Using the function menu in the Chara-den Player display

In the Chara-den player display... ➡ P. 384

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:



Chara-den player display function menu

Chara-den player display function menu 1/2

1 Chara-den call	▶Enter the phone number and press ⊡. Makes a video-phone call with the selected Chara-den character as the substitute image.
2 Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the alternate image for video-phone calls.
3 Rec. Chara-den	See "Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie" →P. 388
4 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
5 Action list	Displays the Action list.
6 Change action	Changes the Action mode. →P. 385
7 Chara-den info	Displays information for the current Chara-den character.

Chara-den player display function menu 2/2

1 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display (default setting)	Enlarges the image to the display size.

Continued on next page

About Chara-den information

You can check the following information.

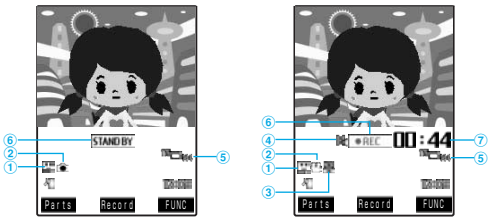
Item	Describe
Default title	Displays the original title. If there is no title name, “Unknown” is displayed.
File name	Displays the file name.
Rec. file restriction	Displays “File restricted” or “Not restricted” as the file restrictions that apply after images are shot.
File restrictions	Displays file restrictions “File restricted” or “File unrestricted”.
Display size	Displays the file display size (width x high in dots).
File size	Displays the file size in kilobytes (Kb).
Received from	Displays where the file was received from Blank for preinstalled Chara-dens.
Saved at	Displays the date (Year/Month/Day Hours/Minutes) the file was saved at.
Substituted image	Displays substituted image settings. If nothing is set, “No setting” is displayed.

Note

- “Rec. file restriction” indicates whether or not restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using “Chara-den” is edited, exported to a miniSD memory card or attached to i-mode mail.

Saving a Chara-den character as an image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

Guide to the Record Chara-den display



Recording a still image　　Recording a movie

① Shows the currently selected action mode.
- : Full
- : Partial

② Shows the recording mode.
- : Photo mode
- : Movie mode

③ Shows the “Storage setting” setting.
- : Normal
- : Fine mode
- : Long dur. mode
- : Move mode

④ Shows the “Movie type set” setting.
- : Video+voice
- : Video

⑤ Shows the “Select size” setting.
- : QCIF (176 × 144)
- : Small (117 × 96)

⑥ Shows the recording status.
- STAND BY : Stand-by
- REC : Recording

⑦ Shows the remaining recording time in the “min:sec” format (not shown until recording begins).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Recording a still image

In the Chara-den player display function menu... ➡ P. 387

1 Press 3DEF “Rec. Chara-den”.

The “Record Chara-den display (Image)” appears.

2 Perform an action ▶Press ●.

For information on Chara-den actions →P. 385

■ To set partial action

Press 左 (Parts).

■ To re-record the action

Press CLR.



Record Chara-den display (Image)

3 Press ●.

The recorded still image is saved in the My picture Camera folder.

Note

- The FOMA terminal makes no shooting tone in the following situations:
  - When “Phone” in ring volume is set to “Silent”
  - When manner mode or super silent mode is set
  - When “Phone vol.” in original manner mode is set to “Silent”

Using the function menu in the Record Chara-den display

In the record Chara-den display (Still image/Movie)... ➡ P. 389, 390

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Record Chara-den display function menu 1/2

1 Switch Chara-den	▶Select a Chara-den character and press ●. Changes the Chara-den character being recorded.	
2 Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as the alternate image for video-phone calls.	
3 Action list	Displays the Action list.	
4 Change action	Changes the Action mode. →P. 385	
5 Set image disp.	▶Choose from the following options: Set the image display mode.	
	1 Actual size	Displays the image at its actual size.
	2 Fit in display (default setting)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
6 Movie mode*1	Changes the Photo mode and Movie mode.	
7 Select size*2	▶Choose from the following options: Set the recorded image format.	
	1 QCIF (176×144) (default setting)	Records with an image size of 176 dots wide×144 dots high (QCIF).
	2 Small (117×96)	Records with an image size of 117 dots wide×96 dots high.

*1 : If you have selected movie mode, “6 Photo mode” is displayed. The default setting is Photo mode.

*2 : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

Continued on next page

Record Chara-den display function menu 2/2

1 **Movie type set**[*1]	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set movie shooting mode.	
	1 **Video+voice** (default setting)	Records movies with both images and sound.
	2 **Video**	Records movies with images only.
2 **Storage setting**[*1]	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the image quality and duration when movies are recorded.	
	1 **Normal** (default setting)	Records movies in the standard image quality and duration.
	2 **Fine mode**	Selects this option to shoot movies with better image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	3 **Long dur. mode**	Selects this option to shoot longer movies. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	4 **Move mode**	Selects this option to shoot images with smoother motion. Shooting may take slightly longer than with the "Normal" setting.

*1 : Cannot be set in Photo mode.

Note

<Switch Chara-den>
- If you change the Chara-den character, the Action mode is set to whole Action.

Recording a movie

In the record Chara-den display (Still image) function menu... ➡ P. 389

1 Press 6 "Movie mode".

The "Record Chara-den display (Movie)" appears.



Record Chara-den display (Movie)

2 Press ● ▶Perform an action ▶Press ●.

For information on Chara-den actions →P. 385

■ To set partial action

Press 4 (Parts).

■ To check the recorded movie

Press 6 (FUNC) ▶ 2 "Check w/ playing".

■ To re-record the movie

Press C.

3 Press ●.

The recorded movie is saved in the i-motion Inbox folder.

Note

- If action operation is carried out during photography, the key pad sound may be recorded.
- The image format is Restricted QCIF (176 × 144) and cannot be changed.
- The FOMA terminal makes no shooting tone in the following situations:
  - When "Phone" in ring volume is set to "Silent"
  - When manner mode or super silent mode is set
  - When "Phone vol." in original manner mode is set to "Silent"
- When an earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the FOMA terminal, sound is recorded through the earphone/microphone.

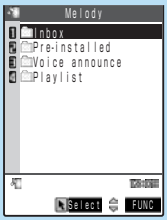
<Melody player>

Playing Melodies

Use this procedure to use the FOMA terminal's Melody Player to play pre-installed melodies and sound effects and melodies downloaded from i-mode sites or Internet websites from the "Melody" folder in the Data box.

1 Press Menu 1 6.

The "Folder list display" appears.



Folder list display

2 Select a folder and press ●.

The "Melody list display" appears.
For a guide to the Melody List display →P. 392



Melody list display

3 Select a melody and press ●.

The "Melody player display" appears and the melody starts playing.
Use ○ to play the next or previous melody.
For information on controls you can use while playing a melody →P. 392



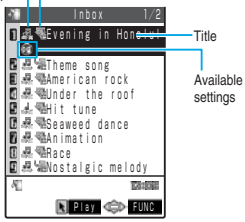
Melody player display

Note

- Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting. If "Silent" or "Step" is set, melodies are played at the "Level 2" volume.
- If you try to play a melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.
- You cannot select anything other than "Pre-installed" while in PIM lock.
- You can enjoy rich sound with 3D sound compatible i-motions. →P. 116

Guide to the Melody List

- Melodies with file restrictions are marked with the icon next to the melody icon.
- Melodies with or before the title are restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will play. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played, though the entire melody can be played in Melody player. You can also change the file names and titles of these melodies.



The display shows 9 melodies listed by title with icons that show the melody types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each melody.

Melody type icons

/	MFi or SMF melody

Retrieval method icons

No icon	Pre-installed melody
	Melody downloaded from a site
	Melody imported from a PC, the bar code reader or via infrared communication

Available settings icons

	Melody can be attached to i-mode mail (10,000 bytes or less)
	Melody can be set as a ring tone
	Melody can be sent via infrared communication

Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title is the name displayed in the Melody List display on the FOMA terminal.

The file name is the name displayed when the melody is downloaded to a PC, etc.

If there is no information for inclusion in the file name, the file name becomes “melodyxxx” (where “xxx” is a 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files with the same name.

Operations available while a melody is playing

You can use the operations shown below while Melody Player is playing a melody.

Control keys	Melody Player action
	Plays the previous or next melody.
(), ()	Adjusts the volume.
, , , , , , or	Stops playback.
	End

- If you change the volume and then press or wait roughly 2 seconds, the Melody Player display reappears.
- If you change the volume while a melody is playing, the volume reverts to the level specified in “Ring volume” when you exit Melody player.

Using the function menu in the Melody List display

The options available in the Melody List display Function menu differ depending on the folder in which the melody is saved.

- Melody List display Function menu for the Inbox and user-created folders →P. 393
- Melody List display Function menu for the Voice Announce and Pre-installed folders →P. 394
- If a ring tone is set, the “Select ring tone” also is set to the same ring tone.

In the melody list display... ➡ P. 391

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

■ **Melody List display Function menu for the Inbox and user-created folders**

Melody list display function menu 1/2

1 Edit title	▶ Edit the title and press ●. Edits the selected melody title. The title can contain up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526	
2 Edit file name	▶ Edit the file name and press ●. Edits the selected melody file name. The file name can contain up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. See “Entering Text” →P. 526	
3 Play melody	Plays the selected melody (Displays the melody screen).	
4 Set as ring tone	▶ Select a setting and press ●. Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.	
5 File restriction	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the file restrictions for the selected melody.	
	1 File unrestricted	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	2 File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
6 Add desktop icon	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. See “Using Desktop Icons” →P. 136	
7 Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the selected melody attached. See “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” →P. 245	

Melody list display function menu 2/2

1 Send Ir data	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.	
2 Melody info	See “About melody information” →P. 395	
3 Memory info	Displays the amount of melody data saved and the amount of available space.	
4 Reset title	▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Resets a changed title to the title used when the movie was retrieved.	
5 Delete	▶ Choose from the following options: Delete melodies saved in the current folder.	
	1 Delete this	▶ Select “YES” and press ●.
	2 Delete selected	▶ Use (○) to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. Pressing (右) (FUNC) allows you to use “Select all” or “Release all”.
	3 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Continued on next page

6 Sort	▶Choose from the following options: Sort melodies.	
	1 Chronological ↑	Arranges melodies in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	2 Chronological ↓	Arranges melodies in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	3 By title ↓	Arranges melodies in ascending order by title.
	4 By title ↑	Arranges melodies in descending order by title.
	5 By size ↑	Arranges melodies in ascending order by size.
	6 By size ↓	Arranges melodies in descending order by size.
	7 By source	Arranges melodies in ascending order by retrieval method.
7 Move	▶Select the folder to which the melody is to be moved and press ● ▶Use ◯ to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶Press 右 (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Moves the selected melody to another folder.	

Note

<Edit file name>
- You cannot edit the file names of melodies for which "File restricted" is set in "File restriction". However, you can edit a file name of which the melody is received by using Ir communication or OBEX.

<Compose message>
- Melodies in the MFi format (where the melody identification icon is or) cannot be sent as attachments regardless of the "File restriction" setting.
- You cannot attach melodies with a file size larger than 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>
- Even when "File unrestricted" is set for melody information in "File restriction", you may not be able send it as an attachment.

<Memory info>
- The displayed file size is intended only as an approximate guide.

<Delete>
- If you try to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If you select "YES" to delete the melody, the ring tone or alarm in which the deleted melody was set reverts to their its setting.

<Sort>
- If you exit a sorted Melody List display, the melodies are again listed in chronological order the next time you view the Melody List display.
- "By source" sorts melodies in the order shown below. Melodies with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
  - Downloaded melodies or melodies retrieved from an i-αppli → Melodies imported from an miniSD memory card or using infrared communication

■ Melody List display Function menu for the Voice Announce and Pre-installed folders

Melody list display function menu

1 Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
2 Set as ring tone	▶Select a setting and press ●. Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.

Using the function menu in the Melody Player display

In the melody player display... ➡ P. 391

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Melody player display function menu

1 Set as ring tone	▶Select a setting and press ●. Sets the current melody as a ring tone.
2 Add desktop icon*1	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136
3 Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current melody attached. See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
4 Melody info	See "About melody information" →P. 395

*1 : Not displayed for the Pre-installed or Voice announce folders.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

About melody information

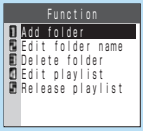
The melody information shows the following:

Item	Information details
Default title	Shows the original melody title.
File name	Shows the file name.
File size	Shows the file size in kilobytes (KB).
File restriction	Shows whether “File restricted” or “File unrestricted”.
File classification	Shows the melody file type (MFi or SMF).
Transfer for Repair	Shows whether or not the image file can be moved when a fault occurs. (“Permitted” or “Not Permitted)
Received from	Shows the source from which the file was received.
Preservation date	Shows the date and time at which the file was saved.
Vibrator linkage	Shows whether or not the melody is linked to the vibrator. (“ON” or “OFF”)
Illumination linkage	Shows whether or not the melody is linked to the FOMA terminal's illumination settings. (“ON” or “OFF”)
Ring tone set	Shows the ring tone for which the melody has been set. If is has not been set as a ring tone, “No set” is displayed.

Using the function menu in the Program folder

In the melody folder list display... ➡ P. 391

1 Select a program folder and press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:



Program folder function menu display

Program folder function menu

1 **Add folder**	▶ **Enter the title and press ●.** Adds a folder. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 **Edit folder name**	You cannot edit the name of a program folder.
3 **Delete folder**	You cannot delete a program folder.
4 **Edit playlist**	Starts playlist editing. You can use this option to edit existing playlists. See “Playing melodies in your preferred order” → P. 396
5 **Release playlist**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●.**

● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Play playlist>

This function allows you to select and store up to 10 of your favorite melodies and play them consecutively.

In the program folder function menu display... ➡ P. 395

1 Press 4 GHI "Edit playlist" ▶Select the number under which the melody is to be added and press ● ▶Select a folder and press ● ▶Select a melody and press ● ▶Repeat this procedure to add other melodies to the playlist.



■ **To remove an added melody**

Select the melody to be removed and press ● ▶Select "Release this" in the folder selection display and press ●.

2 Press 左 (Finish).

The "Melody Folder List display" appears.
Selecting the Program folder and pressing ● starts program playback and the stored melody is played back repeatedly.

Note

● If you change the title or file name of a melody that has been added to a playlist, the playlist is deselected.

About miniSD Memory Cards

The miniSD memory card is a further miniaturized version of the SD memory card that can be inserted into the FOMA terminal and used as external memory. By loading a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter, you can also use the card with a PC that supports miniSD memory cards.
The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. The FOMA terminal compatible with the miniSD memory card up to 128 M bytes. (As of December 2004)

- You can export data such as phonebook entries, mail, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card, or import data that has been saved on a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, to replace existing data. Still images and movies stored on miniSD memory cards can also be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- When you load a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal, the SD icon appears on the display.
- When you are manipulating data on a miniSD memory card or importing or exporting data, etc., the FOMA terminal's call alert indicator/charging lamp flashes green.
- For the latest information on supported miniSD memory cards, visit the following sites:
  i-mode: "iMenu" ▶"メニューリスト" ▶"ケータイ電話メーカー" ▶"みんなNらんど"
  For PC: NEC Mobile website (http://www.n-keitai.com)

Notes on handling miniSD memory cards

* Always format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. ➞P. 406

Note the following precautions for handling miniSD memory cards:

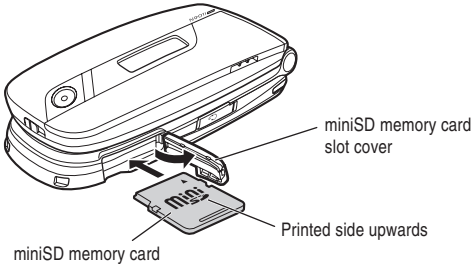
- Always ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a miniSD memory card.

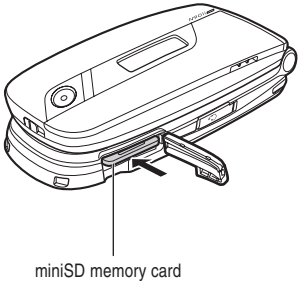
Inserting and removing a miniSD memory card

Insert the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal's card slot.

● Inserting a miniSD memory card

Turn the FOMA terminal off before inserting the miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.

2 Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place.

Insert the miniSD memory card slowly with the printed side upwards.
When fully inserted, the card will lock into place.

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

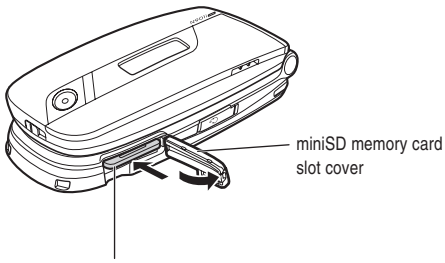
When you turn the FOMA terminal on after inserting the miniSD memory card, the icon appears on the display.

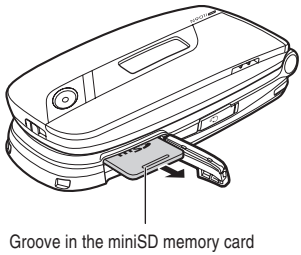
Note

- If there is a problem with the miniSD memory card or it is incorrectly formatted, the icon is displayed.

Removing the miniSD memory card

Turn the FOMA terminal off before removing the miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.

2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards.

When you push the miniSD memory card in and then release it, the card pops out slightly. Take care at this point that the card does not fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot.

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Continued on next page

Note

- Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. This could damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- Note that the miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
- After removing a miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, always keep the card in the protective case provided. Storing the miniSD memory card in a different case could result in the miniSD memory card being unusable.
- Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card on an angle could damage the card).
- When you select an item on a miniSD memory card, there may be a short delay before the item appears.

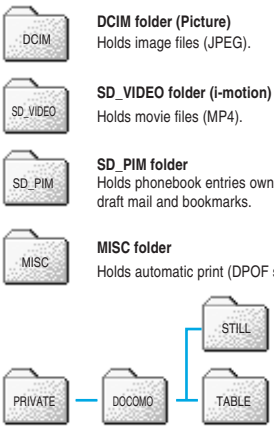
miniSD memory card folder configuration

The data that can be imported, exported and/or overwritten is as follows:

- Still images
- Unrestricted i-motion
- Schedule entries
- Received mail
- Bookmarks
- Unrestricted image
- Phonebook entries
- ToDo list entries
- Draft mail
- Movie
- Own number display data
- Sent mail
- Text memos

Folder configuration as displayed on a PC

The structure of a miniSD memory card is as follows.



DCIM folder (Picture)
Holds image files (JPEG).

SD_VIDEO folder (i-motion)
Holds movie files (MP4).

SD_PIM folder
Holds phonebook entries own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, text memos, received mail, sent mail, draft mail and bookmarks.

MISC folder
Holds automatic print (DPOF settings) files.

STILL folder (Image box)
Holds still image files (JPEG-format (except for Exif-format) GIF-format) and animation files (GIF-format).
You cannot save data to this folder from the FOMA terminal.

TABLE folder
Holds miniSD memory card information.

* Data cannot be copied to the "PRIVATE" or "DOCOMO" folders.

Note

- When you export still images from the FOMA terminal, they are automatically converted to the Exif format and saved in the DCIM folder. The saved images are compatible with "Exif Ver. 2.2" and with "PIM II (PRINT Image Matching II)".
- You cannot export a GIF image from your FOMA terminal. You can only save GIF images from a PC.
- The DCIM and STILL folders appear in My picture as the "Picture" and "Image box" folders respectively. →P. 346
- The STILL folder must be created on a PC. Once you create the STILL folder, the SD image folder is automatically created in the Image Box.
- A SD_VIDEO folder is equivalent to the i-motion of a FOMA terminal.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may be displayed in lower case.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card or remove the miniSD memory card, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- Using a PC to create or edit folders on the miniSD memory card may change the save destination folder. If the setting is changed, reset the save destination using "Select storage" (P. 412).
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders on the miniSD memory card as this may prevent the FOMA N901iC from reading data on the card.
- If you save data that is not supported by the FOMA N901iC on a miniSD memory card, the FOMA N901iC will be unable to recognize the data.
- You may not be able to display or play data that was saved on a miniSD memory card from another device.
- The miniSD memory cards formatted on devices other than the FOMA N901iC may not operate normally.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

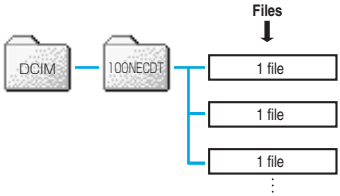
Created files

A file refers to one or many items of data stored together as a single item.
When you copy a file, the folder used to store the copied data is selected automatically based on the data type and the file and folder names are automatically assigned as the file is saved onto the miniSD memory card. The files stored in each folder are as shown below.

■ DCIM folder

This is a folder created automatically to store images when they are first exported to the miniSD memory card. Each image is saved as a separate file.
The figure below shows how the created files and folders are named.

- Folder name: nnnNECDT (where nnn = 100-999)
- File name: NEC_mmmm (where mmmm = 0001-9999)



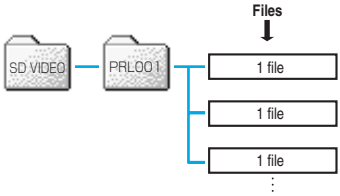
Note

- When you use a PC to add folders in the DCIM folder, replace the “nnn” in the folder name with a 3-digit half-pitch number between 100 and 999. The “NECDT” portion can be replaced by any half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
- When you save a file, replace the “mmmm” in the file name with a 4-digit half-pitch number between 0001 and 9999. The “NEC” portion can be replaced by any half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

■ SD_VIDEO folder

This is a folder created automatically to store movies and i-motions when they are first exported to the miniSD memory card. Files are stored in the “PRL001” folder inside the SD_VIDEO folder. Each movie and i-motion is saved as a separate file.
The figure below shows how the created files and folders are named.

- Folder name: PRLxxx (where xxx = 001-FFF (hexadecimal notation))
- File name: MOLxxx (where xxx = 001-FFF (hexadecimal notation))



Note

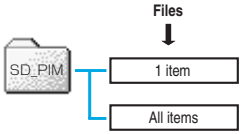
- When you use a PC to add folders in the SD_VIDEO folder or save files, replace the “xxx” in the folder or file name with a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF using half-pitch numbers between 0 and 9 and half-pitch characters between A and F. Leave “PRL” in the folder name and “MOL” in the file name unchanged.
- The FOMA terminal will only play movies that are MP4 files with the “3GP”, “SDV” or “MP4” file extension, or ASF files with the “ASF” extension.

Continued on next page

■ SD_PIM folder

Whether 1 item of data is exported or all the data are exported, the data is saved as one file.
For example, when you export all the received mail, the created file contains all the items of received mail.
File names are created as follows:

- For 1 item:Assigned automatically
- For multiple items:Automatically assigned by date (yyyy//MM/DD HH:MM)



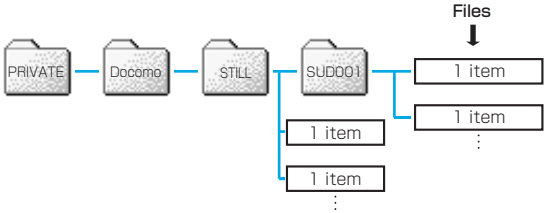
Note

- When you save phonebook, schedule, ToDo, mail, text memo or bookmark files that have been edited on a PC in the SD_PIM folder, replace "nnnnn" in the file name with a 5-digit half-pitch number between 00001 and 65535. Leave the "PIM" portion unchanged.
- The file extensions are as follows:
  - VCF: Phonebook file (vCard file)
  - VCS: Schedule, ToDo files (vCalendar file)
  - VMG: Mail file (vMessage file)
  - VNT: Text memo file (vNote file)
  - VBM: Bookmark file (vBookmark file)

■ STILL folder

To save images, first create the STILL folder.
When you save the file or folder from a PC, give the following file names and a folder name.

- Folder name: SUDkkk(kkk=001~999)
- File name: STILhhhh(hhhh=0001~9999)



Note

- When you use a PC to add folders in the STILL folder, replace the "kkk" in the folder name with a 3-digit half-pitch number between 001 and 999. Leave the "SUD" portion unchanged.
- When you save a file, replace the "hhhh" in the file name with a 4-digit half-pitch number between 0001 and 9999. Leave the "STIL" portion unchanged.

Number of items that can be stored on a miniSD memory card

The number of items that can be stored on a miniSD memory card varies depending on the capacity of the miniSD memory card used. The table below shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved in each folder. Adding folders so that files can be exported to different locations allows larger numbers of files to be saved. However, depending on the size of the files, it may not be possible to save the maximum number of files shown here.

Folder name	Max. No. of folders	Max. files saved per folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999

To check the amount of available space and saved data on a miniSD memory card, see "Using the function menu in the Categories display" (P. 407). Note that total of the displayed amounts of available space and saved data will be less than the capacity stated on the miniSD memory card itself.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card when you attempt to export phonebook entries, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, text memos, mail or bookmarks, a message appears saying that data cannot be transferred due to lack of space. In the case of images, movies, and i-motions, “Export” on the function menu is grayed out. When this occurs, insert another miniSD memory card or delete some unwanted data on the card and copy the data again.
- When you reach the limit on the number of files in the folders to which the files are to be exported, the following occurs:
  If you are exporting still images, movies or i-motions, a new folder is automatically created and the files are saved in that folder. If you are exporting data such as phonebook entries to SD_PIM, a message appears saying that the limit has been reached and no further data can be exported to the miniSD memory card.
- Once a miniSD memory card is full, you cannot perform tasks such as adding more folders for images or movies, editing titles or copying or moving files. Delete some unwanted data and then try again.

Exporting and importing data

You can export (copy) the data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card and import (copy) data from a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. You can also overwrite data on the FOMA terminal with data from a miniSD memory card.

■ Importing/Exporting still images, images, movies and i-motions

	Details	Ref. page
Export	Saves an individual selected still image, image, movie and i-motion in the DCIM or SD_VIDEO folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 363, 378
Import	Saves an individual selected image or movie stored on the miniSD memory card in the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.	P. 363, 379

■ Importing/Exporting phonebook entries own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, mail, text memos and bookmarks

	Details	Ref. page
Export this	Saves an individual selected data entry in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 403
Export all	Saves all the data in the selected category in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card.	P. 403
Import & add one	Adds 1 data entry stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 405
Import & add all, Import & add	Adds all the data in a file stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 405
Import & OW all, Import& overwrite	Deletes data on the FOMA terminal and adds all the data in a file stored in the SD_PIM folder on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.	P. 405

Note

● Depending on the number of data entries, exporting/importing may take some time.

Imported/Exported data

Still image, image, movie and i-motion files

Function	Format	Data
My picture	JPEG, GIF	Data in the Inbox, Camera, miniSD and User-created folders (import only for GIF file).
i-motion	MP4	Data in the Inbox, Camera, miniSD and User-created folders.

Phonebook entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	Name, Reading, Phone number, e-mail address, Secret attribute, Group number, Group, Still image, Birthday and Street address.
		Transfers the data for one item plus the memory dial numbers.

- The secret attribute is assigned to items stored in Secret mode.

Note

● When secret data is exported using “Export this”, the data is transferred with the secret attribute set to “OFF”.

Continued on next page

Own number display data

Display mode	Data
Before Display all data	Name, Reading, Own number and the First e-mail address stored.
After Display all data	Transfers the data for Before Display all data together with the 2nd, 3rd and 4th stored phone numbers, 2nd and 3rd stored e-mail addresses, street address, birthday, memo and picture.

Schedule entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	Start date/time, End date/time, Content, Type, Alarm setting, Repetition setting, Secret attribute, Summary
		The same as one item.

- The secret attribute is assigned to items stored in Secret mode.

Note

● When secret data is exported using "Export this", the data is transferred with the secret attribute set to "OFF".

ToDo list entries

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	Content, Type, Ending date, Expiry, Status, Priority, Alarm setting
		Same as for one item

Received mail, sent mail, draft mail and SMS

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	Read/unread, Message type, Message box, Sender/recipient, Title, Send/receive date/time, Message, attachments.
		When all the received and sent mail is exported, the data for one item plus the folder (folder name) is sent.

- When 1 message is imported or exported, the protection for received and sent mail is removed.
- When exported mail is mail that includes an i-αppli start specification, or mail that includes an attached or pasted melody for which the file restriction setting is "File restricted" (excluding files sent via infrared communication or OBX and files imported from a miniSD memory card), the melody or i-αppli start specification is removed when the data is exported.

Text memos

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	Creation date/time, Last edited date/time, Type, Content
		Same as for one item

Bookmarks

No. of entries		Data
All items	One item	URL and title
		When all the bookmarks are exported, the data for one item plus the folder (folder name) is sent.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Copying FOMA Terminal Data to a miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396
Use the procedures described here to export data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card.
The method of exporting the data registered into the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card has "Export this" and "Export all".

- For information on exporting still images or movies, see P. 363, 378.
- Images and movies data can not be exported by using "Export all".

■ To export the FOMA terminal one data

Select "Export" or "Export this" from a function menu on the list display or detailed display of data to export.

<Example: export one in the phonebook entry>

See "2 Export this" in the phonebook list display function menu in "Using the function menu in the phonebook display" →P. 100

■ To export the FOMA terminal all data

Select "Export" from a function menu on the list display or detailed display of all data to export.

See "2 Export" in the phonebook list display function menu in "Using the function menu in the Categories display" →P. 407

Note

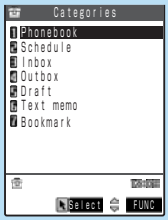
- If you export mail that includes an i-αppli start specification, the i-αppli launch information in the mail is deleted.
- When 1 data entry that was stored as secret data is exported, secret is canceled and the data is saved.
- When all the data entries are exported, data stored as secret data is also copied.
- When all the phonebook data entries are exported, the "Own number" data is also saved.
- When mail is exported, some types of attached file may be deleted.
- During exporting, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "Out of service", so you cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication.

Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396
Use this function to display the data stored on a miniSD memory card for checking.
- For information on previewing images and movies, see P. 345, 369.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Tools and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 6 MNO "SD-PIM".

The "Categories display" appears.

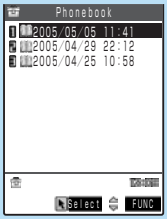


Categories display

Continued on next page

2 **Select an item ▶Press ●.**

The “File list display” appears.



File list display

3 **Select a file ▶Press ●.**

The “Data list display” appears.



Data list display

4 **Select a data entry ▶Press ●.**

The “Data detail display” appears.



Data detail display

Note

- You cannot view files stored on the miniSD memory card while PIM lock is set. Also, you cannot export from another function.
- Images in Deco-mail cannot be displayed correctly until they have been saved on the miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the File List display

In the file list display... ➡ P. 404

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:**

File list display function menu

1 **Edit title**	**▶Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the selected file title. The title can contain up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 **Import & add**	**▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.** Imports and adds the data stored in the selected file to the FOMA terminal. For information on security code →P. 142
3 **Import & overwrite**	**▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.** Uses the data stored in the selected file to overwrite the corresponding data in the FOMA terminal. For information on security code →P. 142

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

4 Export	▶Enter your security code and press ●▶Select "YES" and press ●. Exports all the data entries for the selected item from the FOMA terminal. For information on security code →P. 142
5 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the selected file.
6 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ●▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all the files saved for the selected item. For information on security code →P. 142
7 miniSD info	Displays the amount of memory used and the amount of available memory on the miniSD memory card.

Note

<Delete this> <Delete all>
● "read only" is set, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the file(s).

Using the function menu in the Data List display

In the data list display... ➡ P. 404

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Data list display function menu

1 Import & add one	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Imports and adds the selected data entry to the FOMA terminal.
2 Import & add all	▶Enter your security code and press ●▶Select "YES" and press ●. Imports and adds all the data entries to the FOMA terminal. For information on security code →P. 142
3 Import & OW all	▶Enter your security code and press ●▶Select "YES" and press ●. Uses all the data entries to overwrite the corresponding entries on the FOMA terminal. For information on security code →P. 142
4 miniSD info	Displays the amount of memory used and the amount of available memory on the miniSD memory card.

Using the function menu in the Data Detail display

In the data detail display... ➡ P. 404

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Data detail display function menu

1 Import & add one	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Imports and adds the current data entry to the FOMA terminal.
2 miniSD info	Displays the amount of memory used and the amount of available memory on the miniSD memory card.

Copying miniSD Memory Card Data to the FOMA Terminal

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396
Use these procedures to import (copy) data stored on a miniSD memory card and use it to add to or overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal.
The "Import & add" options consist of "Import & add", which adds all the data entries in a file, "Import & add one", which adds only the selected data entry, and "Import & add all", which adds all the data entries.
The "Import & overwrite" options consist of "Import & OW all" and "Import & overwrite", which replace the existing data with all the entries in one file.

Continued on next page

● You cannot import all the image or movie files.

■ To add the saved data to one file

See "2 Import & add" in the File List display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the File List display" →P. 404.

■ To add a selected data entry

See "1 Import & add one" in the Data List display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the Data List display" →P. 405.

See "1 Import & add one" in the Data Detail display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the Data Detail display" →P. 405.

■ To add all the data in a file

See "2 Import & add all" in the Data List display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the Data List display" →P. 405.

■ To overwrite the existing data with all the data entries in a file

See "3 Import & overwrite" in the File List display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the File List display" →P. 404.

See "3 Import & OW all" in the Data List display Function menu in "Using the function menu in the Data List display" →P. 405.

Note

- "Import & overwrite" and "Import & OW all" replace the imported data with the FOMA terminal data. Please check that important data is not registered before overwriting.
- If the FOMA terminal runs out of memory during card reading, data importing is interrupted. The data imported so far is stored.
- Added to group 00 in the following situations:
  - When "Import & add all" or "Import & add" is used and the group numbers and group names stored on the miniSD memory card do not match those stored on the FOMA terminal.
- If you import 1 item of mail when the Inbox is full, the oldest item of read and unprotected mail is overwritten.
- If you import 1 item of mail when the Outbox is full, the oldest item of unprotected mail is overwritten.
- When you import a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is linked to the mail stored in the Data box. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- When you use "Import & add all", the following data is not imported:
  - Schedule entries with the same date and time setting as existing entries
  - Bookmarks with the same URL as existing bookmarks
- You cannot use "Import&overwrite" or "Import & OW all" when "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- When there is a large number of files saved on the miniSD memory card, reading and writing the data may take some time.
- During importing, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "out of area", so you cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication. (except when you are importing images, movies or i-motions)

Managing miniSD Memory Cards

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396
Use these functions for miniSD memory card management tasks such as formatting.

Formatting a miniSD memory card

* Always format miniSD memory cards on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a miniSD memory card erases all the data stored on the card. Check that no important data will be lost before formatting a miniSD memory card.
- A miniSD memory card cannot be formatted if it is write-protected or faulty.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

See "3 miniSD format" in Categories display function menu in "Using the function menu in the Categories display" →P. 407

Note

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during formatting as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- Data saved onto a miniSD memory card after card formatting was interrupted is not guaranteed.
- The call alert indicator flashes green during formatting.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call or press the 左 (Quit) or PWR key during formatting, formatting is cancelled and is displayed. When this happens, format the miniSD memory card again.

Using the function menu in the Categories display

In the Categories display... ➡ P. 403

1 Select a data entry and press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Categories display function menu

1 **miniSD info**	Displays the amount of memory used and the amount of available memory on the miniSD memory card.
2 **Export**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ●** ▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Exports all the data entries for the selected item to the miniSD memory card. For information on security code →P. 142
3 **miniSD format**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ●** ▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Formats the miniSD memory card. For information on security code →P. 142
4 **Check miniSD**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking may allow problems on the miniSD memory card to be corrected.

Note

<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during checking as this could cause FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card faults.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The call alert indicator flashes green during checking.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call or press the 左 (Quit) or PWR key during miniSD memory card checking, miniSD memory card checking is cancelled.
- If miniSD memory card checking is interrupted, some of the data being recovered may remain. If this occurs, run "Check miniSD" again.
- Depending on the amount of data stored on the miniSD memory card, the "Check miniSD" operation may take some time.
- It may not be possible to recover data on some miniSD memory cards.

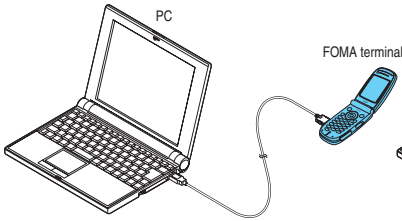
Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Memory Card Reader/Writer

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you don't have a miniSD memory card, please purchase one at your local electronic store. →P. 396

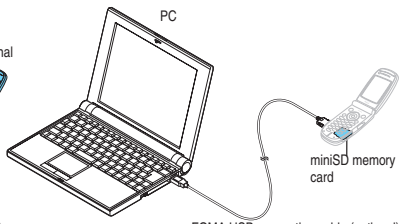
USB mode setting	Details
Communication mode	In this mode, the external connection terminal is used for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange (OBEX).
miniSD mode	In this mode, the external connection terminal is used for reading and writing data on a miniSD memory card. You cannot import or export data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card.

Continued on next page

<Communication mode>



<miniSD mode>



● The equipment listed below is required to use the FOMA terminal as a miniSD memory card reader/writer.

Item	Description
Connection cable	FOMA USB connection cable (optional)
PC	PC equipped with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus specification rev. 1.1-compliant) that supports the FOMA USB connection cable (optional)
Supported software	Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

Important

- Take great care to ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. A faulty connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB connection cable while the call alert indicator/charging lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being copied between the PC and FOMA terminal. Disconnecting the cable could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.

Using the FOMA terminal as a miniSD memory card reader/writer

Default setting	Communication mode

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and press ● ▶Press ⊖ ▶Press 1あ "Other settings" ▶Press ○ ▶Select "USB mode setting" and press ● ▶Press 2かABC "miniSD mode".

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using the FOMA USB connection cable.

The and icons are displayed when the miniSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB cable is connected during miniSD mode.

The miniSD memory card appears in the "My Computer" window on the PC as an external storage device. The miniSD memory card is not recognized by the PC as a reader/writer while data is being transferred between the miniSD memory card and the FOMA terminal.

For information on attaching the FOMA terminal to a PC →P. 483

To cancel "miniSD mode"

Disconnect the FOMA USB connection cable and then change the mode to "Communication mode".

For information on disconnecting the FOMA terminal to a PC →P. 483

Note

- You cannot set this function while data is being read from or written to the miniSD memory card. ("Reset" also does not reset the settings.)
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the PC while data is being exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the card.
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being exchanged between the PC and the card.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Working With Folders and Files

Use these procedures to add folders to the My picture, i-motion and Melody List displays for use in organizing the respective files. You can also use these procedures to add folders to the My picture and i-motion miniSD Folder List displays.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

"Using the function menu in the Folder List display" →P. 409

Using the function menu in the Folder List display

● For information on the Function menus displayed when the i-motion and melody program folders are selected, see P. 377, 395.

In the folder list display... ➡ P. 345, 369, 391

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Example: Folder list display (My picture) function menu

1 **Add folder**	▶**Enter the folder name and press ●.** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. You can also assign the same name as an existing folder. The folder cannot be added if the folder name is left entirely blank. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Edit folder name**	▶**Edit the folder name and press ●.** Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
3 **Delete folder**	▶**Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●.** You can also delete a folder that still contains data. For information on security code →P. 142
4 **Delete all image*1**	▶**Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes all images saved by the user and all pre-installed original animations. For information on security code →P. 142

*1 : Not shown in the i-motion and Melody List displays.

Note

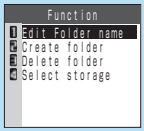
<Edit folder name>
● You can only edit folder names for user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image>
● You can only delete user-created folders.
● If you try to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all image" to delete an image or movie that has been set in a display or original animation, or if you try to use "Delete folder" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set in a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
- Displays in which the deleted item was set revert to their default settings.
- Original animations and playlists are deselected.
- User icons in schedules revert to .

● If you delete an image that is attached to mail, the image attached to the mail is not deleted. However, the attached image may be deleted in the case of a large image.
● If you delete a movie that is attached to mail, the movie attached to the mail is also deleted.

Using the function menu in the miniSD Folder List display

In the miniSD folder list display... ➡ P. 346



Example: miniSD folder list display (Picture) function menu display

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

miniSD folder list display function menu

1 **Edit folder name**	▶**Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the folder title. The folder title can contain up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526
2 **Create folder**	▶**Enter the title and press ●.** Creates a folder.
3 **Delete folder***1	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**
4 **Select storage**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** Sets the folder in which the data will be saved. See "Specifying the save destination folder on the miniSD memory cards" →P. 412

*1 : Only "Delete folder" is displayed for the Image Box.

Note

<Create folder>
- You cannot create folders when there are already 900 folders in "Picture" on the miniSD memory card or 4095 folders in "i-motion" on the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot create folders inside the folders in the Image Box. However, folders can be created on a PC.

<Delete folder>
- If you attempt to delete the following types of folder, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the folder:
  - Folders set to read-only
  - Folders set as a save destination
  - Folders containing read-only files
  - Folders containing files
- If you delete a folder that has been set as a save destination, the folder created most recently on the FOMA terminal becomes the new save destination.

Selecting multiple data items

This procedure allows you to delete multiple selected images or movies at once or to copy the images or movies to another folder within the same function. You can also use this procedure to copy images and movies stored on a miniSD memory card to another folder or to specify the print settings for images.

<Example: Image List display for the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders>

In the image list display function menu... ➡ P. 349



Multiple-choice display

1 Press ○ ▶Press ○ ▶Press 5 JKL "Multiple-choice".

The "Multiple-choice display" appears.

2 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ●.

See "Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice display" →P. 411
See "Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice (miniSD memory card) display" →P. 411

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice display

In the Multiple-choice display... ➡ P. 410

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Multiple-choice display function menu

1 Title name*1	Switches between "Picture" and "Title name".
2 Delete*2	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the selected images and movies.
3 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the images are to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected images and movies to another folder.
4 Select all	Selects all the images and movies.
5 Release all	Deselects all the images and movies.

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "1 Picture" is displayed. The default mode is "Picture".

*2 : Only the Delete option can be used for Chara-den.

Using the function menu in the Multiple-choice (miniSD memory card) display

In the Multiple-choice display... ➡ P. 410

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Multiple-choice display (miniSD memory card) function menu

1 Title name*1	Switches between "Picture" and "Title name".	
2 Delete	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes the selected images.	
3 DPOF setting	▶ Choose from the following options: Specify the print settings for the selected images.	
	1 Print	▶ Enter a 2-digit number and press ●. Sets the number of copies (01 to 99) of the selected images that will be printed.
	2 Print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for the selected images.
	3 All print OFF	Clears the print settings specified for all the images in the current folder.
4 Copy	▶ Select the copy destination folder and press ●. Copies the selected images to another folder.	
5 Move	▶ Select the folder to which the images are to be moved and press ●. Moves the selected images to another folder.	
6 Release all	Deselects all the images.	

*1 : If you have selected the Title name, "1 Picture" is displayed. The default setting is "picture".

Note

<DPOF setting>

- You can only specify DPOF settings for up to 999 items.
- You cannot specify DPOF settings for images that are larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or have a file size greater than 600 KB.
- DPOF settings specified on a PC are ignored except for the number of prints specification.
- You may be unable to specify DPOF settings if there is too little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You can check the number of set prints on the image list screen function menu in the miniSD memory card (Pictures), or in "Image info" on the My pictures function menu in the miniSD memory card (Pictures).

Specifying the save destination folder on the miniSD memory card

Default setting	Most recently created folder

Use this procedure to specify the folder to which images and movies are saved on a miniSD memory card. You can specify any of the folders in "miniSD" in either My picture or i-motion respectively.

- The ★ icon is displayed for the save destination folder.
- Images and movies exported to the miniSD memory card are also stored in the respective save destination folders.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off, use "Check miniSD", format the miniSD memory card, remove or insert the miniSD memory card FOMA, or used as a miniSD reader/writer, the most recently created folder on the FOMA terminal is set as the save destination folder.

In the miniSD folder list display function menu... ➡ P. 410

1 Press 4 GHI "Select storage" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

- You cannot select a folder in "Image box" as the save destination folder.

When there is insufficient memory or too many stored items

If there is insufficient available memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full when you try to save photographed images on the FOMA terminal or save an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from an i-mode site or Internet website, a confirmation message appears asking whether some unwanted data should be deleted to allow the new data to be saved.

1 Select "YES" in the confirmation message and press ●.

■ To delete and not save data

Select "NO" and press ●.

2 Press ● and select multiple items of data to be deleted.

For information on selecting multiple items → P. 34

3 Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

左 (Finish) is not displayed until there is sufficient memory available to store the data.

Note

- When you attempt to delete an image that has been set in a display or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the image or melody used in the setting. If you select "YES" to delete the image or melody, the corresponding display or ring tone reverts to its default setting.

<Forwarding image>

Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting	ON

When you are exporting phonebook data to a miniSD memory card or using the Infrared Communication function or data exchange (OBEX) to transmit phonebook data, you can use this setting to prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Tools and press ● ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 3 DEF "Forwarding image" ▶ Select 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC "OFF".

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. → P. 396

<Infrared communication function>

About Infrared Communication

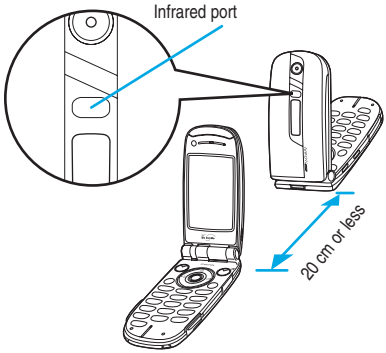
The Infrared Communication function allows your FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received mail with other FOMA terminals and PCs equipped with infrared communication functions.

● Pictograms and special characters entered in mail and in phonebook entries can also be correctly sent and received.

When using infrared communication

Follow the precautions listed below when you use infrared communication.

- Set the receiving FOMA terminal ready to receive and position it no more than 20 cm from the sending FOMA terminal.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared ports are aligned on the same level.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals until data exchange is complete.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.



Notes on using the Infrared Communication function

You cannot use infrared communications nor store data in the following situations.

- The infrared communication function used in the FOMA terminal conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard and may not be able to successfully exchange data with phones that do not comply with IrMC1.1. Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data with even where the other phone is IrMC1.1-compliant.
- You cannot exchange UIM phonebook data or SMS.
- Infrared communication is interrupted when any of the following occurs and a message appears asking whether to continue:
  - The receiving FOMA terminal does not receive any data within roughly 30 seconds.
  - The receiving FOMA terminal cannot be detected by the sending FOMA terminal.

  If you select "YES", the FOMA terminal tries to initiate infrared communication once more. To cancel infrared communication, select "NO". In this situation, if none of the FOMA terminal's key are pressed within 30 seconds, infrared communication is automatically cancelled.
- In the following situations, a message appears saying that a received data entry could not be stored:
  - When bookmarks with the same URL are received
  - When a melody larger than 100 KB is received
  - When JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high or GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high are received.
  - When progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640dots high are received.

    For more information on progressive JPEG image, see P. 219.
  - When a still image larger than 600 KB* is received

    * In some cases, the images are less than 599 KB.
  - When a still image in a format other than JPEG or GIF is received
  - When a movie or i-motion larger than 800 KB is received
  - When a movie in a format other than MP4 is received
  - When a received schedule entry has the same date/time and the same repeat setting (ON or OFF) as an existing entry
  - When a schedule or ToDo list entry is received and the date and time have not been set
- When you receive a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is linked to the mail stored in the Data box. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.

Continued on next page

The following operations cannot be performed during infrared communication:

- Even when the signal level icon is displayed, other types of communication are not possible during infrared communication (displayed).
- The Infrared Communication function cannot be us during a voice or video-phone call, when the FOMA terminal is using i-mode, or during packet or 64K data communication. →P. 560
- The FOMA terminal is effectively outside the i-mode service area during infrared communication and cannot be used for voice or video-phone calls, i-mode communication, i-mode mail or packet communication.

Sending and Receiving Individual Data Entries

The Infrared Communication function can be used to exchange individual data entries with other FOMA terminals.

● The types of data that can be exchanged are as follows:

- Phonebook entries
- ToDo list entries
- Draft mail
- Melodies (not restrictions)
- Images (not restrictions)
- Personal data in "Own number" display
- Sent mail
- Text memos
- Still images
- Schedule entries
- Received mail
- Bookmarks
- Movies
- i-motions (not restrictions)

Note

● Received data is stored as follows:
  - Phonebook entries: Entries are stored under the lowest available memory numbers between "010" and "699". If data is already stored for all the numbers between "010" and "699", the entries are stored in the lowest available memory numbers between "000" and "009" (used for two-touch dialing) (P. 110).
  - Personal information in the own number display: Stored as a phonebook entry.
  - Schedule entries: Stored according to the start date/time for the received entries.
  - ToDo list entries: Stored at the top of the ToDo list.
  - Received mail: Stored in the Inbox folder by the date of the received mail.
  - Sent mail: Stored in the Outbox folder by the date of the sent mail.
  - Draft mail: Stored in the Draft box folder by the date of the draft mail.
  - Text memos: Stored under the highest <Not recorded> number.
  - Bookmarks: Stored at the top of the Bookmark folder.
  - Images: Stored at the top of the My picture Inbox folder.
  - Movies, i-motions: Stored at the top of the i-motion Inbox folder.
  - Melodies: Stored at the top of the Melody Inbox folder.

● You can send and receive still images and movies whose titles have up to 9 full-pitch and 18half-pitch characters.

● You can send and receive melodies whose titles have up to 25 full-pitch and 50 half-pitch characters.

● If the file is too big to be stored, a warning message to that effect is displayed and sending (or receiving) may fail.

● During infrared communication, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "out of area", so if you receive a call, the call is rejected and the caller sees a message saying, "Out of range or turned off". If you have activated Voice Mail or Call Forwarding, the call is transferred to the Voice Mail Center or forwarded to the forwarding number.

● Depending on the file size, data transfer may take some time. In some cases, you may be unable to receive the file.

● You cannot use infrared communication while the FOMA USB connection (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.

Phonebook entries that can be received

- Name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address, memo, birthday, still images and icon information
- Received "Own number" data is stored as a phonebook entry.

Receiving single phonebook entries

- When phonebook entries are received, if there are already 700 stored names, phone numbers or e-mail addresses, or if the number will exceed 700 when the data is received, a message appears saying that the data cannot be stored.
- Where a phonebook entry includes multiple stored phone numbers and/or e-mail addresses, all the data is exchanged.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- "Own number" data cannot be sent when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be received when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- Phonebook entries that were stored as Secret data in "Secret mode" (P. 148) or "Secret only mode" (P. 148) are exchanged with the "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" attribute removed.
- The phonebook secret code is not exchanged.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

When infrared communication takes a long time

- The exchange of phonebook entries, because it can include the transfer of stored still images, may take some time. To shorten the data transfer time, select “OFF” in the “Forwarding image” setting (P. 412) to prevent the transfer of still images stored in the phonebook.

Sending individual data entries <Send Ir data>

Select “Send Ir data” from the function menu on the details screen or list screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Sending an individual phonebook entry>

1 Displays the detail phonebook.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

2 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 6 “Send Ir data”.

3 An infrared port is turned to an other party and select “YES” and press ●.

An other party’s terminal is set to a receiving state →P. 415
Start the sending Ir data.
The message which notifies a communication end is displayed after transmitting.

■ **To cancel the transmission**

Press “NO” and press ●.

■ **To interrupt a transmission**

Press (左) (Quit).

Note

- When you send transmitted mail that is protected, the protection is removed at the receiving end and the file is stored as ordinary data.
- When you send mail that includes a pasted i-αppli launch specification, the pasted data is deleted when you send the mail.
- When “File restricted” is set in “File restriction” for a file attached to mail, the attached file is deleted when the mail is sent. Images in some file formats may also be deleted when the mail is sent. However, when a still image or movie shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera is attached to outgoing mail or draft mail, or when the file was received via OBEX or imported from a miniSD memory card, the attached file is sent even when “File restricted” is set in “File restriction”.
- If the file attached to mail has “File restricted” set in the file restrictions setting, the file is removed when the mail is sent. Depending on the file format, some attached image files may also be removed when mail is sent. However, in the case of sent mail and draft mail, if the attached image is a photo (still image) shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera, a file received using OBEX or a file imported from a miniSD memory card, it is sent even when “File restricted” is set in the file restrictions setting.

Receiving individual data entries <Receive Ir data>

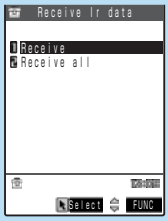
1 Press Menu 7 9.

The “Received Ir data display” appears.

2 Press 1 “Receive”.

3 An infrared port is turned to an other party and receive the data from an other party’s terminal.

Start the receiving Ir data.
If the other party is not a FOMA terminal, the communication level bar may not be displayed.



Receive Ir data display

4 Select “YES” and press ●.

The message which notifies a communication end is displayed after saving the received data.
After reception, if not operating it for about 30 seconds, the received data is canceled.

Continued on next page

■ **To do not register the received data**

Press “NO” and press ●.

Note

- You can also use the following procedure to view the Receive Ir data display:
  - Press (Menu) ▶ Select [Tools] and press ● ▶ Press (Scroll) ▶ Press (7 pqrs) “Receive Ir data”
- After infrared communication ends, the [Ir] icon continues to be displayed for a short time.
- If the Inbox folder is full, mail in the Trash box folder is deleted so that data can be stored in the Inbox folder. If the received mail is larger than the available space, received mail that is unprotected and has been read is overwritten, starting with the oldest message.
- Sent mail overwrites unprotected mail in the Outbox folder, starting with the oldest messages.
- Single data entries can also be received using “Receive all”. Use the same procedure as for receiving all the entries.

Sending and Receiving All Entries

The Infrared Communication function can be used to exchange all the data entries on the FOMA terminal with other FOMA terminals.

- The types of data that can be exchanged are as follows:
  - Phonebook entries
  - Personal data in “Own number”
  - Schedule entries
  - ToDo list entries
  - Sent mail
  - Received mail
  - Draft mail
  - Text memos
  - Bookmarks

Be sure to read the following before using “Transfer all”.

■ **About “Transfer all”**

- When you transfer all the data entries of a particular type, the received data overwrites the existing entries, including any stored protected mail and entries stored as secret data. Check for any important stored data before accepting all the data entries.

■ **“Phonebook” data and “Transfer all”**

- Phonebook data is sent and received sequentially by memory number.
- Transferred phonebook data consists of the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, street address, memo, birthday, still images, group names and icon information.
- The sender’s “Own number” data is all transferred except for the phone number itself and overwrites the data on the receiving FOMA terminal. Because the recipient’s e-mail address is also overwritten, he or she should change the e-mail address after the transfer.
- When a phonebook entry includes multiple stored phone numbers or e-mail addresses, all the data is transferred.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also received as secret data.
- The phonebook secret code is not transferred.

Note

- Received data is stored as follows:
  - Phonebook entries: All the currently stored phonebook entries are deleted and the received entries are stored according to their memory numbers and sorted into groups by their respective group names.
  - Personal information in the own number display: Overwrites all the existing personal information other than the own number.
  - Schedule entries: All the currently stored schedule entries are deleted and the received entries are stored.
  - ToDo list entries: All the currently stored ToDo list entries are deleted and the received entries are stored.
  - Received mail: All the currently stored received mail and added folders are deleted and the received data is stored in its respective folders.
  - Sent mail: All the currently stored sent mail and added folders are deleted and the received data is stored in its respective folders.
  - Draft mail: All the currently stored draft mail is deleted and the received data is stored.
  - Text memos: All the currently stored text memos are deleted and the received data is stored.
  - Bookmarks: All the currently stored bookmarks and added folders are deleted and the received data is stored in its respective folders.
- A bar indicator showing the approximate data transfer progress provides a guide to the number of items transferred. Depending on the size of the files being transferred, the progress of the bar indicator may slow even when data is being transferred normally and may differ from the bar shown on the sender’s FOMA terminal.

Session number

When “Transfer all” is used, a session number is used to ensure that the sending and receiving FOMA terminals recognize each other correctly. Before sending or receiving begins, the sending and receiving parties should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number and then both enter the same number.

Sending all data entries <Send all Ir data>

Select “Send all Ir data” from the function menu on the details screen or list screen of all the data you want to send.

<Example: Sending all the phonebook entries>

1 Display the Phonebook List display.

For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

2 Press (FUNC) ▶ Press “Send all Ir data”.

3 Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Enter your session number.

For information on security code →P. 142
For information on session number →P. 416

4 An infrared port is turned to an other party and select “YES” and press ●.

Prepare the other party’s FOMA terminal to send all the data. →P. 417
Transfer of all the data entries begins.
When transmission ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission is completed.

■ **To cancel transfer of all the data**

Select “NO” and press ●.

■ **To interrupt a transmission**

Press (Quit).

Note

- When you send transmitted mail that is protected, the protection is removed at the receiving end and the file is stored as ordinary data.
- When you send mail that includes a pasted i-αppli launch specification, the pasted data is deleted when you send the mail.
- When “File restricted” is set in “File restriction” for a file attached to mail, the attached file is deleted when the mail is sent. Images in some file formats may also be deleted when the mail is sent. However, when a still image or movie shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera is attached to outgoing mail or draft mail, or when the file was received via OBEX or imported from a miniSD memory card, the attached file is sent even when “File restriction” is set in “File restriction”.
- The list of bookmarks sent using “Send all Ir data” appears in the same order at the receiving end. When the recipient uses the bookmarks, they are displayed in the order used.

Receiving all data entries <Receive all Ir data>

In the Receive Ir data display... ➡P. 415

1 Press “Receive all”.

2 Enter the security code and press ● ▶ Enter the session number.

For information on security code →P. 142
For information on session number →P. 416

3 An infrared port is turned to an other party and select “YES” and press ●.

■ **To cancel the receiving all Ir data**

Press “NO” and press ●.

4 Receive all data from an other party’s terminal.

Start the receiving all Ir data.

■ **To interrupt a transmission**

Press (Quit).

Continued on next page

5 **Press "YES" in the overwrite checking display and press ●.**

The message which notifies a registration end is displayed after registering the received data.

■ **To do not overwrite the received data**

Press "NO" and press ●.

Note

● After infrared communication ends, the icon continues to be displayed for a short time.

<Infrared mode>

Selecting Infrared Communication Mode

This mode allows software applications to be launched on your FOMA terminal by i-αppli activation data received from infrared communication devices equipped with an i-αppli activation function.

● The specified i-αppli software must be downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website beforehand. →P. 317

In the Receive Ir data display... ➡ P. 415

1 **Press 1あ "Receive" ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Receive i-αppli activation data from the infrared communication device.**

When the FOMA terminal receives the i-αppli activation data, the software starts up.
The procedure following software activation varies depending on the software.

■ **To cancel data reception**

Press 電話帳 or CLR.

Note

● If there is no matching software application for the received activation data, a message appears saying that the specified software could not be found.

Using the function menu in the Receive Ir Data display

In the Receive Ir data display... ➡ P. 415

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:**

Receive Ir data display function menu

1 **Add desktop icon**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.** See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

● First download the appropriate software for the device you want to control from an i-mode site or Internet website. Note that even with the correct software, some products will not be compatible and cannot be controlled using the FOMA terminal.

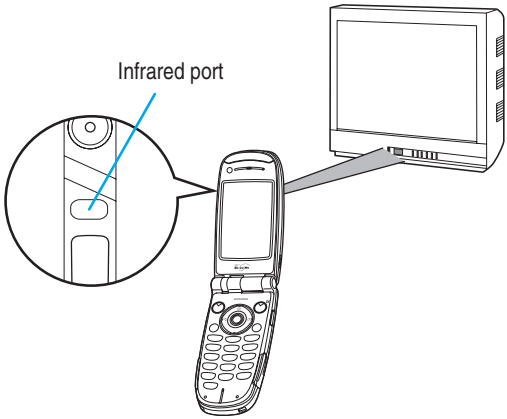
● Remote control software for the FOMA terminal can be downloaded from the sites listed in the iMenu.

● You cannot use the infrared remote control function while Self mode is set.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Using remote control

● Point the FOMA terminal directly at the remote control sensor on the TV, etc. while using it as a remote control. The FOMA terminal's remote control is effective over distances of up to 4 meters directly in front of the TV, etc., but this may vary depending on the ambient light level.



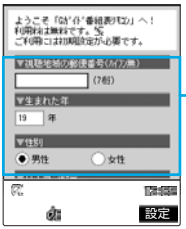
Using "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control)

"Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control) is convenient i-αppli to which the TV program table and AV remote control function were set. TV program information can acquire easily anywhere at any time. You can know the program title, contents of program and start / end time and a G code®. If a favorite program is registered into a favorite, schedule registration can be performed and alarm can be sounded at the time of a program start. Furthermore, it is possible to search program information with keywords, such as a genre of a TV program and favorite talent. Moreover, remote control operation of television, video, and a DVD player can be performed. Infrared recording can be also scheduled for the DVD/hard disk recorder. (Note that some models do not support this function.)

● Since it corresponds to the electronic program table (EPG), you can select a program easily.
● When using "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control), for the first time, it is necessary to carry out initial setting and to agree with use agreement.
● Packet communication charges are not included.
● See "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for more details.

● Initial setting

1 Start the "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control) ▶ Set up your data.



See "Launching an i-αppli" →P. 320
Please input a postal code number correctly in seven digits. The program table for the area in which you live according to the set-up postal code number is displayed.

Sets "視聴地域の郵便番号" (a postal code for the viewing region), "生まれた年" (year of birth), "性別" (sex)

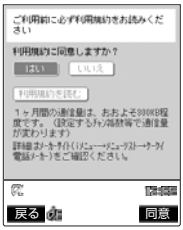
Continued on next page

2 Select “TV1 登録” and press ● ▶ Select the maker of the apparatus to operate and press (右) “設定” ▶ Press ●.



You can test the remote control to press ● when having selected the maker by turning on/off the power supply of electric appliances.
Set the other makers by the same operation.

3 Press ● ▶ Select “利用規約を読む” and press ● ▶ Read the use agreement and press (左) “戻る” ▶ Select “はい” and press ● or (右) “同意”.

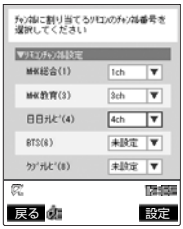


4 Select a channel to display on a program table ▶ Press (右) “設定”.



The checked channel is displayed on a program table.

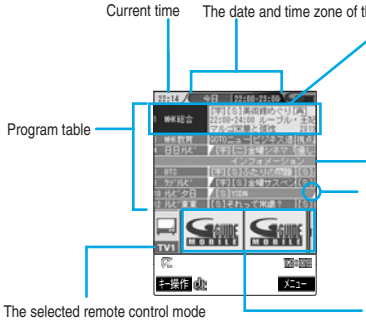
5 Select the channel assigned to the channel number of remote control from a pull down menu ▶ Press (右) “設定”.



The screen is not displayed when the maker for TV1 and TV2 is not set.
This is the remote control channel setting for TVs that work with program charts. Select the channel number to which each channel is assigned from the pull-down menu.

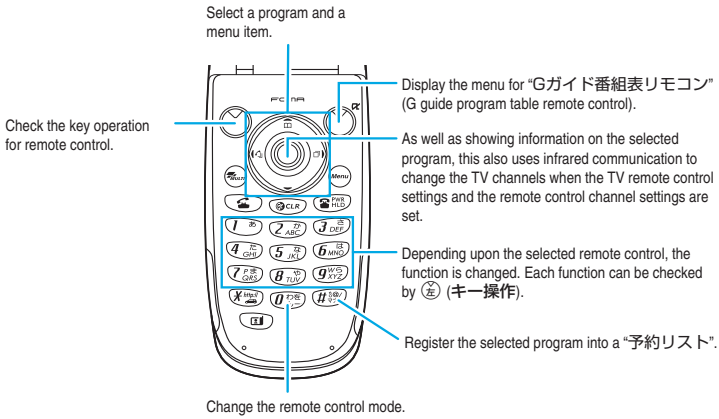
* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

● The main display for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)



※The screen is an image. The actual screen differs. A TV guide based on the area where you live is displayed.

● Basic operation for “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)



Note

● By selecting an advertisement and press ●, the program will be connected to the site relevant to the advertisement by the Web to function.

Using the menu for the “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G guide program table remote control)

In the G guide program table remote control main display... ➡P. 421

1 Press (右) “メニュー” ▶ Choose from following options:

番組詳細	Opens communication and retrieves program details when detailed information is provided for the selected program.
日時指定	▶Select the date and a time zone ▶Press (右) (表示) ▶Press ●. Sets the date and time zone of a program table to display.

Continued on next page

予約リスト	▶Choose from the following options: Set a "予約リスト".	
	＃追加	Adds the selected program into "予約リスト". You can register up to 8. If exceeding 8, An error dialog box is displayed.
	一覧	See "Using the 予約リスト" →P. 422
	履歴	Displays the "予約リスト" history.
	スケジュール登録	On the list display menu you can store a TV program in the schedule and specify the alarm to sound at the program's start time.
	赤外線録画予約	On the list display menu if you select Ir record reservation and have a device that supports it, you can set the VCR to record a program.
検索	See "Searching the program" →P. 422	
おすすめメール	Composes the message to which the information on a program is entered.	
HELP	How to use "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control) is displayed.	
アプリ情報	▶Choose from the following options: Check the information on "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control).	
	最新に更新	Updates a program table.
	バージョン情報	Checks the version of "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control). If a new version is available, press (右) (更新) to update the "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control).
初期設定	▶Choose from the following functions: Change the default settings.	
	視聴チャンネル	Sets the channel displayed on a program table.
	リモコン登録	Sets the maker of the apparatus operated by "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control).
	初期化	▶Press (右) (初期化). Initialize "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control).
	リモコンチャンネル設定	Specifies assigned remote control channel numbers to channel.

● Using the "予約リスト"

In the "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control) main display... ➡ P. 421

1 Press (右) "メニュー" ▶Select "予約リスト" and press ● ▶Select "一覧" and press ● ▶ Press (右) "メニュー" ▶Choose from the following options:

番組情報表示	Opens communication and retrieves program details when detailed information is provided for the selected program. Pressing ● displays the program information.
スケジュール登録	▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Edit schedule and press (左) (完了). Saves the information on the selected program into a schedule.
削除	Deletes the selected "予約リスト".
赤外線録画予約	▶Press ●. Sends the information for the selected program to the recorder.
録画機器設定	▶Press ● ▶ Use ◇ to select the recorder manufacturer and then press ● ▶Press (右) (次へ) ▶ Set the respective options ▶Press (右) (Set) ▶Press ●. Sets the recording mode and remote control mode for the recorder.

● Searching the program

In the "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G guide program table remote control) main display... ➡ P. 421

1 Press (右) "メニュー" ▶Select "検索" and press ● ▶Choose from the following functions:

ジャンル	▶Select a keyword with the pull down menu of a “ジャンル” or a “サブジャンル” ▶Select “YES” and press ●. Specifies a genre and search.
キーワード	▶Enter a keyword ▶Press (右) (検索) ▶Select “YES” and press ●. Searches by using a keyword. You can also search by using a reference history.

2 Press (右) “メニュー” in the search result display ▶Choose from the following options:

番組情報表示	Displays the details of the selected program If ● was pressed, the program details are displayed.
＃予約リスト追加	Add the selected program into “予約リスト”. You can also press #(ﾏﾅｰ) to add to the “予約リスト”.

<OBEX>

Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data With a PC

Important

- Take great care to ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. A faulty connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- If a communication error occurs while all data items are being copied from the PC to the FOMA terminal, the entries being written to on the FOMA terminal may be completely erased. Before attempting to write all the entries of a particular data type to the FOMA terminal, carefully check the cable connections, FOMA terminal battery level and PC power supply.

Notes on using the data transfer function

Situations in which data cannot be transferred or stored

- Data cannot be transferred while communication (a voice call, video-phone call or data communication) is in progress. Similarly, other forms of communication cannot be used during data transfer. In some cases, it may be possible to receive a call immediately after data transfer begins. When this happens, data transfer is cancelled.
- OBEX cannot be used to transfer UIM phonebook entries or SMS.
- You cannot use OBEX to transfer all the data when “All lock” (P. 145) or “PIM lock” (P. 149) is set or when the FOMA terminal is in “Self mode” (P. 156).
- You cannot transfer phonebook data when “Keypad dial lock” (P. 150) is set.
- You cannot receive phonebook data when “Restrict dialing” (P. 152) is set.
- Depending on the file size, the FOMA terminal may be unable to receive some data.
  - JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide × 1212 dots high and GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
  - Progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. For more information on progressive JPEG images, see P. 219.
  - The image exceeding 600 K bytes (If it is 596 K bytes or more, the image may be unable to be saved)
  - The movie exceeding 800 K bytes
- When you receive a large file (an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes) that is attached to incoming or outgoing mail, the large file is linked to the mail stored in the Data box. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- Check that the date and time have been set in “Set time” (P. 44) before transferring data. If the date and time are not set, received schedule and ToDo list entries cannot be stored.
- When a received schedule entry has the same date/time and the same repeat setting (ON or OFF) as an existing entry, the received data cannot be stored.
- You may not be able to send a melody, image or i-motion to a PC when its use as an e-mail attachment or its transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited.
- When you insert a different UIM card or turn the FOMA terminal on with no UIM card inserted, you cannot send melodies, images or i-motions for which UIM card restrictions have been set.

Continued on next page

Transferring phonebook entries

- The phonebook secret code cannot be transferred.
- Phonebook entries cannot be received when “Restrict dialing” is set, but when phonebook entries are sent, phonebook entries specified in “Restrict dialing” and “Own number” data can be sent.
- When “Transfer all” is used, the “Own number” data is sent with the phonebook entries.
- When you receive all the phonebook entries, the personal data stored in “Own number” (excluding the phone number) is also overwritten.
- When you receive an individual phonebook entry, it is stored starting with memory number 010, but when you receive all the entries, they are stored according to the memory number information.
- Phonebook entries are sent in order of memory number.
- Depending on the file size, data transfer may take some time.
- The transfer of phonebook entries, because it can include the transfer of stored still images or movies, may take some time. To shorten the data transfer time when you are sending data from the FOMA terminal to a PC, select “OFF” in the “Forwarding image” setting (P. 412) to prevent the transfer of still images and movies stored in the phonebook.
- When you receive individual phonebook entries (when entries are sent from a PC to the FOMA terminal), they are stored under the lowest available phonebook memory numbers between “010” and “699”. If data is already stored for all the numbers between “010” and “699”, the entries are stored in the lowest available memory numbers between “000” and “009” (used for two-touch dialing) (P. 110).
- When phonebook entries are received, if there are already 700 stored names, phone numbers or e-mail addresses, or if the number will exceed 700 when the entries is received, a message appears saying that the data cannot be stored.

Additional notes

- You may not be able to send a file to a PC when its use as an e-mail attachment or its transmission to devices other than FOMA terminals is prohibited, but movies and photos (still images) shot with the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera, data received using OBEX and data imported from a miniSD memory card is sent even when “File restricted” is set in the “File restriction” setting.
- The FOMA terminal is effectively outside the i-mode service area during data transfer and cannot be used for voice or video-phone calls, i-mode communication, i-mode mail or packet communication.
- After data transfer ends, the  icon continues to be displayed for a short time.
- You cannot use the Multi tasking function while using OBEX to transfer data. Quit all other functions and then try again.
- Because the transfer of still images, melodies, movies and i-motion files does not conform to the IrMC standard, data transfer software supported by the FOMA N901iC is required. Still images, melodies, movies and i-motion files are all stored in the Inbox.
- For mail that includes an i-αppli start specification, the i-αppli start specification is removed when the data is sent.
- Frames and Flash images are not transferred.
- Received mail folders for mail-connected i-αpplis are not sent. The mail in the folders is all stored in the Inbox folder.

Sending individual data items (Write one)

1 Using the data communications software on the PC, transfer 1 item of data.

Refer to the instructions for the data communications software for information on how to send the data.

2 Send the data from the PC.

Depending on the size of the data file, the progress shown by the communication progress bar indicator may be slow.

3 Select “YES” and press ●.

When data reception ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission has been completed. If none of the FOMA terminal’s keys are pressed for 30 seconds after the data reception ends, the received data is discarded.

Transferring all data items (Write all/Read all)

<Example: Sending all the data on the FOMA terminal to a PC>

1 Send the data “Send/Receive all”.

Refer to the instructions for the data transfer software for information on how to send the data.
You will need to enter your authentication password on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as your session number.

2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal and press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

3 Enter your session number on the FOMA terminal and press ●.

For information on session number →P. 416

4 Send the data.

When data transmission ends, a message appears notifying you that transmission has been completed.

Note

- If “Write all” from a personal PC to a FOMA terminal is performed, all the data of a FOMA terminal will be overwritten. Note that the data of the original FOMA terminal is deleted. The telephone directory registered in “Secret mode” and “Secret only mode”, a schedule, and the protected mail are included. However, neither a frame nor a Flash image is deleted.

Other Useful Functions

Multi Access <Multi access> 428
Multi Tasking <Multi task> 431
Setting the Alarm Mode <Alarm setting> 433
Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock <Alarm clock> 435
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries <Schedule> 437
Adding ToDo List Entries <ToDo> 443
Storing Your Own Name and Image <Own number> 447
Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice <In-call voice memo/ Stand-by voice memo> 449
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones <Voice Announce> 450
Checking Call Times and Charges <Call data> 451
Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator <Calculator> 452
Composing a Text Memo <Text memo> 452
Using Dictionaries <Dictionary> 454
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Earphone/microphone with switch> 457
Connecting Earphones and Receiving Calls Automatically <Automatic answer> 458
Selecting Your Provider <PLMN Setting> 458
Resetting the Function Settings <Reset settings> 459
Resetting to the Default Settings <Initialize> 463

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that allows voice calls, packet communication and SMS to be conducted at the same time. This enables you to receive mail while you are talking to someone on the FOMA terminal or make a call while using the i-mode services.

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

Using the Multi Access function, the FOMA terminal can concurrently use the 3 communication lines listed below.

Type of communication	Lines used
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli or i-mode mail	1 line for each
Packet communication with a connected PC	
SMS	1 line

Note

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- While multi access cannot be used during a video-phone call, SMS can be received only.
- While multi access cannot be used during 64K data communication, SMS can be received only.

When you receive a call during multi access communication

i-mode mail received during a voice call

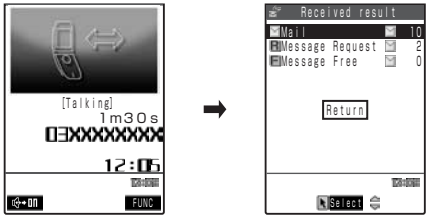
When you receive i-mode mail during a voice call, the voice call display remains on screen while the i-mode mail is received. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

1 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer.

The display changes to the i-mode mail reception results display.

■ To change displays from the Task menu

For information on using the Task menu to change displays →P. 432



2 Read the i-mode mail.

For information on reading i-mode mail →P. 276

3 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer.

The display changes to the voice call display.

Note

- If you receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a voice call, the "Mail", "Message Request" or "Message Free" icon flashes and then lights without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Receiving display", the icon flashes when you receive i-mode mail during a voice call and the display changes to the "Receiving i-mode mail" display.
- If no operations are performed in the Reception Results display, the in-call display reappears. When this occurs, holding down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer does not switch back to the Reception Results display.

Voice call received during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are receiving or sending i-mode mail or while you are using packet communication to send data, the display changes to the "Receiving voice call" display and you can answer the call without ending the i-mode or packet communication.

● You cannot receive video-phone calls while using i-mode.

1 Press .

The display changes to the Receiving voice call display and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode display without answering the call

Hold down for 1 second or longer.

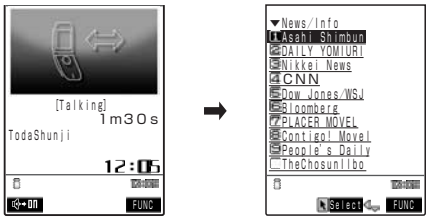
The caller hears the busy tone with no message.

2 When you have finished talking, press .

The call is ended and the i-mode display reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode display without ending the call

Hold down for 1 second or longer.



To use another type of communication while communicating

This function allows you to use another type of communication without interrupting your current communications.

● To change the display during multi access communication, hold down for 1 second or longer or select the function you want to view from the Task menu. →P. 432

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

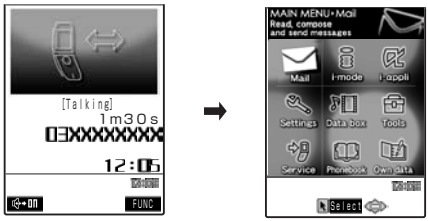
During the voice call, you can connect to i-mode by pressing and connecting from the i-mode menu in the Main menu. →P. 202

Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

During the voice call, you can compose and send i-mode mail by pressing and selecting "Compose message" from the Mail menu in the Main menu.

1 Press during the voice call and select the Mail menu.

For information on using menus →P. 32



Continued on next page

2 Compose and send the i-mode mail message.

For information on composing and sending i-mode mail →P. 245

3 Hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer.

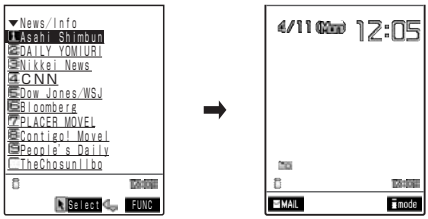
The voice call display reappears.

● Making a voice call during i-mode communication

Use the procedure below to make a voice call while you are connected to i-mode or sending or receiving mail without exiting i-mode.

1 While using i-mode, hold down (Menu) for 1 second or longer.

The “Stand-by display” appears.



2 Make a voice call.

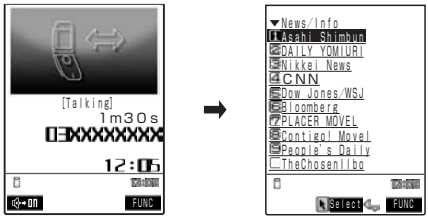
For information on making voice calls →P. 48

3 When you have finished talking, press (PWR HLD).

The call is ended and the i-mode display reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode display without ending the call

Hold down (Mail) for 1 second or longer.



Note

● If you make a video-phone call while in i-mode, the “Disconnecting” message appears, after which the FOMA terminal dials the video-phone call. When the video-phone call ends, the i-mode display reappears.

<Multi task>

Multi Tasking

Multi task is a function that allows you to use a number of functions at the same time. This allows you to use up to 3 functions at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.



Group	Major functions (tasks)
Mail group	Mail
i-mode group	i-mode and i-αppli
Settings group	Settings and service
Tools group	Data box, Phonebook, Tools and Own data

- The voice call charge continues to increment while you are concurrently using another communication function during a voice call.

Activating a task (function)

1 Hold down Menu for 1 second or longer during launching a task.

The stand-by display appears.

2 Select a task from a group that has no tasks currently running.

■ To activate a task from the Main menu

Press Menu and then select the task. →P. 32

■ To activate a task using a menu option number

Press Menu and then enter the menu number for the desired task. →P. 552

■ To activate a task from the Mail menu

Press 左 (MAIL). →P. 244

■ To activate a task from the i-mode menu

Press 右 (i-mode). →P. 202

Icons display the task activation status.

: Multiple tasks are running.

: Only 1 task is running.

No icon: No tasks are running.

Note

- If you attempt to activate tasks from the same group, either a message appears asking whether to switch tasks, or the tasks are automatically switched (When the Mail menu or i-mode menu is being displayed). If the message asking you to choose appears, select "YES" to switch to the newly selected task.
- If you attempt to activate a fourth task when there are already 3 tasks running concurrently, a message appears informing you that no further tasks can be activated.
- In the following cases, one task is added to compose mail while viewing mail. If 3 tasks are already running and you perform the operation below, a message is displayed, stating that the task cannot run. End a task other than a mail group task and then perform the operation.
  "Ending a Task" →P. 432
  - Compose a new mail
  - Compose an SMS
  - Reply/Reply with quote/Forward on the Function menu while viewing mail

Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can use this procedure to switch between tasks. To switch between tasks, you can either press (MULTI) to display the Task menu and select the task you want to control from the menu, or hold down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to switch between tasks one after the other. You can also switch between tasks by using the neuropointer to select task icons in the system display area.

Switching between tasks in the Task menu

1 **Press (MULTI).**

The "Task Menu List display" appears.

2 **Select the task you want to use and press ●.**

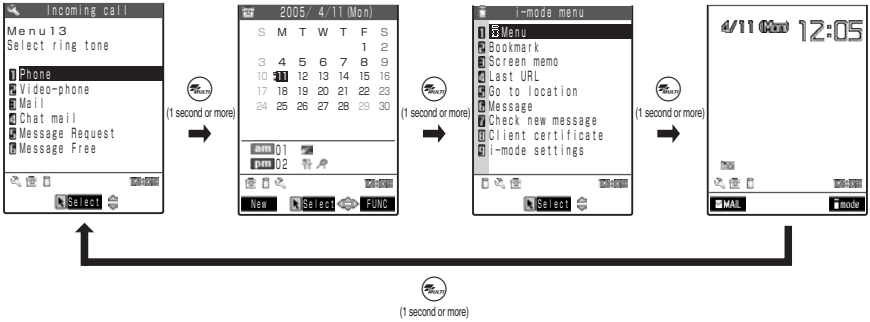


The display for the selected task appears.

Switching from one task to the next

You can switch between tasks on the task menu by holding down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer. Switching between tasks in this way does not end an active task or cut off a voice call.

● Holding down (MULTI) for 1 second or longer while the Main menu is displayed does not switch between tasks.



Ending a task

A task can be ended in any of the following ways:

- Switch to the task to be ended and press (PWR HLD).
- Highlight the task to be ended in the Task menu and press (PWR HLD).
- Press (右) (END ALL) while the Task menu is displayed to end all the active tasks.

Note

- Turning the FOMA terminal off ends all the active tasks.
- If you use procedures that access menu functions such as UIM operations or color patterns while other menu functions are running, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed. If this occurs, quit the other menu functions before using procedures that access menu functions.

Setting the Alarm Mode

Default setting	Alarm preferred

Use this procedure to select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm notification setting for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo”.

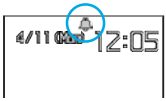
1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press 6 MNO “Clock” ▶ Select “Alarm setting” and press ● ▶ Select 1 “Operation preferred” or 2 ABC “Alarm preferred”.

Alarm notification actions

When you set alarm notification in the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” functions, an icon appears in the stand-by display to show that an alarm has been set. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function notifies you.

When you set an alarm

When you set an “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” alarm, an icon appears in the stand-by display.



■ An alarm set for today (excluding times that have already passed)
The icon is displayed.

■ An alarm set for tomorrow or later
The icon is displayed.

When the specified time is reached

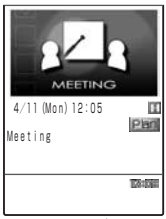
The different alarms notify you as shown below.



Alarm clock



Schedule*1



ToDo*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule or ToDo
Stand-by display shown	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 1 minute, and then repeats this 6 times at 5 minute intervals. Animations are also displayed on the display and in the indicator display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 5 minutes and animations also appear on the display and in the indicator display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If “ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” function, the FOMA terminal automatically turns on and notifies you of the alarm. If the setting is set to “OFF”, the power does not turn on and no alarm notification is provided. The (Missed alarm) icon is not displayed on the desktop.	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
Call in progress *2	The time alarm tone (“pip-pipipi...”) sounds through the FOMA terminal’s earpiece 3 times and an animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or Dialing a call *2	Alarm notification is the same as for a “Call in progress”. When you receive a call, the call in progress alarm sounds when you answer the call.	

Continued on next page

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule or ToDo
i-mode or sending/receiving mail *2	Alarm notification is the same as in the "Stand-by display shown".	
During infrared communication or PIM function operation or data transfer in OBEX	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the Stand-by display shown. →P. 435	
When an earphone/ microphone is connected ("Earphone" set to "Earphone")	The alarm tone sounds through the earphone for around 20 seconds. After 20 seconds, the alarm sounds through both the earphone and the speaker. Animations appear on the display and in the indicator display.	
When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry display is shown after the FOMA terminal is turned on	Alarm notification is the same as for the "Stand-by display shown". When the alarm notification display clears, the PIN1 code entry display reappears.	Alarm notification is provided after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
All lock or PIM lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. After the All/PIM lock is released, the (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the stand-by display (P. 435). If you turn the FOMA terminal off without releasing the All/PIM lock and do not turn it back on before the specified time is reached, no (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the stand-by display after the All/PIM lock is released.	Regardless of the "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided when the specified time is reached. After the All/PIM lock is released, the (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the stand-by display (P. 435).

*1 : The animation displayed for a "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm differs depending on selected icon and category.

*2 : Operation for when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the desktop icon (Missed alarm) is displayed on the Standby display.

Note

- If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarms are set for the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows (① has the highest precedence):
  ① Alarm clock ② ToDo ③ Schedule
  If alarm notification was not possible, the (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the stand-by display. However, if the FOMA terminal was turned off, no (Missed alarm) desktop icon is displayed.
- The volume of the "Schedule" and "ToDo" alarms is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume".
- The alarm volume during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- The alarm volume while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in "Manner mode set".
- Unless "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal uses both vibration and an alarm to notify you of alarms.
- If "Display" in "Clock display" was set to "OFF", or if the Schedule or ToDo entry was stored with "OFF" selected, no icon is displayed.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the Auto power ON setting to "OFF" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

To stop the alarm tone

Alarm clock alarm tone

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone and freezes the animation. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation and displays the "Snooze..." message. After the "Snooze..." message has been displayed for around 5 minutes, the alarm is notified again. If you press (PWR HLD) while the "Snooze..." message is displayed, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is cancelled.

Schedule and ToDo alarm tones

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation and displays the alarm message. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, if you pressed the side keys when the FOMA terminal was folded, the alarm notification display is not cleared.

If you receive a call during alarm notification

Alarm notification stops and the FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm clock" snooze setting is also cancelled.

Note

- Snooze is canceled in the following situations:
  - When you receive a voice call or video-phone call
  - When you receive i-mode mail or SMS and "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Receiving display".
- If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the snooze notification release tone does not sound.

Checking alarm details when notification fails

If the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you of an alarm, the (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears in the stand-by display. You can then check the details of the missed alarm (missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 Press ● in the stand-by display, select and press ●.



The missed alarm information for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is displayed.

■ To clear the desktop icon

Hold down CLR for 1 second or longer.

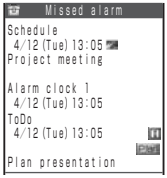
Once you clear the desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

2 Check the details and then press CLR.

The stand-by display reappears with (Missed alarm) no longer displayed.

Note

- If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarms are set for the same time and the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you, the respective missed alarm information is displayed.



<Alarm clock>

Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

Default setting	OFF

- You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

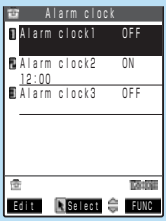
Setting the alarm clock

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 4 GHI.

The "Alarm clock display" appears.

If you have set the alarm clock before, the details of the last setting are displayed.

2 Select 1 あ to 3 DEF ▶ Press 左 (Edit).



Alarm clock display

Continued on next page

3 Specify the respective settings.

Time setting	▶**Enter a time and press ●.** Enters the time at which the alarm will sound.	
Repeat	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the number of alarm clock repetitions.	
	1 **1 time**	The alarm sounds only once.
	2 **Daily** D	The alarm sounds every day.
	3 **Select day** W	▶**Use ◎ to a select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).** The alarm sounds every week on the specified day.
Alarm tone	▶**Choose from the following options:** Select the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the "Pre-installed" option. Alarm tone can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" →P. 114	
	1 **Inbox**	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	2 **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	3 **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →P. 450
	4 **OFF**	No alarm tone sounds.
Volume	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the alarm tone volume and then press ●.** Sets the alarm tone volume. See "Adjusting the Ring Volume" →P. 65	
Snooze setting	▶**Choose from the following options:** Specify whether a snooze (repeating) alarm is set.	
	1 **ON**	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 1 minute and then repeats this 6 times at 5-minute intervals.
	2 **OFF**	▶**Enter a ringing time (01-10 minutes).** The alarm tone sounds continuously for the specified ringing time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press ●.
Auto power ON	▶**Select 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".** Specifies whether the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on when the time for an alarm is reached.	

4 Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- You cannot store or edit alarm clock entries while PIM lock is set.
- When the alarm clock automatically turns the FOMA terminal on to notify you of an alarm and an alarm tone other than "Pre-installed" is selected, the FOMA terminal uses the "Clock Alarm Tone" set in the UIM operation restrictions.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

Using the function menu in the Alarm Clock display

In the alarm clock display... ➡ P. 435

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Alarm clock display function menu

1 **Edit**	Edits the Alarm clock.
2 **Display detail**	Changes to the detail display when the list display is shown.
3 **Release this**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**
4 **Release all**	▶**Select "YES" and press ●.**

<Schedule>

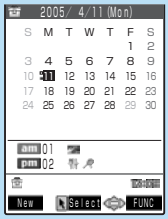
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

If you add an event to your schedule, an alarm tone sounds at the specified date and time and the FOMA terminal displays an animation and message notifying you of the details stored for the event. You can also add holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule events and holidays can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch between 1-month and 1-week calendar display mode to view the number of scheduled events for a given day and the key points. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, such as storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a set day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled event, or storing multiple scheduled events for the same day.

- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holiday or anniversaries respectively. Note that the national public holidays and festivals stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in this number.
- You can store multiple scheduled events for the same day, but you can only set 1 holiday or anniversary per day.
- For information on schedule alarms →P. 433

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 5 JKL.

The "Schedule display" appears.

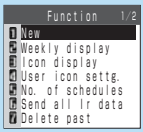


Schedule display

Using the function menu in the Schedule display

In the schedule display... ➡ P. 437

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:



Schedule display function menu display

Schedule display function menu 1/2

1 **New**	See "Adding schedule entries" →P. 439
2 **Weekly display** (default setting)*1	Switches the schedule display mode. See "Changing the Schedule display mode" →P. 438
3 **Icon display**	▶**Select an icon and press ●.** Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events (D or W) are displayed as a single item.
4 **User icon settg**	See "Setting your choice of image as your user icon" →P. 441
5 **No. of schedules**	Displays the number of stored schedule entries, stored holidays, stored anniversaries and entries stored as secret events.
6 **Send all Ir data**	Sends all the stored schedule entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" →P. 417

Continued on next page

7 Delete past	▶Choose from the following options: Delete all the schedule entries prior to a selected date.	
	1 Schedule	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.
	2 Holiday	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes holidays up to the previous day.
	3 Anniversary	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.
	4 All	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.

*1 : If you have selected the Weekly display, "2 Monthly display" is displayed.

Schedule display function menu 2/2

1 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Choose from the following options: For information on security code →P. 142	
	1 Schedule	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
	2 Holiday	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
	3 Anniversary	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
	4 All	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.
2 Reset holiday	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Resets the schedule to the national public holidays stored initially.	

Changing the Schedule display mode

The calendar displayed by the Schedule can be viewed either as a "Monthly display" or a "Weekly display". By using ◎ to highlight a particular date, you can check icons and the number of scheduled events stored for the selected date.



Shows icons and the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.

Blue dates: Saturdays
Red dates: Sunday, festivals and holidays
◯: Anniversaries
__: Today
□: Scheduled event stored for the morning
■: Scheduled event stored for the afternoon



Shows the icons, number, and details of scheduled events set for the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.

The public holidays are set in accordance with the "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成13年法律第59号）" (Revised National Holidays Law (Law No.59, 2001)). (As at December 2004)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

1 **Press Menu 4 GHI 5 JKL ▶ Press 左 (New) ▶ Press 2 ABC "Holiday".**

■ **To add an anniversary.**
Press 3 DEF "Anniversary".

2 **Specify the respective settings.**

Date setting	▶ **Enter the date and press ●.** Enters the date of the added holiday or anniversary.	
Repeat	▶ **Choose from the following options:** Set the holiday or anniversary repetitions.	
	1 **1 time**	The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.
	2 **Annually**	The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.
Message	▶ **Enter a message and press ●.** Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. The message can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	

3 **Press 左 (Finish).**

Note

- If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

Adding schedule entries

By adding the details of a trip or appointment to your schedule, you can have the FOMA terminal notify you using an alarm tone and animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- The scheduled event is not automatically deleted once the specified date and time has passed. If you try to store more than 100 events in your schedule, a message appears saying that the event cannot be stored. Delete some unwanted scheduled events and try again.

1 **Press Menu 4 GHI 5 JKL ▶ Press 左 (New) ▶ Press 1 あ "Schedule".**

2 **Specify the respective settings.**

Date setting (from)	▶ **Enter the date and time and press ●.** Enters the starting time for the scheduled event.
Date setting (to)	▶ **Enter the date and time and press ●.** Enters the finishing time for the scheduled event.

Continued on next page

Repeat	▶**Choose from the following options:** Set the scheduled event repetitions.	
	1 **1 time**	The event is only set for the specified day.
	2 **Daily (D)**	The event is set to repeat every day.
	3 **Weekly (W)**	▶**Use ● to select a checkbox (□) and press ● ▶ press 左 (Finish).** The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.
Alarm	▶**Choose from the following options:** Specify the alarm notification settings used when the starting date and time is reached.	
	1 **ON**	An alarm notification is used at the starting time.
	2 **ON/Set time**	▶**Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes).** Sets how many minutes in advance of the starting time alarm notification is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press ●.
	3 **OFF**	No alarm notification is given when the starting time is reached.
Alarm tone	▶**Choose from the following options:** Select the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the pre-installed option. Alarm tones can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" →P. 114	
	1 **Inbox**	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	2 **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	3 **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" recorded using the Voice Announce function as the alarm tone. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →P. 450
	4 **OFF**	No alarm tone sounds.
Summary	▶**Enter a message and press ●.** Enters a summary of the scheduled event details. The summary can include up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters. The entered summary appears on the display during alarm notification. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Detail	▶**Enter a message and press ● ▶Select an icon and press ●.** Enters the scheduled event details. The summary can include up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526 When no summary is set, the details appear on the display during alarm notification. If both summary and details are set, the summary is displayed.	

3 Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- You cannot store or edit schedule entries while PIM lock is set. Note also that when the calendar is set as the stand-by display, added holidays are not displayed.
- When the calendar is set in the stand-by display, you can set your schedule from the calendar.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the set time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the scheduled event itself.
- If you attempt to store 2 scheduled events with the same date and time, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.
- Scheduled events can only be stored on the same date and time when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Weekly" and the Repeat setting for the other is "1 time" (no repeats). In this situation, the scheduled event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- If the day set as the starting time and the day set in the Repeat setting are different, the day set in the Repeat setting has priority and the scheduled event is added on the first specified day after the starting time.
- If you store a scheduled event during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are only displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode". →P. 147

Important

- You should back up the details of stored scheduled events onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 562) and a FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the Schedule data onto your PC.
- Stored Schedule entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of scheduled event details as a precautionary measure.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Setting your choice of image as your user icon

This procedure allows you to set an image or animation stored in “Image Viewer” as a user icon. Icons set as user icons are shown as to in the icon selection display. When you set a user icon, the selected image or animation is displayed when the FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm and a star ( ) appears in the indicator display.

● You can store up to 5 user icons.

In the schedule display function menu... ➡ P. 437

1 Press 4 GHI “User icon settg” ▶Select “Not recorded” and press ●.



■ **To change a user icon that was set previously**
Select an icon that has been set and press ●.

■ **To clear all the user icon settings**
Select “Release all” and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.
Settings can only be cleared when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder containing images.



If there are user-created folders, images can also be selected from those.
For information on selecting images →P. 345

■ **If the image is set in a schedule**
Select “Release this” and press ● ▶Select “YES” and press ●.

■ **If the image is not set in a schedule**
Select “Release this” and press ●.

3 Select the item to be set and press ●.

■ **To show a preview**
Highlight the item to be previewed and press 左 (Play).

Note

● If you attempt to change or clear a user icon that is being used in a scheduled event, a message appears asking whether to clear the icon. If you change or clear the user icon, the icon on the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to .

Checking schedule details

Use this procedure to view and check the detail display for scheduled events.

In the schedule display... ➡ P. 437

1 Select the date on which the scheduled event to be checked is stored and press ●.

The “Schedule list display” appears.
The icons used in the list display are described below.
: Scheduled event icon. Indicates that a scheduled event is stored.
: Stored holiday
: Stored anniversary
: Alarm set
: Daily repeating event set
: Weekly repeating event set on a specified day of the week
: Annual repeating event



Schedule list display

Continued on next page

2 Select item to be viewed in detail and press ●.



Scheduled event detail display



Holiday detail display



Anniversary detail display

Using the function menu in the Schedule List display

In the schedule list display... ➡ P. 441

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Schedule list display function menu 1/2

1 New	See "Adding schedule entries" →P. 439
2 Edit	Edits the schedule.
3 Copy	Copies schedule entries. When the copied entry is set as a repeating event in the source schedule, the repeat setting is removed when the entry is pasted.
4 Icon display	▶ Select an icon and press ●. Displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events (D or W) are displayed as a single item.
5 User icon settg	See "Setting your choice of image as your user icon" →P. 441
6 Release secret	Cancels the secrecy for a scheduled event stored as secret data. See "Changing secret data back to normal data" →P. 149
7 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245

Schedule list display function menu 2/2

1 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
2 Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" →P. 417	
3 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
5 Delete past	▶ Choose from the following options: Delete all of one of the following options up to the previous day.	
	1 Schedule	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes scheduled events up to the previous day.
	2 Holiday	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes holidays up to the previous day.
	3 Anniversary	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes anniversaries up to the previous day.
	4 All	▶ Select "YES" and press ●. Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
6 Delete select	▶ Use (↕) to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press (左) (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	

Note

- "Delete past" and "Delete select" do not delete the default holidays stored at the time of purchase. Also, "Delete all" resets stored holidays to the default holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- If you attempt to use Delete this or Delete select to delete a scheduled event for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message appears asking whether to delete the planned repetitions. Select "YES" and press ● to delete all repeat occurrences of the scheduled event.
- When you use "Delete past", all past occurrences of repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while repeat occurrences from the selected date onwards are left untouched.
- If you select "Delete select" from the Function menu when scheduled events are displayed by icon, the display changes to show the selective deletion display in the list display for the date selected in the display shown before the scheduled events were displayed by icon.

<ToDo>

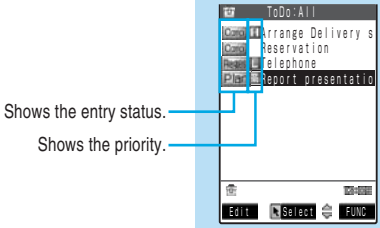
Adding ToDo List Entries

- You can store up to 100 entries in the ToDo list.
- For information on ToDo alarms →P. 433

Checking the entries

1 **Press Menu 9WXYZ 5JKL.**

The "ToDo display" appears.



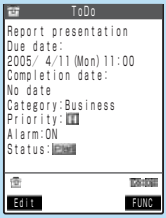
ToDo display

2 **Select the entry to be checked and press ●.**

■ **To edit the entry**

Press 左 (Edit).

See "Adding and editing entries" →P. 445



ToDo detail checking display

Using the function menu in the ToDo/ToDo Detail Checking display

In the ToDo/ToDo detail checking display... ➡ P. 443

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

ToDo display function menu 1/2

1 New	See "Adding and editing entries" →P. 445
2 Edit	See "Adding and editing entries" →P. 445

Continued on next page

3 Change status	▶Choose from the following options: Set the status of an entry. Settings 1/2	
	1 Plan	Sets the entry status to plan.
	2 Acceptance	Sets the entry status to acceptance.
	3 Request	Sets the entry status to request.
	4 Provisional plan	Sets the entry status to provisional plan.
	5 Confirmation	Sets the entry status to confirmation.
	6 Denial	Sets the entry status to denial.
	7 Completion	Sets the entry status to completion.
	Settings 2/2	
	1 Substitution	Sets the entry status to substitution.
4 Category display	▶Choose from the following options: Display entries by category.	
	1 All	Displays all the entries.
	2 None	Displays entries in no category.
	3 Personal	Displays entries in the Personal category.
	4 Holiday	Displays entries in the Holiday category.
	5 Travel	Displays entries in the Travel category.
	6 Business	Displays entries in the Business category.
	7 Meeting	Displays entries in the Meeting category.
5 Sort/Filter	▶Choose from the following options: Sort entries or displays only entries with a specified status. Settings 1/2	
	1 By due date	Sorts entries by due date from the oldest entry onwards.
	2 By completed	Sorts entries by completion date from the oldest entry onwards.
	3 By entered time	Sorts entries in the order in which they were entered.
	4 Plan	Displays only entries with the Plan status.
	5 Acceptance	Displays only entries with the Acceptance status.
	6 Request	Displays only entries with the Request status.
	7 Provisional plan	Displays only entries with the Provisional plan status.
	Settings 1/2	
	1 Confirmation	Displays only entries with the Confirmation status.
	2 Denial	Displays only entries with the Denial status.
	3 Completion	Displays only entries with the Completion status.
	4 Substitution	Displays only entries with the Substitution status.
6 Add desktop icon	▶Select "YES" and press ●. See "Using desktop icons" →P. 136	
7 Send Ir data	▶Select "YES" and press ●.	

ToDo display function menu 2/2

1 Send all Ir data	Sends all the entries using infrared communication. See "Sending all data entries" →P. 417
2 Export this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete select	▶Use ◇ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶Press ﾒ (Finish) ▶Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Delete completed	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
6 Delete all	▶Enter your security code and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Adding and editing entries

- Always enter details for an entry. Entries with no details entered are not added to the ToDo list.
- To edit a previously added entry, begin the procedure from step 2.

1 Press Menu 9WXYZ 5JKL ▶ Press 左 (New).

■ If the entry has already been added

Select "New" from the Function menu.

2 Specify the respective settings.

Details	**▶Enter the details for the entry and press ●.** Enters the details for the entry. The details can contain up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Due date	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the due date for an entry.	
	1 **Enter date**	**▶Enter the date and time and then press ●.** Enters the due date directly.
	2 **Choose date**	**▶Select a date from the calendar and press ● ▶Enter the time and press ●.** Selects a date from the calendar.
	3 **No date**	No due date is set.
Priority	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the priority for an entry.	
	1 H	Sets a H high priority.
	2 L	Sets a L low priority.
	3 **None**	No priority is set.
Category	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the category for an entry.	
	1 **None**	Sets no category.
	2 **Personal**	Sets the Personal category.
	3 **Holiday**	Sets the Holiday category.
	4 **Travel**	Sets the Travel category.
	5 **Business**	Sets the Business category.
	6 **Meeting**	Sets the Meeting category.
Alarm	**▶Choose from the following options:** Specify the alarm notification settings used when the due date is reached.	
	1 **ON**	An alarm notification is used at the due date.
	2 **ON/Set time**	**▶Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes).** Sets how many minutes in advance of the due date alarm notification is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press ●.
	3 **OFF**	No alarm notification is given when the due date is reached.

Continued on next page

Alarm tone	**▶Choose from the following options:** Select the alarm tone. Any user-created folders are displayed after the pre-installed option. Alarm tones can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. See "Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" →P. 114	
	1 **Inbox**	Selects an alarm tone from a list of melodies downloaded from i-mode sites and Internet websites.
	2 **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
	3 **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" as the alarm tone. See "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →P. 450
	4 **OFF**	No alarm tone sounds.
Completion date*	**▶Choose from the following options:** Set the completion date for an entry.	
	1 **Enter date**	**▶Enter the date and time and then press ●.** Enters the completion date directly.
	2 **Choose date**	**▶Select a date from the calendar and press ● ▶Enter the time and press ●.** Selects a date from the calendar.
	3 **No date**	No completion date is set.

*: Only displayed when an existing stored entry with a "status of" "Completion" is edited.

3 Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- You cannot store or ToDo list entries while PIM lock is set.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the set time before the ToDo event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the ToDo event itself.
- If you store a ToDo list entry during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.

Important

- You should back up the details of stored ToDo list entries onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 562) and a FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the ToDo list entries onto your PC.
- Stored ToDo list entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of scheduled event details as a precautionary measure.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

<Own number>

Storing Your Own Name and Image

Default setting	Own number only

Use this function to store your own personal information, including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in text entry and editing displays.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminal's own phone number.
- Items other than the phone number are stored on the FOMA terminal. Even if you insert the UIM card from another FOMA terminal, personal information stored on your FOMA terminal other than your phone is still displayed.

Displaying personal data

When this function is started up, it shows just your name, the FOMA terminal's own phone number and the first e-mail address listed. To view all the data, you have to enter your security code.

1 **Press (Menu) (0わを ん~).**

The "Own number display" appears.



Own number display

Using the function menu in the Own Number display

In the own number display... ➡ P. 447

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Own number display function menu 1/2

1 **Edit**	Edits your personal data. See "Storing personal data" →P. 448
2 **Display all data**	**▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Use ◎ to check the details.** For information on security code →P. 142
3 **Copy name**	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544
4 **Copy phone number**[*1]	Copies the phone number stored in the personal data. The copied phone number can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544
5 **Send Ir data**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**
6 **Export this**	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Exports 1 item of the information stored in your personal data to a miniSD memory card.
7 **Erase phone number**[*2]	**▶ Select "YES" and press ●.** Deletes the phone number, stored in the personal data.

*1 : It is as follows according to the chosen item.
- If you have selected the mail address, "4 Copy mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected the address, "4 Copy address" is displayed.
- If you have selected the birthday, "4 Copy birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected the memorandums, "4 Copy memorandums" is displayed.

Continued on next page

*2 : It is as follows according to the chosen item.
- If you have selected the mail address, "7 Erase mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected the address, "7 Erase address" is displayed.
- If you have selected the birthday, "7 Erase birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected the memorandums, "7 Erase memorandums" is displayed.
- If you have selected the delete image, "7 Delete image" is displayed.

Own number display function menu 2/2

1 Reset	▶Enter your security code and press ●. ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Resets (deletes) all the personal data other than your FOMA terminal's phone number and restores the defaults set at the time of purchase. When you use "Display all data" to display the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code. For information on security code →P. 142

Storing personal data

1 **Press Menu 0わを ▶ 左 (Edit) ▶Enter your security code and press ●.**

For information on security code →P. 142

2 **Specify the respective settings.**

Name	▶Enter your name and press ●. Enters your name. Your name can be up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Reading	▶Enter the reading and press ●. Enters the reading for your name. The Reading is entered automatically when you enter your name and need only be modified as necessary. Reading can be up to 32 characters long and can include half-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Phone number	▶Enter a phone number and press ● ▶Select an icon and press ●. Adds a phone number other than the FOMA terminal's own number and selects an icon. The phone number can contain up to 26 digits. When you store a new phone number, the " <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number.	
Mail address	▶Enter your e-mail address and press ● ▶Select an icon and press ●. Enters the e-mail address and selects an icon. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the " <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Address	▶Enter your postal code and press ● ▶Enter your street address and press ●. Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. Street addresses can be up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Birthday	▶Enter your birthday and press ●. Enters your birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.	
Memorandums	▶Enter a memo and press ●. Enters a memo (short note). Memos can be up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. See "Entering Text" →P. 526	
Image	▶Choose from the following options: Select the image displayed when you display your personal data.	
	1 Select image	Selects a still image.
	2 Release this	Releases a still image.

3 Press (左) (Finish).

Note

- If you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, the e-mail address stored in this function does not automatically change. In this situation, use this function to change your e-mail address manually.

<In-call voice memo/Stand-by voice memo>

Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice

The FOMA terminal provides 2 types of voice memos. "Voice memo" (Stand-by voice memo) allows you to record your own voice from the stand-by display, and "Voice memo" (In-Call voice memo) can be used to record the other party's voice in a voice or video-phone call.

- You can record either 1 in-call voice memo or one standby voice memo. Each time you record a voice memo, it overwrites the existing voice memo of the corresponding type.
- You can record voice memos up to 20 seconds long.
- For information on playing and erasing recorded voice memos →P. 72

Recording the other party's voice during a call

Use this procedure to record the other party's voice during a voice call or video-phone call. A single key press allows quick and easy recording of important calls.

1 Hold down (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during a call.



The FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The FOMA terminal beeps again as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the in-call display.

■ To cancel recording in progress

Press ●, CLR or PWR HLD, or hold down (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer.
Pressing PWR HLD also ends the call.

Note

- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are recording a voice memo, recording stops.
- You cannot record your or the other party's voice while a video-phone call is on hold or while you are using a Function menu option.

Recording yourself in stand-by mode

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 3 DEF ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Record the voice memo.

When the FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps again as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the "Tool" list display.

■ To cancel recording in progress

Press ●, CLR or PWR HLD.
Pressing PWR HLD returns you to the stand-by display but saves the recorded voice memo.

<Voice Announce>

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function allows you to record speech for use as original ring tones and answer messages.

- You can make 2 voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- Recordings can be up to 15 seconds long.
- Voice recordings made using this function can be set in the following functions:
  - · Ring tones
  - · Ring tones for calls without caller IDs
  - · On hold tone
  - · Holding tone
  - · Answer messages for recorded messages
  - · Alarm clock alarm tone
  - · Schedule alarm tone
  - · ToDo alarm tone

Recording voice

1 Press Menu 9 1 ▶ Select the item to be recorded and press ●.



2 Press 1 "Record" ▶ Recording voice.

Speak into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the original display.

■ To cancel recording in progress

Press ●, CLR or PWR HLD.

Pressing PWR HLD returns you to the stand-by display but saves the recorded voice memo.

Note

- When there is already a voice recording, a message appears notifying you that there is an existing recording. Select "YES" and press ● to make a new recording and overwrite the existing recording.
- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are making a voice announce recording, recording stops.

Playing and erasing voice announce recordings

1 Press Menu 9 1 ▶ Select the item to be played and press ●.



2 Choose from the following functions:

1 **Record**	See "Recording voice" →P. 450
2 **Play**	The recorded sound is played.
3 **Erase**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**

■ To stop playback in progress

Press ●, CLR or PWR HLD.

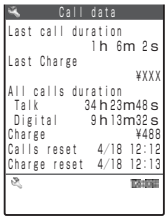
<Call data>

Checking Call Times and Charges

This function allows you to check the total call times and charges for voice calls and video-phone calls, and the call time and charge for the previous call. You will be able to check the cost of a call from December 2004.
You can use this function to display and check the call time for the last voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication, the total call time, and date and time when you last reset the totals.

- The call time is displayed for both voice calls and digital calls and communication (video-phone calls and 64K data transmission). Times for both calls made and calls received are displayed.
- Call costs are only displayed for calls made. However, free calls, such as those made to free dial numbers, are displayed as "¥＊＊".
- As call costs are accumulated on the FOMA card, the accumulated cost (start from December 2004) is displayed even if you change cards. (Stored on the UIM card.)
  *: Call costs are accumulated on FOMA cards in FOMA terminals released before the 901i series, but they cannot be displayed.
- You can reset displayed call times and call costs.
- Displayed call times and call costs are just a guide and may differ from the exact figure in actuality. Consumption tax is not included in the call costs.

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 1 あ.



Last call duration : Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown regardless of whether the call was incoming or outgoing.
Last charge : Shows the approximate charge for the last call.
All calls duration : Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0 sec"). "Talk" shows the total call time for voice calls. "Digital" shows the total call time for video-phone calls and 64K data communication.
Charge : Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset.
Calls reset : Shows the time and date of the last calls reset.
Charge reset : Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

Note

- If the last voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- If the total voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- The communication time is not counted for i-mode or packet communication. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" you received when you purchased your FOMA terminal.
- The time taken to pick up a call, or for the other party to pick up a call is not counted.
- If the "Set time" settings are not set or if "Set time" is set and then "Reset call duration" is not executed at least once, the date and time of time reset and charges reset are not displayed.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off or remove the UIM card, the duration and fee shown for the last call reverts to "0 sec" and "¥＊＊" respectively.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not affect the all calls duration and charge.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used outside of Japan (it does not support the roaming service).

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset call duration>

Use this procedure to reset the "Call data" displayed for the "All calls duration" and "Charge" to zero.

1 Press Menu 6 MNO 0 わ in ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

For information on security code →P. 142

1 Reset call duration	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Reset charge duration	▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Enter your PIN2 code and press ●.

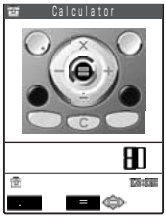
<Calculator>

Using the FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform 4 different types of arithmetical calculations (addition, subtraction, multiplication and division).

- The calculator can show up to 10 digits and up to 9 digits after the decimal point.
- If the result of a calculation exceeds 10 digits, ".E" is displayed.

1 Press Menu 8 TUV 5 JKL ▶ Calculation.



The FOMA terminal displays the entered numbers and calculation result.

■ To calculate "23 + 57"

2 3 + 5 7 =

■ To use negative numbers in a calculation

To calculate using negative amounts, simply insert "–" before the first digit.

– 2 3 + 5 7 =

<Text memo>

Composing a Text Memo

You can use your FOMA terminal to write short messages in the form of text memos. You can then paste a completed text memo into your schedule or into mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- Each text memo can contain up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.

Storing a text memo

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC.

The "Text memo display" appears.



Text memo display

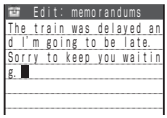
2 Select "<Not recorded>" and press 左 (Edit).

■ To edit the content of an existing text memo.

Select the item to be edited and press 左 (Edit).

3 Write the memo.

For information on entering text →P. 526



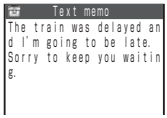
■ Important

- You should back up the details of stored text memos onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P. 562) and a FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to back up the text memos onto your PC.
- Text memos can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of text memos as a precautionary measure.

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Checking the details of text memos

1 Press Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC ▶ Select the item to be checked and press ● ▶ Check the memo.



Using the function menu in the Text Memo display

In the text memo display... ➡ P. 452

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Text memo display function menu 1/2

1 Edit	Edits the text memo.
2 Compose message	See "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" →P. 245
3 Edit schedule	See "Adding schedule entries" → P. 439
4 Send Ir data	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
5 Send all Ir data	See "Sending all data entries" → P. 417
6 Export this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
7 Text memo info	Displays the creation date/time and category.

Text memo display function menu 2/2

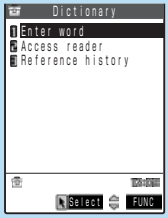
1 Category	▶ Choose from the following options: Set the category for the text memo.	
	1 None	Sets no category.
	2 Personal	Sets the Personal category.
	3 Holiday	Sets the Holiday category.
	4 Travel	Sets the Travel category.
	5 Business	Sets the Business category.
	6 Meeting	Sets the Meeting category.
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
3 Delete selected	▶ Use ↕ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.	
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142	

Using Dictionaries

Activating the dictionary

1 **Press (Menu) ▶Select Tools and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 7PQRS “Dictionary”.**

The “Dictionary display” appears.



Dictionary display

2 **Choose from the following options:**

1 **Enter word**	**▶Enter a word and press ●.** Enters a word directly. You can enter up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters. See “Entering Text” →P. 526
2 **Access reader**	**▶Select 1あ “Dic. (Japanese)” or 2ABC “Dic. (English)” ▶Scan the text.** Enters a word from the access reader. See “Scanning Text” →P. 188
3 **Reference history**	You can then search the dictionary using the history of previously retrieved words. See “Using reference history” →P. 455

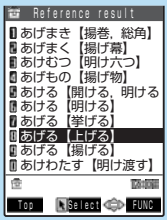
3 **Select the dictionary type and press ●.**

The “Retrieval results display (list)” appears.

■ **To display the previous or next list**

Press ○ in the list display.





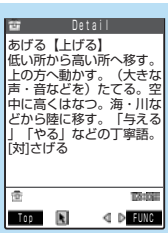
Retrieval results display (list)

4 **Select a word from the retrieval results list and press ●.**

The “Retrieval results display (detail)” appears.

■ **To display the previous or next word**

Press ○ in the detail display.



Retrieval results display (detail)

Using the function menu in the Dictionary display

In the dictionary display... ➡ P. 454

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Dictionary display function menu

1 **Add desktop icon**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.** See "Using Desktop Icons" →P. 136

Using reference history

In the dictionary display... ➡ P. 454

1 **Press J さ DEF "Reference history".**

The "Reference history display" appears.

2 **Select a word and press ●.**



Reference history display

Using the function menu in the Reference history display

In the reference history display... ➡ P. 455

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Reference history display function menu

1 **Delete this**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
2 **Delete all**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**

Using the function menu in the Retrieval Results (list) display

In the retrieval results (list) display... ➡ P. 454

1 **Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

Retrieval results (list) display function menu

1 **Copy**	Copies the word retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544
2 **Refer dic.**	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Using the function menu in the Retrieval Results (detail) display

In the retrieval results (detail) display... ➡ P. 454

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Retrieval results (detail) display function menu

1 **Copy**	Copies the word retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry displays, etc. See "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" →P. 544
2 **Re-reference**	See "Searching in the Retrieval Results (detail) display" →P. 456
3 **Refer dic.**	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.
4 **Refer edit**	This option allows you to refer to the retrieval results while editing text. The dictionary is activated from the text edit display and, if the operation display and text edit display cannot be shown, the text edit display from which the dictionary was launched appears (e.g. text memo or phonebook text edit display). See "Changing the Active Display". →P. 549

Searching in the Retrieval Results (detail) display

In the retrieval results (detail) display... ➡ P. 454

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Press 2 ABC "Re-reference".

2 Use ⊕ to move to the start of the text you want to retrieve and then press ●.

3 Use ⊕ to highlight to the end of the text you want to retrieve and then press ●.

4 Select the dictionary type and press ●.

5 Select a word from the retrieval results list and press ●.

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dic." from the respective Function menus in the following displays:

- Text edit displays
- Detail displays for sent or received mail and while the enter message body screen for a new mail is displayed.
- Pages on i-mode sites or Internet websites and while a screen memo is displayed

■ When you activate the dictionary from a text edit display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".
Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from the text edit display.

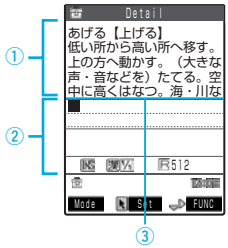
■ When you activate the dictionary from the Sent or Received Mail Detail display or from the Message Entry display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".
Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from a message in sent or received mail or from a new message you are composing.

■ When you activate the dictionary from a page on an i-mode or Internet site or from a screen memo

You can choose "Enter word", "Site refer (enter)" or "Reference history"
Choosing "Enter from site" allows you to enter the word you want to look up while referring to a screen memo or a page on a site.

Guide to the dictionary reference display



When you select “Refer edit” or “Site refer (enter)”, the display is split into top and bottom halves.
Each time you select “Change window” from the Function menu, the window you can use switches between ① and ②.

■When you selected “Refer edit” from the Retrieval Results display...

① shows the Dictionary Detail display.
② shows the text edit display.
③ shows the separation lines.
To exit the dictionary, switch to window ① and press 右 (End).

■When you selected “Refer edit” from a screen memo or a page on a site...

① shows the site page or screen memo display.
② shows the search term entry display.
③ shows the separation lines.
Enter the search term, change to window ② and press ●. The dictionary selection display appears with the search term entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

To connect an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone jack cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch plug into the socket. →P. 24

Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch

- Note that connecting the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is emitting a ring tone may cause the FOMA terminal to accept the call.
- Do not wrap the earphone/microphone with switch cord around the FOMA terminal as this may interfere with signal reception.

Using the switch to accept calls

- The switch can be used while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- The call connection tone and call end tones always sound regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.

1 When you receive a call, press the switch on the switch-equipped earphone/microphone.

■ Voice calls

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call.

■ Video-phone calls

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call using your substitute image. Press ⓕ to switch to your own camera image.

2 When you have finished talking, hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

■ To end the call from the FOMA terminal

Press PWR HOLD.

Continued on next page

Note

- You can use the "Earphone" setting to prevent sounds being played through the speaker when the earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- By setting "Automatic answer" to "ON", you can have the FOMA terminal answer calls automatically without having to press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch. →P. 458
- If "Silent" is selected for "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting, or if the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, no ring tone sounds. However, a ring tone does sound if you are using an "Original" mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- Holding down the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer during a call does not switch the FOMA terminal to hands-free mode. Holding down the switch for 1 second or longer actually ends the call.
- If you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting Service" (P. 469), you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch. Note that pressing the switch does not end the current call.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch as this may cause the FOMA terminal to automatically accept a call.

<Automatic answer>

Connecting Earphones and Receiving Calls Automatically

Default setting	Auto answer: OFF Ring time: 6 seconds

When an earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically answer received voice or video-phone calls without you having to press the switch.

- The FOMA terminal does not automatically answer calls during 64K data communication.

1 Press Menu 9WXYZ 4GHI ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 ON	▶ **Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds).** Enables the Automatic answer function. The FOMA terminal waits for the specified ring time after the call is received and then automatically answers the call. Enter a 3-digit number as the ring time. To set the currently displayed time, simply press ●.
2 OFF	Disables automatic answering.

Note

- When the FOMA terminal automatically answers a video-phone call, the caller sees your substitute image. To switch to your own image displayed by FOMA terminal's camera during the video-phone call, press ⓒ.
- You cannot set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is the same as the ringing time for "Record message" or "Remote observation".
- To give this function priority when it is set at the same time as the "Voice Mail Service" (P. 467) or "Call Forwarding Service" (P. 470), set a shorter ring time for this function than those set for Voice Mail and Call Forwarding.
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Automatic answer ringing time, the FOMA terminal switches to Automatic answer without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it switches to Automatic answer, set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is longer than the ring start time.
- If you connect an earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is ringing, Automatic answer does not operate. However, Automatic answer will operate if you disconnect the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is ringing.

<PLMN Setting>

Selecting Your Provider

* If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

Default setting	DoCoMo

Use this setting to specify your FOMA service provider (PLMN).

- As at December 2004, no communications service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1あ "Other settings" ▶ Select "PLMN setting" and press ● ▶ Press 1あ "Manual" ▶ Select the PLMN (communications service provider) and press ●.

<Reset settings>

Resetting the Function Settings

This function allows you to reset the FOMA terminal's function settings to the defaults selected at the time of purchase.

- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not returned to its default setting.
- To restore the default settings for the i-mode functions, use "Reset". →P. 225
- To reset the "Last URL" setting, use "Reset last URL". →P. 225
- To restore the default settings for the mail functions, use "Reset". →P. 299

1 Press Menu 2 ABC 3 DEF ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

■ To cancel the reset

Select "NO" and press ●.

Functions that are reset

Function			Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	Phone: Level 4 Video-phone: Level 4 Mail: Level 4 Chat mail: Level 4 Message Request: Level 4 Message Free: Level 4
		Select ring tone	Phone: Ring tone 1 Video-phone: Ring tone 1 Mail: Ring tone 2 Chat mail: Ring tone 2 Message Request: Ring tone 3 Message Free: Ring tone 3
		Sound effect	Set surround: OFF Set 3D sound: ON SRS_WOW: OFF
		Vibrator	Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Chat mail: OFF Message Request: OFF Message Free: OFF
		Illumination	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 Message Request: Color 1 Message Free: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12 Adjust color tone: Initial setting
		Manner mode set	Manner mode For information on setting original manners →P. 119
		Disp. PH-book image	ON
		Answer setting	Any key answer
		Fold setting	End the call

Continued on next page

Function			Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Mail/Msg. ring time	Mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds Chat mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds Message Request: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds Message Free: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds
		Ringing time	Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display
		Info notice setting	Japanese display: 電子音 English display: ON
	Talk	Noise reduction	ON
		Quality alarm	High tone
		Reconnect control	No tone
		Illumination in talk	OFF
		Call response setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody
	Video-phone	Image quality	Normal
		Camera image sending	ON
		Select image	On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Substitutive image: Chara-den Record message: Pre-installed Preparing: Pre-installed. Voice memo: Pre-installed
		Voice call auto switch	OFF
		Remote observation	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 seconds Set: OFF
		Disp. settings V-phone	Main display: Other image Display setting: Main display size
	Display	Display setting	Stand-by display: Shade In The Room Wake-up display: Welcome Edit message: It returns to the state where it does not entered. Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Check new message: Standard
		Display light	Lighting: ON (lit) + Saver (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2
		Display design	Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background1: OFF Background2: Pattern 1
		Indicator display	Display information Contrast: Level 5 Clock type: Digital Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) (Display clock only settings →P. 127)
		Font	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Function			Default settings
Settings	Display	Original menu	Own number Check new message Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set	Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: Detail Theme: Light & Shade
		Viewer settings	Picture
		Automatic display	OFF
	Call time/charge	Call time display	ON
	Clock	Clock display	Display: As per “Select language” setting Size: Big
		Alarm setting	Alarm preferred
	Lock/ Security	Self mode	Reset
		Keypad dial lock	OFF
		Reject unknown	Accept
		Call setting w/o ID	Accept all/Same as ring tone
		Scanning function	Scan function: ON
		Remote all lock	OFF Accept phone No.: Reverts to “Not recorded” Monitoring: 3 minutes Received calls: 5 time
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	60 seconds
		Set check new message	Mail: ON Message Request: ON Message Free: ON
		Host selection	i-mode User defined host: Reverts to “Not recorded”
		SMS center selection	DoCoMo User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.
		Certificate	All valid
		Certificate host	DoCoMo User setting host: Reverts to “Not recorded”
	i-αppli settings	Display software info	Not display
		αDisplay light	Depend on system
		αVibrator	Depend on system
		αIndicator display	Depend on system
	External option	Earphone	Earphone + Speaker
		Automatic answer	OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds
	Other settings	Keypad sound	ON
		Charge sound	ON
		Side keys guard	OFF
		Character input method	Input mode: All ON Prior mode: Mode 1 (5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode
		Record display set	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON
		Sub-address	ON
		Prefix setting	Revert to “Not recorded”
		Int’l dial setting	Auto assist setting: Auto Country Code setting: 日本 (Country code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.
		Neuropointer	Pointer: ON Simple: Normal

Continued on next page

Function			Default settings
Settings	Other settings	Select icons setting	ON
		USB mode setting	Communication mode
Tool		Camera	Photo mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: CIF (352 × 288) Storage setting: Fine Image quality Auto correction: ON Color mode set: Normal Photo mode: Portrait Image tuning: Auto Select frame: OFF Movie mode Camera: Rear camera Select size: Large (176 × 144) File size setting: Restricted (Short) Storage setting: Normal Image quality Brightness: 0 White balance: Auto Color mode set: Normal Photo mode: Portrait Image tuning: Auto Movie type set: Normal Photo mode/Movie mode Shutter sound: Sound 1 Auto timer: OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.) Auto save set: OFF File restriction: File unrestricted Display size: Actual size (For information on setting Continuous mode → P. 171, P. 172)
		Schedule	Monthly display User icon setting: Reverts to “Not recorded”.
		Alarm clock	All OFF
		Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
		Forwarding image	ON
Network service		Arrival call act	Answer
Phonebook		Utilities	All OFF
		Restrictions	All OFF
Own data		Common phrases	Set phrases reset (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)
Data box		My picture	Set image disp.: Normal
		i-motion	Listing: Title + image (FOMA terminal) Name + image (miniSD) Set image disp.: Actual size
		Chara-den	Rec. Chara-den: Photo mode Substitute image: Dimo Set image display: Fit in display Select size: QCIF (176 × 144) Movie type set: Video+Voice Storage setting: Normal
Other functions		Volume	Level 4
		Manner mode	OFF
		Driving mode	OFF
		V-phone settings	Brightness: 0 Display light: All time ON
		Phonebook search Last one function*1	Reading search
		Desktop icon Last one function*1	Page 1, left edge

*1 : The Last one function provides for the function selected the last time an operation was performed to be the pre-selected function the next time that operation is performed.

Note

- You cannot reset the duration while using another function or while All lock or PIM lock are set.

<Initialize>

Resetting to the Default Settings

This function deletes stored data and returns the settings for the FOMA terminal's functions to their defaults set at the time of purchase.

- If you have deleted the default pre-installed Chara-den characters, resetting the FOMA terminal restores them.
- Data that was stored at the time of purchase is not deleted.
- For more information on the restored default settings, see "Reset settings" (P. 459).
- The Reset settings option (P. 459) returns the functions listed below to their default settings set at the time of purchase.
  - Phonebook
  - Group setting
  - Call data
  - Call response setting
  - Mail member
  - Sent address
  - Voice announce
  - Bar code reader
  - Multi number
  - Last URL
  - i-mode settings
  - i-αppli action info
  - Template
  - Mail settings
  - Redial/Dialed calls
  - Set time
  - Own dictionary
  - Melody
  - Chat group
  - Access reader
  - Download dictionary
  - Dictionary
  - Bookmark
  - Internet
  - Software list settings
  - Mail data
  - Color palette
  - Received calls
  - Text memo
  - Pause dial
  - ToDo
  - Received address
  - Sub-address
  - Certificate host
  - Additional service
  - Screen memo
  - Message
  - Auto start setting
  - Mail folders
  - Chat member
- Group names and folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Protected data is also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before resetting the FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to reset the FOMA terminal if there is too little battery charge.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal off while it is being reset.
- You cannot use any other functions while the FOMA terminal is being reset, nor can you receive voice calls, video-phone calls or mail.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1あ "Other settings" ▶ Select "Initialize" and press ● ▶ Enter security code and press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

2 Select "YES" and then press ● ▶ Select "YES" and then press ●.



Initialization begins.
Initialization may take a few moments.
When the terminal reset ends, the FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is not completed correctly

After turning the power on, Initialization restarts.

Note

- If you deleted data or an i-αppli that was pre-installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase, download the deleted files from the "みんなNらんど" page on the "ケータイ電話メーカー " website. Separate packet communication charges will apply for the download. →P. 204
- FeliCa i-αpplis and data on the IC card is not deleted.
- You cannot reset the FOMA terminal while another function is running.
- Data saved, stored or set on the UIM card or miniSD memory card is not deleted.
- Data communication settings specified from a PC are not deleted.
- When there are large amounts of data to be deleted, resetting may take some time.

Network Services

Available Network Services 466
Voice Mail Service (Paid) 467
Call Waiting Service (Paid) 469
Call Forwarding Service (Free) 470
Nuisance Call Barring Service (Paid) 472
Caller ID Request Service (Free) 473
Dual Network Service (Paid) 474
English Guidance (Free) 474
Service Dial 476
Handling Calls Received During a Call 476
Setting Up Remote Access <Remote access> 477
Multi number (Not available as of December 2004) 477
Adding and Using Services <Additional Services (Enter USSD number)> ... 477

To use the “Voice mail”, “Call forwarding”, “Call waiting”, “Nuisance call barring”, “Dual network” and “i-mode” services, you must subscribe beforehand. For further information on the network services, refer to contact information provided on the back cover of the Manual. (Check the phone number carefully before dialing.)

Subscribe to the “Voice mail”, “Call waiting”, “Call forwarding”, “Nuisance call barring” and “i-mode” services via the DoCoMo eSite. See the back cover of the Manual for details.

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the services and how they are used.

Service name	Description	Subscription required	Monthly usage fees	Ref. page
Voice Mail Service	Stores caller messages on your behalf.	Yes	Yes	P. 467
Call Forwarding Service	Forwards calls to a preset number.	Yes	No	P. 470
Call Waiting	Allows you to take calls from other people while you are on the phone.	Yes	Yes	P. 469
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Automatically bars calls from nuisance callers or repeated wrong number calls.	Yes	Yes	P. 472
Caller ID Notification Service	Provides the FOMA terminal phone number to callers when you make a call.	No	No	P. 45
Caller ID Request Service	Plays a message to callers who do not provide a caller ID by asking them to call again with their caller ID provided.	No	No	P. 473
Driving Mode	Plays a message to callers saying that you are driving and cannot take the call.	No	No	P. 67
Dual Network Service	Allows the same phone number to be shared by the FOMA terminal and mova terminal.	Yes	Yes	P. 474
English Guidance	Allows you to select English as the language used in the spoken guidance messages provided when you make or receive calls or set up network services.	No	No	P. 474
Short Message Service (SMS)	Provides a simple way to send and receive short text messages.	No	No	P. 308
i-mode	Allows you to connect to i-mode sites (programs) and use i-mode mail, etc.	Yes	Yes	P. 196

- If the  icon appears for the service being used when you are connected to the Network Service Center, the service cannot be used.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu. →P. 477
- For more details of the network services, refer to the “Network Services Operation Guide”.

Voice Mail Service (Paid)

Subscription required	Yes

If you receive a voice call when the icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service plays an answer message to the caller and stores the caller's message on your behalf.
You can check your stored messages from anywhere in Japan.

- The Voice mail service cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the icon is displayed. If you use "Remote access" (P. 477) to enable remote service access beforehand, you can access the Voice mail service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your "Network security code" (P. 142).
- To use the Voice mail service, you must pay a monthly usage fee plus the call charges that apply when you listen to your recorded messages.

About the Voice Mail service

- The Voice Mail Service Center will store up to 20 Voice mail messages, each of which can be up to approximately 3 minutes long.
- Messages are held at the center for up to 72 hours.
- If you receive a video-phone call, the call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center even when Voice Mail is activated and the FOMA terminal continues to emit the ring tone.
- The Voice mail service is automatically suspended when the "Call forwarding service" (P. 470) is activated.
- If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID request service" (P. 473) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and cannot leave a message at the Voice mail service center.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service operation

Voice mail service activated

⬇

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice call.

⬇

You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice mail service center

⬇

The caller records a message.

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answer message, he or she can interrupt the answer message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing #.

⬇

The Voice mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message.

⬇

You listen to the recorded message.

Note

- You can also choose to simply leave a message saying that you cannot answer the call. Select this option in "Setting".
- You can still make and receive calls while the Voice mail service is activated.
- If you receive a voice call when the Voice mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within that time, it is transferred to the Voice mail service center. A "missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display and an entry is recorded in the "Received Calls".
- Voice calls received while you are talking on the FOMA terminal are also transferred to the Voice mail service center. →P. 477

Activating the Voice mail service

1 Press Menu ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶Press 2 "Activate" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.



Continued on next page

2 Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press ●.

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the Received Calls record.
If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.

■ **To change the ringing time only**
Press 4 "Set ringing time" ▶ Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press ●.

■ **To deactivate the Voice Mail service**
Press 3 "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

- To give priority to Voice mail when "Record message" is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Voice mail is shorter than the ringing time set for "Record message".
- If the ring start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the Voice mail ringing time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to Voice mail without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to Voice Mail, set a ringing time for Voice mail that is longer than the ring start time.

Checking your Voice mail service settings

Use the procedure below to check your settings at the Voice mail service center. You can also modify your settings while checking them.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Service and press ● ▶ Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶ Press 5 "Status request".

The "Status request display" appears.
Check your current Voice mail service settings in this display.



Status request display

Using the function menu in the Status Request display

In the status request display... ➡ P. 468

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Status Request display Function menu

1 **Activate**	Activates the Voice Mail service.
2 **Deactivate**	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
3 **Set ringing time**	Changes the ring time.

Changing your Voice Mail service settings using spoken guidance

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Service and press ● ▶ Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶ Press 6 "Setting" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center. Then specify your settings by following the spoken instructions.

Note

- You cannot operate during a call.
- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys (0 - 9, ✱ and #) in response to the spoken instructions, note that pressing ☎ not the end the call. In this event, press ☎ again.

Having the FOMA terminal ring when your recorded messages increase <Message notification>

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal emit a ring tone when the number of recorded messages held at the Voice mail service center increases.

- The FOMA terminal only rings when the stand-by display is shown.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Service and press ● ▶ Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶ Press 7 "Message notification" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

Checking for recorded messages <Check messages>

1 Press Menu 2 5.

After checking for messages, the FOMA terminal displays a message saying that it has finished checking for messages. If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail Service Center, the ☎1 (Voice mail icon) and VM (Voice mail) desktop icons are displayed. The number in the Voice Mail desktop icon changes according to the number of stores messages (☎1, ☎2, ☎3 ... ☎+ (10 messages or more)).

Note

- The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.
- Once you have checked for messages, you may not be able to use this function to check the messages again.

Playing recorded messages

● You cannot use this procedure during a call.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶Press 1 "Play messages" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the spoken instructions.

Note

● If you press the FOMA terminal's keys (0 - 9, * and #) in response to the spoken instructions, note that pressing the end key not the end the call. In this event, press the end key again.

Erasing the Voice mail icons

Use this procedure to clear voice mail icons ( ) from the stand-by display.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶Press 8 "Erase icon" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

Note

● Erasing the icon does not erase the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon is displayed again when you check for messages.

Activating the Notice Call Service

When you receive a voice call while the icon is displayed or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (P. 308) containing information about the call (date and time of the call and the caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.

● You can set this function regardless of whether you have activated the Voice mail service.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 3 "Voice mail" ▶Press 9 "Activate notice call" ▶Select the following options:

1 **All notice call**	**▶Select "YES" and press ●.** Notifies you of all received calls.
2 **Notify caller ID only**	**▶Select "YES" and press ●.** Notifies you only of calls where a caller ID was provided.

■To deactivate the Notice Call service

Press 0 "Deactivate notice call" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

■To check the Notice Call service

Use ⟳ ▶Press 1 "Notice call status"

Call Waiting Service (Paid)

Subscription required	Yes

The Call waiting service enables you to answer another voice call while you are talking on the FOMA terminal. You can also use this service to put your current call on hold while you call someone else.

● You cannot use Call waiting from the FOMA terminal in locations where is displayed.

● To use Call waiting, select "Answer" in "Arrival call act" (P. 476) beforehand. If another setting is selected, you will not be able to answer calls received during a call when Call waiting is activated.

● If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID request service" (P. 473) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and you cannot answer the call.

● The Call waiting service is not available in the following situations:

- During a call to a 3-digit number such as 110, 119, 118, 117* or 104.
- While you are dialing or waiting for the called party to answer your call.
- While you are on a call to a 4-digit phone number to specify network service settings, such as 1411 (activate the Voice mail service) or 1420 (deactivate the Call forwarding service).
- If you have subscribed to the Voice mail service and are connected to the Voice mail service center to listen to recorded messages, etc.

*: If you receive a voice call while on a call to 117, you hear the Call waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps) but you cannot answer the call.

Activating Call waiting

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 4 "Call waiting" ▶Press 1 "Activate" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.



■To deactivate the Call Waiting Service

Press 2 "Deactivate" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

■To check your Call Waiting settings

Press 3 "Status request".

If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, hold is released and you return to your call. If

Continued on next page

you hear "beep, beep" sounds, pressing ☎ or ● automatically puts the first call on hold and connects the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received call

1 When you hear the call waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press ☎ or ●.

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new call.



2 Switch back to your first caller.

■ **To end the call with the second caller**

Press PWR HLD and then press ☎ or ●.
This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to your first call.

■ **To put the second caller on hold**

Press ☎.
This puts the second caller on hold and returns you to your first call.
You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing ☎.

■ **To end the call on hold**

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 “End held call”.

Note

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears saying that you can answer the new call by ending either the current call or the held call. To end the held voice call, press ●, select “End held call” and then press either ☎ or ●. To end the current call, press ●, press PWR HLD and then press either ☎ or ●.

Ending the current voice call to answer another call

1 When you hear the call waiting tone (repeated soft double-beeps), press PWR HLD.

The first call is ended and the ring tone sounds.
If an i-motion is set as the ring tone, “Pattern 1” is played.

2 Press ☎ or ●.

The FOMA terminal answers the new call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to call someone else

Use this procedure to put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

1 Dial another phone number during your current call and press ☎.

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.
You can also make calls by searching the phonebook.
For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98



2 Switch back to the first call.

■ **To end the new call**

Press PWR HLD and then press ☎ or ●.
This ends the new call and returns you to your first call.

■ **To put the new call on hold**

Press ☎.
This puts the new call on hold and returns you to your first call.
You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing ☎.

■ **To end the call on hold**

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 “End held call”.

Note

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another call while the “Multi calling” is shown, refer to the procedure in “Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received call” (P. 470).

Call Forwarding Service (Free)

Subscription required	Yes

If you receive a voice or video-phone call when the icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call forwarding service forwards the voice or video-phone call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

- You cannot use Call forwarding in locations where is displayed. If you use “Remote access” (P. 477) to enable remote service access beforehand, you can to access the Call forwarding service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your “Network security code” (P. 142).

About the Call forwarding service

- You can only nominate 1 Call Forwarding number.
- Received video-phone calls can only be forwarded to a video-phone-compatible phone that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P. 76).
- The sender sees the "Forwarding. Please wait..." message until the call is forwarded to the forwarding number.
- The Call Forwarding Service is automatically deactivated when you activate the "Voice mail service".
- If you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the "Caller ID request service" (P. 473) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and the call is not forwarded.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service operation

Call forwarding number registered

↓

Call forwarding service activated

↓

Your FOMA terminal receives a voice or video-phone call.

↓

If you do not answer the voice or video-phone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number.

Call Forwarding Service call charges

Caller → Call forwarding service subscriber → Forwarding number

Charges paid by the caller

Charges paid by the Call Forwarding Service subscriber

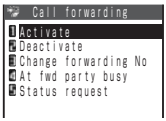
- There is no charge for calls made to register forwarding numbers, to activate or deactivate the service or to specify the ring tone duration.
- When calls are forwarded, charges for calls from the location registration area for the FOMA terminal used to subscribe to the Call forwarding service to the forwarding number are incurred by the service subscriber.
  These charges can increase markedly if you leave the FOMA terminal switched off after you have set forwarding in a remote location.
  For example, if you set your company's phone number in Tokyo as the forwarding number and activate the Call forwarding service in Osaka when you are there on a business trip, this sets Osaka as the location registration area. If you then leave the FOMA terminal turned off, all forwarded calls are charged at the Osaka-Tokyo rate.
  Make sure to turn on your FOMA terminal when you return from a remote location, so that the location registration is updated.

Note

- You can still make voice and video-phone calls when the Call forwarding service is activated.
- If you receive a voice or video-phone call when the Call forwarding service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within that time, it is transferred to the forwarding number. A "missed call" desktop icon appears on the stand-by display and an entry is recorded in the "Received calls" record.
- Received calls are automatically forwarded without the FOMA terminal ringing if your FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off. You (the service subscriber) are charged for the call from your mova to the forwarding number.
- Calls received while you are on another call can also be forwarded. →P. 477
- When necessary, Call forwarding can be deactivated by a request from the forwarding number instead of the subscriber (you).
- You cannot accept collect calls (calls paid for by the receiver) while call forwarding is in progress.

Activating Call forwarding

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 5 JKL "Call forwarding" ▶Press 1 "Activate".



■To deactivate the Call Forwarding Service

Press 2 ABC "Deactivate" ▶Select "YES" and press ●.

■To change the forwarding number only

Press 3 DEF "Change forwarding No". ▶Enter the new forwarding number and press ● ▶If Call forwarding is already active, press 1 "Change No.". If it is inactive, press 2 ABC "Change No. + Activate".

■To check your Call forwarding settings

Press 5 JKL "Status request".

2 Set the forwarding number and the ringing time.

■To set the forwarding number

Press 1 "Register fwd number" ▶Enter the forwarding number and press ●.

Once you set the number, a star (★) appears next to 1 "Register fwd number".

Use ◎ to enter the number from the phonebook. For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

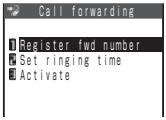
■To set the ringing time

Press 2 ABC "Set ringing time" ▶Enter the ringing time (000-120 seconds) and press ●.

Once you set the ringing time, a star (★) appears next to press 2 ABC "Set ringing time".

Continued on next page

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls” record.
If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.



3 Press 3 “Activate” ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Note

- Even when Call forwarding is activated, received video-phone calls can only be forwarded to a video-phone-compatible phone that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P. 76). Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding. Note also that no guidance message is sent to the person making the video-phone call during call forwarding. (If the caller is using this FOMA terminal, a forwarding message is displayed.)
- You cannot register toll-free numbers or 3-digit numbers, such as 110, as forwarding numbers.
- Note that you should provide an explanatory forwarding announcement for callers if you are forwarding calls to an internal company number PBX, a QUICKCAST* pager or fax number.
- If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for “Register fwd number” and “Set ringing time”.
- To give priority to Call forwarding when “Record message” is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Call Forwarding is shorter than the ringing time set for “Record message”.
- To give priority to Call forwarding when “Remote observation” is set at the same time, ensure that the ringing time set for Call Forwarding is shorter than the ringing time set for “Remote observation”.
- If the ring start time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the Call forwarding ringing time, the FOMA terminal forwards the call to Call forwarding service without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to the Call forwarding service, set a ringing time for Call forwarding that is longer than the ring start time.

Forwarding call to Voice mail when the forwarding number is busy <Forwarding number busy setting>

When the forwarding number is busy, received voice calls can be transferred to the Voice mail service center.

- You must be subscribed to the Voice Mail Service.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Service and press ● ▶ Press 5 “Call forwarding” ▶ Press 4 “At fwd party busy” ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

Nuisance Call Barring Service (Paid)

Subscription required	Yes

The Nuisance call barring service allows you to register specific phone numbers, such as those nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and a call rejected message is sent to the caller.

- You cannot use the Nuisance call barring service when is displayed.
- If you receive a video-phone call from a barred caller, the call is ended without a call rejected message being sent to the caller.
- You can register up to 30 barred numbers.
- If the Nuisance Call Barring Service is activated at the same time as other network services, it operates as shown in the table below.

Network service	Handling of received calls
Voice mail service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no recorded message is stored.
Call forwarding service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and the call is not forwarded.
Call waiting service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller.
Caller ID request service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no caller ID request is sent to the caller.
Driving mode	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no Driving mode message is sent to the caller.

- Calls barred by the Nuisance call barring service are not logged in the “Received calls” and no “Missed call” desktop icon is displayed.

Registering the last received nuisance call for call barring <Register caller>

Use this procedure to add the last caller to your list of barred callers.

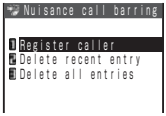
- You can register callers who do not provide a caller ID.
- You cannot bar overseas callers.
- You cannot check your list of barred callers. You should make a written note of the phone numbers you have registered as barred callers.

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Service and press ● ▶ Press 6 “Nuisance call barring” ▶ Press 1 “Register caller” ▶ Select “YES” and press ● ▶ Press ●.

■ If there are already 30 registered numbers

A message appears asking whether to delete the oldest stored number and add the new number.
To add the new number to the list, delete the oldest number as instructed by the message and then store

the number of the last received nuisance call as a barred caller.



Note

- Received calls that were not answered and calls from yourself cannot be stored.
- Call barred by this function are not logged in the "Received calls".
- If you receive a video-phone call from a phone number registered in the Nuisance Call Barring Service, the video-phone call is ended with no "Call rejected" message sent to the caller.
- You can also specify a phone number by keypad operation and store it as a barred number. To do this, make a voice call to 144 directly from the stand-by display and then store the number as directed by the instructions.

Removing numbers from the barred callers list

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 6 MNO "Nuisance call barring".

2 Remove the barred phone number.

■**To remove 1 barred number from the end of the list**

Press 2 ABC "Delete recent entry" ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.

Only the last stored phone number can be removed. Repeating this procedure does not remove any of the preceding barred numbers.

■**To remove all the barred numbers in the list**

Press 3 DEF "Delete all entries" ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.

Caller ID Request Service (Free)

Subscription required	No

When you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID Request Service sends the caller a spoken message requesting a caller ID in the case of voice calls and a visual message requesting a caller ID for video-phone calls, and then automatically ends the call. This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and makes using the FOMA terminal safer.

- You cannot use the Caller ID request service when  is displayed.
- This service only operates when the caller has deliberately withheld his or her caller ID using the "User unset" reason setting. Calls where the reason is "Payphone" or "Not supported" are not intercepted by this service.
- There is no charge for activating or deactivating the Caller ID request service.
- Call charges while the message is sent to the caller are paid by the caller.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Voice mail", "Call forwarding", "Call waiting" or "Driving mode", the Caller ID request service has priority and intercepts incoming calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Nuisance call barring" service, "Nuisance call barring" service has priority and rejects received calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Call setting w/o ID" (P. 154), the Caller ID request service has priority.
- Calls rejected by the Caller ID request service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed.

Activating the Caller ID Request Service

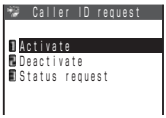
1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 7 PQRS "Caller ID request" ▶Press 1 "Activate" ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.

■**To deactivate the Caller ID request service**

Press 2 ABC "Deactivate" ▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.

■**To check your Caller ID request service settings**

Press 3 DEF "Status request".



Note

- The caller ID request message is not sent to callers in the following situations:
  - When the caller ID request message cannot be displayed, such as calls from an NTT payphone or from overseas.
  - When the caller is using the Call count display service or Charge meter, the call is connected without the caller ID request message being sent.
  - 64 data communication calls are connected without the caller ID request message being sent.

* As of January 2001, the DoCoMo "Pocket Bell" pager service has been renamed as "QUICKCAST".

Dual Network Service (Paid)

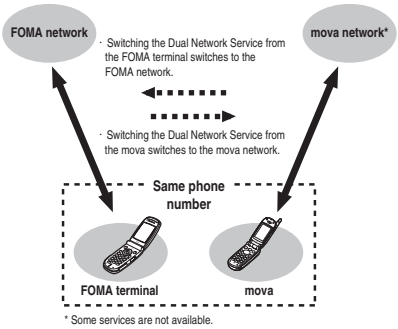
Subscription required	Yes

The Dual network service allows a FOMA terminal, with its advanced communications services, and a mova terminal, which offers an extremely extensive service area, to each use the same phone number.

- You cannot use the Dual network service when is displayed.
- For detailed information on how to access the service from a mova terminal, refer to the "Network Services Operation Guide".

About the Dual Network Service

- The Dual Network Service can be selected either from a FOMA terminal that it is unable to access services or from the mova terminal.

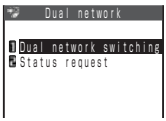


* Some services are not available.

- You cannot access the network from both the FOMA terminal and the mova terminal at the same time.

Switching from a mova terminal to a FOMA terminal

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select (Service) and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 1 "Dual network" ▶Press 1 "Dual network switching".



2 Select "YES" and press ● ▶Enter your Network security code and press ●.

For information on your Network security code
→P. 142

■Checking whether the FOMA terminal can be used

Press 2 "Status request" ▶Press ●.

Note

- When switching networks, end communication from the terminal that is currently able to access services before making the switch.
- When you switch networks from a terminal that is already able to access the network, you are notified that you already have access to the network.
- To switch networks so that the mova terminal can be used, switch networks from the mova. You cannot switch to the mova terminal network from a FOMA terminal.

English Guidance (Free)

Subscription required	No

This function allows you to set English as the language used in guidance messages such as service information and the out of area warnings that are displayed when network services such as "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" service are set. This function also sets English as the language used in the guidance messages sent by services such as the Caller ID Request Service to people who call you.

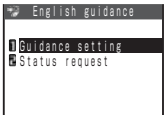
When calls are made to another DoCoMo mobile phone, the settings for the played guidance message on the caller's phone when the call is made take priority over the settings on the recipient's phone when the call is received. The table below shows the languages that can be set.

	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing	Japanese	Guidance messages played in Japanese.
	English	Guidance messages played in English.
Incoming (guidance messages played to callers)	Japanese	Guidance messages played in Japanese.
	Japanese+English	Guidance messages played in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+Japanese	Guidance messages played in English first and then in Japanese.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select (Service) and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 2 "English guidance" ▶Press 1 "Guidance setting".

■To check the guidance setting

Press 2 "Status request".



1 Outgoing + Incoming	▶Choose from the following options: Sets the language for outgoing and incoming calls. Set the language for outgoing calls first and then for incoming calls.		
	1 Japanese	▶Choose from the following options: Sets Japanese as the language used guidance instructions for outgoing calls.	
		1 Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and incoming calls.
		2 Japanese + English	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
		3 English + Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
	2 English	▶Choose from the following options: Sets English as the language used guidance instructions for outgoing calls.	
		1 Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese for incoming calls.
		2 Japanese + English	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
		3 English + Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
2 Outgoing call	▶Choose from the following options: Sets the language for outgoing calls only.		
	1 Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese.	
	2 English	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to English.	
3 Incoming call	▶Choose from the following options: Sets the language for incoming calls only.		
	1 Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese.	
	2 Japanese + English	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese + English.	
	3 English +Japanese	▶Select "YES" and press ●. Sets the guidance instructions language to English + Japanese.	

Note

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own UIM card installed. You cannot do this remotely from an ordinary phone, payphone or other mobile phone. There are no call charges for setting up or checking this function.

Service Dial

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general helpdesk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 4 GHI "Service dialing number"

1 ドコモ故障問合せ	▶Press ●. Calls the DoCoMo service desk.
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	▶Press ●. Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.

Note

- You can only use this function if the contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk are stored on the UIM.
- The displays shown and dialed phone numbers may differ depending on the UIM used.

Handling Calls Received During a Call

Use this procedure to specify how voice calls, video-phone calls and 64K data communication that arrives during a call are handled. This function is particularly useful if you have not subscribed to the Call waiting service.

- If you have not subscribed to "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, received voice calls are not transferred to the Voice mail service center or forwarding number.

Handling a call received during another call <Arrival call act>

Default setting	Answer

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 8 TUV "Arrival call act" ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Voice mail	Transfers voice calls received during a call to the Voice mail service center regardless of the "Call waiting" service and "Voice mail" service settings.
2 Call forwarding	Transfers voice and video-phone calls received during a call to the forwarding number regardless of the "Call waiting" service and "Call forwarding" service settings.
3 Call rejection	Rejects voice and video-phone calls and 64K data communication received during a call.
4 Answer	If "Call waiting" service is activated, calls are handled by the "Call waiting" service. If call waiting service is not activated or during a video-phone call or 64K data communication, call can be handled in any of the following ways: • You can end the current voice call and answer the received voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication. • You can use the function menu to manually handle a voice call, video-phone call, or 64K data communication received during a call. →P. 477 • If "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated, calls can be handled using those service settings.

Activating the call handling settings during another call <Set arrival act>

- You cannot specify incoming call settings during a call where "" is being displayed.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press 9 WXYZ "Set arrival act" ▶Choose from the following options:

1 Activate	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
2 Deactivate	▶Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Status request	▶Press ●.

Note

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own UIM card installed. You cannot do this remotely from an ordinary phone, payphone or other mobile phone. There are no call charges for setting up or checking this function.
- If you are subscribed to "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, this function is activated.

Ending the current voice call or 64K data communication to answer a received call

When the current and new call are the same type

<Example: Ending the current voice call to answer a received call>

1 When you hear a repeated soft double-beep during the call, press PWR HLD.

This ends the current call and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■Video-phone or 64K data communication

When you end the call, a message appears notifying you that you can answer the other call.

Press ● ▶Press PWR HLD.

2 Press ☎ or ●.

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■**64K data communication**
Take the call on the PC.

● When the current and incoming calls are different types

If you receive a video-phone call or 64K data communication during a voice call, or if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication during a video-phone call, or if you receive a voice call or video-phone during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end your current call or 64K data communication so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending an active video-phone call to answer an incoming voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones ("bibip...bibip...") during a call and a message* appears, press ●.

*: A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.

2 Select (HOLD) ▶ [V-phone call] and then press ● ▶ Press (PWR HLD).

3 Press ☎ or ●.

Note

- If you have activated the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service and the ringing time expires while you can still hear the double tones ("bibip...bibip..."), the call is connected to the Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number.

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Voice mail or Call forwarding

<Example: When "Set arrival act" is set to "Activate" and "Arrival call act" is set to "Answer">

1 When you hear a repeated soft double-beep during the call, press (右) (FUNC).

■**If you receive a call other than a voice call during a call**
Press ● and press (右) "FUNC".

2 Choose how the received call will be handled.

■**To reject the received call**
Press 1 "Call rejection".

■**To forward the received call to the forwarding number**
Press 2 "Call forwarding".

■**To transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center**
Press 3 "Voice mail".
In any of the above cases, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote access>

Setting Up Remote Access

This function allows you to use the "Voice mail" service and "Call forwarding" services from a remote location such as a payphone.

Activating remote access

1 Press (Menu) ▶ Select (Service) and press ● ▶ Press 0 "Remote access" ▶ Press 1 "Activate" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

■**To deactivate remote access**
Press 2 "Deactivate" ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.

■**To check your remote access settings**
Press 3 "Status request" ▶ Press ●.

Note

- Set and check this setting on the FOMA terminal in which you inserted the FOMA card. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, a public phone, or another mobile phone. You are not charged to set or check this function.
- This function is activated after you apply for the "Voice mail service" and "Call forwarding service".

- Please read "Network Services Operation Guide" about the details of the method of operating a network service from a public telephone etc.

Multi number (Not available as of December 2004)

This service has yet to begin as of December 2004.

<Additional Services (Enter USSD number)>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.
When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "Enter number" and "Service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number and code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- Enter the service code in the "Enter USSD number" field in the display for adding new services.

Adding a new service

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 3 DEF "Additional service" ▶Press 1 あ "Additional service".

The "Additional service display" appears.



Additional service display

2 Select "<Not stored>".

3 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Press 1 あ "Add new service".

■ **To change the setting**
Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Press 2 ABC "Edit".

4 Enter the service name and press ●.

The service name can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
For information on entering text →P. 526

5 Select the connection method.

1 Enter number	▶Enter the number and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Uses the number to connect. Enter a 20-digit number.
2 Enter USSD number	▶Enter the number and press ● ▶Select "YES" and press ●. Uses the service code to connect. The number can be up to 40 digits long.

Note

● To use this service, you must confirm or enter the "Enter number" or Service code provided by DoCoMo. The "Enter number" is the number used to connect to the Service Center, while the "Service Code" (USSD) is the code used for notifying the Service Center.

Using the newly added service

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 3 DEF "Additional service" ▶Press 1 あ "Additional service".

2 Select a service and press ●.

Using the function menu in the Additional Service display

In the additional service display... ➡ P. 478

Press 右 (FUNC) ▶Choose from the following options:

Additional Service display function.

1 Add new service	Adds a setting.
2 Edit	Edits a setting.
3 Delete this	▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.
4 Delete all	▶Select "YES" and press ● ▶Press ●.

Adding additional guidance

When you use your service code (USSD) to access an added service, you can use this procedure to store the additional guidance messages for commands posted from the network.

● You can store up to 10 additional guidance messages.

1 Press (Menu) ▶Select Service and press ● ▶Press ○ ▶Press 3 DEF "Additional service" ▶Press 2 ABC "Additional guidance".

The "Additional guidance display" appears.



Additional guidance display

2 Select "<Not stored>".

3 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Press 1 “Add new guidance”.

■ **To change the setting**
Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Press 2 “Edit”.

4 Enter the command and press ●.

The command can include up to 20 digits.

5 Enter the additional guidance message and press ● ▶ Select “YES” and press ●.

The guidance message can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
For information on entering text →P. 526

Using the function menu in the Additional Guidance display

In the additional guidance display... ➡ P. 478

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Set additional guidance display function.

1 **Add new guidance**	Adds a guidance message.
2 **Edit**	Edits the guidance message.
3 **Delete this**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●** ▶ **Press ●.**
4 **Delete all**	▶ **Select “YES” and press ●** ▶ **Press ●.**

Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA terminal 482
Before Using 483
Checking the Procedure 484
Setting the PC 484
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 488
How to Set Various Settings 490
Executing Set Data Communication 494
W-TCP Settings 497
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 498
Setting up Dial-up Network 499
Setting up Dial-up 504
AT Command List 512

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Be informed that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

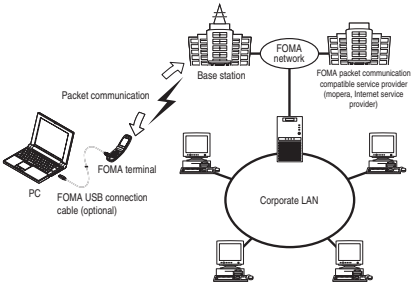
● 64K data communication

Data can be received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected, regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

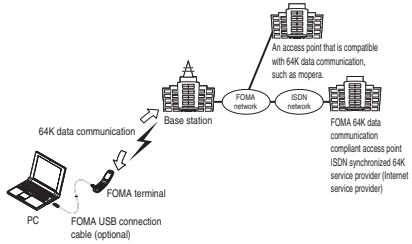
Please use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Please use an access point that is compatible with FOMA 64K data communication, such as the DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider. Please contact your Internet service provider for details. DoCoMo also provides an Internet service called “mopera” for which you are exempt from application procedures and monthly fees.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64kbps.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Please contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant web sites on your PC’s browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software included on the CD-ROM packaged with this product and conduct the setting. For more information, please refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM.

You will need Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or higher) to view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF format).

If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download the latest version of the software directly from the Adobe website. (Communication fees are charged separately.) For details, refer to the Adobe website.

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use packet communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS	• Windows 98*1/Windows Me/ Windows 2000/Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	• Windows 98/Windows Me: 32Mbytes or more*2 • Windows 2000: 64Mbytes or more*2 • Windows XP: 128Mbytes or more*2
Hard disk space	• 5Mbytes or more*2

*1 : The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98.
*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

Note

● To transmit data with the FOMA connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ", update "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ". For how to update it and other details, go to the DoCoMo Web page.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

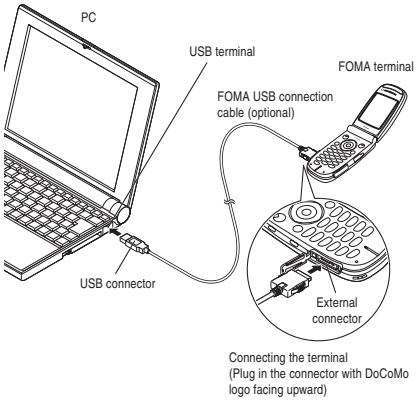
- FOMA USB connection cable (optional)
- Attached CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC"

Note

● Purchase the dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB connection cable". USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB connection cable.



Connecting the terminal (Plug in the connector with DoCoMo logo facing upward)

1 Open the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.

2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB connection cable to the USB terminal of your PC.

3 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB connection cable straight until you hear a click.

" " appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB connection cable has been connected.

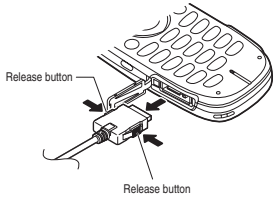
Note

● " " appears on the FOMA terminal display when a communication setting file for packet or 64K data communication is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before a data communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and " " does not appear.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB connection cable.

● When disconnecting the FOMA USB connection cable from the PC, use the procedure for safe disconnection in the respective operating system.



Continued on next page

1 Pull it out straight while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB connection cable.

2 Remove the FOMA USB connection cable from the USB terminal of the PC.

3 Close the FOMA terminal's external connector cap.

Note

- Do not repetitively connect and disconnect the FOMA USB connection cable. After you have connected and disconnected once, wait for a while before doing so again.

Checking the Procedure

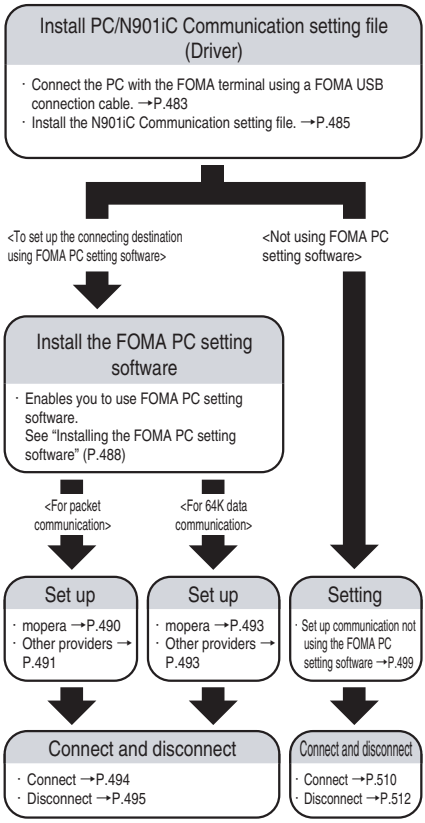
In packet communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA packet communication.

■ About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC" provided

- The CD-ROM contains the communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPassPCSoft.
- The N901iC Communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Connection cable (optional) to carry out packet communication. 64K communication data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N901iC Communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
  Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K communication and create a dial-up connection.
- Using FirstPass PC software allows you to set up FirstPass (user certification) easily and therefore it will be helpful for gaining authentication when you try viewing FirstPass-compliant sites on the PC browser. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) stored in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder included on the CD-ROM. You will need Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or higher) to view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).
  If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download the latest version of the software directly from the Adobe website. (Communication fees are charged separately.) For details, refer to the Adobe website.

Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K communication.



*1 : "mopera" is DoCoMo's Internet connection service for which you do not need to apply. We recommend that you set up communication using "mopera" if you want to connect to the internet easily.

Setting the PC

This section describes the steps from connection to a PC to installing of the N901iC communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

1 Connect the FOMA USB connection cable to the PC USB terminal.

2 Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC.

3 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N901iC をご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N901iC) screen.

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC” is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.
If this screen appears while you are installing the N901iC communication setting file, click “終了” (Exit) as well.



4 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB connection cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal.

For Windows 98/Windows Me
“新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP
“新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

Installing the N901iC communication setting file (drivers)

- If you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, be sure to use an account with Administrator privilege to install setup files for N901iC communication. An error will occur if you try to install the files by using other accounts. For information about setting the Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or Microsoft.
- The installation procedure for the N901iC Communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC. For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following. For Windows 2000, proceed to P. 486. For Windows XP, proceed to P. 486.

● For Windows 98/Windows Me

1 Connect the FOMA USB Connection cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB connection cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on P. 485, the screen “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) as shown on the right is automatically displayed.

For Windows 98
Click “次へ” (Next).

2 Select “ドライバの場所を指定する（詳しい知識のある方向け）” (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), then click “次へ” (Next).

For Windows 98
Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the Optimal driver for the device in use (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).



3 Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)). Check “検索場所の指定” (Specify the search location) and click “参照” (Reference) to specify the folder to search, and “次へ” (Next).

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>: \USB Driver\Win98”. The CD-ROM drive differs depending on the PC.
The driver is common with Windows 98.

For Windows 98
Check the “検索場所の指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next).
Select “更新されたドライバ（推奨）” (Updated driver (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next).

“FOMA N901iC” appears here.

5 When the message “新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。”(Installation of the new hardware is now complete) appears, click “完了” (Finish).

Continued on next page

For Windows 98

The message “新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。”(The software needed to install a new software is installed) appears.

6 Install other drivers.

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other drivers (P. 487).
If the “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P. 487).

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Connection cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC” on P. 484, the screen shown below is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next).

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the Optimal driver for the device (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next).

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”.

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive name>:\USB Driver\Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next).

“FOMA N901iC” appears here.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish).

8 Install other drivers.

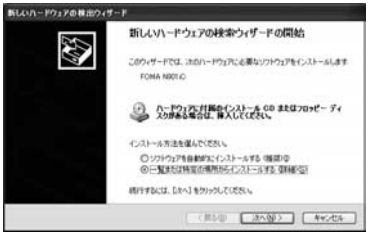
See Step 1 to 7 and install all other drivers (P. 487).
If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P. 487).

For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA USB Connection cable to the FOMA terminal.

When the FOMA USB connection cable has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 4 on P. 485, the screen of “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) is shown.

2 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next).



3 Select “次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する” (Search for the most compatible driver in the next location)”, uncheck “リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROM など）を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) and check “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) and specify a folder to search. Click “次へ” (Next).

Specify the folders as “<CD-ROM drive>:\USB Driver \Win 2000”
The CD-ROM drive differs depending on the PC used. In the example below, the CD-ROM drive is “E”.

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



4 When the message "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了" (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click "完了" (Finish).

5 Install other drivers.

See Step 1 to 4 and install all other drivers (P. 487).
If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 4, installation of the drivers is complete.
When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。" (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (P. 487).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N901iC communication setting file has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows.

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000
Select "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel).

For Windows XP
Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel).

2 Open "システム" (System) in the "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel).

For Windows Me
If the "システム" (System) icon does not appear in "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel), click "すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する" (Display all Control Panel options).

For Windows XP
Click the "システム" (System) icon in "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス" (Performance and maintenance).

3 Open the device manager.

For Windows 98/Windows Me
Click the "デバイスマネージャ" (Device manager) tab.

For Windows 2000/Windows XP
Click the "ハードウェア" (Hardware) tab and click "デバイスマネージャ" (Device manager).

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name.

Check that all the driver names are displayed under "ポート (COM とLPT)" (Ports (COM & LPT)), "ユニバーサルシリアルバス(USB) コントローラ" (Universal Serial Bus controller) and "モデム" (Modems).
Check the driver name, and proceed to "About the FOMA PC Setting Software" (P. 488).

(Windows XP)



Device name	Driver name
Port (COM/LPT)	• FOMA N901iC Command Port • FOMA N901iC OBEX Port
Modem	• FOMA N901iC
Universal Serial Bus controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller	• FOMA N901iC • FOMA N901iC Command ※ • FOMA N901iC Modem ※ • FOMA N901iC OBEX ※

※： Windows 98/Windows Me only

Note

● If all driver names do not appear when you check the above or if you have installed an improper communication-setting file for your OS, follow the uninstall instructions (see below) to delete the file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N901iC communication setting file

If necessary (when Windows has been upgraded, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB connection cable, remove the FOMA USB connection cable.

Continued on next page

2 Start Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC" into the CD-ROM drive of the PC.

3 Click "終了" (Exit) to exit from the "FOMA N901iC ご利用にあたって" (To use FOMA N901iC) screen.

This screen usually appears automatically when the "CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC" is inserted in the drive, but may not appear depending on the PC settings.
In this case, simply proceed to Step 4.

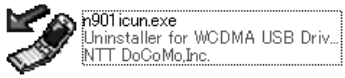


4 Specify and run the uninstall program.

Open "スタート" (Start) →"マイコンピュータ" (My Computer), right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open) to open the "USB Driver" folder on the CD-ROM.
Open the "UnInst" folder.

5 Double-click "n901icun.exe" to execute the uninstall program.

"n901iCun.exe" may appear as "n901icun" instead depending on the setting of the PC you use.



6 Click "OK" to uninstall.

To cancel uninstallation, click "キャンセル" (Cancel).

7 Click "はい" (Yes) to restart Windows.

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you have clicked "いいえ" (No), restart Windows manually.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the following:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →P. 499



For connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC, see p.481.

Easy settings

The guide walks you through the procedures for "Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication" and "W-TCP setting".

W-TCP setting

W-TCP settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using "FOMA packet communication".
To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

Access point name (APN) setting

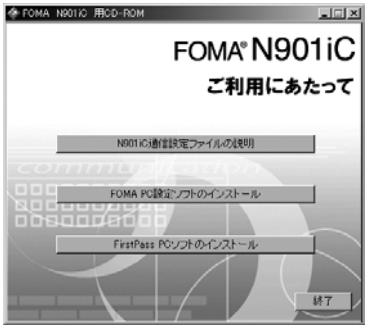
Set the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, but when connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.
cid [Context Identifier]: a number corresponding to a packet communication connection point (APN). It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check operating environment prior to install the FOMA PC setting software. →P. 483
- When installing the "FOMA PC setting software" on a Windows 2000/Windows XP machine, be sure to log on as Administrator.
- For information about setting the Administrator privilege, contact the manufacturer of your PC or Microsoft.

1 Insert the supplied CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC and click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール ” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).

The “FOMA N901iCご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA 901iC) screen will automatically be displayed. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), select “開く” (Open) and double-click “start.exe”.
Then click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).



2 Click “次へ ” (Next).

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation.
If a message appears indicating that “previous W-TCP setting software” or “previous APN setting software” is installed, proceed to P. 489.

3 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC設定ソフト ” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい ” (Yes) to agree to it.

If you click “いいえ” (No), the installation is canceled.

4 Click “次へ ” (Next).

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the Task Tray.
This is a function to set up / cancel optimization of “W-TCP communication”, we recommend you choose to let it reside in the Task Tray.
If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) checked to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Reside in the task tray) setting is in effect.



The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is usually located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

5 Select the installation location and click “次へ ” (Next).

If you want to change the destination, click “参照” (Browse), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).
You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but generally the default setting is recommended.

6 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ ” (Next).

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



7 Click “完了 ” (Finish).

When the setup process has been completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) screen will automatically appear.
You can specify other settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

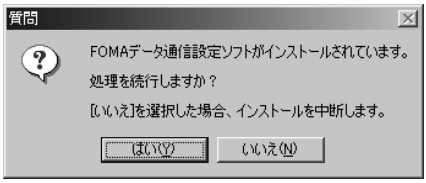
<If the “previous W-TCP setting software” is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/delete applications (programs)) and delete the old version.

Continued on next page

<If the "previous APN setting software" is installed>



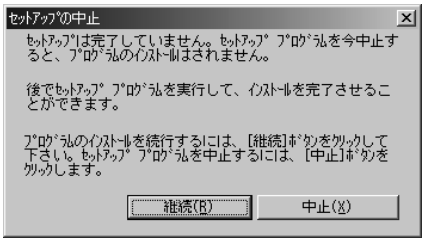
- When you click "はい" (Yes), the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

<If the "FOMA PC setting software" is already installed>



- Clicking "はい" (Yes) automatically uninstalls the FOMA PC setting software and then reinstalls the software.

<If the "キャンセル" (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the operation, click "継続" (Continue). When you intend to stop the procedure, click "中止" (Cancel).

How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via a FOMA USB Connection cable, and the Communication setting file needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC.

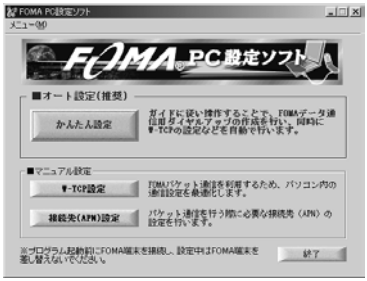
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a number higher than COM20, the "FOMA PC setting software" will not run.

1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software).

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All Programs) → "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software).

The following operation display appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.



Easy settings: "Packet communication setting by using mopera"

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera" will be used as a provider.
  Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384k bps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types).
  Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- Note that the communication charge can become high if "Packet communication" is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view Web pages containing images or to download files.

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings).

2 Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next).

3 Select "mopera 接続" (mopera access) and click "次へ" (Next).

See P. 491 to use any other provider than mopera.

4 Click "OK".

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Please wait a moment.

5 Enter the access point name in the "接続名" (Name of access point) field and click "次へ" (Next).

You can enter any name you want for the connection you are creating.
Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection Name) column.

Enter the connection name correctly including upper/ lower case.
You cannot use the following reserved characters;
¥/: * ?!<>|" (half-pitch only).



6 Specify a user name and password, then click "次へ" (Next).

User Name and Password can be omitted for the mopera connection.

（Windows 2000、 Windows XP）



Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.
If you are not sure which user to select, choose "すべてのユーザー"(All users) (default setting).
Enter exact information provided by the provider including upper / lower case to enter the User Name/ Password.

7 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next).

Optimize "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) required for "packet communication". If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed.

8 Check the setting information and click "完了" (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed.
Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click "戻る" (Back).



9 Click "OK".

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.
Click "はい" (Yes) if the selection screen for reboot appears.
Performs the communication set up (P. 494).

Easy settings: "Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers"

1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings).

2 Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next).

3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next).

4 Click "OK".

Please wait for a few minutes while the APN setting information is being acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC.

5 Specify the packet communication settings.

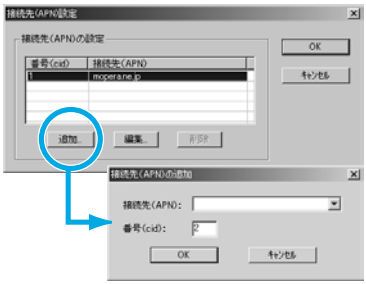
After the terminal setting has been completely acquired, the screen "パケット通信設定" (Packet communication setting) will appear.
Enter a name in "接続名" (Connection name).
Enter the connection name correctly including upper/ lower case.
The following reserved characters cannot be used for 接続名(Connection name);
¥/: * ?!<>|" (half-pitch only).
If "発信者番号通知を行う" (Notify Caller ID) is checked off, the Caller ID is notified when communication is carried out.
APN: mopera.ne.jp is set by default in the "接続先（APN）の選択" (Select the connecting destination (APN)) for mopera connection.

Continued on next page



6 Specify the access point (APN).

Number (cid) 1 is assigned with “mopera.ne.jp” by default.
Open the “接続先(APN)の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.
Return to the “接続先(APN)設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and periods (.) can only be entered for the access point.
Up to 10 cids can be registered.



7 Set up Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings).

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Set up detail information) on “パケット通信の設定” (Packet Communication settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” / “Name Server”.
If you need to enter information as dialup information for your provider, company LAN, etc., register each address according to the entry instructions.

8 Select the Access point (APN) and Click “OK”.

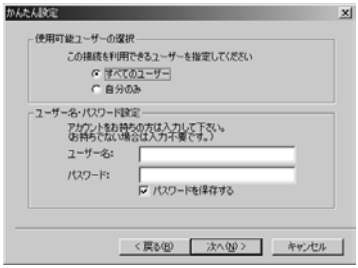
It returns to the screen in Step 5.
The access point (APN) entered in the Step 6 is displayed on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

9 Confirm the Access point (APN) and click “次へ” (Next) on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the connecting destination (APN)).

10 Specify the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “次へ” (Next).

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.
If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー”(All users) (default setting).

（Windows 2000、 Windows XP）



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

11 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next).

Optimize “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) required for packet communication. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed and proceed to Step 12.

12 Confirm the setting information and click “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed.
Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” .



13 Click “OK”.

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings.
If the reboot screen appears, click “はい” (YES).

The communication set up is carried out on the next step.
→P. 494

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you are connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.

1 Click “かんたん設定 ” (Easy settings).

2 Select “64K データ通信 ” (64K data communication) and click “次へ ” (Next).

3 Select “mopera 接続 ” (mopera access) and click “次へ ” (Next).

See to P. 493 to use any other provider than mopera.

4 Enter the access point name in “接続名 ” (Name of access point), select modem and click “次へ ” (Next).

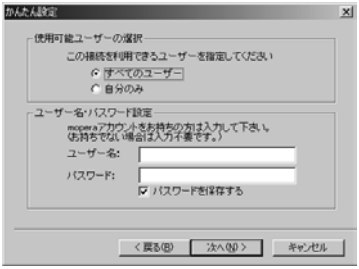
The “64K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears.
You can specify the name of the access point.
Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名 ” (Connection Name) column.
Enter the connection name correctly including upper/lower case.
The following reserved characters cannot be entered for Connection Name;
¥ / : ＊ ? ! < > |” (half-pitch only).
When using the FOMA USB connection cable, confirm that “ モデムの選択” (Select Modem) is set to “FOMA N901iC”.



5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ ” (Next).

User name and Password can be omitted for the mopera connection.

（Windows 2000、 Windows XP）



Select the user for Windows 2000 and Windows XP. If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー ”(All users) (default setting).
When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

6 Check the setting information and “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “ 戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”.

The communication set up is carried out on the next step.
→P. 494

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定 ” (Easy settings).

2 Select “64K データ通信 ” (64K data communication) and click “次へ ” (Next).

Continued on next page

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next).

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next).

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64kbps access points other than mopera when creating a dial-up;
(1) 接続名 (Connection Name) (optional)
(2) モデムの選択 (Modem Selection) (FOMA N901iC)
(3) 電話番号 (Telephone number)
Take care to enter the correct upper/lower case character for the access point name.
The following reserved characters cannot be entered;
¥/ : * ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only)



Enter the correct information according to the provider information.
Enter the phone number with half-pitch taking care of upper/lower case characters.
If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked off, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

5 Specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings).

When you click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings), the screen for the “IP address” and “Name server” settings will appear.
If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

6 Specify the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password)” and click “次へ” (Next).

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.
If you are not sure which user to select, choose “すべてのユーザー ”(All users) (default setting).

（Windows 2000、 Windows XP）



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

7 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish).

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



8 Click “OK”.

The communication set up is carried out on the next set →P. 494

Executing Set Data Communication

● When executing data communication by using the FOMA or USB connection cable, dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used at time of icon creation. To connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the communication setting file must be installed again.

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows 98/Me
Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイアルアップネットワーク” (Dialup network) and open the host.

Windows 2000
Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイアルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) and open the host.

Windows XP
Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) and open the host.

2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation.

If you select “mopera”, click “ダイヤル” (Dial), leaving the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) text boxes blank.
If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera or dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at during subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”.

Normally, the screen as shown below will appear when the dial-up connection is made.
This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

- “” appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browse on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task tray.

The dial-up connection screen will appear.


Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect).



Note

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

● Please check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N901iC" is not recognized by the PC.	• See if your PC satisfies the operational environment required (P. 483). • See if the N901iC communication setting file has been installed. • See if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. • See if the FOMA USB connection cable is firmly connected. • See if the "USB mode setting" (P. 407) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	• See if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. • See if the FOMA USB connection cable is firmly connected. • If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. • See if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. • See if the APN is set correctly. • If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC setting software

This section describes uninstallation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

● To uninstall the "FOMA PC Setup Software" on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must do so from a user account with Administrator privileges. If you attempt to uninstall the software from another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling.

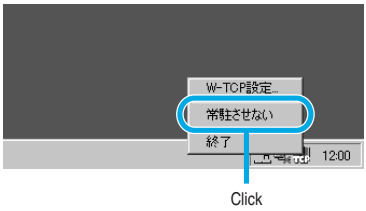
Before starting the uninstallation process of the "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their original settings.



Right-click

(1) To not reside the "W-TCP settings" in the task tray.

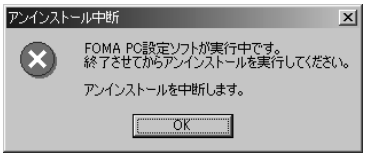
Right-click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the lower right corner of the desktop and select "常駐させない" (Nonresident).



Click

(2) Exit any running program.

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is in operation, the screen as shown below will appear. Stop the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.





2 Start "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications).

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Click "スタート" (Start) →"設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add/deleting applications).

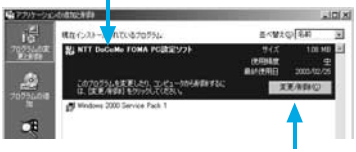
"アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ" (Property of Add and remove applications) appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Click "スタート" (Start) →"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) →"プログラムの追加と削除" (Add or remove programs).

3 Select "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete).

Select NTT DoCoMo “FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)”



Click here

4 Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes).

Uninstallation starts.



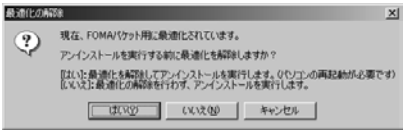
5 Click “OK”.

Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.

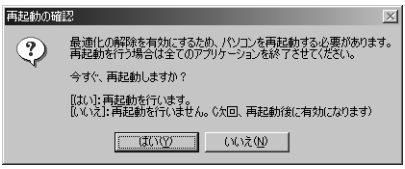


Note

● Cancel “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP).
The screen shown below appears if “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is done. Click “はい” (YES) to uninstall.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after reboot.



W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP Settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

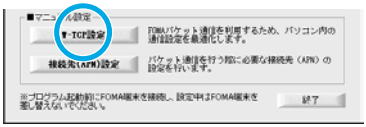
Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>
Optimization settings by dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program.

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



(2) If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the “W-TCP” icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.

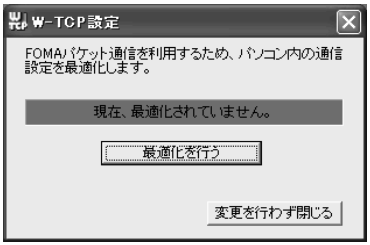


2 Proceed with the following.

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Clicking “最適化を行う” (Optimize) displays the “W-TCP（ダイヤルアップ）設定” (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.

Continued on next page



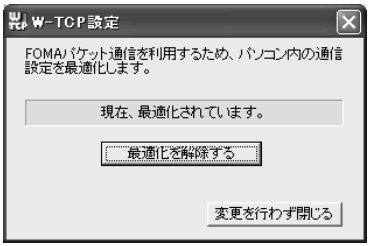
(2) If the system settings have been optimized

The "W-TCP （ダイヤルアップ）設定" (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If there are some changes, make changes to the settings.



(3) To cancel optimization

Clicking "システム設定" (System setting) displays the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) screen. Click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization).

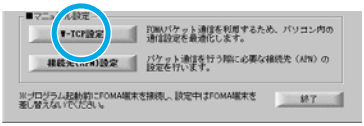


<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

1 Start the program.

(1) If you are operating from "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

Click "W-TCP設定" (W-TCP Settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program.



(2) If you are operating from the Task Tray

Click the "W-TCP" icon in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



2 Proceed with the following.

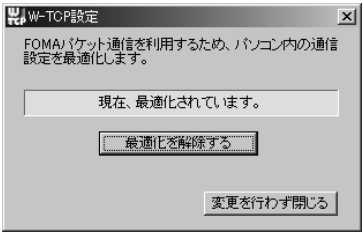
(1) If not optimized

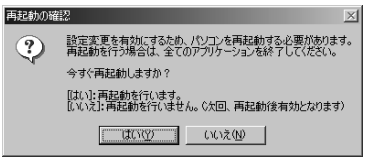
Click "最適化を行う" (Optimize) on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen, close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) If optimized

A message saying "現在、最適化されています" (Already optimized) appears on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen.

To cancel the optimization settings if connecting to a terminal other than a FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.



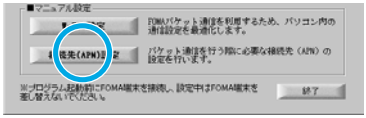


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the connecting destination (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- The APN setting (the connecting destination for FOMA packet communication) is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the APN must be registered again.
- When continuously using an APN on a PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.
- The default setting for APN1 is mopera.

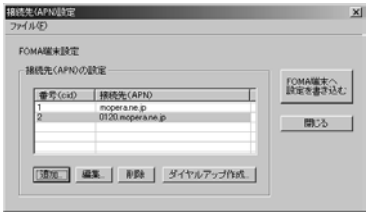
1 After starting "FOMA PC setting software", click "接続先（APN） 設定" (Set up Connecting destination (APN)).



2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen.

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Connecting destination (APN) information registered.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the connecting destination (APN).



Adding/Editing/Removing the Access point (APN)

- To add an access point (APN)
  Click "追加" (Add) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- To edit a registered access point (APN)
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "編集" (Edit) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- To delete a registered access point (APN)
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "削除" (Delete) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
  The access point (APN) registered in Number (cid) 1 cannot be deleted.

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the "接続先（APN）設定" (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click "ダイヤルアップ作成" (Create dial-up).
When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click "はい" (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.
Enter any connection name you want and click "アカウント・パスワードの設定" (Set up Account/Password) (Not needed for mopera).
Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click "OK".

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click "詳細情報の設定" (Enter detail information) on the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication), register necessary information and click "OK".
After entering the settings, click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Write the settings to the FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software.
The procedure is as follows.

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the "Data communication" and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To Set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to "FOMA N901iC" (Modem) built in after installing the N901iC Communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P. 502).

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN (P. 502) instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration num-

Continued on next page

bers (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which are used part of the access point number.*1

- APN is administered by "cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)". Connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to "＊99＊＊＊<cid number>#".
- Since APN:mopera.ne.jp to connect to mopera is registered in cid Number 1 in advance, setting the access point number to "＊99＊＊＊1#" allows you to easily use mopera. *2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Telephone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	○(Use FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○(Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	×(Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2 : To connect to another internet service provider, set up APN and register it in cid Number 2 or higher. See P. 498 for how to set up APN and make registration.

● To confirm COM port on Windows 98/Me

1 Open "スタート" (Start)→"設定" (Settings) →"コントロールパネル" (Control Panel).

2 Open "モデム" (Modem) in Control Panel.

If the "モデム" (Modem) icon does not appear in Control panel, click "すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する" (Display all Control Panel options).



3 Confirm that "FOMA N901iC" has been set and click the "検出結果" (Diagnostics) tab.



4 Confirm the COM port for which "FOMA N901iC" is set up and click "OK".

The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up access point (APN) (P. 502).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000

1. Open “スタート” (Start)→“設定” (Settings)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

2. Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel.



3. If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”.

4. Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N901iC” and click “OK”.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up the access point (APN) (P. 502).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

1. Open “スタート” (Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).



2. Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel.



3. If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”.

4. Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N901iC” and click “OK”.

The COM port number confirmed will be used in Setting up the access point (APN) (See P. 502).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.

Continued on next page



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1: mopera.ne.jp
Default setting	cid2 to 10: not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using "Hyper terminal" that comes with Windows.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 access points (APN) up by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid10 (P. 499).
- Since APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to DoCoMo's internet connection service "mopera" has already been assigned to cid1, we recommend that you enter cid into numbers 2 though 10.
- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your internet service provider or network administrator for any other access point (APN) than mopera.
- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be shown after Step 6 on P. 503. In this case, if you enter
  ATE1↵
  AT commands you enter from then on are shown.

<Example: for Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the FOMA USB connection cable.

2 Power the FOMA terminal on and connect the FOMA USB connection cable connected with the FOMA terminal with the PC.

3 Click "スタート" (Start)→"すべてのプログラム" (All programs)→"アクセサリ" (Accessories)→"通信" (Communication)→"ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal.

For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start)→"プログラム" (Programs)→"アクセサリ" (Accessories)→"通信" (Communication)→"ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal).

For Windows 98

After opening "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal), double-click "Hypertrm.exe".

4 Enter any name you want in the "名前" (Name) column and click "OK".

"sample" is entered here as an example.



5 Select "FOMA N901iC" from "接続方法" (Connection method), tentatively and click "OK".

If a COM port of "FOMA N901iC" can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click "OK".

In this example, "COM3" is selected. See "Checking the COM port" on P. 499 to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N901iC" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If no COM port of "FOMA N901iC" can be selected

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and do the following settings;

(1) Select "ファイル" (File) menu→"プロパティ" (Properties).

(2) Select "FOMA N901iC" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column of the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab on the "sample のプロパティ (sample Properties)".

(3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code).
(4) Click “OK”.



6 Enter the access point (APN) and Press .

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,“PPP”,“APN”.
<cid>: Enter any number from 2 to 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overridden.
“APN”: Put “ ” around the access point (APN) to enter.
“PPP”: Enter “PPP” as it is.
If “OK” is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.
(Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2)
Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc” .



7 Confirm that “OK” is displayed, open the “ファイル” (File) menu and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) to close the Hyper terminal.

You will be asked “セッションsampleを保存しますか” (Do you want to save the session sample?) However, there is no need to save it.

Note

To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
- If reset, only the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to “mopera.ne.jp” (Default value), and cid=2 through 10 will be unregistered.

<How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT= (to reset all cid)
AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (to reset a certain cid only)

To confirm the access point (APN) setting using the AT command
- Display the current settings.

<How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT?

If entering the AT command displays nothing on the screen
<How to enter>
ATE1

Specifying Caller ID

Default setting	Set

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when “packet communication” is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (P. 513) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to “Not set” (Default value).

1 Start Hyper terminal.

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication.

Enter in the format of “AT ＊DGPIR=<*n*>”.

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call

Enter the following:
AT ＊DGPIR=1

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:
AT ＊DGPIR=2



Continued on next page

3 **Confirm that “OK” is displayed and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了 ” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル ” (File) menu.**



About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point ID in the Dial-up network settings as well.
＊The table below shows what happens if you have set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184＊99＊＊＊1##	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Note

- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera.

Setting up Dial-up

Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

1 **Open “スタート ” (Start)→“プログラム ” (Programs)→“アクセサリ ” (Accessories)→“通信 ” (Communication)→“ダイヤルアップネットワーク ” (Dial-up Network).**

2 **When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ ” (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click “次へ ” (Next).**

This screen appears only when the dial-up network is started for the first time.
Click “次へ ” (Next) to proceed to Step 4.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “Dial-up Network” screen in Step 3 does instead.



3 **Double-click “新しい接続 ” (New connection) in the Dial-up Network.**



4 **Enter any name you want in the “接続名 ” (Connection Name) column and click “次へ ” (Next).**

Confirm that the “ モデムの選択” (Modem selection) column has “FOMA N901iC”.
If not, select “FOMA N901iC”.



5 **Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号 ” (Telephone number) column and click “次へ ” (Next).**

Leave the “ 市外局番” (Area Code) column blank.



6 Confirm the Connection name (any name) and click “完了” (Finish).



7 Open “スタート” (Start)→“プログラム” (Programs)→“アクセサリ” (Accessories)→“通信” (Communication)→“ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network).

8 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu.



9 Confirm “電話番号” (Telephone number) and “接続方法” (Connection method) on the “全般” (General) tab.

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う” (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial). Confirm that the “接続方法” (Connection method) column has “FOMA N901iC”. If not, select “FOMA N901iC”.



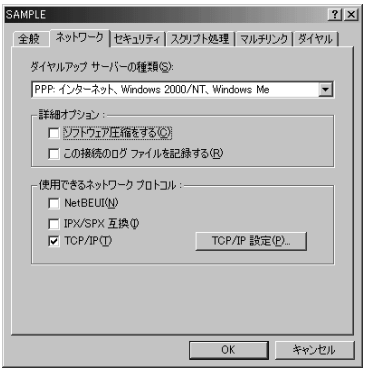
10 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “TCP/IP” in the “使用できるネットワークプロトコル”(Supported network protocols) field.

Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類” (Type of server) tab and set up each setting.
Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).
Check only “TCP/IP” in the “使用できるネットワークプロトコル”(Supported network protocols) field.



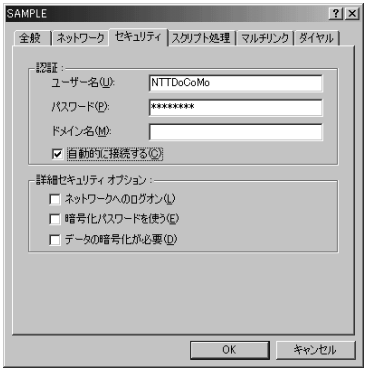
11 Click the “セキュリティ” (Security) tab and click “OK” without entering the user name and password.

For connecting to mopera, entry of the user name and password is not required.
To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.

Continued on next page

Windows 98

Click “OK”.



Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 **Open “スタート” (Start)→“プログラム” (Programs)→“アクセサリ” (Accessories)→“通信” (Communication)→“ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections).**

2 **Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections.**



3 **If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”.**

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2. This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 **When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”.**

5 **When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next).**

6 **Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next).**

7 **Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next).**

8 **Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next).**

9 **Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N901iC” and click “次へ” (Next).**

If “FOMA N901iC” is not there, select “FOMA N901iC”.

If no other modem than “FOMA N901iC” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



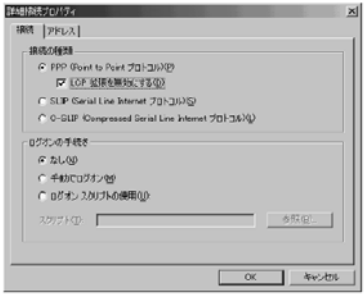
10 **Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings).**

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).



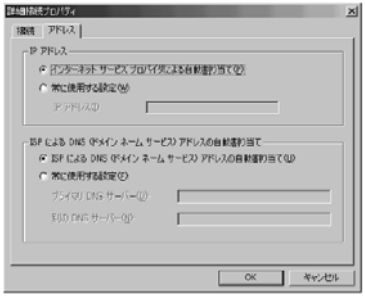
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown below and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown below and click “OK”.

To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “IPアドレス” (IP address) and “ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next).

14 Leave the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns blank and click “次へ” (Next).

A confirmation screen appears continuously asking if you will leave the User Name and Password blank. Click “はい” (YES) for each screen.
To connect to mopera, no user name or password is required.
To connect to any other provider than mopera, as shown in the screen below enter exact information specified by the internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) and click “次へ” (Next).



16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next).

17 Uncheck “今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び [完了] をクリックしてください” (Select this and click [Finish] to connect to the internet immediately) and click “完了” (Finish).

Continued on next page

18 Select the icon of the dial-up created and click “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu.



19 Confirm the settings in the “全般” (General) tab.

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N901iC” is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings).

22 Uncheck all checkboxes and click “OK”.



23 When the screen returns to Step 20, click “OK”.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard).

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next).



3 Select “インターネットに接続する ” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ ” (Next).

4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする ” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ ” (Next).

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する ” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ ” (Next).

6 If the “ デバイスの選択 ” (Select the device) screen appears, select “モデム - FOMA N901iC (COMx)” (Modem - FOMA N901iC)(COMx)), and click “ 次へ ” (Next).

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port number displayed in “Checking the COM port” (P. 499).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP 名 ” (ISP Name) and click “ 次へ ” (Next).



8 Enter the number of the access point in the “ 電話番号 ” (Telephone Number) column and click “ 次へ ” (Next).

The telephone number in the example is for connection to mopera.
Enter the telephone number of the access point you actually use.



9 Leave the “ ユーザー名 ” (User Name), “ パスワード ” (Password) and “ パスワードの確認入力 ” (Confirm password) columns blank and click “ 次へ ” (Next).

No user name or password is required to enter in order to connect to mopera. To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name, password specified by the provider or network administrator as shown in the screen below in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns.



10 Click “ 完了 ” (Finish).

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “ スタート ” (Start)→“ すべてのプログラム ” (All Programs)→“ アクセサリ ” (Accessories)→“ 通信 ” (Communication)→“ ネットワーク接続 ” (Network connections).

Continued on next page

12 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu.



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab.

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム - FOMA N901iC” (Modem - FOMA N901iC) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.



14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up Server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection).
Since the setting of “QoSパケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click “設定” (Settings).

16 Uncheck all the boxes and click “OK”.



17 The Step 14 screen reappears. Click “OK”.

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software.

<Example: For Windows Me>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal with the PC using a FOMA USB Connection cable.

How to connect →P. 483

2 Click the “スタート” (Start) menu, select “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) →“通信” (Communication) and open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network).

3 Open the access point to connect and open “接続” (Connect).



4 Confirm each item and click “接続” (Connect).

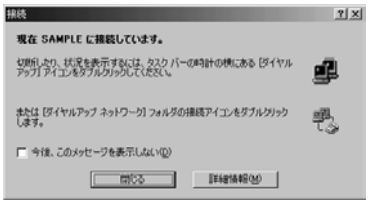
The telephone number of the access point set up in Dial-up Network is displayed in “電話番号” (Telephone number).
No user name or password is required to enter in order to connect to mopera.
To connect to any other provider than mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



<The Connecting screen appears>
Meanwhile, the password confirmation and logon processes are performed.



<Completion of the connection>
You can start browser software to browse homepages and to use e-mail.
If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.



<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Open “スタート” (Start)→“すべてのプログラム” (All programs)→“アクセサリ” (Accessories)→“通信” (Communication)→“ネットワーク接続” (Network connections).

2 Open Access point.

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on P. 509 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task)→“この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



3 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

The screen on the following shows an example for mopera connection. To connect to mopera, no user name or password is required.



<The Connecting screen appears>
While this screen is displayed, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>
When the connection is complete, a message as shown (P. 511) is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar located on the lower right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to browse homepages and to use e-mail.
If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.
See P. 495 for communication conditions.

Continued on next page



How to disconnect

Just closing the internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows Me.

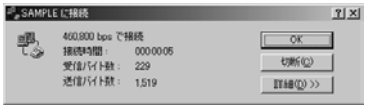
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray.

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect).



Note

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;

[&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
[&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved to ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The following are the usable commands for FOMA N901iC (modem):

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
A/	Execute the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0 : CD is always ON. *n*=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0 : Ignore ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an online command status. *n*=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E*n*	Select how to display the connection speed.	*n*=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. *n*=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (default).	AT&E0 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT&F*n*	Restore all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the circuit will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	At the time of on-line command mode AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line command mode) At the time of off-line command mode AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Set the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W*n*	Store the current settings.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR
AT＊DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0: FOMA terminal out of signal reception area 1: FOMA terminal signal reception level of 1 bar 2: FOMA terminal signal reception level of 2 bars 3: FOMA terminal signal reception level of 3 bars	AT＊DANTE ＊DANTE: 3 OK AT＊DANTE=? ＊DANTE: (0-3) OK
AT＊DGANSM=*n*	Set the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	*n*=0 : Disable the incoming call reject (AT＊DGARL)/permit setting (AT＊DGAPL) (initial value). *n*=1 : Enable the incoming call reject setting. *n*=2 : Enable the incoming call permit setting. AT＊DGANSM? : Display the current setting.	AT＊DGANSM=0 OK AT＊DGANSM? ＊DGANSM:0 OK
AT＊DGAPL=*n* [,cid]	Set APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	*n*=0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*=1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGAPL? :Display incoming call permission list.	AT＊DGAPL =0,1 OK AT＊DGAPL? ＊DGAPL:1 OK AT＊DGAPL =1 OK AT＊DGAPL? OK
AT＊DGARL=*n* [,cid]	Set APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT.	*n*=0 : Add the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*=1 : Delete the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT＊DGARL? : Display incoming call rejection list.	AT＊DGARL =0,1 OK AT＊DGARL? ＊DGARL:1 OK AT＊DGARL =1 OK AT＊DGARL? OK
AT＊DGPIR=*n*	This command is valid when sending/receiving packet communication with caller ID and no caller ID. Even in the dial up network setting, you can add 186 (informed) or 184 (not informed) to the access point number. (P. 503)	*n*=0 : Use APN as it is (initial value). *n*=1 : Use APN by adding “184”. (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*=2 : Use APN by adding “186”. (Caller ID is always sent.) AT＊DGPIR? : Display the current setting.	AT＊DGPIR =0 OK AT＊DGPIR? ＊DGPIR:0 OK

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT＊DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT＊DRPW ＊DRPW: 0 OK AT＊DRPW=? ＊DRPW: (0-75) OK
AT+CEER	Display the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> See “List of disconnection reasons” (P. 523).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Set the access point name (APN) at the time of packet origination.	P. 520	P. 520
AT+CGEQMIN	Register the criterion for deciding whether or not to permit the QoS (quality of service) notified from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] (P. 520) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.	P. 520
AT+CGEQREQ	Set QoS (quality of service) that is requested to network when originating PPP packet communication call.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] (P. 521) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Display a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.	P. 521
AT+CGMR	Display the FOMA terminal version.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification shows whether you are inside or out of service.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between “inside the service area” and “outside the service area” is completed. AT+CGREG? : Display the current setting. +CGREG : <*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: (1,0) OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from “outside the service area” to “inside the service area”) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Display the product number of FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP=*n*	Displays the other party’s Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (Default) *n*=1 : Display the result Result : +CLIP (*n*, *m*) *m*=0: NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID outgoing call. *m*=1: NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID outgoing call. *m*=2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: “090xxxxxxxx”, 177. “123”, 136

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	*n*=0 : Notify (Not notify) the caller's phone number in conformance with the CLIR service contract. *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (Default). Result: +CLIR(*n*, *m*) *m*=0: CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1: CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2: Unknown *m*=3: CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4: CLIR temporary mode (default is notify) * Without the #31# or ✗31#, CLIR setting is first.	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:0, 1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Set whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0:Use the ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Display the current setting. The command shown on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CMEE ERROR result code is as follows. 1: no connection to phone 10: SIM not inserted 15: SIM wrong 16: incorrect password 100: unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CMEE ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CMEE ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Display the FOMA terminal's own number.	number: phone number type: 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190xxxxxxxx",145 OK

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CPIN	Enter the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN:READY:PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PIN1 or PIN2 PUK code +CPIN:SIM PIN:PIN1 entry standby +CPIN:SIM PIN2:PIN2 entry standby +CPIN:SIM PUK:PIN1 blocked (Can enter PIN1 PUK code) +CPIN:SIM PUK2:PIN2 blocked (Can enter PIN2 PUK code) The command shown on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, display the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*=0 : Not display (initial value). *n*=1 : Display. <serv>: Display only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: Display the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD*99***1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Set whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING: SYNC +CRING: AV64K : GPRS "PPP",,,"<APN>" AT+CRC? : Display the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPP over UD received) +CRING: SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING: AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING: GPRS "PPP",,,"<APN >"

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result display is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the OS.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "inside the service area" and "outside the service area" is completed. AT+CREG? : Display the current setting. +CREG : <*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0 : Outside voice call area. 1 : Inside voice call area. 4 : Unknown 5 : Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG: 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CREG: 1
AT+GMI	Display the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Display the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N901iC).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N901iC OK
AT+GMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Select the flow control method.	*n*: DCE by DTE *m*: DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control. 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: *n*,*m*=2,2 AT+IFC?: Display the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC: 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC: (0,1,2),(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46=*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the FOMA terminal radio communication network.	*n*=22: Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Display the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Select the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*=0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handle the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATD	Handle the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD ＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Select whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*=0 : Echo back not present. *n*=1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Perform on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI*n*	Display the ID code.	*n*=0 : Display “NTT DoCoMo”. *n*=1 : Display the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2 : Display the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR).	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA N901iC OK
ATO*n*	Return from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0 : Return from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0 : Display the result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic reception (initial value). *n*=1- 255 : A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0? : Display the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Set an escape character.	*n*=43 : Initial value. *n*=127: Escape processing is invalid. ATS2?: Display the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Set a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13 : Initial value (Only *n*=13 can be specified). ATS3?: Display the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Set a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10 : Initial value (Only *n*=10 can be specified). ATS4?: Display the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Set a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8 : Initial value (Only *n*=8 can be specified). ATS5?: Display the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=*n* [&F][&W]	Set the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7=*n* [&F] [&W]	Disconnect the line if the connection cannot be established within a specified period after making a call.	*n*=1 to 120 (The initial value is 60) (second). 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120. ATS7?: Display the current setting.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8=*n* [&F][&W]	Set the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30=*n*	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	*n*=0 : Inactive timer off (Default) *n*=0 - 255 Where *n* is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103=*n*	Sets the called subaddress character.	*n*=0 : ✻ *n*=1 : / (Default) *n*=2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104=*n*	Sets the calling subaddress character.	*n*=0 : # *n*=1 : % (Default) *n*=2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the result code is returned in numeral or alphabetical characters.	*n*=0 : Return the result code in numeral value. *n*=1 : Return the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK

Continued on next page

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specify whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detect a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*=0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*=1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*=4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display (initial value).	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Reset the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online date mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

Supplementary explanation of AT command

Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

Command name: +CGDCONT

- Outline
  Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination.
  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- Format
  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]

- Explanation of the parameters
  Set the access point name (APN) for packet origination. For a setting example, see the following command execution example:
  <cid>*: 1 to 10
  <APN>*: Any value

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.
"mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1 as an initial value, which can be rewritten.
<APN> is an arbitrary character string showing each access point name.

- Operation performed when the parameter is omitted
  +CGDCONT=: Set the initial value to all <cid>.
  +CGDCONT=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the initial value.
  +CGDCONT=?: Display a list of values that can be set.
  +CGDCONT?: Display the current setting.

- Command execution example
  Command for registering an APN name of "abc" (when cid is 3).
  AT+CGDCONT=3,"PPP","abc" OK

Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- Outline
  Register a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.
  The 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example can be used.
  Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- Format
  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- Explanation of the parameters
  <cid>*: 1 to 10
  <Maximum bitrate UL> ※: None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL> ※: None (initial value) or 384

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, at which time a packet communication may not be connected.

・Operation performed when the parameter is omitted
+CGEQMIN=: Set the default value to all <cid>.
+CGEQMIN=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

・Command execution example
Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3)
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384
OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 4).
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
OK

■Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

・Outline
Set the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
For setting, only the pattern shown in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Although this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

・Format
+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

・Explanation of the parameters
<cid>*: 1 to 10

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10.

・Operation performed when the parameter is omitted
+CGEQREQ=: Set the default value to all <cid>.
+CGEQREQ=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the default value.

・Command execution example
Only the following pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 3).
AT+CGEQREQ=3
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (P. 498), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject setting by AT＊DGAPL/AT＊DGARL/AT＊DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT＊DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Examples of result codes

■Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Normally executed
1	CONNECT	Connection made
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing
100	RESTRICTION	Network on hold
101	DELAYED	Restrict dialing for redial

■Extended result codes

・&E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 32,000 bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 64,000 bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connection between the FOMA terminal and a base station at 384,000 bps.

・&E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	Connection between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps

■Communication protocol result code

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Video-phone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Video-phone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by PACKET

Note

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (P. 519) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected by a FOMA USB connection cable.
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the packet network is congested. If this is displayed, wait a while and try again.

Result code display example

When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* (P. 517) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
CONNECT

Numeral indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
1

When ATX1 is set

・When ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)
Display in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format is made when the connection is completed.

Character indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
CONNECT 460800

Numeral indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
1　21

・When ATX1, AT¥V1 are set*
The following format appears when the connection is completed:
CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/<Upstream (the FOMA terminal→Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal←Wireless base station) maximum rate >
The following sample indicates that a connection was made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
CONNECT 460800
PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Numeral indication example:

ATD ＊ 99 ＊ ＊ ＊ 1#
1　21　5

*: If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are the following:

Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	Missing or unknown APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Regular deactivation.

64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The number specified does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service and option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

Entering Text

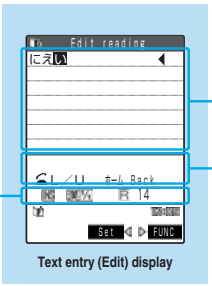
Entering Text 526
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases <Store common phrase> 543
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 544
Entering Kuten Codes 546
Storing Frequently Used Words <Own dictionary> 546
Resetting the Learning Record <Clear learning record> 548
Selecting the Dictionaries Used <Download dictionary> 548
Changing the Active Display 549

Entering Text

You can enter text on the FOMA terminal using the keypad, by using the access reader or bar code reader, or by retrieving words from a dictionary.

Text Entry (Edit) Display

The Text Entry (Edit) display is made up of the text entry area, operation guidance area, and information display area. The text entry area shows the text currently being entered along with the cursor and end mark. The operation guidance area shows information on the operations that can be performed at that point, such as kanji conversion and retrieval and range specification, etc. The information display area shows information such as the current text entry method, the input mode and the remaining number of characters that can be entered.



Text entry (Edit) display

Text entry area

■ : The cursor. Text is entered at this location.
◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark.
The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

Operation guidance area

▲▼ CHG : Indicates that 🄫 can be used for character conversion. →P. 535

▲▼ All／▲▼ Find : Indicates that 🄫 can be used to search for text in the Search Phonebook display. →P.98

Fix mode／Fix END : Indicates that you can use Fix mode in Mode 3 (T9 input)→P.530

◀▶▲▼ Area : Displayed when you copy (or cut) text.→P.544

L/U : Displayed when you can switch the entered text between upper case and lower case by pressing 🄫.→P.536

LONG CR : Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol (↵) by holding down 🄫 for 1 second or longer.→P.537

ホーム Back : Displayed when you can return to the previous reading assigned to the same key by pressing (Home) when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

Information display area

2 : Displayed when the text entry method is "Mode 3 (T9 input)" (P.530) or "Mode 2 (2-touch)" (P.529). No icon is displayed in "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

FIX : Displayed when "Fix mode" is selected in Mode 3 (T9 input). → P.532

INS／OVR : The INS icon denotes Insert mode and the OVR icon denotes Overwrite mode. → P.536

漢／ｶﾅ／Ｅ／123 : Shows the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".

区 : Displayed in "Kuten code input mode".→P.546

1/1／1/2 : The 1/1 icon is displayed during full-pitch character input and 1/2 appears during half-pitch character input.→P. 528, 529

Sm : Displayed when lower case text is being entered.→P.536

R : Shows the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. Half-pitch characters count as 1 byte while full-pitch characters each count as 2 bytes. In other words, full-pitch characters use twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.

In : Shows the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the phonebook. No distinction is made between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

Note

● Pressing a keypad key while you are entering the text of an i-mode mail message displays the Text Entry (Edit) display and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input, word prediction and input mode selection.

■ **The number of characters remaining and the number entered**

Characters shown in the Text Entry (Edit) display are counted according to the rules listed below. In each Text Entry (Edit) display, the end mark (◀) shows the end of the text that can be entered using the current function. Use the end mark as an approximate guide to how many more characters you can enter.

- When the number of characters is counted, each full-pitch character is counted as 2 bytes and each half-pitch character is counted as 1 byte.
- Full-pitch character occupy twice as much space as half-pitch characters.
  Full-pitch: あいうえお = 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes).
  Half-pitch: ｱｲｳｴｵｶｷｸｹｺ = 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes).

■ **Character combinations**

Take care with character combinations when entering text.
<Example> Entering "ﾄﾞｺﾓ" in half-pitch kana input mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ﾄﾞｺﾓの 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the display)
1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 half-pitch characters)

- The half-pitch dakuten "ﾞ" and "ﾟ" are each counted as 1 character.
  Full-pitch characters are each counted as 2 half-pitch characters.

■ **Scrolling**

In the Text Entry (Edit) display, use ◉ to scroll up and down one line at a time, and ▮ (Memo/Check) and ▮ (Home) to scroll 1 page at a time.
In the candidates list display for kanji conversion, you can also use ◉ to scroll up and down one line at a time, and ▮ (Memo/Check) or ▮ and ⟲ to scroll 1 page at a time.

Selecting the text entry method

The FOMA terminal provides 3 ways of entering text:

- Mode 1 (Kana input) →P. 528
  Several characters are assigned to each key and the assigned character changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch input) →P. 529
  Enters characters using 2-digit numbers.
- Mode 3 (T9 input) →P. 530
  Each time you press a key, the characters assigned to that key appear as a list of candidates from which you can select the desired character.

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 5 JKL ▶ Press 1 あ "Input mode" ▶ Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish).

Select at least 2 modes.

2 Select your preferred mode and press ●.

A mode not selected in step (1) cannot be selected in this step.

Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the Text Entry (Edit) display is shown, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to switch to a different text entry method. A change to the text entry method only applies to the current Text Entry (Edit) display. When you exit text entry and then return to a Text Entry (Edit) display later, your preferred text entry method will again be selected.

- In displays used for entering (editing) specific text, such as postal codes, it may not be possible to change the text entry method.

■ **Changing from the Function menu**

See "6 CHG input method" in Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu 3/4 in "Using the function menu in the Text Entry (Edit) display" →P. 541

■ **Holding down 左 (Mode) for 1 second or longer**

The text entry method changes to the next method each time you hold down 左 (Mode) for 1 second or longer, in the following sequence: "Mode 1 (5-touch)" → "Mode 2 (2-touch)" → "Mode 3 (T9 input)".

Entering text in mode 1 (Kana input)

Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

Press (左) (Mode).

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press (左) (Mode), in the following sequence: “Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch)” → “Katakana (half-pitch)” → “Alphabetic (half-pitch)” → “Numeric (half-pitch)”.

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press (3 DEF) “Half pitch/Full pitch”.

When you change to “Full pitch”, 1/1 appears in the information display area. When you change to “Half pitch”, 1/2 appears. You cannot switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

■ Characters that can entered in mode 1

<Example> To enter “う”, select “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and press (1 あ) 3 times.
To enter “B”, select “Alphabetic input mode” and press (2 ABC) twice.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Katakana input mode	Letter input mode	Number input mode
(1 あ)	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	?!−/¥&*()#゛゜ ♥ ☎ *1	1
(2 ABC)	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc	2
(3 DEF)	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef	3
(4 GHI)	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi	4
(5 JKL)	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl	5
(6 MNO)	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno	6
(7 PQRS)	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs	7
(8 TUV)	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv	8
(9 WXYZ)	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz	9
(0 わ)	わをんーゎ	ワヲンーヮ*2	————	0+*7
(* Mode)	———— *3	————	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp *4 www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	＊ .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp *4 www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
(# 記号/マナー)	゛゜、。・！？*5	゛゜、。・！？*5	.@/!?()，−＿:’ ~*6&¥	#.@/!?()，−＿:’ ~*6&¥

*1 : Only valid when entering SMS. You cannot enter pictograms in SMS but you can enter ♥ and ☎. Also, while symbols are displayed as half-pitch characters, ♥ and ☎ are always full-pitch characters.

*2 : The small “ワ” can be entered in full-pitch character input.

3 : Pressing (Mode) in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” switches to “Kuten code input” mode.

*4 : Not shown when you change to full-pitch character input (excluding “＊” in Numeric input mode).

*5 : In “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and full-pitch “Kana input mode”, dakuten (“゛”) and han-dakuten (“゜”) are only displayed when the character that precede them can take dakuten. You cannot enter commas, periods, bullets, or exclamation or question marks in reading input when storing phonebook entries on the UIM or entering user dictionary readings.

*6 : Becomes "¯" in full-pitch input mode.
*7 : "+" can be entered in an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
: Lower case text can be entered in either of the following ways:
・By entering upper case text and then pressing ☜ to convert it to lower case.
・By selecting "Lower case" in the Function menu and then entering the text.

Entering text in mode 2 (2-touch input)

Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

Press (左) (Mode).

The input mode switches between "Full pitch" and "Half pitch" each time you press (左) (Mode).

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press (3 DEF) "Half pitch/Full pitch".

When you change to "Full pitch", 1/1 appears in the information display area. When you change to "Half pitch", 1/2 appears.

■ Characters that can entered in mode 2

<Example> To enter "う", select Full-pitch input mode and press (1 あ) (3 DEF).
To enter a full-pitch "Ｂ", select Full-pitch input mode and press (1 あ) (7 PQRS).
To enter a half-pitch "ﾋﾞ", select Half-pitch input mode and press (1 あ) (7 PQRS).

Full-pitch input mode

1st key input \ 2nd key input	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	—	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*2	
8	や ゃ	(	ゆ ゅ	)	よ ょ	*	#		*2	*1
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ を	ん	*3 ゛ 、	*3 ゜ 。		6	7	8	9	0

Half-pitch input mode

1st key input \ 2nd key input	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		*2	
8	ﾔ ｬ	(	ﾕ ｭ	)	ﾖ ｮ	*	#		*2	*1
9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo. ne.jp	5
0	ﾜ ~	ﾔ '	ﾝ	゛ ,	゜ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

・During reading input when you are storing entries in the UIM phonebook, Full-pitch input mode becomes katakana input.

*1 : Pressing (0 わ) (0 ー) switches between upper case input mode (top) and lower case input mode (bottom). You can also enter upper case text and then change it to lower case by pressing ☜.

Continued on next page

*2 : These can also be used only when pictograph input is possible, such as when "Text memo" or "Common phrases" are stored. Note that these icons are always entered as full-pitch characters. "Pictograph" is not possible when you are composing an SMS, but ☎ and ♥ can be entered.

*3 : In "Full-pitch input mode", dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") are only displayed for characters with which dakuten can be used. Dakuten entered with other characters appear as spaces.

: Spaces are entered.

Note

● In some cases, you may not be able to use mode 2 input. In such situations, use mode 1 input instead.

Entering text in mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode allows you to enter text with a minimum of key pressing.

For example, to enter the "あした" reading in mode 1 (5-touch), you have to press 1 once, 3 twice and 4 once, whereas in mode 3 (T9 input) you only have to press the 1 3 and 4 for the respective 行 once each.

A 行 is assigned to each key, and each time you press a key a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter the desired reading.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions: "Yomi edit" and "Fix mode".

"Yomi edit" enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use "Fix mode" to directly enter the desired reading. Mode 3 (T9 input) also works in tandem with the FOMA terminal's word prediction function (P. 533) to allow faster and easier text entry.

● Changing the input mode

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

Press 左 (Mode).

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press 左 (Mode), in the following sequence: Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) → Katakana (half-pitch) → Alphabetic (half-pitch) → Numeric (half-pitch). However, mode 3 (T9 input) only operates in the Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) and Katakana (full-pitch) input modes. In Alphabetic (half-pitch) and Numeric (half-pitch) input modes, text entry automatically changes to mode 1.

■ Characters that can entered in mode 3

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
1	あ column、1	ア column、1
2	か column、2	カ column、2
3	さ column、3	サ column、3
4	た column、4	タ column、4
5	な column、5	ナ column、5
6	は column、6	ハ column、6
7	ま column、7	マ column、7
8	や column、8	ヤ column、8
9	ら column、9	ラ column、9
0	わ を ん ゎ ー、0	ワ ヲ ン ヮ*3 ー、0
#	*1, *2	*1, *2

・ For the characters assigned in "Alphabetic input mode" and "Numeric input mode", refer to the character assignments for "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

・ Numeric character candidates are not displayed when you are entering reading to store phonebook entries on the UIM or entering user dictionary readings.

*1 : Changes the conversion candidate readings with dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") during reading input.

*2 : As for Kana input (mode 1), dakuten, han-dakuten, commas, periods, bullets, exclamation marks and question marks are displayed after readings and characters have been confirmed, but the dakuten ("゛") and han-dakuten ("゜") only appear when they are preceded by characters that take dakuten.

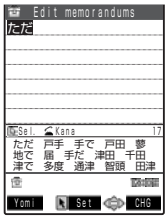
*3 : The small "ワ" can be entered in full-pitch character input.

● Entering text

<Example: Entering "戸田" in T9 kanji conversion mode>

1 Press 左 (Character) to select "Kanji/hiragana input mode".

2 Enter the characters to be converted.



4(た行) 、4(た行) 、#(dakuten)
The predicted candidates for "ただ" are displayed.

■ If you press the wrong key

Press CLR to delete the character and press the key again.

■ If the entered texts has no recognized candidates

Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray. Use ⊙ to change the range of characters to be converted.

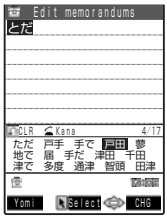
■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (kanji-kana)

Press ☎.

■ To view the word prediction conversion candidates

Hold down ○ for 1 second or longer.
Press CLR to return to the conversion candidates shown before the word-prediction conversion candidates appeared.

3 Press ○ to select a conversion candidate and press ●.



The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

■ To return to entering characters to be converted

Press CLR.

■ To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates

Press 右 (CHG) ▶ Use ○ to select a candidate and press ●.

● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering "らわらわた" and converting to "爛々と" >

1 Enter the characters to be converted.



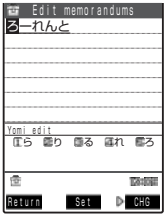
9(ら行) 、0(わ行) 、9(ら行) 、0(わ行) 、4(た行)
The "predictable conversion candidates for " らわらわた" are displayed. Candidates for " らんらんと" do not" appear.

2 Press 左 (Yomi).

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The " ら行" characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

Continued on next page

3 Press the number on the keypad for the character you want to enter



In this case, press 1あ (ら).
After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct that character.

■ If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate

Use ◎ to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected.

■ To exit edit mode in mid-operation

Press 左 (Return).
The characters corrected so far are displayed as the conversion candidate.

4 Press ◎ to select "爛々と" and press ●.

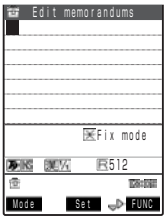


From next time, if "らわらわた" is inputted, "爛々と" will be displayed at a conversion candidate's head.

● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Entering the "はためく" reading>

1 Press 米 "Fix mode".

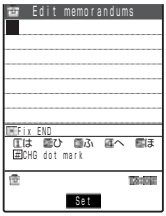


The input mode changes to Fix mode and あ in the information display area changes to FIX.

2 Press the key for the 行 that includes the character you want to enter.

In this case, press 6わ. The "は行" characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press the keypad number for the character you want to enter.



In this case, press 1あ "は".
Use the same procedure to enter the rest of the reading.

4 Press (Fix) "Fix END".



When you press (Fix) "Fix END", the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by pressing ○ and then 右 (CHG).

Setting T9 change mode

When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can use this procedure to specify whether the entered text is converted to kanji or kana.

1 Press (Menu) 3 5 ▶ 4 "T9 change mode" ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **T9 Kanji change mode**	Converts the entered text to kanji.
2 **T9 Kana change mode**	Converts the entered text to kana.

Using word prediction

The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the next time you enter the same character string, it includes the stored character string along with common phrases in your list of candidates to choose from.

1 Press (Menu) 3 5 ▶ 2 "Prediction" ▶ Press 1 "ON" or 2 "OFF".

Using word prediction to enter text

The word prediction function displays predictive candidates and historical candidates based on text you have entered in the past.

1 Enter the reading.



The predictive candidates appear in the guidance area.

Continued on next page

2 **Hold down ⓖ for 1 second or longer or slide your finger over ●.**



The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.

■ **To return to reading entry**
Press CLR.

■ **If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter**
Enter the reading unchanged.

3 **Select a predictive candidate and press ●.**



Once you confirm the text, historical candidates for the next section of text appear.

4 **Select an historical candidate and press ●.**

■ **If no historical candidates appear or there are no historical candidates for the text you want to enter**
Enter the next section of text unchanged.

Displaying guidance

Use this procedure to specify whether guidance (P. 526) is displayed in the Text Entry (Edit) display.

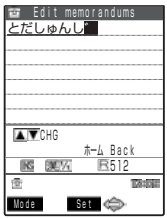
1 **Press Menu 3 DEF 5 JKL ▶ 3 DEF "Guidance" ▶ Press 1 あ "ON" or 2 ABC "OFF".**

Entering text

<Example: Entering "戸田俊司">

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

1 **Enter the hiragana.**



■ **If you press the wrong key**
Press CLR to delete the character and press the key again.

■ **If you press a key too many times**
Press ⓗ (Home).
The previous character assigned to that key appears.

■ **When the next character to be entered is assigned to the same key**
Press ⓒ or hold down the key for 1 second or longer.
Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ **To confirm the hiragana**
Press ●.

<Mode 1>

4 GHI 5 times, ○ once, 4 GHI once, # twice, 3 DEF twice,
と Move 1 char. た ゛(dakuten) し

8 TUV twice, ○ once, 0 3 times, 3 DEF twice, # once
ゆ Move 1 char. ん し ゛(dakuten)

<Mode 2>

4 GHI 5 JKL, 4 GHI 1, 0 4 GHI, 3 DEF 2 ABC, 8 TUV 0
と た (dakuten) し Lower case input

8 TUV 3 DEF, 8 TUV 0, 0 3 DEF, 3 DEF 2 ABC, 0 4 GHI
ゆ Upper case input ん し (dakuten)

In mode 2, entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the text. Always enter 2 digits.

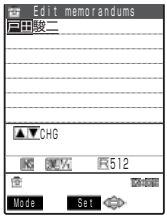
<Mode 3>

4 GHI, 4 GHI, # twice, 3 DEF
と た (dakuten) し

8 TUV, 0, 3 DEF, # twice
ゆ ん し (dakuten)

In mode 3, use ○ to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and use * to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 Press ● to convert the reading to kanji.



The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined (_).

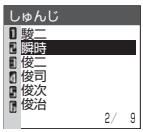
■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji

Press ●.
The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range.

Use ○ to change the conversion range.
The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are available kanji for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

3 Use ◎ to display the conversion candidates.



A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.

■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of "あ" -level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter and press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

- You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the "on" or "kun" reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- Where strings of 2 or more characters cannot be converted, convert the characters one at a time.
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that cannot be entered by conversion. →P. 546
- Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a confirmation message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

Switching between upper case and lower case

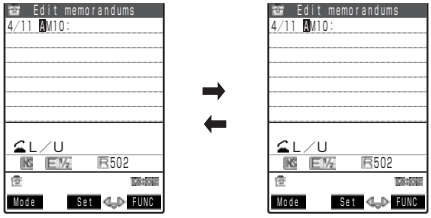
Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

Pressing .

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press .

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press . This method can only be used when " L/U" is displayed in the operation guidance.



Using the Function menu

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press "Lower case/Upper case".

When you change to "Lower case", Sm appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in "Insert", the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite", the new text replaces the existing entered text.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press ▶ Press "Overwrite"/"Insert".

When you change to "Insert", INS appears in the information display area, and OVR appears when you select "Overwrite".

When the Text Entry (Edit) display first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

Inserting a space (blank)

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press ▶ Press "Space".

A full-pitch space is inserted in full-pitch input and a half-pitch space is inserted in half-pitch input.

Note

- A space (blank) is counted as a one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

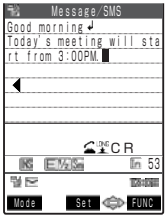
Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol ↲. There are 2 ways to insert a line feed.
The line feed symbol is counted as 1 full-pitch character.

■ Holding down (end) for 1 second or longer

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and hold down (end) for 1 second or longer.



A line feed symbol ↲ is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Using the Function menu

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

Press (menu) ▶ Press 2 ABC "Line feed".
A line feed symbol ↲ is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

Note

- The line feed symbol can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- The line feed icon is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- You may not be able to insert a line feed in an i-mode text box.
- You cannot enter line feed icons in a "Text memo" (P. 452).

Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek numbers and units.
Note that you cannot enter full-pitch symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press (menu) ▶ Press 3 DEF "Symbols" ▶ Select the symbol to be inserted and press (●).

For the symbol and special character tables →P. 554

Note

- The half-pitch character icon is displayed when you can only enter half-pitch characters.

Using character conversion to enter symbols and emoticons

In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", you can enter symbols and emoticons by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting "きごう" in "Kanji/hiragana input mode" displays the symbol candidates. You can also enter symbols by entering and converting a symbol name such as "かっこ" or "さんかく".
For more information on converting symbols →P. 554

Continued on next page

■ **Entering Face symbols**

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays the emoticon candidates. You can also enter emoticons by entering and converting an emoticon name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

For more information on Face symbols →P. 555

● Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, the weather or an animal in the Text Entry (Edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs are can also stored when they are entered in “Continuous pictograph/symbol input”.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 4 GHI “Pictograph” ▶ Select a pictograph and press ●.

For the list of pictographs →P. 555

● Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Use this procedure to have the FOMA terminal continue to display symbol and pictograph candidate displays so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

- For information on entering symbols →P. 554
- For information on pictographs →P. 555

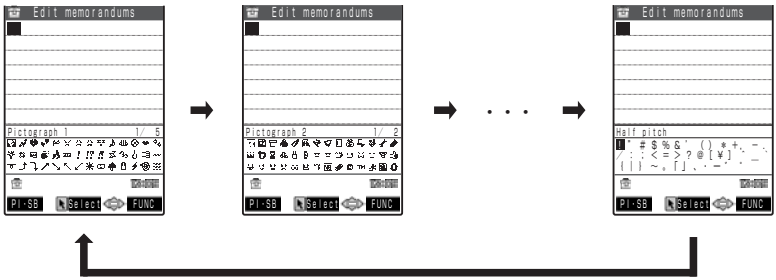
In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press 1 あ “PI・SB input mode”.

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press 左 (PI・SB) to switch to a different candidate display.

Each time you press 左 (Change), the candidate display changes in the following sequence: “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch”.



3 Select the symbol or pictograph and press ●.



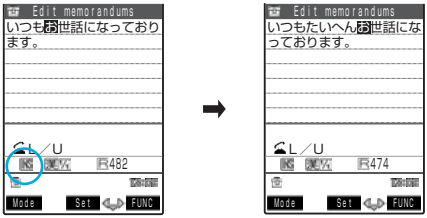
The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs.

4 When you have finished entering symbols and pictographs, press CLR.

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

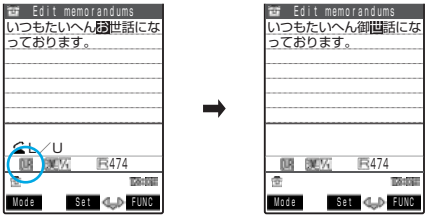
Inserting text

Select “Insert” and use ⊕ to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



Overwriting text

Select “Overwrite” and use ⊕ to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



Deleting text

Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and hold down CLR briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.

■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

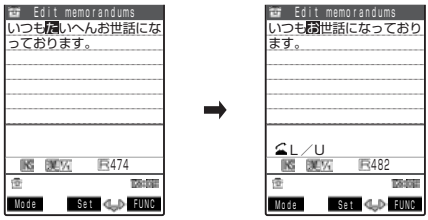
■ If you hold down CLR for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

Continued on next page

■ **If you hold down (CLR) for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor**

All the text is deleted.



Data protection during text entry and editing

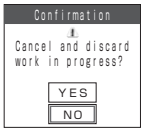
When you are entering text in the Text Entry (Edit) display and the battery fails or your receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the display.

■ **If the battery fails**

If the battery failure alarm sounds during text entry, the Text Entry (Edit) display is replaced by the “Recharge battery” message display. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

For information on re-editing the phonebook →P. 95

■ **If you press (PWR HLD)**



If you press (PWR HLD) while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.

<To quit without saving the text>

Select “YES”. The FOMA terminal redisplays the previous display or stand-by display without saving the entered text.

You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing (PWR HLD).

<To continue entering text>

Select “NO”. The FOMA terminal returns to the Text Entry (Edit) display with the entered text still displayed.

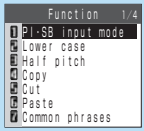
You can also return to the Text Entry (Edit) display by pressing (CLR).

■ **When you receive a voice call**

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text Entry (Edit) display reappears. During a voice call, you can return to the Text Entry (Edit) display during the call by pressing (Menu) to display the Task menu. →P. 432

Using the function menu in the Text Entry (Edit) display

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526



Text entry (Edit) display function menu display

Text entry (edit) display function menu 1/4

1 **PI・SB input mode**	See “Entering symbols and pictographs continuously” →P. 538
2 **Lower case**[*1]	See “Switching between upper case and lower case” →P. 536
3 **Half pitch**[*2]	See “Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters” →P. 528, 529
4 **Copy**	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
5 **Cut**	See “Copying (or cutting) text” →P. 544
6 **Paste**	See “Pasting text” →P. 545

7 Common phrase	See “Entering common phrases” →P. 541

*1: If you have selected the lower case, “2 Upper case” is displayed.
*2: If you have selected the Half pitch, “3 Full pitch” is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 2/4

1 Space	See “Inserting a space (blank)” →P. 536
2 Line feed	See “Inserting a line feed” →P. 537
3 Symbols	See “Inserting symbols” →P. 537
4 Pictograph	See “Entering pictographs” →P. 538
5 Kuten code	See “Entering Kuten Codes” →P. 546
6 Overwrite*3	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. →P. 536
7 Quote phonebook	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542

*3: If you have selected the Overwrite mode, “6 Insert” is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 3/4

1 Quote own number	See “Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook” →P. 542	
2 Access reader	Pastes text data scanned in by the Access Reader. See “Scanning Text” →P. 188	
3 Bar code reader	Pastes text data scanned in by the Bar Code Reader. See “Using the Bar Code Reader” →P. 184	
4 Refer dic.	Activates the dictionary. See “Using Dictionaries” →P. 454	
5 Prediction OFF*4	Specifies whether or not to use a word prediction function that displays predictive and historical candidates based on text entered in the past.	
6 CHG input method	▶Choose from the following options: Switch input modes.	
	1 Mode 1 (5-touch)	Changes the text entry mode to Kana input.
	2 Mode 2 (2-touch)	Changes the text entry mode to 2-touch input.
	3 Mode 3 (T9 input)	Changes the text entry mode to T9 input.
7 T9 Kanji CHG mode*5	Specifies whether entered text is converted to kanji or kana when text is entered in T9 input mode. When “T9 Kanji change mode” is selected as the “T9 change mode”, “T9 Kana change mode” is displayed, or the “T9 Kana change mode” is set to “T9 change mode”, “T9 Kanji change mode” is displayed. Note that changes to the mode during text input only apply to the Text Entry (Edit) display. If you exit text entry and then return to a Text Entry (Edit) display later, the “Character input method” will revert to its previous setting.	

*4: If you have selected the word prediction, “5 Prediction ON” is displayed.
*5: If you have selected the T9 Kanji conversion mode, “7 T9 Kana CHG mode” is displayed.

Text entry (edit) display function menu 4/4

1 Jump	▶Choose from the following options: Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.	
	1 To beginning	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the text.
	2 To end	Moves the cursor to the end of the text.
2 Change window	When the operation display for a function and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the FOMA terminal’s display, this option switches between windows. See “Changing the Active Display”. →P. 549	

Entering common phrases

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press 7 “Common phrase” ▶Select a folder and press ●.
For the list of common phrases →P. 544

2 Select a common phrase and press ● ▶Press ●.

Continued on next page

Note

- Common phrases can be used in the following Text Entry (Edit) displays:
  - Text memo
  - Common phrase
  - Common phrase folder name
  - Schedule
  - ToDo
  - Wake-up message
  - i-mode mail subject
  - i-mode mail message
  - i-mode mail header
  - i-mode mail signature
  - i-mode mail quotation
  - i-mode mail reply with ref.
  - Enter auto sort setting subject
  - Enter mail search subject
  - Edit i-mode text box
  - Edit i-αppli text
  - Dictionary
- Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.
  Modes 1 and 3 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
  Displayed as half-pitch katakana in other input modes.
  Mode 2 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in full-pitch input mode.
  Displayed as half-pitch katakana in half-pitch input mode.
- If the accept phone number of characters is exceeded when you enter a common phrase, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select "YES", the common phrase is entered and the excess text from the end of the common phrase onwards is truncated.

Entering text by quoting personal data from the phonebook

In the Text Entry (Edit) display for an e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use this procedure to enter the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the phonebook or in "Own number".

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text Entry (Edit) displays.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press ○ ▶ Press 7 PQRS "Quote phonebook" or ○ ▶ Press ○ ▶ Press 1 "Quote own number".

■ When "Quote phonebook" selected

You can search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted by selecting "Group search" or "Column search".
For information on searching the phonebook →P. 98

■ When "Quote own number" is selected

Enter your security code.
For information on security code →P. 142

2 Select the item to be quoted and press ●.



Quoting a phonebook entry

3 Press 左 (Finish).

Note

- You cannot quote data when PIM lock is set.
- When you quote a street address, the postal code "〒" symbol and "-" are not quoted.
- By selecting "Access reader", "Bar code reader" or "Refer dictionary" from the Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu (P. 540), you can also use those functions to quote data.

<Store common phrase>

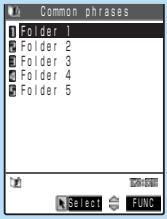
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text Entry (Edit) display later. Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.

Composing a new common phrase

1 **Press (Menu) (3 DEF) (8 TUV).**

The "Common phrase folder list display" appears.



Common phrase folder list display

2 **Select a folder and press ●.**

The "Common phrase list display" appears.

3 **Select "<Not stored>" and press (左) (Edit) ▶ Enter the common phrase and press ●.**



Common phrase list display

Note

- Common phrases can contain up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.
- When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use "half-pitch katakana" or "pictographs" as these may not be displayed correctly. (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged.)
- Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is "Kanji/hiragana input mode" in mode 1 (5-touch) or mode 3 (T9) or "full-pitch character input" in mode 2 (2-touch), and as "half-pitch katakana" when another text entry method is used.

Using the function menu in the Common Phrases Folder List display

In the common phrase folder list display... ➡ P. 543

1 **Press (FUNC) Choose from the following options.**

Common phrase folder list display function menu.

1 **Edit folder name**	▶ **Change the folder name and press ●.** The selected folder name changes. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters and half-pitch characters for the folder name.
2 **Reset name**	▶ **Select "Yes" and press ●.** The folder name returns to the default folder name.

Note

- If there are no characters in the folder name when you set it, the folder name returns to the default folder name.

Using the function menu in the Common Phrase List display

In the common phrase list display... ➡ P. 543

1 Press (右) (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Common phrase list display function menu

1 Edit	▶ Edit the common phrase and press ●. Edits the selected common phrase.
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

Note

● If you delete a preset fixed common phrase, it reverts to the default common phrase set at the time of purchase.

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

● Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press 4 GHI "Copy" or 5 JKL "Cut".

2 Move the cursor to the beginning of the text to be copied or cut and then press ●.



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut and then press ●.

The selected text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

■ **If the text was cut**

The selected text is deleted, but is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ **If you select a range that includes no text**

The range is stored as half-pitch spaces.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

In the text entry (edit) display function menu... ➡ P. 540

1 Press 6 MNO は “Paste”.

■ **If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text Entry (Edit) display**

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced by spaces when the text is pasted.

Note

- If the accept phone number of characters is exceeded when you paste cut or copied text, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select “YES”, the text is pasted and the excess text from the end of the pasted text onwards is truncated. If you select “NO”, the text is not pasted and the original display reappears.

Entering Kuten Codes

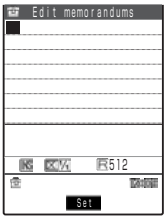
This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit "kuten" codes.

- See "Kuten Code List" →P. 556
- The display of a screen may differ from the character of a Kuten code or a symbol.

<Example: Entering "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

In the text entry (edit) display... ➡ P. 526

1 Press (*/http://).



The input mode changes to Kuten code input and ⊠ appears in the information display area.

■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

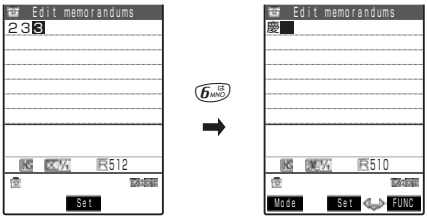
In the Text Entry (Edit) display Function menu display ▶Press ○ ▶Press 5 "Kuten code".

2 Enter kuten code 2 3 3 6.

The character for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.

■ If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code

A space is entered.



Note

- When the text entry mode is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 2 (2-touch)", you still switch to kuten code input by selecting "Kuten code" from the Function menu.

<Own dictionary>

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting	Not stored

Using this procedure to store frequently used words in a user dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text Entry (Edit) display.

- You cannot enter pictographs, line feeds or common phrases or their readings. The entries are automatically filled with spaces.
- Symbols other than dakuten "、。・！？" cannot be stored.

Adding a new word

1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC.**

The "Own dictionary display" appears.

2 **Select "<New>" and press ● ▶ Enter the word and press ● ▶ Enter the reading and press ●.**



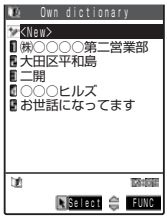
User dictionary display

Note

- The user dictionary will hold up to 100 words.
- Words can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Readings are written in full-pitch hiragana and can be up to 10 characters long.

Checking words

1 **Press Menu 8 TUV 2 ABC.**



2 **Select the work you want to check and press ●.**

■ To edit a word

Highlight the word to be changed and press 左 (Edit).

Using the function menu in the User Dictionary display

In the user dictionary display... ➡ P. 547

1 **Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:**

User dictionary display function menu

1 Edit	Edits the stored word.
2 Delete this	▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
3 Delete selected	▶ Use ○ to select a checkbox (☐) and press ● ▶ Press 左 (Finish) ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.
4 Delete all	▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●. For information on security code →P. 142

<Clear learning record>

Resetting the Learning Dictionary

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

1 Press Menu 3 DEF 5 JKL ▶ Press 5 JKL "Clear learned" ▶ Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Choose from the following options:

1 **T9/Expect words/Pic.**	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3 (T9 input)", "Prediction" and "Pictographs".
2 **Kana/Kanji change**	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion.

<Download dictionary>

Selecting the Dictionaries Used

Default setting	Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese language conversion from i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 5 downloaded dictionaries, 2 of which can be active.
- For information on downloading dictionaries →P. 221

1 Press Menu ▶ Select Data box and press ● ▶ Press 8 TUV "DL dictionary".

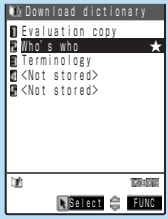
The "Download dictionary display" appears.

2 Select the dictionary you want to set and press ●.

A star (★) appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

Select a dictionary marked with a star (★).
The dictionary is deselected and the star (★) disappears.



Download dictionary display

Using the function menu in the Download Dictionary display

In the download dictionary display... ➡ P. 548

1 Press 右 (FUNC) ▶ Choose from the following options:

Download dictionary display

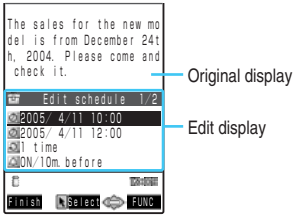
1 **Edit title**	▶ **Edit the title and press ●.** Edits the title of the downloaded dictionary selected. The title can contain up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
2 **Set dictionary**	Sets the downloaded dictionary or cancels the setting.
3 **Dictionary info**	Displays information for the downloaded dictionary selected.
4 **Delete this**	▶ **Select "YES" and press ●.**
5 **Delete all**	▶ **Enter your security code and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**

Note

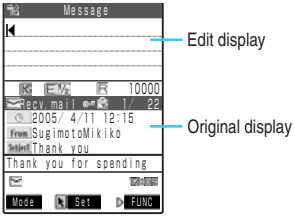
- If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Display

Some displays, such as that for replying to received mail while referring to the original message Reply with ref, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation display and the Text Entry (Edit) display at the same time.



Save schedule from the i-mode display



Reply with ref from received mail

- The function operation display and Text Entry (Edit) display are shown at the same time in the following situations:
  - Replying to i-mode mail while referring to the message
  - Adding schedule entries from i-mode mail
  - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode display
  - Entering site URLs by searching dictionaries in an i-mode display
  - Chat display for Chat mail
  - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Procedure for changing the active display

When a function operation display and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown at the same time, you can use any of the 3 methods described below to switch between displays.

■Hold down (EZ) for 1 second or longer

The active display changes each time you hold down (EZ) for 1 second or longer.

■Select the active display using the Function menu

Select "Change window" from the Function menu to change the active display.

■Select the active display using the neuropointer

Slide your finger over the neuropointer key to display the neuropointer and then use it to select the active display.

Note

- When you switch to the other display, the entered text or cursor location in the current display remain unchanged.
- You cannot change displays while you are entering a character reading.
- If you switch to using a received mail display or i-mode display while an edit display is shown, you can only scroll the mail or i-mode display. However, in the case of Received mail only, you can also copy text and set the character size.
- You cannot switch displays in the Chat display for chat mail.

Appendix

Menu Function List 552
Symbols and Special Characters List 554
Pictographs Symbols Lists 555
Smiley Face Symbols List 555
Kuten Code List 556
Multi Access Combination Patterns 560
Multi Task Combination Patterns 560
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal 561
Options and Accessories 561
About Data Link Software 562
Malfunction Checklist 562
If Any Error Message Appears 566
Warranty and After-Sales Service 573
Software Update <Software update> 574
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data <Scanning function> 579

Menu Function List

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Mail			—	P. 244
i-mode			—	P. 202
i-αppli			—	P. 316
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	Menu 5 0	P. 65
		Select ring tone	Menu 1 3	P. 114
		Sound effect	Menu 6 4	P. 116
		Vibrator	Menu 5 4	P. 117
		Illumination	Menu 8 9	P. 134
		Manner mode set	Menu 2 0	P. 120
		Disp. PH-book image	—	P. 126
		Answer setting	Menu 5 8	P. 61
		Fold setting	Menu 1 8	P. 61
		Mail/Msg. ring time	Menu 6 8	P. 119
		Ringing time	Menu 9 0	P. 155
		Info notice setting	Menu 6 5	P. 69
	Talk	Noise reduction	Menu 7 6	P. 59
		Quality alarm	Menu 7 5	P. 118
		Reconnect control	Menu 7 7	P. 58
		Illumination in talk	—	P. 135
		Call response setting	—	P. 67
	Video-phone	Image quality	—	P. 84
		Camera image sending	—	P. 84
		Select image	—	P. 84
		Voice call auto switch	—	P. 84
		Remote observation	—	P. 88
		Disp. setting V-phone	—	P. 86
	Display	Display setting	Menu 5 6	P. 122
		Display light	Menu 7 0	P. 128
		Display design	Menu 8 6	P. 129
		Indicator display	Menu 9 3	P. 126
		Font	Menu 6 6	P. 135
		Desktop icon	Menu 6 3	P. 138
		Select language	Menu 1 5	P. 136
		Original menu	Menu 5 2	P. 132

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	Display	Menu display set	Menu 5 7	P. 130
		Viewer settings	—	P. 348
		Automatic display	Menu 4 7	P. 110
		Icons	Menu 3 6	P. 30
	Call time/ charge	Call data	Menu 6 1	P. 451
		Reset call duration	Menu 6 0	P. 451
		Call time display	Menu 4 8	P. 135
	Clock	Set time	Menu 3 1	P. 44
		Clock display	Menu 3 9	P. 136
		Alarm setting	—	P. 433
	Lock/ Security	All lock	—	P. 145
		PIM lock	—	P. 149
		Self mode	—	P. 156
		Keypad dial lock	—	P. 150
		Reject unknown	—	P. 156
		Call setting w/o ID	Menu 1 0	P. 154
		Change security code	Menu 2 9	P. 142
		PIN setting	—	P. 143
		Secret mode	Menu 4 0	P. 147
		Secret only mode	Menu 4 1	P. 148
		Scanning function	—	P. 579
		Remote all lock	Menu 9 9	P. 145
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—	P. 225
		Set check new message	—	P. 297
		Host selection	Menu 8 1	P. 226
		SMS center selection	—	P. 313
		Certificate	—	P. 232
		Certificate host	—	P. 234
	i-αppli settings	Disp. software info	—	P. 319
		αDisplay light	—	P. 322
		αVibrator	—	P. 322

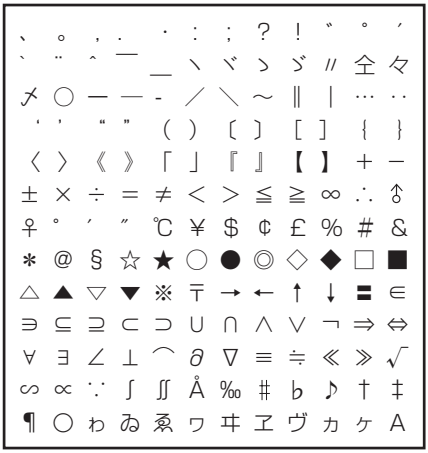
High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	i-αppli settings	αIndicator display	—	P. 322
		End stand-by display	—	P. 330
	External option	Earphone	Menu 5 1	P. 119
		Automatic answer	Menu 9 4	P. 458
	Other settings	Keypad sound	Menu 3 0	P. 118
		Charge sound	—	P. 118
		Battery level	Menu 7 1	P. 42
		Side keys guard	Menu *(Shift) (Unlock)	P. 150
		Character input method	Menu 3 5	P. 527
		Record display set	—	P. 151
		Pause dial	Menu 8 4	P. 53
		Sub-address	—	P. 58
		Prefix setting	—	P. 54
		Int'l dial setting	—	P. 56
		PLMN setting	—	P. 458
		Neuropointer	—	P. 133
		Select icons setting	—	P. 139
		USB mode setting	—	P. 407
		Reset	Menu 2 3	P. 459
		Initialize	—	P. 463
		Software update	—	P. 574
Data box	My picture		Menu 4 6	P. 345
	i-motion		—	P. 369
	Melody		Menu 1 6	P. 391
	Chara-den		—	P. 384
Tool	Camera		—	P. 166, 176
	Schedule		Menu 4 5	P. 437
	Alarm clock		Menu 4 4	P. 435
	ToDo		Menu 9 5	P. 443
	Text memo		Menu 4 2	P. 452
	Calculator		Menu 8 5	P. 452
	Play/Erase msg.		i (Memo/Check)	P. 72
	Record message		Menu 5 5	P. 70
	Voice memo (in stand-by)		Menu 4 3	P. 449

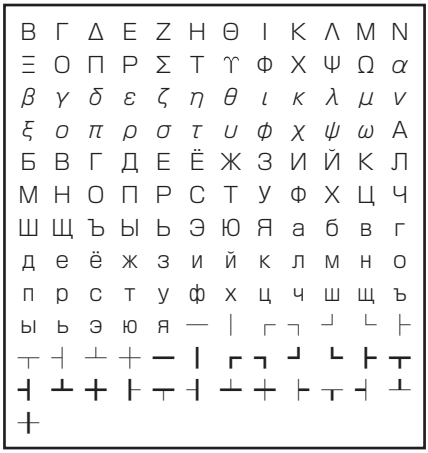
High level item	Middle item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Tool	Voice memo (during a call)	i (Memo/Check) (Rec)	P. 449
	Voice announce	Menu 9 1	P. 450
	Receive Ir data	Menu 7 9	P. 415, 417
	UIM operation	—	P. 103
	Forwarding image	—	P. 412
	Access reader	—	P. 188
	Bar code reader	—	P. 184
	SD-PIM	—	P. 403
	Dictionary	—	P. 454
Network service	Check messages	Menu 2 5	P. 468
	Caller ID notification	Menu 1 7	P. 45
	Voice mail	—	P. 467
	Call waiting	—	P. 469
	Call forwarding	—	P. 470
	Nuisance call barring	—	P. 472
	Caller ID request	—	P. 473
	Arrival call act	—	P. 476
	Set arrival act	—	P. 476
	Remote access	—	P. 477
	Dual network	—	P. 474
	English guidance	—	P. 474
	Additional service	—	P. 477
	Service dialing number	—	P. 476
	Multi number	—	P. 477
	Call barrings*	—	—
Phonebook	Add to phonebook	—	P. 93
	Search phonebook	—	P. 98
	No. of phonebook	Menu 2 2	P. 106
	Utilities	Menu 6 2	P. 109
	Restrictions	Menu 1 2	P. 152
	Group setting	Menu 2 6	P. 97
Own data	Own number	Menu 0	P. 46, 447
	Received calls	Menu 2 4	P. 62
	Dialed calls	—	P. 50
	Mail member	Menu 9 7	P. 265
	Chat group	—	P. 304
	Common phrases	Menu 3 8	P. 543
	Own dictionary	Menu 8 2	P. 546
	DL dictionary	—	P. 548

*: It cannot be used with a FOMA card.

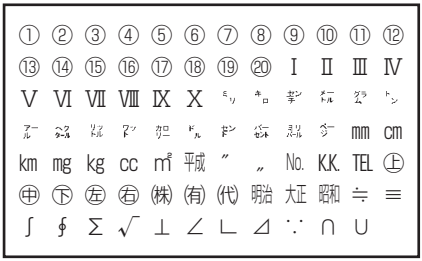
Symbols and Special Characters List

■ Full-pitch Symbols 1

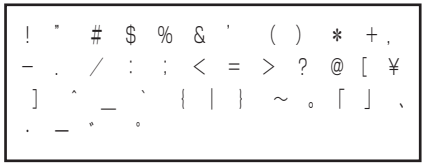




■ Full-pitch Symbols 2



■ Half-pitch Symbols



■ Symbols in Japanese Conversion

You can enter symbols in mail messages, etc., by entering "きごう" while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the symbol candidates. You can also enter the name of a symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
あっと,あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	⇧
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	()〔〕[]｛｝〈〉《》「」『』【】‘’“” ()〈〉[]｛｝「」

Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
たす	+
どう	ヽヾゝゞ〃々
ばーせんと	%
ひく	−

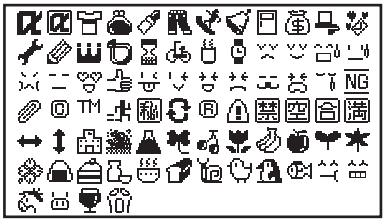
Symbol name (entering characters)	Symbol
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs Symbols Lists

List of Pictographs 1



List of Pictographs 2



Note

● Pictograph 2 is not displayed properly when sending to a mobile phone or PC that is not compatible with it.

Smiley Face Symbols List

Smiley Face Symbols

You can enter smiley face symbols in mail messages, by entering "かお" or "かおもじ" while you are in Kanji/hiragana input mode, and then converting the text to display the different smiley face symbol candidates. You can also enter the meaning of a smiley face symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired smiley face symbol.

Entering characters (Meanings)	Face symbol
あせあせ(Sweat! Sweat!)	(;^_^A
あは(Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)
ありがとう/ありがとう(Thanks!)	m(_ _)m
いかり(Angry)	(^^)
いたた(Ouch!)	(>_<)
いっぷく(Take a break)	(^!^)y~
いっぷく(Take a break)	(^.^)y-~~~
ういんく(Wink)	(^_-)
うん(Yeah)	(^_^)(._.)
え(What?)	(@_@;)
えーん(Crying)	(;_;)
えへん(Ahem!)	(^^)
おーい(Hey!)	(^O^)/
がーん(Shocked!)	(^□^;)!!
がんば(Cheer up!)	p(^^)q
がんばい(Cheers!)	(^^)/▽☆▽\(^^)
きこえない(Can't hear)	∣(-_-)∣

Entering characters (Meanings)	Face symbol
ぎゃはは(Ha-ha!)	(^O^)/^
きらーん(Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆。☆)
こあら(Koala)	(ー Q ー)
こそこそ(Whisper)	(・_・)
こまったもんだ(My goodness!)	(^~^)ξ
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(^_^)/~
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(T_T)/~
じーっ(Gaze)	(-_-)
しくしく(Sob, sob)	(T_T)
ちゅ(Kiss!)	(^3^)/
ちゅ(Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
どき(Shocked!)	(◎-◎;)
ども(Well, well)	\(^_^)(^_^)/
なぜ(Why?)	(?_?)
にこ(Smile!)	(^-^)
にこ(Smile! smile)	(*^_^*)
ね(Isn't it?)	(^.^)b

Entering characters (Meanings)	Face symbol
ねてる(Zzzz...)	(-_-)zz
ねむい(I'm sleepy)	\(^O^)/
はてな(Wait a minute!)	(・・?)
ばんざい(Hurrah!)	\(^O^)/
びくっ(Twitch!)	(*_*)
ひやあせ(Cold Sweat!)	(^o^;
ぶい(Vwv!)	(^^)v
ぶたー(Pig)	)^o^(
ほし(Star)	☆彡
ぽりぽり(Scratch, scratch!)	(^^ゞ
む(Sullen)	(ー_ーメ)
むか(Offended)	(;-_-+
めがてん(W*H*A*T?)	(・・;)
めも(Memo)	φ(..)
わーい(Wow!)	(^O^)
わくわく(I'm excited!)	o(^-^)o

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter “digits 1-3 of the kuten code” and then enter “digit 4”.

● The kuten code table actually displayed may differ from the table shown here.

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
010		(スペース)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	¨	＾	￣	_	ヽ	ヾ	ヽ
012	ゝ	ゞ	〃	〜	‖	｜	…	‥	‘	’	‘
013	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝	｛
014	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】	【
015	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦	≦
016	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥	￥
017	$	¢	£	%	#	&	*	@	§	☆	☆
018	★	○	●	◎	◇	◆	□	■	△	▲	▲
019	▽	▼	※	〒	→	←	↑	↓	〓		
020								∈	∋	⊆	⊇
021	⊂	⊃	∪	∩	∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃
022											
023	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√	√
024	∽	∝	Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶	¶
025											
026											
027											
028											
029											
031											
032											
033											
034											
035											
036											
037											
038											
039											
040											
041											
042											
043											
044											
045											
046											
047											
048											
050											
051											
052											
053											
054											
055											
056											
057											
058											
060											
061											
062											
063											
064											
065											
070											
071											
072											
073											
074											

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	э
078	ю	я									
080											
081											
082											
083											
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ	ミリ	キロ	センチ	ミリ	トン	グラム	ページ	アール	ヘクタール	ヘクタール
134	リットル	ワット	cc	㎜	㎝	㎝	㎜	トン	㎞	㎎	㎎
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	平成	昭和	No.	KK	TEL	上	下	下
026											
027											
028											
029											
031											
032											
033											
034											
035											
036											
037											
038											
039											
040											
041											
042											
043											
044											
045											
046											
047											
048											
050											
051											
052											
053											
054											
055											
056											
057											
058											
060											
061											
062											
063											
064											
065											
070											
071											
072											
073											
074											

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
191	凱	害	崖	劾	外	該	劃	確	学	鰍	褐
192	蓋	蛎	殻	隔	橿	滑	株	萱	瓦	堪	憾
193	貝	碍	柿	核	閣	樫	渇	鞄	茅	苅	喚
194	階	涯	垣	格	郭	笠	活	樺	栢	刈	巻
195	開	概	蛙	撹	較	掛	括	椛	鴨	粥	勧
196	蟹	慨	馨	介	械	海	絵	額	顔	願	願
197	企	希	岐	葉	気	貴	妓	犠	橘	丘	朽
198	汽	起	宜	誼	詰	砧	仇	汲	旧	許	許
199	紀	鬼	犠	吉	客	宮	究	巨	禦		
200											
201	基	旗									
202											
203											
204											
205											
206											
207											
207	器	機	稀	騎	欺	鞠	却	吸	球	居	漁
208	喜	揮	季	飢	擬	菊	黍	及	灸	去	鋸
209	危	忌	祈	輝	林	汰	泣	牛	距		
210	幾	軌	戯	議	砧	仇	汲	旧	許		
211	寄	棋	毅	記	儀	義	桔	逆	救	級	挙
212	嬉	期	帰	規	偽	祇	喫	虐	急	笈	拠
213	既	機	徽	亀	疑	吃	脚	弓	窮	拒	魚
214	奇	徽	亀	疑	吃	脚	弓	窮	拒	魚	供
215	究	巨	禦								
216	共	強	狭	驚	桐	琴	近	謹			
217	競	狭	驚	桐	琴	近	謹				
218	凶	叫	教	郷	局	錦	菌				
219	胸	凶	叫	教	郷	局	錦	菌			
220	匡	恭	興	暁	均	緊					
221	協	恐	脅	尭	勤	筋	銀				
222	凝	僅	仰	杯	禁	金					
223	僅	凝	仰	杯	禁	金					
224	局	錦	曲	斤	衿						
225	業	巾	芹								
226											
226	九	駈	隅								
227	矩	空	苦	偶	窪	薫					
228	駆	寓									
229	躯	寓	熊	訓							
230	隈	群									
231	桑	軍									
232											
232	圭	掲	継	頚	桁	件	嫌				
233	啓	憩	経	軽	隙	月	堅				
234	絹	頸	玄								
235	古	枯									
236	呼	湖									
237	固	狐									
238	県	験	現								
239											
240											
241											
242											
243											
243	個	故									
244	孤	己	庫	弧							

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
191	崖	涯	劾	害	凱	劾	外	該	劃	確	学
192	鰹	鎌	咳	鎧	各	覚	楽	割	且	釜	寒
193	鎌	嚇	岳	潟	轄	蒲	冠	官	甘	監	莞
194	韓	瞰	眼	頑	顔	願	企	伎	危	喜	揮
195	希	岐	幾	忌	揮	机	旗	棄	気	貴	妓
196	義	疑	祇	儀	技	掬	杵	林	汰	泣	牛
197	距	魚	胸	凝	僅	源	吟	緊	金	禁	近
198	謹	欽	琴	玉	極	欣	襟	均	筋	勤	銀
199	苦	偶	窪	薫	熊	訓	勲	君	群	隈	桑
200	軍	郡									
201	傾	恵	畦	詣	戟	結	剣	献	遣	弦	
202	刑	慶	稽	詣	撃	血	喧	研	鍵	減	
203	兄	慧	系	警	激	決	圏	険	源		
204	係	径	渓	蛍	劇	穴	券	捲			
205	祁	形	桂	刑	鯨	訣	圏	険	源		
206	卦	型	敬	罫	芸	欠	倦	憲	検	見	元
207	袈	契	景	茎	迎	決	健	懸	権	謙	原
207	犬	軒	幻	限							
208	拳	賢	厳	諺							
209	言										
210	汽	起	宜	妓	犠	橘	丘	朽	糾	渠	京
211	紀	鬼	犠	吉	客	宮	究	巨	禦		
212	競	狭	驚	桐	琴	近	謹				
213	凶	叫	教	郷	局	錦	菌				
214	胸	凶	叫	教	郷	局	錦	菌			
215	匡	恭	興	暁	均	緊					
216	協	恐	脅	尭	勤	筋	銀				
217	凝	僅	仰	杯	禁	金					
218	僅	凝	仰	杯	禁	金					
219	局	錦	曲	斤	衿						
220	局	錦	曲	斤	衿						
221	業	巾	芹								
222	業	巾	芹								
223											
224											
225											
226											
226											
227	九	駈	隅								
228	矩	空	苦	偶	窪	薫					
229	駆	寓									
230	躯	寓	熊	訓							
231	隈	群									
232	桑	軍									
232	圭	掲	継	頚	桁	件	嫌				
233	啓	憩	経	軽	隙	月	堅				
234	絹	頸	玄								
235	古	枯									
236	呼	湖									
237	固	狐									
238	県	験	現								
239											
240											
241											
242											
243											
243	個	故									
244	孤	己	庫	弧							

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	菰	伍	瑚	侯	向	垢	庚	晃	溝	耕
246	股	五	櫓	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
247	股	五	格	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
248	袴	鼓	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	洪	紘
249	虎	午	暮	候	好	康	更	甲	考	貢
250	糊	顧	御	乞	効	巧	拘	江	紅	航
251	胡	互	檎	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
252	股	五	格	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
253	袴	鼓	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	洪	紘
254	虎	午	暮	候	好	康	更	甲	考	貢
255	糊	顧	御	乞	効	巧	拘	江	紅	航
256	胡	互	檎	佼	口	坑	広	昂	港	綱
257	股	五	格	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
258	袴	鼓	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	洪	紘
259	虎	午	暮	候	好	康	更	甲	考	貢
260	糊	顧	御	乞	効	巧	拘	江	紅	航
261	股	五	格	交	厚	喉	幸	攻	浩	絞
261										些
262	佐	左	座	彩	砦	材	崎	柵	刷	擦
263	詐	哉	災	載	塀	昨	鮭			
264										
265										
266										
267										
268										
269										
270										
271										
272										
273										
273										仕
274										士
275										士
276										四
277										四
278										四
279										四
280										四
281										四
282										四
283										四
284										四
285										四
286										四
287										四
288										四
289										四
290										四
291										四
292										四
293										四
294										四
295										四
296										四
297										四
298										四
299										四
300										四
301										四
302										四
303										四
304										四
305										四
306										四
307										四
308										四
309										四
310										四
311										四
312										四
313										四
314										四
315										四

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
315									筒	諏
316									帥	錐
317									師	錐
318										
319										
320										
320										世
321										性
322										性
323										性
324										性
325										性
326										
327										性
328										性
329										性
330										
331										性
332										性
332										曾
333										曾
334										曾
335										曾
336										曾
337										曾
338										曾
339										曾
340										曾
341										曾
342										曾
343										他
344										他
345										他
346										他
347										他
348										他
349										他
350										他
351										他
352										他
353										他
354										他
354										他
355										他
356										他
357										他
358										他
359										他
360										他
361										他
362										他
363										他
363										他
364										他
365										他
366										他
366										他
367										他
368										他
369										他
370										他
371										他
372										他
373										他
373										他
374										他
375										他
376										他

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377										諏
378									筒	推
379									帥	錐
380										
381										
382										
383										
384										
385										制
386										凄
386										凄
387										凄
388										凄
389										凄
390										凄
390										凄
391										凄
392										凄
393										凄
393										凄
394										凄
395										凄
396										凄
397										凄
398										凄
399										凄
400										凄
401										凄
402										凄
403										凄
404										凄
405										凄
405										凄
406										凄
407										凄
408										凄
409										凄
410										凄
411										凄
412										凄
413										凄
414										凄
415										凄
416										凄
417										凄
418										凄
419										凄
420										凄
421										凄
422										凄
422										凄
423										凄
424										凄
425										凄
426										凄
426										凄
427										凄
428										凄
429										凄
430										凄
431										凄
432										凄
433										凄
434										凄
435										凄
436										凄

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377										棟
378										等
379										
380										透
381										導
382										峠
383										毒
384										苫
385										遁
386										
						な				
386										薙
387										楠
388										
						に				
388										肉
389										
390										
						ぬ				
						ね				
						の				
390										禰
391										燃
392										能
393										
						は				
393										杷
394										廃
395										配
396										賠
397										拍
398										漠
399										肌
400										罰
401										判
402										版
403										煩
404										
405										
						ひ				
405										匪
406										斐
407										被
408										微
409										菱
410										紐
411										表
412										蛭
413										頻
414										
						ふ				
415										布
416										腐
417										撫
418										踏
419										仏
420										奮
421										
422										
						へ				
422										塀
423										頁
424										変
425										弁
426										遍
						ほ				
426										輔
427										補
428										菩
429										募
430										墓
431										慕
432										暮
433										簿
434										倣
435										包
436										俸

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
						ま				
436			摩			磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437			槙			幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438			又			抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439			満							
440										
						み				
440					味	未	魅	岬		密
441					稔	脈	妙	箕	民	眠
						む				
441										務
442					矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘
						め				
442										冥
443						迷	面		牝	滅
444						銘	麺			
						も				
444										妄
445								模	茂	黙
446						盲	網	儲	木	問
447						餅	尤	貰	問	
						や				
447								摸	耗	
448								蒙	蒋	
449						冶	盟	籾		弥
450						薬	面		野	薮
451						約	綿		柳	
452						役	麺			
						厄				
						訳				
						夜				
						ゆ				
449										幽
450									宥	由
451									友	夕
452									猶	
									融	
						よ				
452										予
453									容	庸
454									熔	用
455									遥	陽
456									淀	
						ら				
456										羅
457									落	酪
458										
						り				
458										吏
459						璃				
460						里	理		率	立
461						流	裡		硫	粒
462						慮	梨		亮	僚
463						梁	裏		瞭	稜
464						量	略		鱗	鱗
465						琳	寮			
						る				
466						類	涙		冷	励
467						苓	玲		霊	麗
468						劣	歴		恋	鱗
469						聯	連			
470							錬			
						ろ				
470							呂			路
471							弄		賂	漏
472							聾		浪	禄
473							老		麗	
							籠			
							論			
						わ				
473										惑
474									脇	湾
475									惑	
476									枠	
477									腕	
478										
479										
480										乂
481										亞
482										仆
483										伽
484										佃
485										佛
486										佰
487										俛

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
488	偃			偕	修				偬	偸
489	傀			傴	傲				惚	
490				傳	僂				僣	
491				僵	僉				僥	
492				儼	僉				僵	
493				兪	僊				僕	
494				冕	僣				僻	
495				冲	凛				僚	
496				刮	剖				僧	
497				剳	剴				僭	
498				劑	劭				僮	
499				劬	匏				僊	
500				勲	匕				僵	
501				匙	匸				僻	
502				匝	匱				儀	
503				厖	匳				儂	
504				厠	匸				儖	
505				叭	叮				冏	
506				吻	叺				冂	
507				呟	吸				吶	
508				咒	呻				咫	
509				哇	咢				哮	
510				唔	哽				唏	
511				喟	唄				啜	
512				嗅	唆				啗	
513				嗄	喨				喙	
514				嗾	噛				喨	
515				噴	噤				喫	
516				嚊	噛				喰	
517				嚔	噤				噎	
518				圀	噸				噤	
519				圜	噴				噸	
520				圦	圍				噺	
521				垉	圓				噸	
522				垰	垣				噴	
523				埆	垉				噫	
524				埴	垰				噤	
525				堊	埴				噸	
526				墟	堊				噴	
527				壜	墟				噸	
528				壻	壜				噴	
529				夾	壻				噸	
530				奢	夾				噴	
531				奠	奢				噸	
532				妤	奠				噴	
533				娃	妤				噸	
534				嬉	娃				噴	
535				嬬	嬉				噸	
536				孱	嬬				噴	
537				孺	孱				噸	
538				寃	孺				噴	
539				尹	寃				噸	
540				岑	尹				噴	
541				峇	岑				噸	
542				崗	峇				噴	
543				嵌	崗				噸	
544				巉	嵌				噴	
545				巖	巉				噸	
546				巓	巖				噴	
547				巒	巓				噸	
548				幣	巒				噴	
549				幟	幣				噸	
550				廁	幟				噴	
551					廁				噸	
552					廐				噴	
553					廐				噸	
554					廐				噴	
555					廐				噸	
556					廐				噴	
557					廐				噸	
558					廐				噴	
559					廐				噸	
560					廐				噴	
561					廐				噸	
562					廐				噴	
563					廐				噸	

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
564	愴			愷	慳				慥	慫
565	慴			慵	慽				憮	慓
566	憑			憺	憫				憚	憊
567	憖			懆	懋				懃	懣
568	戞			戮	戡				戛	戈
569										
570				戦	扼	戯	扛		戟	扎
571				抓	扮	抔	拇		扱	抒
572				抻	抔	拇	抛		抑	抉
573				挌	拶	挿	捐		挈	拏
574				捫	捌	掖	掫		掎	掬
575				揩	揀	揣	揉		揆	揄
576				摑	摎	撓	撕		撙	撞
577				擘	擯	擣	擡		擢	撰
578				攅	攘	攜	攝		攬	撕
579				曩	曙	曚	曖		曠	曝
580				朦	朧	杼	杪		杷	杳
581				柩	柧	柮	柤		柘	柵
582				梹	梱	梠	梛		梃	梧
583				椌	椏	椄	椁		椈	椋
584				楹	楡	楫	楙		楊	楓
585				槞	槧	槫	槍		槎	槐
586				樒	樗	樔	樅		樊	樂
587				橸	橲	橡	橙		橦	橘
588				檠	檑	檄	檎		檗	檜
589				櫁	櫂	櫑	櫛		櫚	櫓
590				欟	欝	欧	欣		欠	曰
591				殀	殄	殃	殆		殉	死
592				毟	毬	毫	毳		毯	毟
593				沓	沫	沍	沖		沚	沓
594				洫	洟	洒	洌		洋	洩
595				浜	浣	浤	浪		浦	浚
596				涜	涕	涓	涌		涅	涛
597				淇	淡	淙	淞		淑	淋
598				渥	渦	渕	渚		減	渓
599				湧	湫	湘	湛		湊	湯
600				漑	漕	漣	漫		漁	漂
601				潅	潔	潜	潟		潤	潦
602				澆	澗	澤	澱		澑	澎
603				濆	濠	濘	濛		濟	濡
604				瀉	瀋	瀑	瀕		瀆	瀏
605				灑	灘	灣	灼		炙	炒
606				烱	烽	焜	焙		煬	煖
607				煕	煢	煤	煙		煩	煌
608				熔	熨	熙	熊		熄	熕
609				燦	燗	燔	燐		燒	燉
610				檳	檸	檬	檪		檜	檐
611				櫁	櫑	櫚	櫛		櫓	櫟
612				欟	欸	欵	欲		欧	歿
613				歎	歩	歳	歴		歸	歯
614				殀	殞	殄	殃		殆	殉
615				毬	毫	毳	毯		毟	毫
616				岌	屹	岨	岷		峪	峭
617				汕	汲	汳	沙		沚	沢
618				峭	崙	崚	崗		崘	崛
619				嶂	嶄	嶺	嶋		嶌	嶇
620				巍	嶼	嶷	嶽		嶸	嶺
621				幃	幀	帙	帖		帑	帛
622				庠	庵	廂	廁		廈	廊
623				弭	弯	弱	弧		弓	弔
624				彗	彙	彝	彜		彖	彗
625				徨	徧	徭	徳		徴	徹
626				忝	忻	忸	忰		忙	忖
627				悽	悴	悸	悼		悩	悋
628				惴	惶	惺	惴		惚	惜
629				愾	愼	慄	慌		慊	慇
630				憖	憐	憫	憬		憤	憧
631				懐	懊	懈	懌		懍	懐
632				戻	戸	戯	戦		戮	戴
633				抃	抄	把	抒		抗	抓
634				拭	拮	拱	拵		拶	拾
635				挨	挫	振	挽		挺	挿
636				掠	掣	掩	掘		掛	掉
637				摂	摘	摧	摩		摯	摸
638				撓	撒	撩	撥		撫	撲
639				擒	擔	擦	擧		擬	擯

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640	爛	林	犖	猝	猾	玻	琳	瑣	瓩	瓲
641	爲	犁	犒	狒	獪	珮	琺	瑰	瓮	瓸
642	爝	犂	狄	狽	獏	珱	琵	瑳	瓰	瓹
643	爨	犇	狽	猁	獗	珵	琶	瑾	瓱	瓺
644	爪	犠	狼	猴	獨	珀	琉	瑪	瓶	瓼
645	爭	犢	狹	猩	獣	琉	瑠	瑶	瓸	瓽
646	爰	犧	狡	猫	獰	琅	瑯	瑩	瓷	瓾
647	爲	犬	狢	猪	獲	琇	瑕	瑰	瓸	甀
648	爵	犯	狩	猯	獵	琦	瑁	瑣	瓲	甁
649	父	犲	狙	猷	獺	琥	瑤	瑳	瓵	甂
650	爻	犴	狗	猿	獾	琢	瑜	瑕	瓷	甃
651	爼	犹	狐	獄	玁	琮	瑛	瑾	瓻	甄
652	爿	犾	狒	獅	玆	琲	瑟	瑙	瓼	甅
653	牀	犿	狗	猾	玄	琳	瑚	瑟	瓽	甆
654	牆	狀	狙	猶	率	琴	瑞	瑠	瓾	甇
655	牋	狂	狐	猷	玉	琵	瑠	瑤	甀	甈
656	牒	狄	狒	猿	王	琶	瑣	瑳	甁	甉
657	牘	狎	狗	獏	玊	琺	瑙	瑾	甂	甊
658	犀	狐	狙	獗	玩	琴	瑚	瑶	甃	甋
659	犁	狒	狷	獣	玲	琵	瑛	瑳	甄	甌
660	犂	狗	狸	獰	珍	琺	瑜	瑾	甅	甍
661	犇	狙	狷	獲	珠	琳	瑞	瑙	甆	甎
662	犠	狐	狽	獺	珥	琲	瑟	瑚	甇	甏
663	犢	狒	猁	玁	珪	琴	瑠	瑶	甈	甑
664	犧	狗	猯	玆	珮	琵	瑛	瑙	甉	甒
665	犬	狙	猷	率	珱	琺	瑜	瑚	甊	甓
666	犯	狷	猿	玉	珵	琳	瑞	瑟	甋	甔
667	狀	狸	獄	王	珀	琲	瑟	瑠	甌	甕
668	狂	狽	獅	玊	琉	琴	瑠	瑶	甍	甖
669	狎	猁	獗	玩	琅	琵	瑛	瑙	甎	甗
670	狗	猯	獲	玲	琦	琺	瑜	瑚	甏	甘
671	狙	猷	獺	珍	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	甑	甙
672	狷	猿	玁	珠	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	甒	甚
673	狽	獄	玆	珥	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甓	甜
674	猁	獅	玊	珪	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甔	生
675	猯	獗	玩	琉	琲	琺	瑜	瑚	甕	甥
676	猷	獲	玲	琅	琴	琵	瑛	瑙	甖	甦
677	猿	獺	珍	琦	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甗	用
678	獄	玁	珠	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	瑠	甘	甩
679	獅	玆	珥	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甙	甫
680	獗	玊	珪	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田
681	獲	玩	琉	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由
682	獺	玲	琅	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甦	用	甲
683	玁	珍	琦	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	申
684	玆	珠	琥	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男
685	玊	珥	琢	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	用	甸
686	玩	珪	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甹
687	玲	琅	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甼
688	珍	琦	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甲	甽
689	珠	琥	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾
690	珥	琢	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	用	甸	甿
691	珪	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甹	畀
692	琛	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甲	甽	畄
693	琅	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畆
694	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甹	畀	畉
695	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甲	甽	畄	畊
696	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畆	畋
697	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畆	畉	界
698	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	畍
699	瑟	生	由	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	畎
700	瑠	由	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畏
701	瑶	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畐
702	甚	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畑
703	甜	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畒
704	田	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畐	畓
705	甲	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畐	畑	畔
706	甽	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畕
707	畄	界	畍	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畖
708	畆	畍	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畗
709	畉	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畘
710	畊	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	留
711	畋	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畚
712	界	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	畛
713	畍	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畜
714	畎	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畚	畝
715	畏	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畚	畛	畞

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
716	舖	牀	犖	猝	猾	玻	琳	瑣	瓩	瓲
717	舘	牆	犒	狒	獪	珮	琺	瑰	瓮	瓸
718	舞	牋	犂	狄	獏	珱	琵	瑳	瓰	瓹
719	舟	牒	犁	狽	獗	珵	琶	瑾	瓱	瓺
720	舩	牘	犇	狽	獪	珱	琵	瑳	瓰	瓹
721	舫	犀	犠	狼	獨	珀	琉	瑪	瓶	瓼
722	舮	犁	犢	狹	獣	琉	瑠	瑶	瓸	瓽
723	舵	犂	犧	狡	獰	琅	瑯	瑩	瓷	瓾
724	舶	犇	犬	狢	獲	琇	瑕	瑰	瓸	甀
725	舷	犠	犯	狩	獺	琥	瑤	瑳	瓵	甁
726	舸	犢	狀	狙	玁	琢	瑜	瑕	瓷	甂
727	舳	犧	狂	狐	玆	琲	瑟	瑾	瓻	甃
728	舵	犬	狎	狒	玊	琺	瑜	瑰	瓼	甄
729	舶	犯	狗	狷	玩	琴	瑠	瑳	瓾	甅
730	舷	狀	狙	狐	玲	琵	瑛	瑾	瓽	甆
731	舸	狂	狐	狷	珍	琺	瑜	瑰	瓾	甇
732	舳	狎	狒	猁	珠	琳	瑞	瑟	瓸	甈
733	舵	狗	狷	猯	珥	琲	瑟	瑠	瓽	甉
734	舶	狙	狐	猷	珪	琴	瑠	瑶	瓾	甊
735	舷	狷	狽	猿	玉	琵	瑛	瑾	瓽	甋
736	舸	狐	狷	獄	王	琺	瑜	瑰	瓸	甌
737	舳	狷	狽	獅	玊	琉	瑠	瑳	瓵	甍
738	舵	狷	猁	獗	玩	琅	瑯	瑩	瓷	甖
739	舶	狷	猯	獲	玲	琦	琺	瑜	瑰	甗
740	舷	狷	猷	獺	珍	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	甘
741	舸	狷	猿	玁	珠	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	甙
742	舳	狷	獄	玆	珥	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚
743	舵	狷	獅	玊	珪	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甜
744	舶	狷	獗	玩	琉	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	田
745	舷	狷	獲	玲	琅	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甲
746	舸	狷	獺	珍	琦	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甽
747	舳	狷	玁	珠	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	瑠	甾
748	舵	狷	玆	珥	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	畀
749	舶	狷	玊	珪	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	畄
750	舷	狷	玩	琉	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	畆
751	舸	狷	玲	琅	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	畉
752	舳	狷	珍	琦	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畊
753	舵	狷	珠	琥	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	畋
754	舶	狷	珥	琢	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	界
755	舷	狷	珪	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畍
756	舸	狷	琉	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	畎
757	舳	狷	琅	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畏
758	舵	狷	琦	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	畐
759	舶	狷	琥	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	畑
760	舷	狷	琢	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	用	畒
761	舸	狷	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	畓
762	舳	狷	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甲	畔
763	舵	狷	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	畕
764	舶	狷	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畖
765	舷	狷	瑙	甥	生	由	男	甾	畆	畗
766	舸	狷	瑟	生	由	男	甾	畆	畉	畘
767	舳	狷	瑠	由	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	留
768	舵	狷	瑶	男	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	畚
769	舶	狷	甚	甾	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畛
770	舷	狷	甜	畆	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畜
771	舸	狷	田	畉	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畝
772	舳	狷	甲	畊	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畞
773	舵	狷	甽	畋	界	畍	畎	畏	畐	畟
774	舶	狷	甾	畍	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畠
775	舷	狷	畀	畎	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畡
776	舸	狷	畄	畏	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畢
777	舳	狷	畆	畐	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畣
778	舵	狷	畉	畑	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畤
779	舶	狷	畊	畒	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	略
780	舷	狷	畋	畓	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	畦
781	舸	狷	界	畔	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畧
782	舳	狷	畍	畕	畖	畗	畘	留	畚	畨
783	舵	狷	畎	畖	畗	畘	留	畚	畛	畩
784	舶	狷	畏	畗	畘	留	畚	畛	畜	畫
785	舷	狷	畐	畘	留	畚	畛	畜	畝	畭
786	舸	狷	畑	留	畚	畛	畜	畝	畞	畮
787	舳	狷	畒	畚	畛	畜	畝	畞	畟	畯
788	舵	狷	畓	畛	畜	畝	畞	畟	畠	畱
789	舶	狷	畔	畜	畝	畞	畟	畠	畡	畳
790	舷	狷	畕	畝	畞	畟	畠	畡	畢	畵
791	舸	狷	畖	畞	畟	畠	畡	畢	畣	畸

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
792	艦	牽	犖	猝	猾	玻	琳	瑣	瓩	瓲
793	艪	牾	犒	狒	獪	珮	琺	瑰	瓮	瓸
794	艫	牿	犂	狄	獏	珱	琵	瑳	瓰	瓹
795	艮	牴	犁	狽	獗	珵	琶	瑾	瓱	瓺
796	良	牽	犇	狽	獪	珱	琵	瑳	瓰	瓹
797	艱	牲	犠	狼	獨	珀	琉	瑪	瓶	瓼
798	艸	牡	犢	狹	獣	琉	瑠	瑶	瓸	瓽
799	艾	牢	犧	狡	獰	琅	瑯	瑩	瓷	瓾
800	芍	牧	犬	狢	獲	琇	瑕	瑰	瓸	甀
801	芒	物	犯	狩	獺	琥	瑤	瑳	瓵	甁
802	芋	牲	狀	狙	玁	琢	瑜	瑕	瓷	甂
803	芙	牴	狂	狐	玆	琲	瑟	瑾	瓻	甃
804	苺	牽	狎	狒	玊	琺	瑜	瑰	瓼	甄
805	芫	牲	狗	狷	玩	琴	瑠	瑳	瓾	甅
806	苑	牡	狙	狐	玲	琵	瑛	瑾	瓽	甆
807	苓	牢	狐	狷	珍	琺	瑜	瑰	瓾	甇
808	苔	牧	狷	狽	珠	琳	瑞	瑟	瓸	甈
809	苗	物	狽	猁	珥	琲	瑟	瑠	瓽	甉
810	苛	牲	狗	猯	珪	琴	瑠	瑶	瓾	甊
811	苣	牡	狷	猷	玉	琵	瑛	瑾	瓽	甋
812	苒	牢	狐	猿	王	琺	瑜	瑰	瓸	甌
813	苗	牧	狷	獄	玊	琉	瑠	瑳	瓵	甍
814	苛	物	狽	獅	玩	琅	瑯	瑩	瓷	甖
815	苣	牲	猁	獗	玲	琦	琺	瑜	瑰	甗
816	苒	牡	猯	獲	珍	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	甘
817	苗	牢	猷	獺	珠	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	甙
818	苛	牧	猿	玁	珥	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚
819	苣	物	獄	玆	珪	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甜
820	苒	牲	獅	玊	琉	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	田
821	苗	牡	獗	玩	琅	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甲
822	苛	牢	獲	玲	琦	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甽
823	苣	牧	獺	珍	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	瑠	甾
824	苒	牲	玁	珠	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	畀
825	苗	牡	玆	珥	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	畄
826	苛	牢	玊	珪	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	畆
827	苣	牧	玩	琉	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	畉
828	苒	牲	玲	琅	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畊
829	苗	牡	珍	琦	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	畋
830	苛	牢	珠	琥	琳	瑞	瑟	瑠	瑶	界
831	苣	牧	珥	琢	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	畍
832	苒	牲	珪	琮	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畎
833	苗	牡	琉	琛	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	畏
834	苛	牢	琅	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	畐
835	苣	牧	琦	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	畑
836	苒	牲	琥	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	畒
837	苗	牡	琢	琺	瑜	瑚	瑟	甦	用	畓
838	苛	牢	琲	瑟	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	畔
839	苣	牧	琴	瑠	瑶	甚	甜	田	甲	畕
840	苒	牲	琵	瑛	瑙	甥	生	由	男	畖

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Current communication status \ Communication newly started	Make/Receive a voice call	Make/Receive a video-phone call	Use i-mode	Use i-αppli	Send/Receive i-mode mail	Packet communication via PC	64K data communication	Send/Receive SMS
During a voice call	×*1*5	×*5	○	×	○	○	×*5	○
During a video-phone call	×*5	×*5	×	×	×*4	×	×*5	△*2
During i-mode	○	△*3	—	—	○	×	×	○
During packet data communication	○	×	×	△*6	×	—	×	○
During 64K data communication	×*5	×*5	×	×	×	×	×*5	○

○: Can be activated.
×: Cannot be activated.
△: Can be activated depending on situation.
—: Functionally incompatible.
*1 : If you have subscribed to a network service such as the "Call waiting" service, multi access is available depending on combination. Voice calls can be made.
*2 : SMS cannot be sent.
*3 : Video-phone calls cannot be received.
*4 : During video-phone calls, i-mode mail and Message Request/Free are not received, and are stored in the i-mode center instead. You can receive those stored i-mode mail and Message Request/Free by "Check new message" after the video-phone call ends.
*5 : You can change to a communication newly started after ending the current communication status.
*6 : The i-αppli which needs communication cannot be activated.

Multi Task Combination Patterns

Current status \ Function to use	Mail	i-mode menu	i-αppli	Settings	Data box	Tools	Network service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
During starting Mail group	○*1	○	○	○*2	○	○*4	○	○*9	○	○
During starting i-mode group	○	×	×	○*2	○	○*4	○	○*9	○	○
During starting settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○*4	×	○*9	○	○
During starting Tool group	○	○	○	○*2	×	×	○	×	×	○
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	×	×	×*5	×	×	×	×
During a voice call	○	○	×	×*3	×	×*6	○*8	○*9	○*10	○
During packet communication via PC	○	○	○	○*2	○	○*4	○	○*9	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×*3	×	×*7	○*8	○*9	○*10	○

○: Can be activated.
×: Cannot be activated.
*1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" are unavailable simultaneously.
*2 : Unavailable depending on a function.
*3 : Only "Set time", "Keypad sound" and "Pause dial" are available.
*4 : "Voice announce", "Ir exchange", "UIM operation" and "SD-PIM" are unavailable.
*5 : Only "Voice memo (during a call)" is available.
*6 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".

*7 : Only “Camera”, “Schedule”, “ToDo”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Access reader”, “Bar code reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” and “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. Only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.
*8 : “Voice mail” cannot be played. “Voice mail” and “Additional service” cannot be set for special numbers (P. 477).
*9 : “Restrictions” is unavailable.
*10: “Common phrases”, “Own dictionary” and “DL dictionary” are unavailable.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Service		Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)		(No area code) 106
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (Paid-service) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (Paid-service)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (Paid-service)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (Paid-service)		Area code of an area you want to know + 177
Emergency call to the police		(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance		(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents		(No area code) 118
Emergency message dialing (paid)		(No area code) 171

Note

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)) as of December, 2004.
- When you use the Directory Information Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 116 from a general phone.(As of December, 2004)
- You cannot specify the location from which you are calling when you dial 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal. Because you may be asked to receive a confirmation call from the relevant service (police, fire service, etc.), state that you are calling from a mobile phone and provide your current location. Also, to prevent the call from dropping out before it is completed, stand still while talking. Do not turn the FOMA terminal off immediately after making the call, but leave it turned on for at least 10 minutes so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, there is a possibility that you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you are using a “Call forwarding” or “Voice Warp” service from a mobile phone and a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of an ordinary phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, outside the service area or turned off.
- Note that you cannot use services such as 116 (NTT Sales), Dial Q2, Message Dial or Credit Call. (Automatic credit calls can be made to the FOMA terminal from an ordinary phone or payphone.)

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available depending on the area you are in. For more information, contact a DoCoMo service counter or a retail outlet. For details of an option or accessory, refer to User’s Manual.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/P002*
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB connection cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N06
- Battery Pack N08
- Back Cover N05
- In-Car Holder N05
- Carry Case N06
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use

*: To connect to FOMA N901iC, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.

About Data Link Software

By using "FOMA N901iC Data Link Software", you can transfer data such as Phonebooks, schedule, mail, melodies, pictures (still images), movies and i-motions.
You can download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N901iC from the NEC Internet website:

・NEC "ワイワイもばいる"
http://www.n-keitai.com/

> Refer to the listed above homepage or help of the Data Link Software for the detailed description for downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restricted items.

(You cannot download it using the site function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use it for free of charge. You will be separately charged communication fees when downloaded.)

・Setting environment and note
A "FOMA USB Connection cable (optional)" is required to connect with a PC. You cannot use it for infrared exchange.
For the other operation environments and supported OS refer to the download page "ソフトウェアのご紹介".
Since the data link software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, refer to "Exchanging FOMA Terminal Data with a PC" (P. 423) as well.
You cannot transfer information downloaded using i-mode/i-αppli to anywhere other than the FOMA terminal even using the Data Link Software according to the Copy Right Laws. You cannot transfer data prohibited to be output outside the FOMA terminal, either.

■OS

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)
*: The listed above OS is installed to PC/AT compatible model.

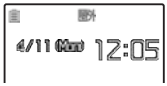
■Before using FOMA N series Data Link Software

・NEC Corporation ("this company") does not guarantee to users regarding licensed programs operation, intended purpose compatibility, compatibility or reliability regarding result of use, that this software is free from defects whatsoever. Any problems or difficulties arising with regard to the licensed programs are the responsibility of the customer and any costs will be borne by the customer.
・This company does not take any responsibility about the damage based on the reparations responsibility of having been made to the users from the damage (the case where our company foresees per damage generating, or it may foresee being included.) produced from a user's lost profits and the special situation, and the third person in any cases. Moreover, a user shall not perform any claim to our company, either.

Inquiries about Data Link Software
NEC (NEC Mobile Terminals Sales Promotion Division)
0120-102-001 (Japanese only)
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

Malfunction Checklist

Problem	Points to check	See page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used).	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery pack run out?	P. 38 P. 42
The animation similar to the one shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds.	● The battery pack has run out. Charge the battery pack. 	P. 40

Problem	Points to check	See page
The "  " icon appears and I hear a busy tone.	● Are you outside the service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception? 	P. 43
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys.	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Self mode? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	P. 150 P. 156 P. 152
I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone.	● Did you start dialing without waiting for the dial tone first? ● Did you dial the area code? ● Is the "  " icon displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	P. 48 P. 48 P. 43
I cannot receive calls. The FOMA terminal does not ring, but I see new records in Received calls.	● Are any of the following functions set? In Restrictions ・Call rejection ・Call acceptation ・Call forwarding ・Voice mail In Ringing time ・Set mute seconds ・Missed calls display Reject unknown In Call setting w/o ID ・Not supported: Reject ・Payphone: Reject ・User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Driving mode? ● Is All lock set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of voice mail or call forwarding service set to "0"? ● Is caller ID request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the dual network service? ● You may have set the Ring volume to "Silent".	P. 152 P. 155 P. 156 P. 154 P. 119 P. 67 P. 145 P. 156 P. 467 P. 473 P. 474 P. 65
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sound when a call comes.	● Is "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" set to longer time (such as 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	P. 155
The records of dialed calls/received calls, redial, received address /sent address disappear automatically.	● Is "Keypad dial lock" set? ● Is "PIM lock" set?	P. 150 P. 149
The Neuropointer does not move quickly.	● Adjust the slide setting.	P. 133
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when incoming call settings of each function are duplicated (① has the highest priority): ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities ② Ring tone for group utilities ③ Ring tone for select ring tone	P. 107 P. 114
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive mail.	● Priority is assigned as follows for call alert indicator operation when incoming call settings of each function are duplicated (① has the highest priority): ① Mail ring tone for phonebook utilities ② Mail ring tone for group utilities ③ Mail for select ring tone	P. 107 P. 114
A different image is displayed from what is set up when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows for image display when incoming call settings of each function are duplicated (① has the highest priority): ① Phonebook utilities image ② Group utilities image ③ Add to phonebook image ④ i-motion for select ring tone ⑤ Display setting The phonebook or group utilities' priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority): ① i-motion ring tone ② i-motion image ③ i-motion (video) or image	P. 93 P. 107 P. 122 P. 126

Problem	Points to check	See page
A different incoming call lamp by the color or flashing pattern from what is set up glows when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows when illumination settings of each function are duplicated (① has the highest priority): ① Illumination for phonebook utilities ② Illumination for group utilities ③ Illumination	P. 107 P. 134
The incoming display or ring tone is the default setting.	● Either an incoming display or ring tone may operate by setup at the time of a purchase depending upon the combination of an incoming display and ring tone, and the priority.	—
The ring tone I hear when I receive mail is not the tone I set for mail.	● If a distinctive mail ring tone is set for the mail address, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the group, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the mail address and the group, the ring tone set to the mail address is used instead. ● If you have received multiple mails and a distinctive ring tone was set for the last mail to be downloaded, the tone set for that mail address sounds. ● When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive ring tone set for the phone number in the Phonebook sounds.	P. 107 P. 93 P. 107
Characters are displayed instead of images or i-motions	● If one of the following is displayed the image or i-motion is one that cannot be selected by the function in use. Select an image or i-motion for which the following is not displayed. "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data". "No preview data" is also displayed for images other than 176 dots wide × 144 dots long or, 128 dots wide × 96 dots long, and only the audio may playback. ● If "ASF" is displayed, the preview display is not displayed but the image or i-motion can be played.	P. 345 P. 369 P. 369
When illumination flashes for incoming mail, the color is not the color I specified.	● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address that illumination flashes. ● If a distinctive mail illumination is set for the group, that illumination flashes. ● If distinctive mail illumination is set for the mail address and the group, the illumination set to the mail address flashes. ● If you received multiple e-mail messages, the FOMA terminal flashes with the illumination pattern set for the e-mail address of the last e-mail message received. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as the mail address and set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive illumination set for the phone number in the Phonebook flashes.	P. 107 P. 93 P. 107
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received.	● Is "Message notification" set? The mail ring tone sounds to notify that the number of voice mails increases 1 or more additional voice mails were recorded while you were outside the service area or the FOMA terminal was powered off, and then you come in the service area again or turn on the FOMA terminal.	P. 468
The FOMA terminal cannot be charged (The charge indicator does not turned on).	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socked or cigarette lighter socket? ● Is the adapter properly attached to the FOMA terminal? (If you are using the AC adapter, make sure that the AC adapter connector is firmly plugged into the FOMA terminal or desktop holder).	P. 38 P. 40 P. 41
The key does not sound when I press them (No key tome).	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?	P. 118 P. 119
I cannot answer voice call/video-phone calls using Any key answer.	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot answer video-phone calls using Any key answer.	P. 61

Problem	Points to check	See page
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	● Is the earpiece speaker placed properly against your ear? ● Is anything such as seal obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker during hands-free? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	P. 24 P. 65
The other party's voice is too high during calls.	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party clearly.	P. 65
The other party cannot hear me.	● Is anything obstructing the mouthpiece?	P. 24
The message "All lock" and the " " mark appear.	● Enter your security code, and then press ● to cancel All lock.	P. 147
I cannot operate the FOMA terminal using the side keys when it is folded.	● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	P. 150
I cannot check missed calls using when the FOMA terminal is folded.	● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? ● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	P. 69 P. 150
The date is displayed in Japanese.	● Is Japanese selected in "Select language"? ● Is Clock display set to "Japanese"?	P. 43 P. 43
The display is dim.	● Is the brightness setting of the display light set to "Level 1"?	P. 128
The display, indicator display and display light of the keypad do not turn on.	● Is Lighting of the display light set to "OFF"? ● Hold down 5 for 1 second or more to turn the display light on or off. Please note that the display light turns off when you hold down 5 for 1 second or more during operation such as creating a mail.	P. 128 P. 26
The motion of the screen during a video-phone call is not smooth.	● Is "Display screen size" of "Disp. setting V-phone" set to "Main display size"? Set it to "Real size".	P. 86
When I receive an incoming call immediately after turning on the power, the phone number is displayed but the name stored in the Phonebook is not.	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available during that time.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after PWR is held down for 1 second or more.	● When Phonebook, etc. has reached full capacity, data verification takes some time.	P. 106
The call does not finish even if I press PWR.	● This may happen when you perform operations using keys (0 to 9, * and #) according to the recorded announcement. In this case, press PWR again.	—
Nothing appears on the display and and are flashing.	● The FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode. Press any keys to cancel Power saver mode.	P. 128
No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens when a call comes.	● No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens until the set time has passed when you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the Phonebook or from a caller who does not notify its caller ID, if "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 second.	P. 155
The total call charges do not increase.	● Once the call charge limit is reached, the figure shown does not rise any further. Reset the totals.	P. 451
The total call charges do not increase.	● Once the call charge limit is reached, the figure shown does not rise any further. Reset the totals.	P. 451
When I receive SMS, the name stored in the Phonebook is not displayed.	● Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line ( ) of the Phonebook?	P. 93
Mails are not automatically sorted.	● If the other party's mail address is "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the telephone number only in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the other party's mail address is other than "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the complete address including the domain name in the Auto-sort settings to be automatically allocated.	P. 283
Mails are not automatically received.	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	P. 268
N901iC communication setting file (driver) is not installed or data communication is not available.	● If you have set USB mode setting to "miniSD mode", set it to "Communication mode".	P. 407
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-αppli cannot be used.	● If you have set the PIM lock, use the i-mode after canceling the PIM lock.	P. 149

Problem	Points to check	See page
i-mode, i-mode mail and i-αppli are not accessible.	● If you have not set “Host selection” to “i-mode”, set it to “i-mode” to use the i-mode. ● If you started subscribing to the i-mode Service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	P. 226 —
Even if mail has been received, no incoming call notification operation (incoming call ring time, vibrator, incoming call lamp) is performed.	● Haven’t you set “Mail/Msg. ring time” to “OFF”? ● Haven’t you done any operation when “Receiving display” is set to “Operation preferred”.	P. 119 P. 294
Sent mail does not remain in the Outbox.	● Haven’t you set “Sort all” to the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli and then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm it.	P. 283
Received mail does not remain in the Inbox and “ ” does not disappear.	● Doesn’t “ ” appear on the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli in the Inbox, or haven’t you set “Sort all” to the folder of a mail-connected i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αppli and then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm.	P. 276 P. 317
“Attached file deleted” displayed in mail	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you only receive the message body.	P. 241
Files attached to mail sent from a PC was deleted.	● Image files attached to mail sent from devices other than FOMA terminals can only be received if they are JPEG files no larger than 10,000 bytes in size.	—
When I take pictures with the built-in camera, the images are affected by flickering.	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. The flickering may be suppressed by adjusting the indoor lighting conditions or brightness or changing the “Image tuning” setting.	P. 180
Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera look too bright.	● You may take it in an open-air or well-lighted place with “Image tuning” set to “Mode 1 (50Hz)” or “Mode 2 (60Hz)”. Check the tuning and make sure it is reset to “Auto”.	P. 180
Still images or movies look blurred if shot with the built-in camera with the Rear camera.	● Turn Rear camera lens selector to the ● (standard lens) for a normal shot, or to the (macro lens) for a close-up.	P. 161
When I attempt to display an image, “ ” appears. When I attempt to play for demonstration or see a preview, “ ” appears.	● “ ” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed.	● It may occur if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
When I record using Chance capture, the recording time has decreased.	● When you record using Chance capture, the control data will be saved with the movie data. It may shorten the recordable time.	—

If Any Error Message Appears

● Numbers in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used by the i-mode Center as separators between transmitted errors.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
“Accept call Already set full” “Reject unknown Already set full” “Call forwarding Already set full” “Restrict dialing Already set full” “Voice mail Already set full”	● These messages are displayed if you attempt to add the setting to Phonebook when 20 items have already been set in the Phonebook. Perform the desired setting again after canceling the unnecessary Phonebook settings.	P. 152
“Activating keypad dial lock”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when keypad dial lock is set.	P. 150
“Activating mail security Cannot delete”	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-αppli, you cannot delete the mail-connected i-αppli. To delete the mail-connected i-αppli, deactivate the security.	P. 151
“Activating mail security Cannot download”	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-αppli, you cannot upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli. To upgrade the mail-connected i-αppli, deactivate the security.	P. 151
“Activating PIM lock”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when PIM lock is set.	P. 149

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"Activating record display OFF"	● Because "OFF" is selected in "Record display set", you cannot use "Received calls", "Redial/ Dialed calls", "Received address" or "Sent address". To access these records, select "ON" in "Record display set".	P. 151
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when "Restrict dialing" is set.	P. 152
"Activating self mode"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when self mode is set.	P. 156
"Already saved"	● This message appears when you attempt to save i-motion consecutively with the data acquisition screen.	—
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears if i-mode mail received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. Press ● to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press the "Cancel" key on the "Authentication" screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through. Press ● to return to the screen displayed before the message appeared.	—
"Calling now Cannot operate" "Talking now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you display the task menu during a call and select an unavailable function. ● This message is displayed when operation of a function that cannot be performed during calls is attempted.	P. 432 P. 560 P. 431 P. 560
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file has reached 5000 full-pitch characters' worth.	P. 262
"Cannot save attached file"	● Displayed when you receive mail with an attached file that cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card using infrared communication, OBEX communication or importing from the miniSD memory card.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you "Import & add one" that has the same data and time as an existing schedule entry.	P. 401
"Cannot use network transmission"	● This message appears while downloading or starting up software when "Network set" is set to "OFF". Set the "Network set" to "Check" or "ON".	P. 321
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new message is set all OFF"	● "Check new message" cannot be made because "Set check new message" is set for "Do not check" for all. Set the item to check in "Set check new message".	P. 297
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" of Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection. ● When you made the video-phone call, the other party may have activated the Caller ID Request service. Set "Notify caller ID" to "ON" and try again.	P. 226 — P. 45
"Connection interrupted"	● The i-mode connection was lost due to poor reception. Move to a location with stronger reception to resume using i-mode. ● If this message appears when reception is strong and "Y" is indicated, the site you are trying to connect to is busy. Try connecting again later.	P. 202 —
"Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion"	● This message appears if the size of the streaming-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 2M bytes and obtaining is not possible.	P. 334
"Contents length exceeds replayable size for i-motion"	● This message appears if the size of the normal-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 500K bytes and obtaining is not possible. ● Displayed if the i-motion attached to the i-mode mail cannot be accepted because its size exceeds 500K bytes.	P. 334
"Could not read"	● Cannot import data due to some kind of error. Replace with a new miniSD memory card and import again.	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	● The address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum size and the New mail screen is displayed with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	● The total length of the message text, header, signature and quotation marks, etc. in the i-mode mail to be forwarded or quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the text so that the total length is 5,000 full-pitch characters or less.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
“Deleting data”	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select “OK” to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select “OK”.	P. 580
“Desktop icon is full”	● This message appears if you attempt to paste a new icon when there are already 15 icons pasted on the standby display. Delete desktop icons that you no longer need and retry pasting.	P. 136 P. 138
“Downloading interrupted” “Unable to download”	● Displayed if a communication error occurs or data contains an error when trying to download data such as a melody, Chara-den or DL dictionary.	—
“Draft mail is full”	● New mail and SMS cannot be composed because there are already 20 saved messages. Edit and send a saved message or delete some saved messages and try again.	P. 263
(During infrared exchange) “No response Retry?”	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared ports are aligned on the same level. Select “YES” and press ● to try again.	P. 413
“Editing now Cannot delete”	● This message appears if you attempt to delete a message that is in the Draft and being edited.	—
“Enter correct network security code”	● This message is displayed when an incorrect Network security code is entered for a function that requires the Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. Note that if you forget your Network security code, you must visit an NTT DOCOMO outlet with your FOMA terminal, your current UIM card and some form of identification (driver’s license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.	P. 142
“Error in image Does not work correctly”	● This message appears when the Flash image cannot be displayed due to an error found in the data.	—
“Failed to export all”	● Due to an error, the data could not be exported. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.	—
“Failed to export one”	● The attempt to export has failed for some reason. Retry exporting after exchanging for new miniSD memory card.	—
“Format miniSD for your phone”	● This miniSD memory card is abnormal such as an unformatted card. Format the miniSD memory card again.	P. 406
“Forwarding number is not set”	● This message is displayed when you have subscribed to the “call forwarding service” and try to forward an incoming call by selecting “Call forwarding” from the Function menu without setting the forwarding destination.	P. 477
“i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error” “Software terminated due to security error”	● The i-αppli or the i-αppli stand-by display (including the i-αppli DX) terminated because you attempted to execute unauthorized operation.	P. 323 P. 330
“iαppli To” function is not set”	● When trying to start the software from a site, mail, the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader or the IC card, it does not start because the specified software is not permitted to be interfaced.	P. 327
“Input error (205)”	● This message appears after you enter data on a site or Web page and send the data. Pressing ● resets the entered text (the setting or entry made is sent and this operation does not cancel sending).	P. 209
“Insert miniSD”	● The miniSD memory card may not be inserted in the FOMA terminal or may not be inserted correctly. Insert the miniSD memory card correctly.	P. 396
“Insert UIM”	● This message appears when UIM is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that UIM is correctly inserted.	P. 35
“Invalid address”	● The addresses contain a “,” or space and are invalid. Delete any “,” and space. ● The addresses of the received mail contain more than 50 half-pitch characters and not valid for send replies. ● SMS cannot be sent because the addresses contain a character other than numerals, “#” and “✱” and space. Delete excessive digits or any character other than “#” and “✱” and space.	—
“Invalid content Change i-motion type for replay”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain streaming-type i-motion when “i-motion type” is set to “Normal type”.	P. 337
“Invalid UIM auto start not possible”	● This message appears when you attempt automatic start of i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	P. 37

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
“Invalid UIM requested service not available”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, Message Request or Message Free protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	P. 37
“Invalid UIM requested software can’t start”	● This message appears when you specify i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	P. 37
“Invalid URL”	● This message is displayed when you enter the wrong URL or the wrong number of characters which exceeds the allowable number. ● This message appears if you select “OK” without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with “http://” or “https://”) when setting the Home URL in the “Home URL” setting or another URL. Enter a URL correctly.	P. 212 P. 225
“Memory full” “Data size is too big to save”	● The miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data in the miniSD memory card and export again.	P. 407
“Memory is full Cannot receive no more”	● Inbox is full and no more i-mode mail or SMS can be received. Delete or cancel protection for mail that you no longer need until “ ” (red) disappears and perform “Check new message” and “Check new SMS”.	P. 269 P. 312 P. 286
“Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite”	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook added as secret data when the Secret mode or Secret only mode is not set. ● This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook set to Automatic display. Press ● to return to the Phonebook edit screen. Select “ ”, and enter a vacant memory number to add it.	P. 147 P. 102
“Memory shortage Return and edit again”	● You can insert up to 10 images to Deco-mail. However, in some operations, this message may be displayed even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select “YES” and display the compose message display, and then re-edit the message.	—
“Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu”	● Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the i-mode menu.	—
“Memory shortage”	● The software program cannot be run due to memory shortage.	—
“Message too long to add header”	● The size of the text and header combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters’ worth and the header cannot be pasted. Delete some of the text so that the total length is 5,000 full-pitch characters or less.	—
“Message too long to add signature”	● The size of the text and signature combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters’ worth and the signature cannot be pasted. Delete some of the text so that the total length is 5,000 full-pitch characters or less.	—
“Movie is too big to attach Cannot compose”	● This message appears if the size of a movie shot with the built-in camera in the “Movie mode” has turned out to be too big to attach to i-mode mail when you select “Compose message” from the function menu.	P. 262
“No content is available (204)”	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the connected site, etc.	—
“No data”	● This message is displayed when there is no Phonebook that matches the search conditions when performing Phonebook search.	P. 93
“No further functions can be activated.”	● Press ⏻ and quit another function before proceeding.	—
“No requested Chara-den”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted Chara-den and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested i-motion”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted movie or i-motion and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested image”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted image and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested melody”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted melody and attempt to execute.	—
“No requested software”	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted i-αppli program and attempt to execute. ● Displayed if there is no corresponding software when the i-αppli is started from mail, the infrared exchange function, the bar code reader or the IC card.	—
“No response (408)”	● No response has been received from a site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
“Not correspond contents”	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents incompatible with the FOMA terminal.	—
“Operation may not run properly Cancel operation?”	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select “YES” to stop the operation. Select “NO” to continue with start up.	P. 580
“Operation may not run properly Canceling operation”	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select “OK” to stop the operation.	P. 580
“Operation may not run properly Delete data?”	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select “YES” to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select “OK”. Select “NO” to stop the operation.	P. 580
“Operation may not run properly”	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select “OK” to continue with start up.	P. 580
“Other function active Cannot operate”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation that is unavailable when another function is running.	—
“Out of service”	● This message appears when you try to use the i-mode Service outside the service area or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. ● Move to a location where “  ” appears on the display.	P. 202
“Page is not found (404)”	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
“Password is not correct (401)”	● This message appears when authentication did not go through on the “Authentication” or “Re-authentication” screen. To re-authenticate, select “YES”.	—
“Phonebook is full”	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add the 701st phone number or mail address to a FOMA terminal (main unit) Phonebook. Delete an unneeded phone number or mail address already stored in the Phonebook before adding the new one.	P. 103
“PIN1 code blocked”	● This message is displayed when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ● to display the PUK code entry screen. Then, enter the PUK code properly to cancel the lock.	P. 144
“Please set time to obtain data”	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain i-motion data with replay period restriction when the “Set time” setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting.	P. 44
“Please wait”	● Dialing is restricted. Try using voice-phone, video-phone or i-mode later.	—
“PUK code blocked”	● This message appears if you attempt to power on or perform operation related to UIM when PUK code is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo service counter.	P. 143
“Reading UIM Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform operation related to UIM while UIM is being read. Retry later.	—
“Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion”	● This message appears if the size of the streaming-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 2M bytes and obtaining has failed to be completed.	P. 334
“Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion”	● This message appears if the size of the normal-type i-motion you attempt to obtain exceeds 500K bytes and obtaining has failed to be completed. ● Displayed if the i-motion attached to the i-mode mail cannot be accepted because its size exceeds 500K bytes.	P. 334
“Replace with a new one or check the disk”	● Check the disk of the miniSD memory card.	P. 407
“Replay period has expired Cannot play”	● The i-motion cannot be replayed because the replay period is expired.	—
“Replay period has expired Delete?”	● Displayed when you try to play an i-motion after you have reached the limit on the number of plays or the valid playback period. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“Replay period has expired”	● This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with the replay period expired and attempt to execute.	—
“Replay period has not yet started”	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with a replay period set before the period.	—
“Requested software unavailable”	● Displayed if the specified software was not able to be started when trying to start the software with the Ir exchange function, the bar code reader, compact desktop, or IC card.	—
“Requested software unavailable”	● Displayed if the software was not able to be started when trying to start the software from a site or mail.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
“Root certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal is expired. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”. ● This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the “Set time” setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting. ● This message appears if you are asked to send a client certificate while connecting to a SSL-compatible site or an internet homepage.	P. 232 P. 44 P. 206
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when an SSL certificate with the “Certificate” setting set to “Invalid” is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	P. 232
“Secret data”	● This message is displayed when you try to search for a memory number specifying a secret data number during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode. ● This message is displayed when you try to dial secret data with two-touch dialing during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.	P. 147
“Service is not registered”	● You are not subscribed to i-mode. To use i-mode, you must first subscribe. ● If you subscribed to i-mode after purchasing, you must briefly turn the FOMA terminal off and then on again.	—
“Service is not registered”	● The i-mode service is not available because you do not subscribe to the service. Subscription is necessary to use the service.	—
“Service unavailable”	● This message is displayed if you perform network service operation when you are outside the service area or where radio waves cannot reach. Perform network service operation after moving to an area where “  ” is displayed.	—
“Set time”	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation requiring the “Set time” setting when the setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting before operation.	P. 44
“Size of this page is not supported”	● The data received from a site or Web page has exceeded the maximum size of one page. Reception is interrupted and the data obtained up to that point is displayed. ● This message appears when the maximum size has been exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den.	—
“SMS in UIM filled”	● The FOMA card is full and no more SMS can be stored on the card. To store SMS, delete unwanted SMS from the card until “  ” disappears.	P. 286
“Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder”	● Since the mail-connected i-αppli compatible with the selected mail folder is deleted, the software program cannot run. Refer to the mail of the folder from the function menu.	P. 283
“Software is stopped because of error”	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
“Software upgraded”	● The present software is updated and upgrading does not take place.	—
“Some addresses is invalid”	● This message appears if not all addresses are valid when you attempt to send reply i-mode mail to two or more addresses.	—
“Some attached file will be deleted”	● One or more file not permitted to attach to mail or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to the i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● to display the Edit mail screen with the file deleted.	—
“SSL session cannot be established”	● This message appears if connection to an SSL-compliant site or Web page was not established. Retry connection.	—
“SSL session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for an SSL connection.	—
“Syntax error (XXX)” “URL address is not valid”	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in XXX.	—
“Terminal and UIM ID will be sent”	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or Web page. Select “YES” to send your mobile phone production number. Otherwise, select “NO”.	P. 207
“The data may not be replayed”	● This message appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) has been obtained.	—
“This certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”. ● This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or Web page when the “Set time” setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting.	P. 232 P. 44
“This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the CN of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise select “NO”.	P. 232
“This data can no longer be replayed Delete?”	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with no replay count remaining. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	See page
"This data can no longer be replayed"	● This message appears if you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no replay count remaining and attempt to execute.	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an unsupported SSL certificate has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".	P. 232
"This software contains an error Unable to download"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software contains an error"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● The software you attempt to obtain is not supported by the terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● Displayed if a FOMA card that cannot be used on this FOMA terminal may be inserted. Please confirm that the right FOMA card is inserted.	P. 35
"Time out"	● Connection to a site, mail sending process, etc. is interrupted due to the connection timeout time set in "Set connection timeout" is up. Retry connecting to the site or sending the mail later.	P. 225
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered into the text box, as a URL, etc. and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	P. 209
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the data to be received exceeds the maximum size and cannot be received.	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	● This i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion replay restriction data contains an error.	—
"Unable to receive"	● Displayed if a communication error has occurred when trying to accept i-motion.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Unable to support this card"	● This miniSD memory card is not compatible with the FOMA terminal. Use an available miniSD memory card.	P. 396
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	P. 136 P. 213 P. 225
"URL is too long to add"	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be pasted and cannot be pasted onto a desktop icon or i-mode mail.	—
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	● This message appears when a wrong security code has been entered for a function requiring entry of the security code. Enter the correct security code. Note that if you forget your security code, you must visit an NTT DOCOMO outlet with your FOMA terminal, your current UIM card and some form of identification (driver's license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.	P. 142
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because no user certificate is downloaded.	P. 232
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because your user certificate has expired.	P. 232
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the DoCoMo CA certificate is set to be invalid. ● Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the CA certificate or the DoCoMo CA certificate has expired.	—

Note

● The sent information "FOMA terminal manufacturer number and UIM card ID number" is used by the IP (information service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.

● The sender's mobile phone information "FOMA terminal manufacturer number and UIM card ID number" is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. However, your phone number, address, age, and sex, are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider).

* The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. →P. 396

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the "name of the retailer, the date of purchase", and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card, and be sure to keep it in a safe place. If any necessary item on the warranty card is not completed, contact the shop where you purchased the FOMA terminal and request that they complete it. The warranty period is for one year from the date of purchase.
- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. Users are advised to make a note of data such as phonebook entries as a precautionary measure. Users with PCs (Windows 98, Me, 2000 or XP) can use the Data Link Software (P. 562) to back up stored data onto the PC. Note also that when repairs are performed on an FOMA terminal, information downloaded using i-mode or i-αpplis cannot all be transferred to a new FOMA terminal due to legal restrictions under copyright law.

After-sales service

If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Refer to the "Malfunction Checklist" section of this manual to see if the solution to your problem is discussed there before bringing your FOMA terminal in for repair.
If the FOMA terminal still malfunctions, please call and discuss the problem with the repair contact number on the back of this manual.

If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Bring your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to bring your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Please be sure to have the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges apply in the following cases even during the warranty period: no warranty is presented; failure and/or damage were due to incorrect handling.
- Charges apply even during the warranty period if the failure is due to the use of devices and/or consumables not specified by DoCoMo.

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired in the following cases:

The water exposure seal reacted; corrosion due to exposure to water, condensation or perspiration is found upon investigation; internal boards are damaged or deformed. Charges apply even if the phone can be repaired, as it is no longer under warranty.

After the warranty period has expired

Repair will be carried out upon request. Note that charge will apply for such work.

The stocking of replacement parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. Repairs to the FOMA terminal will be possible during this period. Repairs may still be possible after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact the phone numbers given above for more information.

IMPORTANT!

- Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - Doing so may result in fire, injury or malfunction.
  - The technical standards of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards are strictly controlled by law to avoid potential network malfunctions and cross talks. The use of the FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet these technical standards is not permitted.
  - If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repair may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
  - The user will be charged for the repair of any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications even during the warranty period.

IMPORTANT!

- Never peal off the seal or the model name plate attached to the FOMA terminal.
  The seal or plate functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the seal or the plate is removed or replaced, repair may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.
- Note that the information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as settings of various functions and the total call time, may be lost (reset) if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired or otherwise mishandled. If this happens, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a magnetic element in the following parts. Prevent a bankcard, etc. from being close to the earpiece speaker since it may be damaged. Location used: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal is get wet or become moist, you must immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, bring the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on its state.

Memory dial (Phonebook function) and Downloaded information

- Information you stored in your mobile phone should be kept separately in a notebook. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA terminal.
- In the course of repairs to or model change of your mobile phone, data, such as downloaded data, data created by the user or data imported from external sources, may be modified or lost. Furthermore, DoCoMo may conduct repairs that entail replacing your mobile phone with an equivalent product, in which event it is not possible to transfer such data in its entirety to the replacement product. DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever in the event of this.

<Software update>

Software Update

Check whether software in the FOMA terminal needs to be updated, and download the updated software by using i-mode if necessary.
If software update is required, we will notify the guidance in the DoCoMo's web page or "お知らせ&ヘルプ" (News & Help) in iMenu.

- The packet communication to update the software will not be charged.
- There are 2 ways to update software as follows:
  Now update : Perform update immediately as you want to update the software.
  Reserved update : Set the date and time you want to perform update, then the software will be downloaded and updated automatically on the specified date and time.
- You can also update the software if the i-mode destination is set as the user destination.
- Updating the software (downloading and installation) may take some time.
- When you update the software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand. (default setting: Valid. For information on setting procedure →P. 232)
- You must completely charge the battery pack before updating software.
- It is recommended that you update the software in a location with strong radio wave reception (the reception level indicator shows 3 bars) while stationary state.
  * If the signal quality deteriorates during software downloading and downloading is canceled, move to a location with better signal reception and update the software again.
- If "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON" and you run the software update, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed after automatically restarting. If you don't enter a correct PIN1 code, you cannot receive phone calls or mail.
- You cannot update software:
  - When FOMA card is not inserted
  - Incorrect usage of FOMA card
  - When PIN is locked
  - When PUK code is locked
  - When date and time is not set
  - While there is an incoming call
  - While receiving mail/SMS/message
  - During a call
  - During video-phone call
  - During i-mode connection
  - During 64K data communication
  - During packet communication
  - During all lock
  - When self mode is on
  - When PIM lock is on
  - Out of service area
  - When packet dialing is locked
  - While using mova with dual network service
  - When miniSD reader writer function works
  - While other functions are running
- You cannot use other functions while updating the software. However, you can receive voice calls during downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, "No update is needed Please continue to use as before" is displayed when you check for new software updates.

- After updating the software, the displayed i-mode center storage status icon disappears. Also, if the receive option is set to "ON" and mail is received while updating the software, the mail notification screen may not be displayed after the software has been updated.
- When you update the software, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, UIM ID, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than updating the software.
- You can update the software without affecting data such as that stored in the phonebook, camera images, and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state of your FOMA terminal you may not be able to protect data.
- We recommend that you back-up important data. (Note that there is some data, such as downloaded data, that cannot be backed up.)
- If the software download fails, "Cannot rewrite software" is displayed and you cannot operate the FOMA. If that happens, bring your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

Note

- You should not remove the battery pack while updating the software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon "  " (Update complete) on the standby display. Select "  " and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.

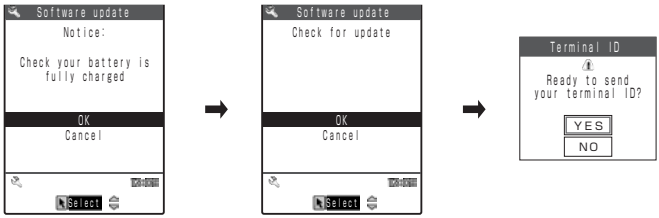
Checking whether you need software update

1 Select (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and then press ● ▶ Press ⊙ ▶ Press 1 ∞ "Other settings" ▶ Select "Software update" and then press ● ▶ Enter security code and then press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

2 Check the notices and whether you need to update the software.

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone must be sent to the server.



3 Displays the check result.



■ When the display is "Update is needed"

Select "Now update" or "Reserve".

Select "Now update" to update the software immediately. →P. 576

Select "Reserve" to update on a specified time. →P. 576



■ When the display says "No update is needed"

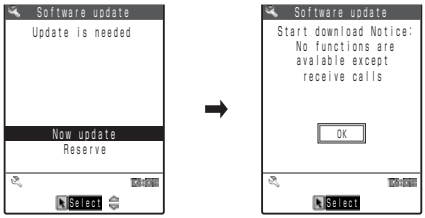
Press ●.

Continue using your FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

1 Select “Now update” in the check result display (P. 575). When you see “Start download Notice:”. Press ●.

Downloading will start immediately.
Download will begin after a while, even if you do not press ●.



2 When the download is complete, you will see the message “Download is complete Rewrite software”. Press ●.

The software will begin rewriting.
Rewrite will begin after a while, even if you do not press ●. It may take time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.
When the software is rewritten, the FOMA terminal will reload.
After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check the update has been completed.
When you see the message “Software update is complete” press ●.



Note

- If you stop downloading before the download is completed, the data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update begins automatically without having to select any items such as menu.
- The display on the right may be shown if the server is busy.
  In that case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.



Selecting the reservation data and time to update software <Reserved update>

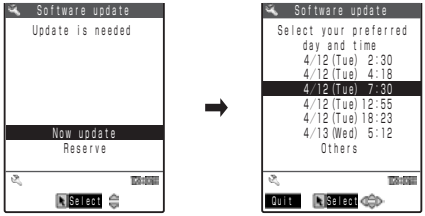
If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup Software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 on April 16 (Friday)>

1 Select “Reserve” at check result screen (P. 575) ▶ Press ● and select the timing.

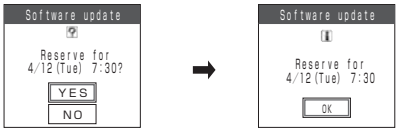
■ **If there is no time to wish**

See “If you select “Others”” →P. 577



2 Check the selected date and time ▶ Select “YES” and then press ●.

The date and time is set.



■ **If you want to change the date and/or time**

Select “NO” and then press ●.



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically. Charge the battery pack fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and show the standby display before the reservation time. The rest of operation is same as “Updating software immediately <Immediate update>” (P. 576).

Note

- The timing for the software updates will be based on the server's time.
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, the software update is given priority.
- Note that software updating may not start up at the scheduled time if another function is being used.
- Software updating does not start up at the scheduled time if you are on a call or receiving mail at the time.
- If you initialize the settings (P. 463) after the scheduled time, the software update does not start at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select “Others” at step 1 in P. 577.

1 Reserve a date and then press ●.



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:

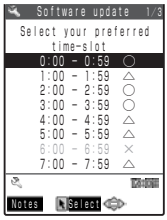
○: Open

△: Almost full

None: Full

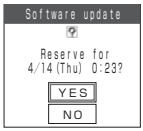
Continued on next page

2 Reserve a time zone and then press ●.



In the selection display, you will see the update availability represented as shown below:
○: Open
△: Almost full
×: Full
Select the period of time that you want to display the candidates for the reservation time by communicating with the server again.

3 Confirm the software update time.



If you check the selected time and select "YES" and then press ●, you will communicate with the server.
The software update is reserved.

Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

1 Press Menu ▶Select Settings and then press ● ▶Press ⊙ ▶Press 1 ▶"Other settings" ▶Select "Software update" and press ● ▶Enter security code and then press ●.

For information on security code →P. 142

2 Select "Cancel" and then press ●.

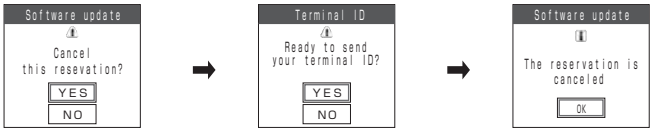


■ To accept the reservation date and time
Select "OK" and then press ●.

■ To change the reservation date and time
Select "Change" and then press ●.
Once information specific to your mobile phone has been sent to the server, follow the procedure used when "Others" is selected. →P. 577

3 When you see the message "Cancel this reservation?", select "YES" and then press ●.

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone is sent to the server.
Moreover, we will never disclose or forward your mobile phone information to a third party.
When you see the message "The reservation is canceled", press ●. The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode mail, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or the program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used to make the checks. Pattern data updates are made available as soon any new problems are discovered. Check for new updates regularly. →P. 579
- The Scan function provides constant protection against the introduction of harmful data that could cause faults or damage of some kind in your mobile phone while viewing websites or receiving e-mail. Note that this function may be unable to prevent harmful incursions of this type if the pattern data for the harmful data does not exist or has not been downloaded to your mobile phone.
- The content of pattern data differs according to the type of mobile phone. Note that DoCoMo policy is to discontinue the distribution of pattern data for mobile phone models 3 years after the model is first released.

Setting the scan function <Scan function>

Default setting	ON

When the Scan function is set to "ON", data and programs are automatically checked when they are executed.

1 **Press (Menu) ▶ Select Settings and press ● ▶ 7PQRS "Lock/Security" ▶ Select "Scanning function" and press ●.**

The "Scanning function display" appears.



Scanning function display

2 **Select "Scan function" and press ● ▶ Select "ON" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ●.**

■ **If a message appears asking whether to change the settings**

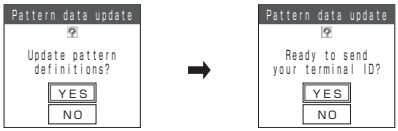
Select "YES" and press ●.

* If you enable the Scan function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed using one of 5 warning levels. →P. 580

Updating pattern data <Update pattern data>

In the Scanning function display... ➡ P. 579

1 **Select "Pattern data update" and press ● ▶ Select "YES" and press ● ▶ Press ●.**



* If no pattern data update is required, the "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" message appears. Continue using your current pattern data.

Note

- When you update the pattern data, information specific to your mobile phone (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (Scan function server managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use that information for any purpose other than software updating.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.

Scannable data and the scanning results

Displaying problems detected by scanning



A list of up to 5 problems detected by the Scan function is displayed, starting with the highest-level problem. If 6 or more problems were detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problems are omitted.
If 10,005 or more problems were detected, “Other: 9999” is displayed.

Results of scanning

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
A warning message is displayed.	A warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to cancel the operation.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the operation ends.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to delete the data.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the data is deleted.

Checking the Pattern Data Version <Definition version>

In the Scanning function display... ➡ P. 579

1 **Select “Definition version” and press ●.**

Index/Quick Manual

Index

Numerals

186(provide)/184(withhold) 53
3D Sound 116
64K data communication 482

A

About the display indications 1
AC adapter 40
Accessories 561
Additional services 477
Address list 292
Adjusting volume 65
After-sales service 573
Alarm 433
- Check 435
- Notification actions 433
- Stop 434

Alarm clock 435
Alarm setting 433
All lock 145
- Release 147
- Set 145

Anniversaries 437
Answer hold 66
Answer setting 61
Arrival call act 476
AT command 512
Attach melody 262
Attached file 294
Auto melody play 224, 294
Automatic answer 458
Automatic display 110
- αDisplay light 322
- αVibrator 322

B

Bar code reader 184
Battery level 42
Battery pack 38
Bookmark 213
- Access 214
- Add 213
- Delete 214, 215
- Edit title 215
- Folder 214
- No. of bookmarks 214, 215

C

Calculator 452
Calendar 125
Call acceptance 152
Call forwarding 470
Call rejection 152
Call response setting 67
Call setting w/o ID 154
Call time display 135
Call time/charge 451
Call waiting 469
Caller ID notification 45
Caller ID request service 473
Camera 160
- Access reader 188
- Auto timer 183
- Bar code reader 184
- Front camera 161
- Guide to the shooting display 164
- Lens selector switch 161
- Light 183
- Movie photography 163
- Rear camera 161
- Shooting movies 176
- Shooting still images 166
- Still photography 162
- Zoom 182

CD-ROM for FOMA N901iC 484
Certificate host 234
Change CHR code 205
Changing the Active Display 549
Changing the Display 122
Character size 224, 294
Chara-den 83, 384
- Action 385
- Controlling 385
- Delete 387
- Display 384
- Guide to the Chara-den list 385
- Memory info 386
- Record Chara-den 388
- Selecting multiple data items 410

Charge sound 118
Chat mail 299
- Chat group 304
- Chat members 300
- Composing chat mail 301
- Receive 303
- Specifying the Chat settings 306

Check messages 468
Check missed calls 69
Checkbox 34, 209
Clear learning record 548
Clock display 136
Component names and functions 24
Connect to Internet 212
Connection timeout 225
Continuous pictograph/symbol input 538
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 544

D

Data box 344
Data communication 482
Data Link Software 562
DC adapter 40
Deco-mail 254
Decorate V-phone 87
Desktop holder 41
Desktop icon 136
Desktop icons 136
- Add 136
- Check 138
- Notify 138
- Retrieve 137

Dialed calls 50
Dictionary 454
Disp. phonebook image 126
Disp. Software info 319
Display 27
Display design 129
Display home 205
Display icon explanation 30
Display light 128
Displaying SSL pages 206
Displaying still images 208, 345
- Add folder 409
- Delete 349, 359
- Delete folder 409
- Files that can be edited 348
- Guide to the picture list 346
- Memory info 350, 352, 353
- Move 349, 352

Original animation 361
Selecting multiple data items 410
Title list 346
Viewer settings 348
Download dictionary 548
DPOF setting 353, 361, 411
Driving mode 67
DTMF 80
Dual network service 474

E

Earphone 119
Earphone/microphone with switch 457
Edit image 364
Brightness 365
Change format for mail 355
Character stamps 367
Clipping area 357
Composite image 357
Frame 366
Marker stamps 366
Positioning 356
Resize 365
Retouch 365
Rotate 365
Trimming 368
Edit Movie 379
Edit ticker 381
Rerecord sound 381
Trim for image 380
Trim for mail 383
Trimming i-motion 380
Emoticons 537
English guidance 474
Enter PIN1 code 144
Entering Kuten Codes 546

F

FeliCa 340
FeliCa i-αpplis 341
Lock function 342
Using FeliCa 341
FirstPass 232
Fold setting 61
FOMA card 35
Add to UIM Phonebook 95
Operational restriction function 37
PIN codes 36
UIM operation 103
Versions 38
FOMA PC setting software 488
FOMA terminal security code 142
Change 142
Enter 34
FOMA USB connection cable 483
Font 135
Forwarding image 412
Frame 174
Front camera 161
Function menu 35

G

Group setting 97
Group utilities 107

H

Headers, signatures and quotation symbols 296
Holding 50
Holidays 437
Home URL 225

I

i-αppli 316
Auto start 326
Auto start info 327
Auto start set 326
Auto start time 326
Change mld./img. 321
Delete 331
Depend on software 322
Depend on system 322
Deselect i-αppli display 329
Download 317
i-αppli DX 316
i-αppli information 322
i-αppli stand-by display 329
i-αppli stand-by display exit data 330
i-αppli To function 327
Icon info 321
Launching 320
Mail-connected i-αpplis 317
Network set 321
Pre-installed software 324, 419
Security error history 323
See P.book/hist. 321
Set i-αppli To 327
Stand-by net 321
Stand-by set 329
Stored data 316
Trace information 320
Upgrade 330
Icons 27
Illumination 134
Illumination in talk 135
i-melody 219
iMenu 197, 203
i-mode 196
Add to Phonebook 210
Change i-mode password 211
Check settings 225
Exiting i-mode 203
Flash images 210
i-mode host 226
i-mode menu 202
i-mode password 142, 211
i-mode settings 224
Reset 225
Starting up i-mode 202
i-mode mail 238
Add folder 282
Add to phonebook 273
Adding addresses 249
Attach image 262
Attach melody 262
Automatic sorting 283
Broadcast mail 249
Change rcv. type 248
Changing the Mail List display mode 281
Changing the mail text size 280
Check new message 269
Check settings 295
Composing i-mode mail 245
Copy 289, 291
Deco-mail images 257
Delete 286, 288, 289, 290, 291
Delete folder 283
Delete receiver 248
Edit 291
Edit folder name 282
Filter function 286, 288
Forward 272
Guide to the Folder List displays 277
Guide to the Mail Detail displays 279
Guide to the Mail List displays 278
Large image 263
Look-up address 247
Mail menu 244
Mail security 282
Move trash box 286, 290

No. of messages 264, 286, 288
Open folder 283
Preview 247
Pre-installed templates 261
Protect ON/OFF 286, 288, 289, 291
Read message 276
Read out message 276
Receive 266
Receive option 268
Reply 270
Reply by quoting 272
Reply by referring 271
Resend 291
Reset 295
Rules used for reading out mail 297
Save 263
Save address 273
Save images 274
Save i-motions 275
Save melody 274
Search mail 285, 288
secret code 102
Set check new message 297
Set mail 294
Sort folder 283
Sorting display 286, 288
Speed photo mail 252
Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail 246
i-motion 334, 369
Automatic replay 336
i-motion details 336
i-motion type 337
Normal type 334
Playing i-motion 334, 369
Saving i-motions 336
Sound effects 117
Streaming 334
Streaming type 334
i-motion mail 262, 369
In-call voice memo 449
In-car Hands-free 59
Indicator display 29, 30, 126, 322
Info notice setting 69
Infrared communication function 413
Infrared Communication Mode 418
Infrared port 413, 419
Infrared Remote Control 418
Receive all 417
Receive Ir data 415
Send all 417
Send Ir data 415
The types of data that can be exchanged 414
Initial setting 44
Initialize 463
Insert mode 539
Int'l dial setting 56
International calls 55
Internet 212
Internet web pages 201
J
JAN codes 184
Jumping to previous pages 209
K
Keypad dial lock 150
Keypad sound 118
Kuten code list 556
L
Last URL 208
Lens selector switch 161
Light 183
Links 208
Long time movie 177
M
Mail list disp. 294
Mail security 151
Mail To function 223
Mail/Msg. ring time 119
Mailing List 265
Making a call 48
Manner mode 119
Manner mode Set 120
Manufacturer numbers 207
Melody player 391
Add folder 409
Delete 393
Delete folder 409
Guide to the Melody List 392
Memory info 393
Move 394
Operations during melody playback 392
Play playlist 396
Playing Melodies 391
Menu function list 552
Message auto display 224
Message display 294
Message list display 225
Message service 200
Check new message 229
Delete 231, 232
Display 230
Filter function 230
No. of messages 231
Protect ON/OFF 231, 232
Receive 227
Sorted display 230
Viewing the Msg. Request and Msg. Free List Display 228
miniSD Memory Card 396
Check miniSD 407
Copy 353, 411
Create folder 410
DCIM folder 399
Delete file 405
Delete image 353, 361
Delete movie 374
Displaying images 346
DPOF setting 353, 361, 411
Export 401, 403
Export images 363
Export movies 378
Folder configuration 398
Format 406
Import 401, 405
Import images 363
Import movies 379
Inserting 396
miniSD info 405, 407
Number of items that can be stored 400
Numbers of movies stored 163
Numbers of still images stored 162
Playing movie 369
Previewing data 403
Removing 397
Save destination folder 412
SD_PIM folder 400
SD_VIDEO folder 399
miniSD Memory Card Reader/Writer 407
Mobile phone information 207
mode 1 (Kana input) 528
mode 2 (2-touch input) 529
Mode 3 (T9 input) 530
Movie 369
Add folder 409
Delete 372
Delete folder 409

Files that can be edited 348
How to view movie list display 370
Memory info 372, 374
Operations during movie playback 370
Play movie playlist 378
Playing movies 369
Preview display 370
Selecting multiple data items 410
Title list 370
Movie mode 176
Auto timer 183
Chance capture 181
File size 163
Light 183
Numbers of movies stored 163
Photography settings 177, 182
Picture voice 181
Zoom 182
Multi access 428
Combination patterns 560
Multi number 477
Multi task 431
Activate 431
Combination patterns 560
End 432
Switch 432
My Menu 211
My picture 345

N

Network security code 142
Network Services 466
Neuropointer 26
Neuropointer settings 133
Noise reduction 59
Notice call service 469
Notifying your phone number 45
Nuisance Call Barring Service 472

O

OBEX 423
Options 561
Original manner 121
Original menu 133
Own number 46, 447
Display 447
Store 448

P

Packet communication 482
Past text 545
Pause dial 53
Send 54
Storing 53
Phone To function 222
Phonebook 92
Add to phonebook 93
Delete data 103
Edit Phonebook 102
Making a call 98
Search phonebook 98
Secret code 102
Storage status 106
Photo mode 166
Auto timer 183
Continuous mode 171
Framed photograph 174
Light 183
Numbers of still images stored 162
Photography settings 167, 182
Shoot closed 170
Shoot open 166
Still image sizes 162
Zoom 182
Pictographs 538
Pictographs symbols lists 555
PIM lock 149
PIN 144
PIN (PIN1 code, PIN2 code) 142
PIN Setting 143
PIN unlock 144
PIN1 and PIN2 codes 142
Change 143
Prefix setting 54
Pull-down menus 209
Push signals 53

Q

QR codes 184
Quality alarm 118
Quick Manual 588
Quick message 71

R

Radio buttons 208
Random melody 115
Read out setting 295
Rear camera 161
Receive option setting 294
Received address 292
Received calls 62
Receiving a call 60
Receiving display 294
Reconnect control 58
Record display set 151
Record message 70, 72
Erase 73
Playback 72
Setting 70
Redial 50
Reject unknown 156
Reloading 210
Remote access 477
Remote all lock 145
Set 145
Remote observation 88
Reset duration 451
Reset last URL 225
Reset settings 459
Restrict dialing 152
Restrictions 152
Result codes 522
Ring volume 65
Ringing time 155

S

Save image 218
Schedule 126, 437
Changing the display mode 438
User icon settings 441
Screen memo 216
Add to phonebook 218
Delete 217, 218
Display 216
Edit title 217, 218
No. of memos 217
Protect ON/OFF 217, 218
Save 216
Save image 218
Scroll 224, 294
Scroll function 207
SD-PIM 403
Secret mode 147
Secret only mode 147, 148
Security code 142
Changing 142
Entering 34
Scan setting 579
Select display icon 139
Selecting 139

Select language 43
Selecting the menu 32
Selecting tone 114
- Chaku-motion 115
- Random melody 115

Selection boxes 209
Self mode 156
Sent address 292
Service available 561
Service dial 476
Set arrival call 476
Set as home URL 205
Set image display 224, 358, 376, 387
Set menu display 130
Set PLMN 458
Set time 44
Short message 87
Side keys guard 150
Site (program) connection 197
- Accessing a site 203

Smiley face symbols list 555
SMS 308
- Checking for SMS 312
- Composing an SMS 308
- Delete 310
- Forward, reply 312
- Look-up address 309
- Preview 309
- Receive 310
- Save 309
- Saving SMS to Your UIM 314
- SMS Center setting 313
- SMS Rejection Settings 313
- SMS report 309
- UIM operation 103, 314

SMS input character 295
SMS report request 295
SMS valid. period 295
Software keys 26
Software update 574
Sound effect 116
- Set 3D sound 117
- Set surround 116
- SRS_WOW setting 117

Sound effect setting 225
Specific call forwarding 152
Specific voice mail 152
Speed photo auto disp. 295
SRS_WOW setting 117
SSL certificates 232
SSL page 199
SSL transmission 199
Stand-by display 124
Stand-by voice memo 449
Store common phrase 543
Store original menu entry 132
Sub-address 58
Super silent 120, 121
Symbols 537
Symbols and special characters list 554

T

Task menu 432
Text boxes 209
Text entry 526, 534
- changing the active display 549
- Common phrases 541
- Data 542
- Delete 539
- Entering pictographs continuously 538
- Full-pitch and half-pitch characters 528, 529
- Guidance 534
- Input mode 528, 529, 530
- Insert mode and Overwrite mode 536
- Inserting text 539
- Line feed 537
- Overwrite 539
- Pictographs 538
- Space (blank) 536
- Symbols 537
- Upper case and lower case 536

Text entry method 527
- Mode 1 (Kana input) 528
- Mode 2 (2-touch input) 529
- Mode 3 (T9 input) 530

Text memo 452
ToDo 443
Turning the FOMA on/off 43
Two-touch dialing 110

U

Update pattern data 579
URL 212
- Delete 213
- Enter URL 212
- URL 205
- URL history 212

USB mode 408
Use stored data 224, 226
User certificates 232
User dictionary 546
Utilities 107

V

Vibrator 117
Video-phone 76
- Camera image sending 84
- Chara-den 80, 83
- Decoration 86
- Hands-free 77, 82
- Image quality 84
- Making a call 77
- Receiving a call 81
- Remote observation 88
- Select image 84
- Short message 87
- Visual check 85
- V-phone settings display 86
- Zoom 86

Visual check 85
Voice announce 450
Voice mail service 467
Voice memo 72, 449
Volume 65

W

Wake-up display 123
Warranty 573
Web To function 223
Word prediction 533
WORLD CALL 55
WORLD WING 38

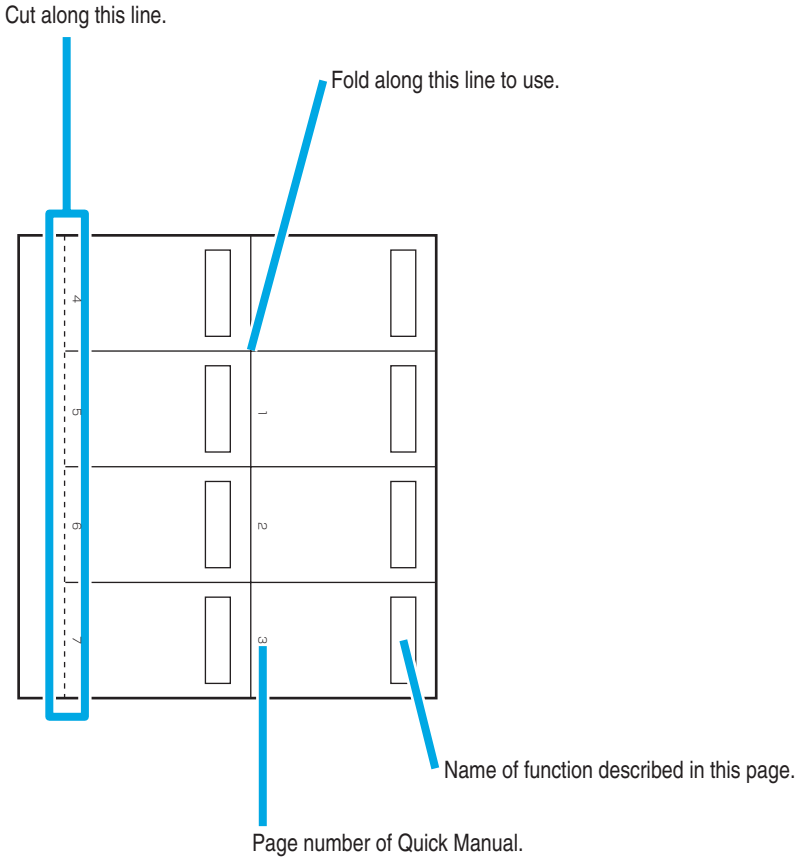
Y

Your own phone number 46

Memo

How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual shows basic operations and displays of FOMA terminals.
- The Quick Manual can be detached from this book and folded.
- Please detach one page at a time to avoid tearing other pages. Then please be careful not to hurt yourself.



NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N901iC Quick Manual

○Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>:

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

151 (no prefix) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

○If the FOMA terminal does not work properly

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

113 (no prefix) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

※Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Phonebook Add to phonebook



1 Press ○ ➔ "Add to phonebook".

2 Select "Phone" or "UIM" ➔ Edit name ➔ reading.

3 Set the respective items.

- Select the group (00 to 19)
- Store a telephone number (up to 4)
- Store a mail address (up to 3)
- Store a postal code and address
- Store a birthday
- Store a memo
- Store a still image
- Store a Chara-den
- Store a memory number (000 to 699)*

*A memory number is assigned automatically if you do not select any number.

4 Press ○ (Finish)

Only name, reading, telephone number, group and mail address can be stored in the FOMA card.

To add data from the received call record

Press ○ ➔ highlight the received call record and then press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Add to phonebook" ➔ step 2.

To add data from the redial

Press ○ ➔ highlight the redial record and then press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Add to phonebook" ➔ step 2.

Phonebook Search phonebook



Press ○ ➔ select the search method and search.

-reading search

Enter the reading and then press ○ or ○.

Name search

Enter the name and then press ○ or ○.

Phone No. search

Enter the phone number and then press ○ or ○.

E-mail search

Enter the mail address and then press ○ or ○.

Memory No. search

Enter the 3-digit memory number.

The FOMA card phonebook cannot be searched by memory number.

Group search

Select the desired group.

Groups of the phonebook of the FOMA card are different from those of the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (main unit).

Column search

Press the key corresponding to the column that you want to search.

Phonebook Editing/deleting phonebook

●Editing the phonebook

1 Display the phonebook entry, and then press ○ (Edit) ➔ Edit the respective items ➔ Press ○ (Finish).

2 To store the edited entry in the main unit ➔ press "YES"

To store the edited entry in the FOMA card phonebook ➔ press "Overwrite" or "Add".

●Deleting the phonebook

Display the phonebook entry, and then press ➔ ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Delete data" ➔ "Delete this".

PhoneBook Utilities



●To set restrictions

Display the phonebook entry, and then press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Restrictions" ➔ Enter the security code ➔ select the item that you want to set.

"★" is attached to the function that you have set.

●To display the phone number just by opening the FOMA terminal

Display the details screen for the phonebook entry ➔ press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Automatic disp".

Entering Text Input method and mode



●Switching the input modes

Each time you press ○ (Mode), the input mode changes in order

5-touch (Mode 1)

Alphabet input mode ("") / Number input mode ("") / Kanji/hiragana input mode ("") / Kana input mode ("")

2-touch (Mode 2)

Full-pitch mode ("") / Half-pitch mode ("")

T9 (Mode 3)

Alphabet input mode ("") / Number input mode ("") / Kanji/hiragana input mode ("") / Kana input mode ("")

*When alphabet or number input mode is set, "5-touch (Mode 1)" is used.

●Switching the input method

Press ○ (Mode)

5-touch / 2-touch ("") / T9 ("")

Entering Text Input method and mode



●Switching between lower case and upper case characters

- Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Upper case" or "Lower case".
- Place the cursor on the characters that you want to switch, and then press ○.

●Switching between full-pitch ("") and half-pitch ("")

5-touch (Mode 1)

Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Full pitch" or "Half pitch".

*In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", you cannot switch between the full-pitch and the half-pitch.

2-touch (Mode 2)

Press ○ (Mode).

T9 (Mode 3)

Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Full pitch" or "Half pitch".

*In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", you cannot switch between the full-pitch and the half-pitch.

●Switching between insertion mode ("") and overwriting mode ("")

Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Insert" or "Overwrite".

Entering Text Entering text

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in 5-touch (Mode 1)>

Press ○ (Mode) to switch to "Kanji/hiragana input mode" ➔

○×3、○、○×3、○、○×2

す　す　き

➔ Press ○ ➔ Press ○ or ○ to select "鈴木" from the conversion candidates and then press ○.

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in 2-touch (Mode 2)>

Press ○ (Mode) to switch to "Full-pitch input mode" ➔

○、○、○、○、○

す　す　き

➔ Press ○ ➔ Press ○ or ○ to select "鈴木" from the conversion candidates and then press ○.

<Example: To enter "鈴木" in "T9 (Mode 3)">

Press ○ (Mode) to switch to "Kanji/hiragana input mode" ➔

○, ○, ○, ○

➔ Press ○ or use neuropointer to select "鈴木" from the conversion candidates and then press ○.

Entering Text Copying/cutting/pasting characters

●Copying and cutting characters

Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Copy" or "Cut" ➔ Place the cursor on the starting point, and then press ○ ➔ Place the cursor on the ending point, and then press ○.

●Pasting characters

Place the cursor where you paste the characters ➔ Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Paste".

Entering Text Entering symbols/pictographs/face symbols

●Entering symbols and pictographs

- Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "Symbols" or "Pictograph" ➔ Select symbols or pictographs.
- Press ○ (FUNC) ➔ "PI･SB input mode" ➔ Press ○ (PI･SB) (switches the candidate screens) ➔ Select symbols or pictographs from the candidates.

●Entering symbols and face symbols with character conversion

- Enter symbols in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".
  Enter symbol names such as "きこう", "かっこ" and "さんかく" ➔ Convert.
- Enter face symbols in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".
  Enter "かお", "かおもじ" or the meanings of the face symbols such as "ありがとう" and "さよなら" ➔ Convert.

Cutting Line

Camera Useful functions

Photo mode display



Movie mode display



A ●Zoom

●Lighting ON/OFF

• Press (ON/OFF).

• ( )

●Brightness

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Brightness" ➔

B ●To switch camera mode

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Select size" ➔ Select the size.

●To change the camera

Press (FUNC) ➔ Select "Front camera/Rear camera".

●To check the memory

Press (FUNC) ➔ select "Memory info".

●Auto timer

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Auto timer" ➔ "ON" ➔ Set the time (01 to 15 seconds) ➔ Shoot.

●White balance (adjust the color with some light source)

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Image quality" ➔ "White balance" ➔ Select the best setting.

Camera Shooting still images

1 Press ➔ ➔ "Camera" ➔ "Photo mode" ➔ Display the subject and then press or ( ).

2 When Auto save set is set to "OFF", press ➔ "YES" ➔ Select "Phone" or "miniSD" ➔ If you select "Phone", select folder.

To restart taking

Press in Step 2.

When a message indicating that the process is in progress appears immediately after shooting, do not move the FOMA terminal.

Camera Shooting movies

1 Press ➔ ➔ "Camera" ➔ "Movie mode" ➔ Display the subject and then press or ( ) ➔ or ( ).

2 When Auto save set is set to "OFF", press ➔ "YES" ➔ Edit the title if needed and then press ➔ select "Phone" or "miniSD" ➔ If you select "Phone", select folder.

To check the movie before saving

Press (FUNC) in Step 2 ➔ "Play".

To restart shooting

Press (FUNC) in Step 2 ➔ "Cancel" ➔ "YES".

*Movies shot in Long Duration mode are automatically saved in the miniSD memory card.

Camera Displaying image/playing movie

Select ➔ ➔ "My picture" (for image) or "i-motion" (for movie) ➔ Select folder ➔ Select the image or movie

●Operations while displaying image

Press to display the previous or next image.

Press to close the display.

To change the size of screen display

Select (FUNC) ➔ "Set image disp." ➔ Select the display size.

●Operations while running a movie

Press to pause and resume run.

Press to run the previous/next movie.

Press to skip forward.

Press to exit.

Press ( ) or ( ) to adjust volume.

Press to mute.

Press to skip rewind.

Press to fast forward.

To run a movie slowly or fast

Select (run is paused) ➔ (FUNC) ➔ "Slow" or "Fast".

Video-phone call Making a video-phone call

Dial the phone number starting with the area code, press ➔ press when you finish.

To call a land phone : Area code-City code-Subscriber number

To call a mobile phone : 090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

●Operations while calling

Press to switch to hands-free or cancel.

Press to switch cameras between Front camera and Rear camera.

Press to zoom your camera image in and out.

Press to put a call on hold.

To answer an on-hold call with a camera view

Press .

To answer with a substitute image

Press .

Video-phone call Receiving a video-phone call



When a video-phone call comes in, press ➔ press when you finish.

To answer with a substitute image

Press or .

To forward an incoming video-phone call

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Call forwarding".

*A subscription to the "Call forwarding service" is required. (free)

To deliberately reject an incoming video-phone call

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Call rejection".

When you answer a video-phone call by pressing a key on the earphone/microphone (optional), or when you set Automatic answer to ON, you can automatically answer a video-phone call with a substitute image. (You can switch after answering a call.)

●Operations while talking

Press to switch between the camera view and a substitute image.

Press to zoom your camera image in and out.

●Operation while receiving a call

Press to put an incoming call on hold.

Press to answer the video-phone call put on hold with a camera image.

Press or to answer it with a substitute image.

Video-phone call Operations while calling



Main screen Sub screen

●To switch camera images between main screen and sub screen

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Change main disp.".

Each time the display changes in the following sequence. "Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main display" / "Displays the image from your own camera on your main display" / "Displays only the image from the other party's camera" / "Displays only the image from your own camera".

●To adjust brightness

Press (FUNC) ➔ "V-phone settings" ➔ "Brightness" ➔ .

●White balance (adjust the color with some light source)

Press (FUNC) ➔ "V-phone settings" ➔ "White balance" ➔ select the best setting.

i-mode mail Sending i-mode mail



1 Select (Mail) ➔ "Compose message" ➔ (FUNC) ➔ "Look-up address" ➔ "Phonebook" ➔ search the phonebook and select the mail address of the recipient.

To add receiver

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Add receiver".

To You can add up to 5 receivers in total.

You can omit '@docomo.ne.jp'.

2 Enter the subject and message.

Subject Enter the subject and press .

Enter the message and press .

3 Check the preview screen and press (Send).

●To send a Deco-mail using template

After Step 1, press (FUNC) ➔ "Template" ➔ "Load template" ➔ select the template and go to Step 2 (Edit the message).

●To decorate message (Deco-mail)

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Decorate mail" ➔ select the decoration ➔ enter the characters that you want to decorate.

If you select "Blink", "Ticker" and "Swing" for decoration.

After entering the characters that you want to decorate, press (FUNC) ➔ "Decorate mail" ➔ select previously selected decoration ➔ end

i-mode mail Receiving i-mode mail



●To check new messages

• Select (Mail) ➔ "Check new message".

• Select (Mail) .

●To display received i-mode mail

Select (Mail) ➔ "Inbox" ➔ select folder ➔ select an i-mode mail that you want to display.

To display the previous or next i-mode mail

Press in the received mail details screen.

●To forward the received i-mode mail

Press (FUNC) ➔ "Forward" ➔ edit the address and send.

*The subject will be the "Fw:(the subject of received mail)" format if you do not edit anything.

●To reply to the received mail

Press (Reply) in the received mail details screen ➔ (If the received mail contains more than one address) "To all" or "To sender" ➔ edit the subject and message, and then send.

*The subject will be the "Re:(the subject of received mail)" format if you do not edit anything.

Cutting Line

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new message	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
i-mode	iMenu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Message	
	Check new message	
	Client certificate	
	i-mode settings	
i-αppli	Software list	
	Auto start set	
	i-αppli info	

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume
		Select ring tone
		Sound effect
		Vibrator
		Illumination
		Manner mode set
		Disp. PH-book image
		Answer setting
		Fold setting
		Mail/Msg. ring time
		Ringing time
		Info notice setting
	Talk	Noise reduction
		Quality alarm
		Reconnect control
		Illumination in talk
		Call response setting
	Video-phone	Image quality
		Camera image sending
		Select image
		Voice call auto switch

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Video-phone	Remote observation
		Disp. setting V-phone
	Display	Display setting
		Display light
		Display design
		Indicator display
		Font
		Desktop icon
		Select language
		Original menu
		Menu display set
		Viewer settings
		Automatic display
		Icons
	Call time/charge	Call data
		Reset call duration
		Call time display
	Clock	Set time
		Clock display
		Alarm setting
	Lock/Security	All lock

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	Lock/Security	PIM lock
		Self mode
		Keypad dial lock
		Reject unknown
		Call setting w/o ID
		Change security code
		PIN setting
		Secret mode
		Secret only mode
		Scanning function
		Remote all lock
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout
		Set check new message
		Host selection
		SMS center selection
		Certificate
		Certificate host
	i-αppli settings	Disp. software info
		αDisplay light
		αVibrator
		αIndicator display

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Settings	i-αppli settings	End stand-by display
	External option	Earphone
		Automatic answer
	Other settings	Keypad sound
		Charge sound
		Battery level
		Side keys guard
		Character input method
		Record display set
		Pause dial
		Sub-address
		Prefix setting
		Int'l dial setting
		PLMN setting
		Neuropointer
		Select icons setting
		USB mode setting
		Reset
		Initialize
		Software update

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Data box	My picture	
	i-motion	
	Melody	
	Chara-den	
Tool	Camera	
	Schedule	
	Alarm clock	
	ToDo	
	Text memo	
	Calculator	
	Play/Erase msg.	
	Record message	
	Voice memo	
	Voice memo (during a call)	
	Voice announce	
	Receive Ir data	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Tool	SD-PIM	
	Dictionary	
Network service	Check messages	
	Caller ID notification	
	Voice mail	
	Call waiting	
	Call forwarding	
	Nuisance call barring	
	Caller ID request	
	Arrival call act	
	Set arrival act	
	Remote access	
	Dual network	
	English guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service dialing number	
	Multi number	
	Call barrings (This function is not available for the FOMA terminal.)	
Phonebook	Add to phonebook	
	Search phonebook	

Menu Menu Function List

Menu

Main item	Sub item	Branch item
Phonebook	No. of phonebook	
	Utilities	
	Restrictions	
	Group setting	
Own data	Own number	
	Received calls	
	Dialed calls	
	Mail member	
	Chat group	
	Common phrases	
	Own dictionary	
	DL dictionary	

<Useful Operations>

- Manner mode (Press this to switch set/release in turn.)
- Driving mode (Press this to switch set/release in turn.)
- Side keys guard (Press this to switch set/release in turn.)
- Check messages Mail
- Volume During standby: during a call: or

Cutting Line

Network Services





●Voice mail service

Subscription is necessary. (charged)

1 **Select** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Voice mail".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

To check whether voice mail messages are stored

Select ⊖ → ✉ → "Check messages".

●Call waiting

Subscription is necessary. (charged)

1 **Select** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Call waiting".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

●Activating the call waiting service

1 **Put the current voice call on hold to answer another voice call.**

After hearing a single hold tone (ppp...ppp...) during a call → press ☎ or ●.

2 **Switch the calls**

To hung up the second call.

Press 電源 → ☎ or ● to answer the first call.

To put the second call on hold

Press ☎ (The call is switched each time you press).

If you press 電源 while talking on either line, the call is finished. Press ☎ or ● to answer another line.

Network Services







●Call forwarding service

Subscription is necessary. (free)

1 **Select** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Call forwarding".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

●Nuisance call barring service

Subscription is necessary. (charged)

1 **Select** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Nuisance call barring".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

The number of the last call that you received can be registered for call rejection in "Register caller".

To register a specific nuisance phone number

Press 1 2 3 4 5 ☎ → follow the voice guidance.

●Caller ID request service

Subscription is not necessary. (free)

The "Caller ID request" service responds to voice calls that do not provide a Caller ID by playing an announcement that requests a Caller ID and then automatically terminating the call.

1 **Press** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Caller ID request".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

Network Services





●Notify caller ID service

Subscription is not necessary. (free)

1 **Press** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Caller ID notification".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation you want to set.**

●Dual network service

Subscription is necessary. (charged)

The dual network service is that in which you can use the same phone number for both the FOMA terminal and the mova.

1 **Press** ⊖ **→** ✉ **→ "Dual network".**

2 **Select from the menu the operation that you want to set.**

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)	(No area code) **106**
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (charged) *Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.	(No area code) **104**
Telegram (charged) *8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) **115**
Time (charged)	(No area code) **117**
Weather forecast (charged)	Area code of an area you want to know + **177**
Emergency call to the police	(No area code) **110**
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance	(No area code) **119**
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents	(No area code) **118**
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)	(No area code) **171**

*An emergency call to the fire station or police station concerned may be interrupted in some areas. In that case, call again from a public phone or other land line.

WORLD CALL (NTT DoCoMo's international dialing service)

009130 - 010 - country code - area code - recipient's number → ☎

*Subscription is necessary for this service.

Icons Notification icons



Battery level

Unread mail

Signal strength indicator

" " is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.

miniSD card attached

You can operate the following functions by performing the indicated procedure below.

Press ● → select the icon and press ●.

Desktop icon	Call up the functions stored as desktop icons.
New mail	Display the received mail folder.
New chat mail	Display the chat display.
Missed call	Display the missed call history.
Record message	Display the "Play/Erase msg." screen.
Voice mail	Display the "Voice mail" screen.
Missed alarm	Display the alarm information screen.
Not run soft	Display the auto start info screen.
Security error hist.	Display the security error log.
Update complete	Display the updated results.

Icons Icons displayed for settings





Displayed while All lock is activated.

Displayed in the Secret mode or Secret only mode.

Displayed while PIM lock is activated.

Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated.

Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode.

Displayed while PIM lock and Keypad dial lock.

Display when Vibrator is set.

Displayed when Ring volume is set to "Silent".

Displayed in the Manner mode.

Displayed in the Driving mode.

Displayed when Alarm is set.

Displayed when Record message is set.

Displayed when Display light is set to "OFF".

Side keys unavailable.

● Check the meanings of icons.

Select ⊖ 1 6 → Select icons.

Icons Indicator Display



●Notification icons

Battery level

Unread mail

Signal strength indicator

" " is displayed when you are outside of the service area or in a place which the signal cannot reach.

miniSD memory card attached

●During a setting display

All lock

Secret mode, Secret only mode

PIM lock

Keypad dial lock

The Keypad dial lock and the Secret mode or Secret only mode

The Keypad dial lock and the PIM lock

Side keys unavailable

Manner mode

○**Inquiries <DoCoMo information center>:**

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

151 (no prefix) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

○**If the FOMA terminal does not work properly**

From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

113 (no prefix) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

※Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Cutting Line

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, don't forget to consider the feelings of the people around you.

Always turn your FOMA terminal off in the following situations:

■ In places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Always turn your FOMA terminal off in such places.

・In aircraft ・In hospitals

* Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby or waiting room, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.

■ When you are driving

Using your FOMA terminal while you are driving is dangerous.

* Stop your car in a safe place and use the FOMA terminal, or set the FOMA terminal to driving mode.

■ Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

■ When you are in public places such as a theater, cinema or gallery

Using your FOMA terminal in public places where quiet is needed can annoy the people around you.

Be aware of where you use the FOMA terminal and the volume of your voice and the ring tone

■ Take care not to speak too loudly when you use your FOMA terminal in quiet location such as restaurants and hotel lobbies

■ Take care not to obstruct other people when you use your FOMA terminal in shopping areas, etc.

Be considerate of privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phone.

Use these FOMA functions to avoid offending people around you

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with convenient functions that remove the need to answer incoming calls and mute all the sounds made by the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original Manner mode]

Manner mode mutes the sounds made by the FOMA terminal, such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can create customized Manner mode with your own choice of Record message function and vibrator or ring tone settings (Original Manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original Manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Driving mode]

In this mode, the FOMA terminal plays an announcement informing the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. This promotes safe driving since the FOMA terminal does not ring.

[Vibrator]

This makes the FOMA terminal vibrate rather than ring when a call comes in.

[Record message function]

When you cannot take calls, this function allows the caller to leave a recorded message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice mail service (P. 467) and Call forwarding service (P. 470).

You can subscribe to “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Barring Service” and “i-mode Service” via the DoCoMo e-site.

●**Using i-mode:** **iMenu ▶ 料金＆お申込 ▶ ■ドコモeサイト (no packet communication charge)**

●**Using PC:** **http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ ▶ オンライン手続き／照会サービス ▶ ドコモeサイト**
or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

※You need the Network security code that you specified at the time of application to use e-site via i-mode.
※There is no charge for packet communication accessing e-site via i-mode, however some packet communication charges may apply.
※You need a user ID and password to access e-site via your PC.
※If you do not have or forgot your “Network security code”, “user ID” and/or “password”, please contact us.
※There are times when the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.
※You may not use for a system maintenance.
※There is a charge plan which cannot be used in part.

Inquiries
< DoCoMo Information center >

■**From an ordinary (Landline) phone:**

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
※You can call this number from any type phone, including DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

■**From DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:**

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※You can not call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

Inquiries in for repair

■**From an ordinary (landline) phone:**

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
※You can call this number from any type of phone, including DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

■**From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:**

113 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

●For details, refer to the “Service station list” provided with the FOMA terminal.



Don’t forget your cellular phone or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in a public place, don’t forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Inc
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc

Manufacture: NEC Corporation

Li-ion

For the environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery to the nearest DoCoMo, dealers, or the recycle shop.

This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

’05.1（Edition 1.1）
MDT-000053-EAA0